



LIBRARY

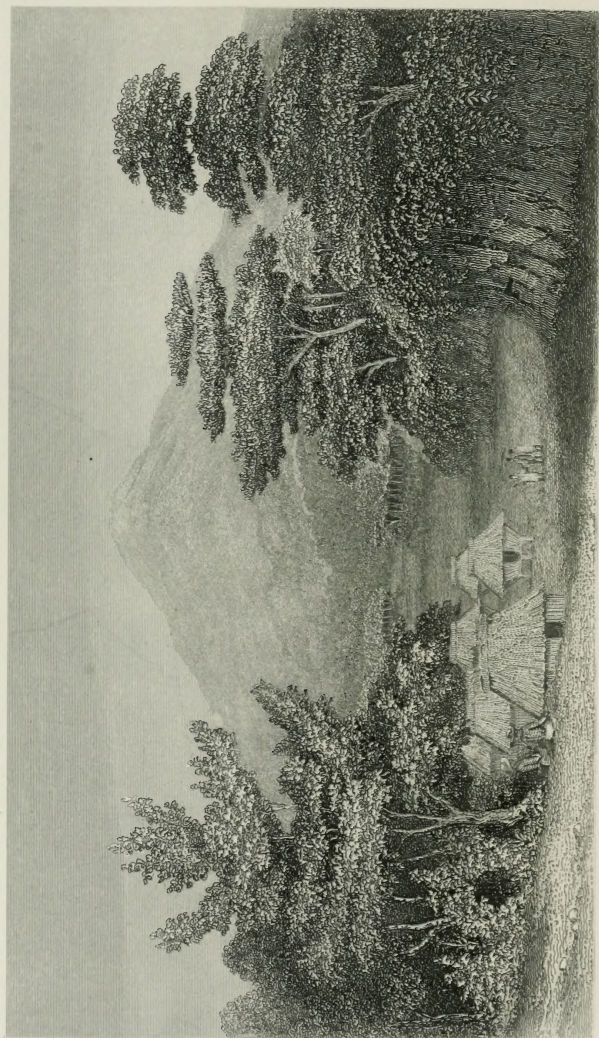
THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA
SANTA BARBARA

PRESENTED BY
Mr. H. H. Kiliani

U.S. LIBRARY

X-29854





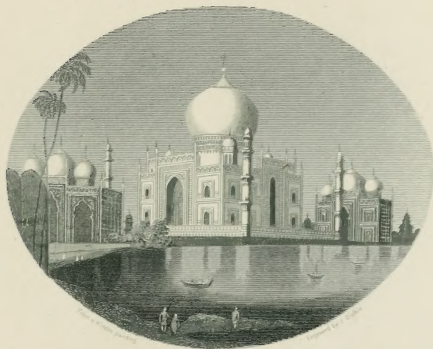
Engraved by J. B. 1840

The Valley of Hinn, in Lo-Choo

Engraved by J. B. 1840

INDIA, CHINA AND JAPAN

By Bayard Taylor.



The Taj Mahal at Agra

Eldorado Edition

THE WORKS
OF
BAYARD TAYLOR

VOLUME VII

INDIA, CHINA, AND JAPAN

STUDIES IN GERMAN LITERATURE



G. P. PUTNAM'S SONS
NEW YORK LONDON
27 WEST TWENTY-THIRD STREET 24 BEDFORD STREET, STRAND
The Knickerbocker Press

A VISIT TO
INDIA, CHINA, AND JAPAN
IN THE YEAR 1853

BY
BAYARD TAYLOR

AUTHOR'S REVISED EDITION

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1855, by
G. P. PUTNAM & CO.,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern
District of New York.

COPYRIGHT BY
MARIE TAYLOR
1882

Dedicated

TO

CHARLES A. DANA

BY HIS

ASSOCIATE AND FRIEND.

P R E F A C E.

WITH this volume ends the record of two and a half years of travel, which was commenced in the "Journey to Central Africa," and continued in the "Lands of the Saracen." In bringing his work to a close, the author cannot avoid expressing his acknowledgment of the public interest in those portions of his narrative already published—an interest which has justified him in the preparation of this volume, and encouraged him to hope that he will again be received at the same firesides as a gossip and companion, not as a bore.

Although the entire travels herewith presented embrace India, China, Japan, the Loo-Choo and Bonin Islands, and the long homeward voyage around the Cape of Good Hope. they were all accomplished in the space

of a year. Hence, some of my descriptions may bear the marks of haste, and I may, occasionally, have founded a judgment on the first rapid impressions, which a greater familiarity with the subject might not have confirmed. I can only say, in answer to objections of this kind, that I have conscientiously endeavored to be correct and impartial, and that, in preparing this work for the press, I have carefully tested the original impressions recorded on the spot, by the truer images which slowly ripen in the memory, and by the light of subsequent experience.

The portions of the book devoted to India and China are as complete as the length of my stay in those countries allowed me to make them. The account of my visit to Loo-Choo and Japan, however, is less full and detailed than I could have wished. In accordance with special regulations issued by the Secretary of the Navy, I was obliged to give up my journals to the Department, at the close of my connection with the Expedition. It was understood that they would be retained and employed in the compilation of the Narrative of the Expedition, now being prepared by order of Congress. As my accounts of the most interesting events which I wit-

nessed had already been published, and were therefore common property, I made application to Government for the favor of being allowed to copy portions of my journal—especially that part relating to Loo-Choo—which would have enabled me to supply the links between the published accounts: but my request was peremptorily denied. My papers will no doubt be restored to me, after the completion of the Government work: otherwise, like John Ledyard, in a precisely similar case, I shall have the alternative of an unusually tenacious memory.

During my journeys and voyages in those remote parts of the world, I was treated with great kindness and hospitality by the English and American merchants and officials established there, and received assistance in the prosecution of my plans, which I take sincere pleasure in acknowledging. I desire, especially, to return my thanks to Commodore Perry, to whose kindness I was indebted for the most interesting portion of my experiences; to the Hon. Humphrey Marshall, late U. S. Commissioner to China; to Capt. Buchanan, U. S. N.; to Edward Cunningham, Esq., U. S. Vice-Consul at Shanghai; to Henry G. Keene, Esq., of the E. I. Com-

pany's Civil Service, and Capt. R. Baird Smith, of the Bengal Engineers ; and to the American Missionaries in India and China, from all of whom I received every assistance in their power.

B. T.

NEW YORK, *August*, 1855.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

Leaving Gibraltar—Voyage up the Mediterranean—Landing at Alexandria—Distribution of Passengers—A Cloudy Day in Egypt—A Joyful Meeting—The Desert Vans—We Start for Suez—Cockney Fears—The Road and Station-houses—Suez—Transfer to the India Steamers—Our Passengers and Crew—The Mountains of Horeb—Red Sea Weather and Scenery—A Glimpse of Mocha—The Straits of Bab-el-Mandeb—An Extinct Hades—The Fortress of Aden—Arrival—The Somali—Ride to the Old Town—Population of Aden—Temperature—The Fortifications—The Track of the Anglo-Saxon—Departure—Disregard of Life—Araby the Blest—Life on the Achilles—Approach to India—Land!—The Ghauts of Malabar—Arrival at Bombay, . . . 13

CHAPTER II.

A Foretaste of India—Entering Bombay Harbor—I Reach the Shore—My First Ride in a Palanquin—Mr. Pallanjee's Hotel—Appearance of Bombay—Its Situation—The First Indian Railroad—English Hospitality—American Consuls and Residents—The Parsees—Sir Jamsetjee Jeejeebhoy—His Family and Residence—Parsee Faith and Ceremonies—Bridal Processions—A Drive to Malabar Hill—Tropical Gardens—Tax on Palm-Trees—A Hindoo Temple—The Jeejeebhoy Hospital—Dr. Bhawoo Dajee 34

CHAPTER III.

Hindoo and Egyptian Antiquities—The Hindoo Faith—The Trinity—A Trip to Elephanta—Scenery of the Bay—Landing on the Island—Front View of the Cave-Temple—Portuguese Vandalism—The Colossal Trinity—The Head of Brahma—Vishnu—Shiva—Remarkable Individuality of the Heads—The Guardians of the Shrine—The Columns of Elephanta—Their Type in Nature—Intrinsic Dignity of all Religions—Respect for the Ancient Faiths—The Smaller Chambers of the Temple—The Shrine of the Sterile—Tamarind Trees—Smaller Cave-Temples—Return to Bombay Island—Sunset in the Botanic Garden, 45

CHAPTER IV

New-Year's Day—A Tropical Gift—A Parsee Bungalow—Our Reception—Chewing the Betel-Nut—The Nautch-Girls—Their Dances—Supper—Prejudices of Caste—The Bengalee Dance—A Gilded Bridegroom—Piercing Music—Ship-Building in Bombay—Education of the Natives—Their Appeals to Parliament, 55

CHAPTER V.

Preparations for Departure—Warnings—Filial Gratitude—The Banghy Cart—A Night-Gallop through Bombay—The Island Road—Ferry to the Mainland—Despotism of the Banghy-Cart—Morning Scenery—The Bungalow—Breakfast—The Sun as a Physician—An Army of Bullocks—Climbing the Ghauts—Natural Pagodas—The Summit—A Kind Sergeant—The Second Day—Resemblance to Mexico—Natives and Villages—The Menagerie Man in Egypt—An English Cantonment—Dhoolia—The Lieutenant and his Hospitality—A Rough Road—Accident—Waiting in the Jungle—The Bullock-Cart—Halt at Seerpore, 62

CHAPTER VI.

Departure from Seerpore—Another Break-down—A Crippled Cart—Palasnehr—Indian Horses and Drivers—Jungle—The Banyan Tree—The Tamarind—The Natives of the Jungle—Military Salutations—The Town of Sindwah—Tokens of Decay—The Sindwah Jungles—A Dilemma—The Vindhya Mountains—The Station of Mhow—Arrival at Indore—The Town—The Rajah's Palace—The Rajah and his History—His Tastes—Hindoo Temples and their Worshippers—The English Residency—Cold Weather, 79

CHAPTER VII.

The Mail-Cart—Setting out from Indore—Night Travel—Stupidity of the Natives—Mussulmen—Nearly an Accident—Scenery of the Road—A Polite Englishman—Miseries of the Journey—A Tiger Party—Budjrungh—Goonah—A Free Use of Hospitality—The Thugs and Robbers—Second Halt—Miss Burroughs—Going On—The Plain of Hindostan—Approach to Agra—A Landmark, 92

CHAPTER VIII.

Akbarabad—The Modern City—The English Cantonments—Rev. Mr. Warren—The Fort of Agra—The Jumma Musjeed—Entering the Fort—Judgment-Seat of the Emperor—The Gates of Somnauth—Akbar's Palace—Splendor of its Decorations—The Palace of Glass—A Cracked Throne—The Pearl Mosque—Tomb of Akbar, at Secundra—An Indian Landscape—Saracenic Art—Mission Printing-Office—The American Missions—The Agra Jail—Dr. Walker's System of Education—Arithmetic in Chorus—Effect of the System, 101

CHAPTER IX.

Excursion to Futtehpore-Sikree—The Road Thither—Approach to the Ruins—Their Extent and Grandeur—The Palace of Rajah Beer-Bul—Perfect Condition of the Remains—Shekh Busharat-Ali—Age of Futtehpore—The Emperor's Palace—Rooms of the Sultana Mariam—Akbar's Tolerance—The Five Palaces—The Pillar of Council—Profusion of Ornament—The Emperor's Salutation—The Elephant Gate

and Tower—The Durgat—Shekh Selim-Chishti—He gives a Son to the Emperor—The Splendor of his Tomb—View from the Gateway—An Experiment—Tiffin in the Palace—The Story of the Rajah Beer-Bul and the Ruby—Last View of Futtah-pore-Bikree, 114

CHAPTER X.

Notable Views of the Taj—Tomb of Itimun e' Dowlah—The Garden of Rama—Night Worship—The Taj Mahal—Its Origin—The Light of the Harem—Portal and Avenue to the Taj—Its Form—Its Inlaid Marbles and Jewel Work—Tomb of Noor-Jehan—The Dome—Resemblance to Florentine Art—Proofs of Saracenic Design—The Echo under the Dome—Beauty of the Taj—Saracenic Architecture—Plan of Shah Jehan—Garree Dawk—Leaving Agra—Night—Allyghur—The Grand Trunk Road—Distant View of Delhi—Arrival, 130

CHAPTER XI.

Delhi—The Mogul Empire at Present—Ruins of former Delhis—The Observatory—A Wilderness of Ruin—Tomb of Sufdur Jung—The Khuttub Minar—Its Beauty—View from the Summit—Uncertainty of its Origin—The Palace of Aladdin—Ruins of a Hindoo Temple—Tomb of the Emperor Humayoon—Of Nizam-ud-deen—Native Sam Patchee—Old Delhi—Aspect of the Modern City—The Chandnee Choke—Bayaderes—Delhi Artisans and Artists—The Jumna Musjeed—A Hindoo Minstrel and his Songs—The Palace of Akbar II.—Neglect and Desolation—The Diwan—An Elysium on Earth—The Throne Hall—The Crystal Throne—The Court of Akbar II.—A Farce of Empire—The Gardens—Voices of the Sultanas—Palace Pastimes, 143

CHAPTER XII.

Departure for the Himalayas—"Laying a Dawk"—Last View of Delhi—A Rainy Night—Quarters at Meerut—The Dawk Agent—Hindoo Punctuality—Meerut—Palanquin Travelling—Tricks of the Bearers—Arrival at Roorkee—Adventures in Search of a Breakfast—First View of the Himalayas—A Welcome Invitation—Roorkee—The Ganges Canal—Its Cost and Dimensions—Method of Irrigation—The Government and the People—Aqueduct over the Selanee River—Apathy of the Natives, 160

CHAPTER XIII.

Native Workmen at Roorkee—Their Wages—Departure for Hurdwar—Afternoon View of the Himalayas—Peaks visible from Roorkee—Jungle-grass—Jowalapore—Approach to the Siwalik Hills—First View of the Ganges—Ganges Canal—Prediction of the Brahmins—An Arrival—The Holy City of Hurdwar—Its Annual Fair—Appearance of the Streets—The Bazaar—A Himalayan Landscape—Travel in the Jungle—A Conflagration—The Jungle by Torch-Light—Arrival at Dehra, 171

CHAPTER XIV.

Reception by Mr. Keene—We start for the Himalayas—The Dehra-Dhoon—Morning View of the Sub-Himalayas—Leopards—Rajpore—Wilson, the "Ranger of the Himalayas"—Climbing the Mountain—Change of Seasons—The Summit of the Ridge—Village of Landowr—Snow-Drifts—The Pole and the Equator—Rev. Ma

Woodside—Mast-Head of the Sub-Himalayas—View of the Snowy Peaks—Grand Asiatic Tradition—Peculiar Structure of the Himalayan Ranges—Scenery of the Main Chain—The Paharrees—Polyandry—The Peaks at Sunset—The Plain of Hindostan—A Cloudy Deluge, 182

CHAPTER XV.

Return to Denra—The Dhoon—System of Taxation—The Tea-Culture in India—Tea-Garden at Kaologir—Progress by Force—Ride to the Robber's Cave—A Sikh Temple—A Sunny Picture—Sikh Minstrelsy—Rajah Loll Singh—English Masters and Native Servants—Preparations for Departure, 196

CHAPTER XVI.

Ride to Shahpore—The Rajah's Elephant—The Pass of the Siwalik Hills—I Resume the Palanquin—The Large Punch-House—Saharunpore—The American Mission—The Botanic Garden—A Dreary Journey—Travellers—Salutations—Return to Meerut—A Theft—Journey over the Plains—Scenery of the Road—The Pollution of Touch—Fractious Horses—Arrival at Cawnpore—Capt. Riddell—The English Cantonments, 209

CHAPTER XVII.

Crossing the Ganges—Night-Journey to Lucknow—Arrival—A Mysterious Visitor—A Morning Stroll—The Goomtee River—An Oriental Picture—The Crowds of Lucknow—Col. Sleeman, the Resident—Drive through the City—The Constantinople Gate—Architectural Effects—The Imambarra—Gardens and Statues—Singular Decorations of the Tomb—The Chandeliers—Speculation in Oude—Hospital and Mosque—The King's New Palace—The Martiniere—Royalty Plundered—The Dog and the Rose-Water—Destruction of the King's Sons—The Explosion of a Fiend—Misrule in Oude—Wealth of Lucknow—A Ride on a Royal Elephant—The Queen-Dowager's Mosque—Navigating the Streets—A Squeeze of Elephants—The Place of Execution—The Choke—Splendor and Corruption, 214

CHAPTER XVIII.

Return to Cawnpore—An Accident—The Road to Allahabad—Sensible Pilgrims—Morning—Beauty of Allahabad—The American Missionaries—The Hindoo Festival—The Banks of the Ganges—Hindoo Devotees—Expounding the Vedas—The Place of Hair—A Pilgrim Shorn and Fleeced—The Place of Flags—Venality of the Brahmins—Story of the Contract for Grass—Junction of the Ganges and Jumna—Bathing of the Pilgrims—A Sermon—The Mission—Subterranean Temple—The Fort of Allahabad, 229

CHAPTER XIX.

Crossing the Ganges—Pilgrims Returning Home—Vagaries of the Horses—Benares—Prof. Hall—The Holy City—Its Sanctity—The Sanserit College—Novel Plan of Education—Village of Native Christians—The Streets of Benares—Sacred Bulls—Their Sacrificy and Cunning—The Golden Pagoda—Hindoo Architecture—Worship of the Lingam—Temple of the Indian Ceres—The Banks of the Ganges—Bathing Devotees—Preparations for Departure, 237

CHAPTER XX.

Moonlight on the Ganges—The Unholy River—Scenery of the Plains—Egyptian Landscapes—Basseram—Mountains near the Soane River—View of the Ford—Crossing—The Second Day's Journey—The Hills of Behar—Meeting with an Acquaintance—Wild Table-Land—Sunset—A Coolie Trick—The Aborigines of India—Triumph of the Red-haired Lady—Horse Gymnastics—The Lady Defeated—Munglepore—An Eccentric Night-Journey—The City of Burdwan—Tropical Scenery—Wrecked on the Road—A Wrathful Delay—Wrecked again—Journey by Moonlight—Another Wreck—An Insane Horse—The Hoogly River—Yet Another Accident—A Morning Parade—The End of "Garree-Dawk," 250

CHAPTER XXI.

Impressions of Calcutta—The Houses of the Residents—Public Buildings and Institutions—Colleges—Young Bengal—Museum of the Asiatic Society—The Botanic Garden—Calcutta at Sunset—Scene on the Esplanade—English Rule in India—Its Results—Its Disadvantages—Relation of the Government to the Population—Tenure of Land—Taxes—The Sepoys—Revenue of India—Public Works—Moral Changes—Social Prejudices, 262

CHAPTER XXII.

Departure from Calcutta—Descending the Hoogly River—An Accident—Kedgerree—The Songs of the Lascars—Saugor Island—The Sandheads—The Bay of Bengal—Fellow-Passengers—The Peak of Narcondan—The Andaman Islands—Approach to Penang—A Malay Garree—Beauty of the Island—Tropical Forests—A Vale of Paradise—The Summit—A Panorama—Nutmeg Orchards—The Extremity of Asia—The Malayan Archipelago—Singapore—Chinese Population—Scenery of the Island—The China Sea—Arrival at Hong-Kong, 275

CHAPTER XXIII.

Trip to Macao—Attached to the U. S. Embassy—On Board the Steam-Frigate Susquehanna—Departure from Macao—The Coast of China—The Shipwrecked Japanese—Their Address to the Commissioner—The Eastern Sea—The Archipelago of Chusan—The Mouth of the Yang-tse-Kiang—The Steamer Aground—Rumors of the Rebels—Arrival at Woosung—Entering the Woosung River—Chinese Junks—Appearance of the Country—Approach to Shanghai—Arrival, 287

CHAPTER XXIV.

The Commissioner decides to visit Nanking—Preparations for the Voyage—Departure of four Japanese—The Susquehanna leaves—Woosung—Bush Island and Tsung-Ming—We strike the Blonde Shoal—The Chinese Pilots—Escape of a Boat—Off the Shoal—Mr. Bennett's night cruise after the Beats—Unfavorable Reports—The Return—End of the Expedition—Successful Trip of the Susquehanna in the Summer of 1854, 297

CHAPTER XXV.

Life in Shanghai—The Rebels Expected—My Journal—The Fall of Nanking—The Grain Trade—Soo-Chow Threatened—Barbarities at Nanking—Rumors Concern

ing the Rebels—Capture of Lorchas—Threats towards Foreigners—Alarm of the Taou-tai—A Rebel Proclamation—Imperial Rewards and Pardons—Col. Marshall's Proclamation—Nanking Besieged by the Imperial Army—Flight from Shanghai—Sir George Bonham—Meetings of the Foreign Residents—Ransom for Shanghai—Soo-Chow not Taken—Uncertainty—Mr. Meadows at Soo-Chow—Defensive Works Commenced—Trouble with the Men of Foo-Kien—Marauders in the Country—Burning of Thieves—The Foo-Kien Grave-yard—Desertion of the City—A Rumored Battle—Death of Tien-teh—Mr. Meadows—Various Rumors—Return of the *Science*—Destruction of Chin-kiang-foo—The Excitement Subsides, . . . 301

CHAPTER XXVI.

Chinese and Foreigners at Shanghai—Situation of the City—A Chinese Promenade—Burying-Grounds—Money for the Dead—A Baby Tower—The Ningpo House—Coffins—Chinese Gypsies—A Street of the Suburbs—The City Gate—A Chinese Pawnbroker's Shop—A Temple—The Statue of Boodh—A Priest at his Devotions—Stenches of the Streets—Beggars—Shops—View of the Tea-Garden—Chinese Gamblers—An Artistic Mountebank—The Baptist Chapel—Scene from its Tower—The Hills—Fanciful Signs—Missionary Labors in China—Apathy of the People—A Chinese Residence—The Library—The City Prison—Torture of the Prisoners—A Bath House—Character of the Mongol Form—The Tutelar Deity of Shanghai—Boodh at Sunset—Kite Flying, 321

CHAPTER XXVII.

An Earthquake—Sensations it Produced—Its Effects—Additional Shocks—The Bowling Alley—Hairs in the Soil—A Shower of Sand—Visit of the Taou-tai to Col. Marshall—Chinese Visiting Cards—The Taou-tai's Appearance—Reception of the Dignitaries—A Chinese Military Review—The Soldiers and their Equipments—Their Discipline—Uncouth Weapons—Absurdity of the Parade—The Commissioner visits the Taou-tai—Reception—The Taou-tai's Residence—Chinese Refreshments—Departure, 339

CHAPTER XXVIII.

Spring at Shanghai—Appearance of the Country—Crops—National Conveyance of China—Houses of the Lower Classes—Sail on the River—The Pagoda—Village Market—Sweetmeats and Children—Showers of Cash—Chinese Horticultural Exhibition—The *Lun-wei*—Chinese Love of Monstrosity—Moral Depravity of the Race—Landscape Gardening—A Soldier and his Drill—The Cangue—Visit of the *Hermes* to Nanking—The Rebels—Their Christianity—Condition of the City—Arrival of the U. S. Steam-Frigate *Mississippi*—Commodore Perry—Col. Marshall's Chinese Dinner—Mr. Robert Fortune, 349

CHAPTER XXIX.

State of Things at Shanghai—The Sloop-of-War Plymouth—Preparations for Departure—Entering the Naval Service—Its Regulations—Procuring a Uniform—The Master's-Mates—Establishing a Mess—Departure for Japan—A Gale—Shipwrecks—Standing out to Sea—Arrival at the Great Loo-Choo Island—A Missionary—Beauty of the Harbor of Napa—The Native Authorities—Going Ashore—Jumping over a Coral Reef—Landing—The Town of Napa-Kiang—Spice—Dr. Bettelheim's Residence, 369

CHAPTER XXX.

Visit of the Regent—The Island of Loo-Choo—An Exploration of the Interior—Setting Out—Entry into the Capital—Reception—The Old Mandarin in for a Journey—His Resignation—Programme of the Exploring Trip—Espionage in Loo-Choo—His endeavors to Escape it—Taking Families by Surprise—The Landscapes of Loo-Choo—The *Cung-quâs*—Watches and Counter-Watches—Commodore Perry's Visit to Shui—Disembarkation—The Order of March—Curiosity of the Natives—March to the Capital—Reception at the Gate—A Deception Prevented—The Viceroy's Castle—The Inner Courts—The Commodore's Reception—A Tableau—Salutations and Ceremonies—Visit to the Regent's House—A State Banquet in Loo-Choo—Edibles and Beverages—Extent of the Dinner—Toasts—The Interpreter, *Ichirazichi*—Departure—Riding a Loo-Choo Pony—Return to the Squadron, . . . 879

CHAPTER XXXI.

Departure—The Bonin, or Arzobispo Isles—Death of a Chinese Opium Smoker—A Peruvian Bark—Approach to the Bonin Islands—Pilots—Entering Port Lloyd—Going Ashore—A Settler's Hut—Society on the Island—Mode of Life—An Old Inhabitant and his Mate—Productions of the Island—A Coaling Station for Steamers—Buckland Island—A Basaltic Cavern—English Claims to the Islands, . . . 889

CHAPTER XXXII.

Exploring Parties Appointed—My Part—Setting Out—Climbing the Hills—The Soil and Productions—Land-Crabs—Crossing a Ridge—A Tropical Ravine—Signs of Habitation—A Marquesan and his Household—South-Sea Pilots—The Valley—The Forest Again—Trees—Shooting a Wild Boar—The Southern Coast—A Precipice—Dangerous Climbing—A Frightful Ravine—Descending the Precipices—South-East Bay—The Nom-Camp—Ascent of the Ravine—The Party beginning to Fag—The Valley Again—A Slippery Ascent—A Man Lost—Firing Signals—Return to the Vessel, . . . 396

CHAPTER XXXIII.

Return to Loo-Choo—Mails—Departure for Japan—The Island of Ohosima—The Japanese Coast—The Headland of Idzu—Precautionary Measures—Cape Sagami—The Bay of Yedo—Approach to Uraga—A Hint—The Squadron Halts—Japanese Boats—A Talk at the Gangway—The Vice Governor of Uraga—His Reception—The Boats Repulsed—Japanese Boatmen—Watch-fires—Yezaimon, Governor of Uraga—Consultations—An Express to Yedo—The Emperor appoints a Commissioner—Permission to Land—Skillful Negotiations—Scenery of the Bay—The Fortifications—The Peak of Fusi-Yamma—Canvas Defences—A Surveying Party—Sounding along Shore—Forts and Soldiers—Threatened Collision—A Second Survey—A Mirage—Warlike Appearances—Lieut. Bent's Encounter with Forty-five Japanese Boats—Result of the Survey, . . . 410

CHAPTER XXXIV.

The Day of Landing—Preparations on Shore—The Right of Gori-hama—Japanese Military Display—Arrival of the Governors—Their Official Dresses—Precautions on Board—The Procession of Boats—An Inspiring Scene—The Landing—Numbers

of the Escort—The Japanese Troops—The Commodore's Landing—March to the House of Reception—Japanese Body-Guard—The Hall of Audience—Two Japanese Princes—Delivery of the President's Letter—An Official Conversation—Return to the Squadron, 424

CHAPTER XXXV.

The Japanese Officers on Board—Their Manners—Their Dislike to the Chinese—Their Sworn—Their Curiosity—Passing up the Bay—Beauty of the Scenery—"Perry's Bay"—Junks bound for Yedo—Another Visit—Further Surveys—The Natives—An Excursion towards Yedo—Extent and Capacity of the Upper Bay—Change of Anchorage—The Surveys Proceed—Interchange of Presents—A Dilemma—Final Satisfaction—Farewell of the Japanese Officials—Commodore Perry's Diplomacy—Departure from Japan—A Multitude of Boats—Oosima—The Islands off the Bay—Discoveries—Formation of the Group—We Sail for Ohosima—A Typhoon—Return to Loo-Choo—The Second Visit to Japan, 438

CHAPTER XXXVI.

Negotiations with the New Regent—Capt. Hall's Account of Loo-Choo—Napoleon's Incredulity—Its Correctness—Verification of the Japanese Chronicle—The Three Castles—The Government of Loo-Choo—Provisions for the Squadron—Duplicity of the Officials—The Markets Deserted—The Spies—The Telegraph and Daguerreotype in Loo-Choo—Demands of Commodore Perry—The Regent's Reply—The Commodore successful—A Scene in the Market-place—Chase and Capture of a Spy—The Coal Depot—Exhibition of Loo-Choo Industry—National Contrasts—Steamship Line across the Pacific, 445

CHAPTER XXXVII.

Return to Hong Kong—End of the Cruise—Experience of Naval Life—My Duties on Board—"General Quarters"—Our Crew—Decline of Naval Discipline—False System of Promotion—Delays—What is Needed—Harmony of Government at Sea—The Abolition of Corporal Punishment—Want of an Efficient Substitute—Government on Sea and Land—Mr. Kennedy's Proposal for Registered Seamen—Effect of Long Cruises—Need of Small Vessels in Chinese Waters, 454

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Impressions of Hong-Kong—A Man Drowned at Midnight—Hong-Kong from the Water—The town of Victoria—The Island of Hong-Kong—The Hong-Kong Fever—Hospitality of Foreign Residents in China—Their Princely Style of Living—Rigid Social Etiquette—Balls—Tropical Privileges—The Anglo-Saxon Abroad, 466

CHAPTER XXXIX.

Movements of the Squadron—Cumsingmoon—The Naval Hospital at Macao—Quiet Life—A Chinese Beggar—The Band—The Memories of Macao—Situation of the Town—Its Appearance—Desertion of the Place—Its Tropical Gardens—The Camp—The Temple of Wang Hyá—Anecdote of Cushing—Society in Macao—Chinese All-Souls' Day—Discordant Noises—The Grotto of Camoëns—The Casa Gardens—The Grotto at Daybreak—French Irreverence—Preparations to Return Home—Leaving the Naval Service—Trips to Hong-Kong and Cumsingmoon, 474

CHAPTER XL

Increase of the Squadron—Disposition of the Vessels—Passage to Canton—First View of the City—The Foreign Factories—Old and New China Streets—Talking "Pigeon English"—The Great Temple of Honan—Ceremonies of the Priests—Sacred Books and Pigs—The Lotus Blossom—Dwellings of the Priests—A Retired Abbot—Opium Smoking in China—The Opium-Pipe—Flavor and Fascination of the Drug—Its Effects—A Walk around Canton—The Walls—Entering the City—Foreign Devils—A Tea-House—Beyond the Suburbs—A Chinese Panorama—The Feast of Lanterns—Dr. Parker's Hospital—The Eve of Departure, . . . 456

CHAPTER XLI

Farewell to China—Whampoa—A Musical Good-Bye—The Bogue Forts—The Last Link—The China Sea—Life on the Sea—Serpent—The Straits of Mindoro—Picturesque Islands—Calm Sailing—Moonlight in the Tropics—"Summer Isles of Eden"—The Sooloo Sea—The Cagayanes Islands—Straits of Basilan—Mindanao—A Native Proa—The Sea of Celebes—Entering the Straits of Macassar—Crossing the Equator—Off Celebes—Lazy Life—The Java Sea—Passing the Thousand Islands—Approach to the Straits of Sunda, 506

CHAPTER XLII.

Entering the Straits of Sunda—Malay Boats—The Mangosteen—Bargaining with the Natives—Scenery of the Straits—Angier—Passing the Straits—Death on Board—The Indian Ocean—A Submarine Earthquake—A Tropical Sunset—A Fatal Escape—The Trade Wind—Mozambique Channel—The Coast of Africa—Doubting the Cape—Southern Constellations—Distant View of Table Mountain—On the Atlantic—The Trades again—Restoration—A Slaver, 511

CHAPTER XLIII.

Proposed Call at St. Helena—First View of the Island—Its Cliffs—Approach to Jamestown—View from the Anchorage—Landing—The Town and Ravine—Ascending the Gorge—Looking Down—"The Briars"—Summit of the Island—Pastoral Landscape—Sea-View—Approach to Longwood—Reception—The Billiard-Room—Scene of Napoleon's Death—His Bedroom—Desecration of Longwood—The New Residence—The Longwood Farm—The "Crown and Rose"—National Peculiarities—The Grave of Napoleon—The Old Woman's Welcome—Condition of the Grave—St. Helena Literature—The Old Woman's Admirable Story—Napoleon's Spring—Return to Jamestown—Departure from the Island, 526

CHAPTER XLIV.

Trade Weather—Phosphorescence of the Sea—Ocean Nymphs—Butterflies in Mid Ocean—The North-East Trades—A Gale off the Bermudas—Nautical Alms-Giving—The Gulf Stream—Escape from Cape Hatteras—Fair Wind—Winter Weather—The Last Day of the Voyage—Landing in New York—Retrospect, 584

INDIA, CHINA, AND JAPAN.

CHAPTER I.

THE OVERLAND ROUTE TO INDIA.

Leaving Gibraltar—Voyage up the Mediterranean—Landing at Alexandria—Distribution of Passengers—A Cloudy Day in Egypt—A Joyful Meeting—The Desert Vans—We start for Suez—Cockney Fears—The Road and Station-houses—Suez—Transfer to the India Steamers—Our Passengers and Crew—The Mountains of Moreb—Red Sea Weather and Scenery—A Glimpse of Mocha—The Straits of Bab-el-Mandeb—An Extinct Hades—The Fortress of Aden—Arrival—The Somali—Ride to the Old Town—Population of Aden—Temperature—The Fortifications—The Track of the Anglo-Saxon—Departure—Disregard of Life—Araby the Blest—Life on the Achilles—Approach to India—Land!—The Ghauts of Malabar—Arrival at Bombay.

MY passage to Bombay had been secured a month before; the ticket was in my pocket; the horses I had ridden from Granada had gone back under charge of José, my merry guide and groom; and finally, on the 27th of November, 1852, the mail steamer from Southampton to Alexandria, two days overdue, was signalled from the top of Gibraltar Rock. There was no tie to bind me to Europe: my travelling trunk was already packed, my bill paid, and the needful stock of Gibraltar cigars laid in. My face was turned eastward once

more, but I looked beyond the Orient, to those elder lands of India and Cathay, where the sun of Egypt and of Greece first rose. Long before the outward-bound passengers had finished their rambles in the Alameda. I went out the water gate of the town, and the sunset-gun found me impatiently pacing the deck of the *Haddington*.

Our voyage up the Mediterranean was a dreary one, and without any incident worthy of being recorded. There were a hundred and seventy passengers on board, and the cabins fore and aft were stowed as closely as the steerage of an emigrant ship. The raw, gusty weather we encountered, made our quarters doubly disagreeable, while, owing to the comfortable indifference of the officers, nothing was done to alleviate the annoyance. In fact, it required symptoms of incipient ship-fever, and the strong protest of a few resolute passengers, to procure for us the simple relief of a wind-sail in the cabin. The fare resembled that of the Pacific Mail Steamers, during the first year of their establishment; and the price of passage was in about the same ratio. The Peninsular and Oriental Company, like all great monopolies, is a model of meanness.

We ran along, under the lee of the Spanish Mountains, to Cape de Gatte, then crossed to the Barbary Coast, which we skirted to Cape Bon, catching now and then a rainy glimpse of the distant Atlas, touched at Malta, and after a voyage of eleven days—time enough to have crossed the Atlantic—took a pilot off Alexandria, at daybreak on the 8th of December. I looked upon the crowd of windmills on the Cape of Figs, the light-house on the island of Pharos, and Pompey's Pillar in the distance, with almost the feeling of one returning to his native land. A clear, balmy Egyptian morning welcome

us after the gales of the Mediterranean, and the anchor had not been dropped five minutes before the passengers began to make for the shore. We left our baggage in a heap upon the deck, with the assurance that we should find it again, on arriving at Suez. The Egyptian Transit Company has published very strict regulations, limiting the length, breadth, and depth of trunks and portmanteaus to be conveyed across. I scrupulously arranged my baggage according to these rules, but found, on reaching Alexandria, that nobody else had done so, and that packages of treble the prescribed dimensions were accepted and forwarded without objection. Only two cwt. are allowed free, extra baggage to India being charged at the rate of £60 (\$300) per ton. Several of my fellow-passengers paid from £10 to £20 for over-weight.

The day before our arrival, a meeting of the passengers was held, in order to decide by lot their respective places in the omnibus vans from Cairo to Suez. As each van held six persons, and there were enough of us to fill twenty-eight vans, we formed ourselves into as many parties of six each, appointing one of the number to draw. Those parties, for instance, who drew the numbers from one to ten, were sent off in the first steamer from Alexandria, and the first batch of vans from Cairo, and were obliged to wait in Suez for the more fortunate drawers of the last numbers, who thus gained a little time in the former cities. As my party had drawn one of the last vans, we had the whole day in Alexandria, which enabled us to get our letters and papers from home, refresh ourselves with a Turkish bath, and lay in a stock of choice Latakieh for the Indian part of the voyage. The hotels were filled to overflowing, more than a hundred passengers from

India having been waiting six days for our arrival. We barely succeeded in finding seats at Rey's Hotel d'Europe. The arched entrance resembled a bazaar; venders of tobacco, whips, tarbooshes, pipes, shawls, &c., thronged on all sides, and the clamor of the donkey-boys was something terrible to the uninitiated. I found a number of acquaintances among the motley multitude, most of whom not only remembered my face, but my name also, hailing me with: "Thanks be to God, O Howadji T——! you are welcome back!"

At the appointed hour, we went on board the barge, in the Mahmoudieh Canal, and were towed off by a small steamer. In the sweet, mild air of the evening, we sat on deck, watching the palm-trees by starlight, till it grew chilly and damp with the heavy night-dews. We then went below, and spread ourselves out on some bare tables and benches, until 2 A. M., when we reached Atfeh. Here a better steamer was waiting for us. The transfer was soon made, and in another hour we were breasting the current of the glorious old Nile—the river of rivers. The morning was cold and gray, and we had a dark, rainy, disagreeable day. I had never known such weather in Egypt. In fact, until an hour before sunset, when the clouds broke away, it was neither Egypt nor the Nile. The leaves of the palm-trees were all blown one way, the Fellahs lay in their huts for shelter, scarcely a boat was to be seen on the river, the camels and Bedouins vanished from the horizon of the Libyan Desert, and the dull, brown, opaque flood lost all of the mystery and solemnity of its character.

It was after dark before we reached the Barrage, at the point of the Delta. Our Arab firemen heaved the wood into their furnaces, until the chimney was red-hot, and a great mass of

scarlet flame, pouring out of the top, flapped and snapped in the wind like a Moslem banner. On we went, throwing aside the turbid waves, past the glimmering lights of Shoobra and the dim minarets of Boulak, till the ruddy glare of torches on the Transit Wharf announced the end of our voyage. Here, the passengers were obliged to give up their carpet-bags, as no baggage is allowed in the Desert vans. This matter settled, we got into the omnibus, drove up the broad avenue of acacias, and into the great square of Cairo.

I went with my friends to the Hotel d'Europe, and found my old landlord, Monsieur Nolté, as fat and obliging as ever. To my great joy, my faithful dragoman, and companion on the White Nile, Achmet, was in Cairo, and as I was obliged to leave early the next morning for Suez, I sent for him immediately. Nothing could exceed the surprise and joy of the honest Theban. We had abundance of news for each other, and old experiences to talk over, and did not separate until long after midnight. Some of my party, by rising early, rode up to the Citadel by sunrise; but I contented myself with a donkey-ride through the Ezbekiyeh, accompanied by Achmet and the little *shaytan* of a donkey-boy who served me a year before. I would have given more than I am willing to confess, for the sake of staying a month in Egypt. Cairo, in the winter, is one of the most delightful cities in the world; and the brief morning glance I had of it brought back with double force the charms of my past Oriental life.

At 8 o'clock, I bade adieu to Monsieur Nolté, and Achmet and the donkey-boy, and took my place in the allotted van. These vehicles bear a strong resemblance to a baker's cart. They are about six feet by four in size, mounted

on a single pair of wheels, and entered by a door in the rear. Each van carries six persons, so you may conceive that there is very little vacant space. The driver sits on a box in front, and an Arab assistant rides on the step behind. There are four horses to each, which are changed about every five miles. The distance to Suez—84 miles—is divided into sixteen stages, and the usual length of the journey is sixteen hours.

Our six vans, forming one "batch," as it is called, receive their respective parties, and we dash out of Cairo by the Suez gate. The morning is exquisitely mild, fair, and balmy, and the palm-groves of the Nile, on our left, never looked more beautiful. Outside of the gate there is an encampment of several hundred tents, which we take to be those of the pilgrims preparing for their journey to Mecca. Some of the party are absorbed in the Tombs of the Caliphs, and others in Abbas Pasha's white Italian palace, when, as we climb a long, sandy rise—the first step of the Desert—an eye that knows in what direction to look, sees the Pyramids looming large and blue, far away over the city. You can look at nothing else, when you have the Pyramids in your landscape, and so we watch them fade, and sink, and recede, till our horses draw up at the first station in the Desert.

Yes, this is the Desert: but the young lady who goes out to be married in India would not have thought it. The Nile Valley is still in sight behind us; but even looking toward the Red Sea, here is a broad macadamized road, filled with camels, and Arabs, and donkeys, to say nothing of our six rapid coaches; two telegraph towers on the sandy hills; and five miles before us, the station where we shall again change

horses. It is a barren, desolate country, certainly ; but it is not the Desert of one's dreams—not that silent, fiery world of tawny sand and ink-black porphyry mountains in the heart of Nubia, over which I had travelled a year before.

I was amused at seeing many of our passengers, immediately on reaching Alexandria, wind great white shawls around their hats, and hang green veils over their faces. While crossing the Desert, although the temperature was not above 70° at noon, they persisted in doing the same thing, and some of them even protected their eyes with spectacles, although there was no glare that would have made an infant wink. According to their ideas, they were in constant peril of having a sun-stroke, or catching the ophthalmia. My companions on the van were inured to an Indian sun, and so we threw aside all fears, and made merry from one side of the desert to the other. At the fourth station we stopped an hour to breakfast. Here we found a spacious two-story house, with a large dining-salon, divans, &c., and an excellent breakfast for thirty persons on the table. There were several neat bedrooms for the accommodation of persons who wish to make the journey more slowly.

The country through which we passed was low and monotonous, and we saw no mountains until we approached the Red Sea. There are three trees on the road—one large and two small ones, but no wells. At the eighth, or half-way station, we had dinner, and were allowed two hours rest. The meals were all gotten up and served by natives, the Transit Administration being a perquisite of the Pasha of Egypt. Considering that every thing has to be brought from Cairo, they were very good indeed. Opposite the Central Station, Abbas

Pasha built a large palace on the summit of a hill, where he often went to spend a few days and breathe the healthy desert air. All the supplies, of course, have to be brought from the Nile—a distance of nearly fifty miles. I approve entirely of the Pasha's taste, and should like nothing better than the use of a suite of apartments in the palace for a few months. The long white front of the building, crowning a naked range of gray hills, has a striking effect when viewed from the Suez road.

The sun set before we left the midway station. We drove on in the dark, without other incident than passing long strings of camels laden with our baggage, and the specie and mails for India. Now and then some of our teams would come to a halt in a streak of deep sand, and this would detain all the others, for the orders are very strict that the vans should keep together. There are no ascents or descents on the road worth notice. A railroad could be constructed with but moderate trouble and expense.*

An hour after midnight we reached Suez, and were at once driven to the Government Hotel, a dreary quadrangular building on the sea-shore. The rooms were all filled, of course, but we obtained a cotton quilt and part of a hard divan in the billiard-room, at the rate of a dollar apiece. All the baggage arrived during the night. Even the specie-laden camels, which left Cairo at the same time as ourselves,

* Recent mails from the East (May, 1855) announce that Said Pasha has determined to extend the Alexandria and Cairo Railroad, now nearly completed, to Suez. If the work is prosecuted with the same vigor as heretofore, the transit from Alexandria to the latter place, three years hence, will occupy but eight or ten hours.

were at Suez early the next morning. The two steamers, the Hindostan and Achilles, lay at the anchorage, three miles off but there was a smaller steamer in waiting to take us out. Our baggage, tickets, and other preliminaries, engaged all our time, and I saw nothing of Suez except the white quadrangle of the hotel, two ugly minarets, and a great quantity of mud huts. I suspect these are about as much as anybody sees. The American flag was flying from a lofty flag-staff, on account of the presence of the Hon. Humphrey Marshall, U. S. Commissioner to China, who was on board the Hindostan. I took leave of a number of good friends, who were bound to Madras, Calcutta, and China, and went on board the Achilles. The day was excessively hot and sultry, and the Captain of our steamer received a sun-stroke while on shore, from the effects of which he was confined to his berth during the whole voyage.

We weighed anchor about 10 o'clock the same evening, the Hindostan having left an hour before us. Our passengers were between seventy and eighty in number, and as the Achilles rated less than a thousand tons, we were crowded rather too much for comfort, though in all respects we fared better than we did on board the Haddington. The stewards were mostly Hindoos, the sailors the same, the cooks two Portuguese and a Chinaman, and the firemen hideous, monkey-faced negroes from Mozambique. Among the passengers were a Portuguese General, the Governor of Mozambique, a Turkish Bey, Ambassador to Yemen, and a Transylvanian, who for fifteen years was Court Physician to Runjeet Singh at Lahore, and was then bound for Cashmere and Thibet. Amid such a motley gathering of character and nationalities

there was no lack of diversion. For myself, when I drank Bombay water, ate real curry, hailed the waiter as "khit-mudgar!" and was addressed by him as "sahib!" I felt that I was already in India.

The morning showed us the shores of Egypt on the one hand, and the red mountains of the Sinaitic Peninsula on the other. The Gulf of Suez is so narrow that you have a distinct view of both shores, alike hopelessly sterile, but enchanting in outline and color. The thousand-fold shadows of those sand-stone mountains, tinted with the fairest rose, purple, and violet hues, are pencilled with the delicacy of a miniature painting. The loftier range of Horeb, which rises inland, presents a sharp, serrated outline. I tried to persuade myself that I saw the peak of Sinai, but the ship's officers insisted that it was not visible from the Gulf of Suez. In addition to the absorbing interest of the scene, the shores had a grand continental significance. Here was Africa, there Asia. Like the Bosphorus which parts Europe and Asia, or the straits of Gibraltar, where Africa confronts Europe, this part of the Red Sea possesses a grandeur beyond that which Nature gives it.

In the afternoon we passed Ras Mohammed, at the extremity of the Peninsula where the Gulf of Akaba joins that of Suez. We then lost sight of the Arabian shore, while only the higher peaks of the mountains in the deserts of Egypt and Nubia were visible. On the 13th, we entered the tropics, and each day thenceforth showed a marked increase of temperature. By the noon observation on the following day, we were in Lat. $21^{\circ} 30'$, off the port of Djidda, and not more than a hundred miles, in a straight line, from Mecca—

probably the nearest approach I shall ever make to the Holy City.

After passing St. John's Islands, off the ancient port of Berenice, we lost sight of both shores until the evening of the 16th, when Djebel Tor, or Teir, a lofty volcanic island, appeared on the left. Early the next morning we made Djebel Sogheir, and ran along close to its shores. It is about a thousand feet in height, and resembles a huge mass of cinders. Some palms were growing on the northern slope, but there was no sign of habitation. We had a violent head-wind, or rather gale, similar to those which are frequently met with off the mouth of the Gulf of California. Yet, in spite of this strong current of air, the thermometer stood at 85° on deck and 90° in the cabin. For two or three days we had a temperature of 90° to 95° . This part of the Red Sea is considered to be the hottest portion of the earth's surface. In the summer the air is like that of a furnace, and the bare red mountains glow like heaps of live coals. The steamers at that time almost invariably lose some of their stewards and firemen. Cooking is quite given up, and the panting and sweltering passengers drink claret and water and eat dry biscuits.

In the afternoon we had a glimpse of the town of Mocha about ten miles distant. It is built on low land, but a range of mountains rises in the background. With a telescope, I could plainly distinguish the white citadel, and a long line of low, flat-roofed buildings, looming through the hot vapors of the coast. The famous Mocha coffee does not grow in the vicinity of the town, but is brought from the valleys of the interior. Hodeida, further up the coast, is another port for its exportation, but the foreign trade of both these places has

been almost entirely destroyed by the rise of Aden. The coffee is taken down to the latter port in the native coasters, or by caravans from the interior, and there shipped for Europe and other parts of the world. Much of the so-called Mocha coffee, I am told, is actually grown in Abyssinia.

We now approached the Straits of Bab-el-Mandeb, the "Gate of Tears," which we passed about midnight. The passage for vessels is about three miles wide, and not at all dangerous in clear weather. The Arabian and Abyssinian shores are hilly, but not mountainous. Had not the weather been so hazy, we should have seen the lofty range of the Danakil, on the Abyssinian side. The latitude of the Straits is about $12^{\circ} 40'$, about the same which I had attained the previous winter, on the White Nile.

On the next morning we were in the Indian Ocean. The barren volcanic headlands of Arabia Felix rose on our left, point beyond point, till at last a larger and loftier mass was declared to be the Rock of Aden. The pale-green water through which we were sailing told of reefs and shoals, and the ship made a wide curve to the eastward before entering the bay. The main land of Arabia presents a level, sandy coast, with few indentations, and the Bay of Aden is formed by two narrow peninsulas which project from it at right angles, their extremities shooting up suddenly into clusters of black, ragged volcanic cones, about 1,500 feet in height. No description can give any idea of the savage sterility of these mountains. They are masses of cinders and scorix, glowing as if with still unextinguished fires, and the air around them quivers with the heat radiated from their sides. Their forms exhibit all the violence of the convulsion which created them

heaps of burned fragments, cliffs divided by deep fissures, and sharp, inaccessible cones, shooting upward like congealed flames from the rubbish of extinct craters. Some profane tourist speaks of Aden as resembling "Hell with the fires put out"—a forcible simile, but very much to the point.

The town and fortress of Aden occupy the eastern peninsula, which was obtained from the Sultan of Lahadj, in the year 1839, partly by force and partly by treaty. The sum of \$250,000 was paid to the Sultan by the East India Company, and the chieftain prudently sold what was already more than half wrested from him. Nevertheless, his son and successor did his best to have the bargain annulled, offering to refund the money. This was of course rejected, and the place was for a number of years exposed to assaults from the Arabs of Lahadj, who were violently opposed to the sale, and to the establishment of a foreign colony on the coast. In spite of all precautions, robbery and murder were constantly perpetrated in the town and camp, until the fortifications on the land-side were completed. At present, there is tolerable security inside of the walls, but no one ventures many miles into the interior, unless attended by a strong armed escort. The harbor of Aden was known to the Romans, and its importance as a point of communication with the Indies seems to have been understood by the Turks, as there are still the remains of fortifications, which were constructed in the time of Solyman the Magnificent. The rock is about six miles in length, by from two to three in breadth, and its highest point is said to be 1,800 feet above the sea.

We ran in, along the western base, until on turning a small headland, we came upon a sheltered roadstead, in which half a

dozen English colliers and a number of small Arab craft lay at anchor. Here our own anchor dropped, and the ship was presently surrounded by boats rowed by half-naked blacks, some of whom made themselves entirely so, and commenced diving and splashing in the water, in the hope of getting shillings thrown over for them to fish up. A few long, one-story white houses and some heaps of Newcastle coal were scattered over a level piece of sand, at the head of a cove, and on a slight eminence towards the sea there was a group of cane huts, built in the Robinson Crusoe style. On this eminence there is a sunken battery, barely visible from the water, but said to be strong enough to sink any hostile vessel which may attempt to enter the harbor. A few days before our arrival, a French corvette, which had been cruising in the Indian Ocean, came into Aden with her guns ready shotted and manned, in full expectation of being fired upon, her commander supposing that Louis Napoleon had commenced the invasion of England. I went ashore in a small boat, rowed by four Somali, or natives of the African coast, near Cape Guardafui. They appear to be a low variety of the Arab race, having dark brown skins, deep-set eyes, long, straight noses, and handsome, curling hair. They are less partial to mutton-fat than the tribes on the Red Sea, but their long locks, which are naturally of a glossy blue-black hue, are dyed brown, or dark red, which imparts a goat-like, satyric air to their lank, nimble figures. Their language is a very bad Arabic, which I could with difficulty understand. No sooner had we landed than we were surrounded with the owners of donkeys and horses, anxious to hire them to us for a ride to Aden. The

old town lies on the other side of the Peninsula, and is not visible from the landing-place.

I took a horse and rode off at once, followed by the attendant native. The road, which is alternately of sand and macadamized volcanic cinders, follows the curve of the bay towards the northern end of the rock, where there is a strong gate, affording the only land communication with the sandy Arabian plains beyond. The natives are here obliged to give up their arms, owing to which precaution there are now but few crimes committed, in comparison with former years. As I rode along, between the black, scorched hills, and over the blistering sand, amid the almost insupportable glare of white noonday heat, my eyes turned to seek the dazzling blue and violet-green tints of the bay with an exquisite sense of relief. After two or three miles of this travel, the road turned inland, ascending the less abrupt slopes of the hills. I came at length to an artificial pass, about forty feet deep, by twenty wide, cut through the comb of the central ridge. It was closed by a ponderous double gateway, and the wall of circumvallation crossed by an arch. An Indian sepoy stood guard at the gate as I passed through. The road was filled with Arabs from the interior, bringing camel-loads of their produce to market, and with the mongrel natives of the African coast. Among the latter I readily distinguished the natives of Adel, the country lying south of Abyssinia. Major Harris, in his "Highlands of Ethiopia," calls them the "mild-eyed Adaël," and truly the expression of their features is feminine in its mildness and gentleness. They, as well as the natives of Aden, speak Arabic substituting only the Hindoostanee word "*sahib*" (master,) for the "*Howadji*" of Egypt.

Beyond the pass, the town of Aden came into view. It lies in a circular sandy basin, almost enclosed by black mountains of volcanic cinder. The buildings, which are spacious huts of wood, cane or mud, one story in height, are scattered over an extent of three quarters of a mile. The dry bed of a torrent which divides the town, proves that it sometimes rains at Aden, although I was informed that a heavy fall of rain does not occur more than once or twice a year. A new mosque, a small Christian Church, and a tall tower (built, I believe, for an observatory), were the only objects which distinguished themselves amid the mass of huts. There were two or three feeble attempts at cultivating small square yards of ground, and these pigmy specks of green gave life and cheerfulness to a scene which would otherwise have been depressing from its utter desolation. The only water on the peninsula is brackish and disagreeable, and is rarely used in an unmixed state. The Arabs bring a better kind from the opposite headland, for which they are paid at the rate of \$1.50 per 100 gallons. The only things the place affords are fish and oysters; all other supplies must be imported. There are a number of shops in the town, kept by Hindoo merchants, and there for the first time I saw the Parsee, or Fire-Worshipper, wearing the high chintz mitre which is peculiar to his sect.

I made the tour of the airy bamboo huts on the beach, where the 78th Regiment was quartered. The soldiers were lounging lazily in the shade, for since the wall of defence has been finished, their duties are very light. Some of the officers had brought their families with them, so that there was a small English community. The temperature of Aden ranges generally from 80° to 90°, with a maximum of 98°, and a

minimum of 75° , being more equable than almost any other climate in the world. As there is no miasma from vegetable matter, it is considered healthy. An officer who had been stationed there more than four years, informed me that out of ninety men whom he brought with him, he had only lost two.

I rode through the bazaar in the native part of the town. The principal commodities were coarse cotton stuffs, dates, sugar, spices, and bad tobacco. I dismounted at a small coffee shop, but both the coffee and the narghileh were so intolerably bad that I gave them to the nearest native. A large crowd of Arabs collected around me, and the most intelligent of them asked me the news from Damascus and Stamboul. They said there had recently been war in Yemen, and that Shekh Hos sayn was then at the head of the tribes. Leaving the town, I returned to the western side of the peninsula and visited the Turkish Wall, which is the main defence of the place, on the land side. The Rock of Aden resembles that of Gibraltar in being attached to the main land by a narrow strip of sand, but instead of presenting an unbroken line of precipice, as at the latter place, the hills form a crescent, with the concave side toward the north. The points of this crescent are connected by a powerful wall, further protected by a deep moat and sloping glacis, and the heights at each end are crowned with batteries. Immense sums have been expended on these fortifications, which, though far from being completed, now afford perfect security against foes by land.

The value of Aden as a naval station has been much exaggerated. It has been called the "Gibraltar of the East," perhaps with reason, since, like Gibraltar, it can be of no use without a fleet. At present it could scarcely be called im-

pregnable, but were it so, might readily be starved into capitulation, as Gibraltar might be, if England should lose her naval supremacy. Nevertheless, as a necessary station on the Overland Route, its possession is of the utmost importance to England, and it belongs to her *geographically*, as the Fillibusters say. The fortifications are most admirably planned. The skill and genius exhibited in their design impressed me far more than the massive strength of Gibraltar. I never felt more forcibly the power of that civilization which follows the Anglo-Saxon race in all its conquests, and takes root in whatever corner of the earth that race sets its foot. Here, on the farthest Arabian shore, facing the most savage and inhospitable regions of Africa, were Law, Order, Security, Freedom of Conscience and of Speech, and all the material advantages which are inseparable from these. Herein consists the true power and grandeur of the race, and the assurance of its final supremacy.

The population of Aden, which was little more than 1,000 at the time it was acquired by England, now amounts to upwards of 20,000. It has almost ruined Mocha and the other Arabian ports on the Red Sea, having usurped the greater part of their commerce. It is a free port, and the native merchants are but too willing to transfer their trade to it, thereby escaping the burdensome and indiscriminate duties exacted by the Turkish Government. The resident merchants in Mocha, Hodeida and Djidda have petitioned the East India Company to establish Customs at Aden, but without effect.

The Achilles took on board three hundred tons of coal, and at half-past nine in the evening fired her signal gun for the passengers to come off. One young lady, however, re

mained nearly two hours longer, the steamer waiting solely on her account. Less consideration was shown to a luckless native, who had fallen asleep in one of the boats and was not observed until we were under way. He was immediately thrown overboard in spite of his entreaties, and left to take his chance of reaching the shore, which was half a mile distant. There was a collier lying about a hundred yards off, but he would not be able to get on board of her so late at night, and the forcing of him into the sea, under the circumstances showed a most criminal disregard of human life.

On the following day, some mountains about a hundred miles east of Aden were in sight; they were our last view of Araby the Blest. We were from fifteen to twenty miles distant from the shore, and the loveliest tints of violet, lilac and rose-color concealed its sterility. After leaving the Red Sea, the temperature became a few degrees cooler, the thermometer showing 80° at night, and 85° to 87° at noon. The Indian Ocean was calm and peaceful, the violence of the north-east monsoon being over, so that, although it blew in our faces, it only served to freshen our nights and noons. We took our meals under an awning on deck, and some of the passengers preferred sleeping there. Where this open-air life is possible at sea, a long voyage is endurable—otherwise, rather a thousand miles on land, than a hundred on the waters.

Our fare was so much better than that on board the Had dington, that we did not complain much. The coffee and tea, however, gave evidence of astonishing skill, for I never imagined it possible that these beverages could be so badly made. The passengers were often quite unable to distinguish one from the other. On the other hand we had capital bread, the

baker being a Chinaman, who kept secret his manner of preparing it. The curry was genuine, and would have compensated for many deficiencies in other respects. On Christmas Day we had a handsome banquet on deck, and turkey was liberally dispensed to all on board. The evening was spent in festivities, the passengers dancing polkas on the quarter-deck, the wild Africans yelling and clapping hands amid-ships, and the sailors performing hornpipes on the forecastle.

The distance from Aden to Bombay is 1,664 miles, and after having been at sea nine days, with a prospect of getting out of coal, we grew at last somewhat impatient. Finally, on the morning of the 27th of December—precisely a month after I embarked at Gibraltar—the cessation of the monsoon, the sultriness of the air, the appearance of the clouds, and the arrival of a dove on board, denoted the proximity of land. I have rarely approached any country with a keener interest. Scarce Vasco de Gama himself, after weathering the Cape of Storms, could have watched for the shores of India with more excited anticipation. That vision of gorgeous Ind, the Empress far away in the empurpled East, throned on the best grandeurs of History and canopied by sublime tradition, was about to be confirmed, or displaced for ever. Near at hand, close behind the blue sea-horizon, lay that which would either heighten the fascination of her name, or make it thenceforth but an empty sound to the ear of Fancy.

Therefore, in spite of the breathless heat, I keep watch from one of the paddle-boxes. At noon there is a cry of "Land!" from the foremast, and in a short time the tops of mountains are faintly discernible on the horizon. These are the Western Ghauts, which extend along the Malabar Coast.

from Cape Comorin to Surat. The island of Salsette, north of Bombay, next rises, and ere long we distinguish the light-house, at the entrance of the harbor. A considerable extent of coast, north and south, is visible—the mountains picturesque and beautiful in their forms, and exhibiting, in their drapery of forests, a marked contrast to the desert hills of Arabia, which we have last seen. We are now near enough to distinguish the city, the dwellings of the residents on Malabar Hill, and the groves of cocoa-nut and date trees which cover the island. The sea swarms with fishing-boats, and our native pilot is already on board. We are signalled from the light-house, and being five days behind our time, are no doubt anxiously looked for.

The Bay opens magnificently as we advance. It lies between the islands of Bombay and Salsette and the mainland, and must be fifteen or twenty miles in length. Both shores are mountainous and thickly covered with the palmy growths of the tropics. All is confusion on board, and I also must prepare to set foot on the land of Brahma, Vishnu and Shiva.

CHAPTER II.

IMPRESSIONS OF BOMBAY.

A Foretaste of India—Entering Bombay Harbor—I Reach the Shore—My First Ride in a Palanquin—Mr. Pallanjee's Hotel—Appearance of Bombay—Its Situation—The First Indian Railroad—English Hospitality—American Consuls and Residents—The Parsees—Sir Jamsetjee Jeejeebhoy—His Family and Residence—Parsee Faith and Ceremonies—Bridal Processions—A Drive to Malabar Hill—Tropical Gardens—Tax on Palm-Trees—A Hindoo Temple—The Jeejeebhoy Hospital—Dr. Bhawoo Dajee.

BEFORE reaching Bombay, I had a slight foreshadowing of Indian life. The servants on the steamer being all Indians, and the passengers mostly belonging to the East India service, many peculiarities of every-day life were already familiar to me. I had mastered the mysteries of curry; I learned to say "tiffin" instead of "lunch;" I became accustomed to being addressed as "sahib," and even ventured so far into Hindustani, as to call out boldly at table: "*pani do*!" (give me water) or: "*saf basan lao*!" (bring a clean plate). Thus the first bloom of the new land was lost to me—all those nameless slight peculiarities which surround you with an enchanted circle when you first plunge yourself into another climate and another race. Nevertheless, there was enough

left to make my landing on Indian soil a circumstance of no ordinary character.

We came slowly up the splendid bay, until within half a mile of the town. The shores being low, nothing but an array of brown tiled roofs, and a small Gothic spire, was visible behind the crowd of vessels at anchor. On the other hand, however, the islands of Elephanta and Panwell, and the ranges of the Mahratta Ghauts, were gorgeously lighted up by the evening sun. But little time was allowed for admiring them; the anchor dropped, and a fleet of boats, conveying anxious friends and relatives, gathered about us. The deck was covered with pyramids of baggage, all was noise and confusion, here shouts of joy and there weeping, here meeting and there parting, many scenes of the drama of life enacted at the same moment. Finding myself left wholly to my own resources, I set about extricating myself from the bewilderment, and accepting the first native who addressed me, I embarked for the shore before the other passengers had thought of leaving. "Rupees," said the master of the boat, holding up three of his fingers. "*Ek*," (one) I answered. Up went two fingers. "*Ek*," again; and so I went ashore for one. We came to a stone pier, with a long flight of steps leading down to the water. The top of it was thronged with natives in white dresses and red turbans. Among them were the runners of the hotels, and I soon found the one I wanted. At a small customs office on the pier, my baggage was passed unexamined, on my declaring that I had but two pounds of Turkish tobacco. A line of cabs, buggies and palanquins with their bearers was drawn up on the pier, and in order to be as Indian as possible, I took one of the latter.

It was not a pleasant sensation to lie at full length in a cushioned box, and impose one's whole weight (and I am by no means a feather) upon the shoulders of four men. It is a conveyance invented by Despotism, when men's necks were footstools, and men's heads playthings. I have never yet been able to get into it without a feeling of reluctance, as if I were inflicting an injury on my bearers. Why should they groan and stagger under my weight, when I have legs of my own?—and yet, I warrant you, nothing would please them less than for me to use those legs. They wear pads on the shoulders, on which rests the pole to which the palanquin is suspended, and go forward at a slow, sliding trot, scarcely bending their knees or lifting their feet from the ground. The motion is agreeable, yet as you are obliged to lie on your back, you have a very imperfect view of the objects you pass. You can travel from one end of India to another in this style, but it is an expensive and unsatisfactory conveyance, and I made as little use of it as possible, in my subsequent journeys.

As I was borne along, I saw, through the corners of my eyes, that we passed over a moat and through a heavy stone gateway. I then saw the bottoms of a row of fluted Grecian pillars—a church, as I afterwards found—then shops, very much in the European style, except that turbaned Hindoos and mitred Parsees stood in the doors, and finally my bearers came to a halt in a wooden verandah, where I was received by Mr. Pallanjee, the host of the British Hotel. I was ushered up lofty flights of wooden steps to the third story and installed in a small room, overlooking a wide prospect of tiled roofs, graced here and there with a cocoa-nut or brab palm. The partitions to the rooms did not reach the ceiling; there

were no glass windows, but merely blinds, and every breeze that came, swept through the whole house. The servants were mostly Portuguese, from Goa, but as India is especially the country of servant and master, every person is expected to have one for his own use. I chose a tall Hindoo, with one red streak and two white ones (the signs of caste) on his forehead, who, for half a rupee daily, performed the duties of guide, interpreter, messenger and valet de chambre. Nothing can exceed the respect shown to Europeans by the native servants. They go far beyond the Arab and Turkish domestics of the East, or even the slaves in Egypt. No Russian serf could have a greater reverence for his lord. As a natural consequence of this, they are noted for their fidelity; the ayahs, or nurses, are said to be the best in the world.

Bombay, as a city, presents few points of interest to a traveller. It is wholly of modern growth, and more than half European in its appearance. It is divided into two parts—the Fort, as it is called, being enclosed within the old Portuguese fortifications and surrounded by a moat. It is about a mile in length, extending along the shore of the bay. Outside of the moat is a broad esplanade, beyond which, on the northern side, a new city has grown up. The fortifications are useless as a means of defence, the water of the moat breeds mosquitos and fevers, and I do not understand why the walls should not have been levelled, long since. The city within the Fort is crowded to excess. Many of the streets are narrow, dark and dirty, and as the houses are frequently of wood, the place is exposed to danger from fire. The population and trade of Bombay have increased so much within the last few years, that this keeping up of old defences is a great

inconvenience. The English the old practices preserved, that at one particular gate, where there was a powder magazine twenty years ago, no person is permitted to smoke. Southward of the Fort is a tongue of land—formerly the island of Colaba but now connected by a causeway—on which stands the light house. To the north-west, beyond the city, rises Malabar Hill, a long, low height, looking upon the open ocean, and completely covered with the gardens and country-houses of the native and European merchants.

The mainland is distant from Bombay about fifteen miles, across the bay. Steamers run daily to Panwell, whence there is a mail-coach to Poonah, the old Mahratta capital, about seventy miles distant. Northward of the Island of Bombay, lies the large Island of Salsette, which is connected with it by two causeways, and Salsette has lately been united to the mainland by a bridge, the strait, at the northern point of the island, being less than half a mile wide. This bridge was built by the Railroad Company, who have already finished thirty-five miles of the great road which is to connect Bombay and Calcutta. The rails were laid as far as Tanna at the time of my visit, and the trains commenced running shortly afterwards. The engineers were occupied in locating that part of the line which crosses the Ghauts, and which is the most difficult and expensive portion of the road. The East India Company guarantees 5 per cent. annually on the stock, for the period of twenty years, owing to which encouragement, (with out which, indeed, the undertaking were impossible,) shares were at a premium.

During my brief stay in Bombay, I made some acquaintances among the English residents, to whom I was indebted

for much cordial hospitality. The English in India are said to be the most hospitable people in the world, even to those who bring no letters of introduction. The kindness of my friends, and especially of Capt. R. Baird Smith, of the Bengal Engineers, supplied me with letters for all the principal towns in the interior, so that I had double assurance of a friendly reception. There were no American merchants in Bombay at the time, nor even a Consul. Appointments had been made, and Consuls had gone out, but none of them found the profits of the office equal to its expenses. The last one had appointed Mr. Dossabhoj Merwanjee, one of the principal Parsee merchants, his agent, but the latter had no authority to act in a Consular capacity. The house of Dossabhoj Merwanjee & Co., however, is actively engaged in American trade, most of the vessels which come out from our ports being consigned to it. I was indebted to the members of the firm for much kindness. The only American residents were some missionaries, who have established a school and church, and a Boston ice merchant, who was a man of some importance in such a climate. The ice was preserved in a large stone rotunda, and sold at the rate of four annas (12 cents) the pound. The consumption is increasing, much use of it being now made by the physicians, and with the best effect.

My good fortune in making the acquaintance of Dossabhoj Merwanjee, and other members of the celebrated Lowjee Family, to which he belongs, gave me some insight into native society here—an imperfect experience, it is true, but enough to satisfy me that in few of the English works on India which I have read, has justice been done to the character of the native population. The Parsees, especially, form a com-

munity distinguished for its intelligence, enterprise and public spirit. It would be no exaggeration to say that more than half the wealth of Bombay is in the hands of this class. Sir Jamsetjee Jeejeebhoy, the Parsee knight, presents one of the most striking examples of commercial success to be found in the history of any country. This gentleman, whose splendid benevolence has imperishably connected his name with his native city, was the architect of his own fortune. By prudence, economy and intelligence he rose from one success to another, till at present his fortune is estimated at three crores of rupees (\$15,000,000.) He has given away in charities of various kinds upwards of \$2,000,000, and scarcely a day passes without recording some further evidence of his generosity. Among other works which owe their existence to him—and for which he was knighted by the Queen, being the first native who ever received that distinction—are the Hospital which bears his name, the Causeway from Bombay Island to Salsette (called Lady Jamsetjee's Causeway), and the Aqueduct for supplying the city of Poonah with water. I had a glimpse of him one evening, as his carriage passed me in the street: he was then verging upon his eightieth year, and very infirm. His eldest son, Cursetjee, inherits his enterprise and boldness, and possesses a large fortune of his own making. Another of his sons has distinguished himself as a Persian scholar, and has published a work on the Era of Zoroaster.

Dr. Bhawoo Dajee, a distinguished Hindoo physician kindly accompanied me to Sir Jamsetjee's town residence, a large and elegant mansion within the fort. The old gentleman was absent, but we were received by his son Sorabiee.

who inquired after Mr Charles Norton, of Cambridge, and showed me a *North American Review*, containing Mr N.'s biography of Sir Jamsetjee. The residence is very elegantly furnished, in a style combining European comfort with Oriental display. Portraits of the different members of the family occupied the walls, and in the centre of the principal saloon stood a splendid testimonial, in wrought silver, three feet high, presented to Sir Jamsetjee by three of the Bombay merchants.

The Parsees settled on the Malabar Coast about eight centuries ago, after their expulsion from Persia. They are as is well known, followers of Zoroaster, recognizing one Good and one Evil Principle, who contend for the mastery of the Universe. They worship the sun, as the representative of God, fire in all its forms, and the sea. Their temples contain no images, but only the sacred fire, and though they have fixed days for the performance of various rites, they repeat their prayers every morning, soon after sunrise. The dead are neither buried nor burned, but exposed to the air within a walled enclosure, on the summit of a hill. The bodies of the rich are protected by a wire screen, until wasted away, but those of the poor are soon devoured by birds of prey. The children are generally married at from two to five years of age, and brought up together, until of a proper age to assume the duties of married life. Most of the marriages are celebrated in the winter season, and the streets continually resounded with the music of the bridal processions. First came a string of palanquins and carriages, filled with children of both sexes—and very beautiful are the Parsee children—clad in silk bespangled with gold, and with pearl and emerald ornaments in their ears. Then a band of native musicians,

generally playing "Lucy Long," or "Carry me back," &c. after them the bridal dowry, covered with massive extinguishers of silver, and the procession was always closed by a concourse of women, whose loose floating mantles of scarlet crimson, orange, yellow and purple silk, gleamed in the sun,

"Like tulip beds, of different shape and dyes,
Bending beneath the invisible west-wind's sighs."

My friend Cursetjee Merwanjee, accompanied me one afternoon in a drive around the environs of Bombay. After passing the esplanade, which is thickly dotted with the tents of the military and the bamboo cottages of the officers, we entered the outer town, inhabited entirely by the natives. The houses are two or three stories in height, with open wooden verandahs in front, many of which have a dark, mellow old look, from the curiously carved posts and railings of black wood which adorn them. Mixed with the houses are groups of the beautiful cocoa-palm, which rise above the roofs and hang their feathery crowns over the crowded highway. Outside of the town hall is shade and the splendor of tropical bloom. The roads are admirable, and we rolled smoothly along in the cool twilight of embowered cocoa, brab and date palms, between whose pillared trunks the afternoon sun poured streams of broad golden light. The crimson sagittaria flaunted its flame-like leaves on the terraces; a variety of the acacia hung thick with milky, pendulous blossoms, and every gateway disclosed an avenue of urns leading up to the verandah of some suburban palace, all overladen with gorgeous southern flowers. We rode thus for miles around and over Malabar Hill, and along the shores of the Indian Ocean.

until the hills of Salsette, empurpled by the sunset, shone in the distance like the mountains of fairy land.

I had thought the Government of Egypt despotic, for taxing the poor Nubias a piastre and a-half ($7\frac{1}{2}$ cents) annually for each of their date-trees, but the East India Company exacts from one to three rupees (50 cents to \$1.50) on each tree according to its quality. As the principal produce of the trees is *tari*, a kind of palm wine, used only by the natives, such a tax appeared enormous, and gave color to what I had already heard, that the resources of the country are mercilessly drained by the Company, for the purpose of carrying out its expensive system of annexation, and at the same time paying the regular yearly dividend to the stockholders. However, I had determined, on entering India, to clear my mind of all preconceived opinions, and to judge of the effects of British rule as impartially as possible. I shall therefore draw no conclusion at present from this single instance of oppression.

In the course of our excursion we visited a Hindoo Temple on the western shore of the island. It is dedicated to the five principal divinities, each of whom has his separate shrine. We were not permitted to go further than the doors, but the attendants removed the hangings and showed us the figures of the gods. Their names were in the Mahratta language, and I do not remember the Sanscrit appellation of any except Mahadeo. The temple occupied the summit of a small hill, and was approached by ghauts, or flights of steps, of hewn stone. Near it there was a much older shrine, with an image in a dark recess. A tiger, rudely sculptured, sat in the outer porch, facing it. Several bells hung from the roof, and each

of the natives who accompanied us rang one of these, both on passing in, and out.

Dr. Bhawoo Dajee took me to visit the Jamsetjee Jeejeebhoy Hospital, the name of which declares its founder. It is a one-story stone building, in the Gothic style, and divided into a number of wards, where the destitute Christian, Jewish, Hindoo, Parsee, or Mahometan invalid is taken in and well cared for. There were about three hundred patients at the time of my visit. The hospital is very clean, kept in excellent order, and the patients appeared to be enjoying as much comfort as was possible, in their condition. Opposite the hospital is the Grant Medical College, an excellent institution, which was then attended by about thirty native students. Bhawoo Dajee himself is a graduate of this College, where he received the gold medal, and was besides awarded a prize of six hundred rupees for an essay on Infanticide. As a physician and surgeon he is among the first of his class in Bombay, and in that refinement and liberality which distinguishes the gentleman and the scholar, he would be a noted man any where. I esteem it a particular good fortune which brought me to his acquaintance.

CHAPTER III.

THE CAVE-TEMPLES OF ELEPHANTA.

Hindoo and Egyptian Antiquities—The Hindoo Faith—The Trinity—A Trip to Elephanta—Scenery of the Bay—Landing on the Island—Front View of the Cave Temple—Portuguese Vandalism—The Colossal Trinity—The Head of Brahma—Vishnu—Shiva—Remarkable Individuality of the Heads—The Guardians of the Shrine—The Columns of Elephanta—Their Type in Nature—Intrinsic Dignity of all Religions—Respect for the Ancient Faiths—The Smaller Chambers of the Temple—The Shrine of the Sterile—Tamarind Trees—Smaller Cave-Temples—Return to Bombay Island—Sunset in the Botanic Garden.

WHILE in Bombay, I took a step further back into the past, than ever in all my previous experience. In Egypt, you are brought face to face with periods so remote, that they lie more than half within the realm of Fable; yet there the groping antiquarian has pierced the mystery, and leads you down from dynasty to dynasty, on the crumbling steps of hieroglyphic lore. But in India,—the cradle, as many believe, of the Human Race—we have no such helps, and while we gaze upon the tokens of a faith which was no doubt, pre-existent to that of the Pharaohs, science sits down baffled and leaves us to wander in the dark. No Wilkinson or Champollion writes on the altars of the gods: "B. C.—so and so much." The whole backward vista of Time is thrown open, and we are

free to retrace the ages, even to the days when there were giants. I no longer marvel at any of the ancient faiths; I only wonder that those vast, strange and gorgeous systems of mythology ever should have disappeared from the religions of the world, while such types of them remain in existence.

The Hindoo faith, in its original and pure form, was a consistent monotheism, and no doubt is still so understood by the more intellectual of its professors. The parent Deity Brehm, was an invisible and Omnipotent God, the maker of Heaven and Earth, and like the Divinity of the Buddhists, too great for mortal comprehension. The three deities who sprang from him may be regarded rather as personifications of his attributes than as distinct personalities. These deities, who form the *Trimurti*, or Hindoo Trinity, are Brahma, the Creator, Vishnu, the Preserver, and Shiva, the Destroyer. Among the emblems of the latter is a new-born infant, showing that Life is continually reproduced from Death. From these three spring a host of inferior deities, who, with their progeny, amount to the number of thirty-three millions, of whom three millions are evil, and the remainder good. Here the preponderance of Good over Evil in the government of the world, and consequently the beneficence of the ruling Deity, is strikingly acknowledged. The original faith has greatly degenerated, as all the old religions have, and among the ignorant millions exists only in the most extraordinary superstitions and the grossest forms of idolatry; but no one can deny the simple grandeur of its first conception.

However, as I am a traveler, and not a theologian, let me return to the subject, which is my visit to the Cave-temples of Elephanta. These celebrated remains are upon the Island

of Elephanta, in the bay, and about seven miles distant from Bombay. I was accompanied by the captain of an American bark. We engaged a bunder-boat, a craft with a small cabin, something like the *kangia* of the Nile, embarked at the Apollo pier, and went up the bay with the flood tide. We passed the fort and floated along the shore as far as Mazagaun, where the wind favored us for a run out to the island. The scenery of the bay is beautiful, the different islands rising from the water in bold hills covered with vegetation, while the peaks of the Malabar Ghauts cut their sharp outlines against the sky, on the opposite side. Butcher's Island, which lies between Bombay and Elephanta, is comparatively low and flat, and has a barren appearance, but it contains a number of European bungalows, and seems to be a favorite place of residence. Elephanta, on the contrary, which is about a mile in length, is lofty, and covered with palm and tamarind trees. Its form is very beautiful, the summit being divided into two peaks of unequal height.

The water is shallow on the western side, and as we approached several natives appeared on the beach, who waded out two by two, and carried us ashore on their shoulders. A well-worn foot-path pointed out the way up the hill, and in a few minutes we stood on the little terrace between the two peaks, and in front of the temple. The house of the sergeant who keeps guard over it still intervened between us and the entrance, and before passing it I stood for some time looking across to Bombay and Salsette, enchanted with the beauty of the prospect before me. More than half the charm, I found, lay in the rich, tropical foliage of the foreground.

Turning, I passed around the screen of some banana trees

and under the boughs of a large tamarind. The original entrance to the temple is destroyed, so that it is impossible to tell whether there was a solid front and doorway, as in the Egyptian rock-temples, or whether the whole interior stood open as now. The front view of Elephanta is very picturesque. The rock is draped with luxuriant foliage and wild vines, brilliant with many-colored blossoms, heightening the mysterious gloom of the pillared hall below, at the farthest extremity of which the eye dimly discerns the colossal outlines of the tri-formed god of the temple. The chambers on each side of the grand hall are open to the day, so that all its sculptures can be examined without the aid of torches. The rows of rock-hewn pillars which support the roof, are surmounted by heavy architraves, from which hang the capitals and shattered fragments of some whose bases have been entirely broken away. The Portuguese, in their zeal for destroying heathen idols, planted cannon before the entrance of the cave, and destroyed many of the columns and sculptured panels, but the faces of the colossal Trinity have escaped mutilation.

This, the *Trimurti*, is a grand and imposing piece of sculpture, not unworthy of the best period of Egyptian art. It reminded me of the colossal figures at Abou-Simbel, though with less of serene grace and beauty. It is a triple bust, and with the richly-adorned mitres that crown the heads, rises to the height of twelve feet. The central head, which fronts the entrance, is that of Brahma, the Creator, whose large calm features, are settled in the repose of conscious power as if creation were to him merely an action of the will, and not an effort. On his right hand is Vishnu, the Preserver, re

presented in profile. His features are soft and feminine, full of mildness and benignity, and are almost Grecian in their outlines, except the under lip, which is remarkably thick and full. The hair falls in ordered ringlets from under a cap something between a helmet and a mitre. The right arm which is much mutilated, is lifted to the shoulder, and from the half-closed hand droops a lotus-blossom. The third member of the Trinity, the terrible Shiva, the Destroyer, is on the left of Brahma, and, like Vishnu, his head is turned so as to present the profile. His features are totally different from the other two. His forehead is stern, ridged at the eyebrows his nose strongly aquiline, and his lips slightly parted, so as to show his teeth set, with an expression of fierce cruelty and malignity. A cobra twists around his arm and hand, which grasps the snake by the neck and holds it on high, with hood expanded, ready to strike the deadly blow.

Nothing astonished me more, in this remarkable group, than the distinct individuality of each head. With the exception of the thick under lip, which is common to all three, the faces are those of different races. Brahma approaches the Egyptian and Vishnu the Grecian type, while Shiva is not unlike the Mephistopheles of the modern German school. The group stands in an excavated recess, or shrine, at the entrance of which, on each side, are two colossal statues. They are more rudely executed, and the faces exhibit a grosser type, the nose being broad and slightly flattened, and the lips thick and projecting. The hand holds the lotus-flower, and the eyes are closed, but the expression of the face is that of happy reverie rather than sleep. Had the temple been Buddhist, I should have said that they were meditating their final

beatific absorption into the Divine Essence. The same figures are seen in other parts of the temple, and their aspect perfectly harmonizes with the symbols introduced into the purely ornamental parts of its architecture.

This reminds me of the columns supporting the roof, which were unlike any others I had seen. The lower part is square, resting on a plinth, but at about half the height it becomes circular and fluted—or rather filleted, the compartments having a plane and not a concave surface. The capital is a flattened sphere, of nearly double the diameter of the shaft, having a narrow disc, with fluted edges, between it and the architrave. I knew these columns must have some type in Nature, and puzzled myself to find it. On visiting one of the smaller temples on the eastern side of the island, the resemblance flashed upon me at once—it was the poppy-head. The globular capital and its low, fluted crown, are copied almost without change from the plant, and these two symbols—the poppy and the lotus—with the closed eyelids and placid faces of the colossal guardians, give the whole temple an air of mystic and enchanted repose. One involuntarily walks through its dim and hushed aisles with a softer step, and speaks, if he must speak, in an undertone.

There is something in every form of religion worthy of general respect; and he who does not feel this, can neither understand nor appreciate the Art which sprang from the ancient Faiths. Our teachers of religion speak with sincere and very just horror and contempt of all forms of idolatry, yet, under pain of their anathemas, I dare assert, that he who can revile Osiris and Amun-Re, is unworthy to behold the wonders of Thebes. The Christian need not necessarily be as

iconoclast: nay more, his very faith, in its perfect charity and its boundless love, obliges him to respect the shrines where the mighty peoples of the ancient world have bowed and worshipped. Besides, there is Truth, however dim and eclipsed, behind all these outward symbols. Even the naked and savage Dinkas of Central Africa worship trees; and so do I. The Parsees worship the sun, as the greatest visible manifestation of the Deity; and I assure you, I have felt very much inclined to do the same, when He and I were alone in the Desert. But let not the reader, therefore, or because I respect the feeling of worship, when expressed in other forms than my own, think me a Pagan

The walls of the great hall of the temple of Elephanta, are divided into tablets, or compartments, each of which contains, as a central figure, the colossal statue of some god, surrounded by a host of inferior deities. Few of these have escaped the fanatical fury of the Portuguese, but sufficient remains to show the bold and masculine character of the art which produced them. The smaller figures are introduced above and at the sides of the central god, and some of the tablets have a striking resemblance to pictures of the old Italian masters, representing a saint surrounded by a cloud of cherubs. In the absence of all inscriptions, it is impossible to determine at what time the temple was excavated. The architecture, judged by its style alone, appears to be the antecedent of the Egyptian, which would then represent its perfect development, modified somewhat by being transplanted to a different soil. But I believe that most ethnographers now consider that the ancient Egyptians and Hindoos are

kindred branches of one stock, whose seat is to be looked for somewhere in Central Asia.

The side chambers of the temple are much smaller, and the walls are covered in the same manner, with sculptured tablets. Some of the figures have been recently smeared with red paint, a sign that they are still worshipped by some of the Hindoo sects. At the foot of a flight of steps which leads to the chambers on the left of the grand hall, two curious figures of dogs seated on their hind legs, which have been very lately excavated, are erected on pedestals. It requires an experienced antiquarian to tell whether they are dogs, lions, or dolphins. There are three or four small inclosed apartments resembling the adyta of the Egyptian temples. In the centre of each is a low pedestal, or platform, upon which stands a stone about three feet high, with a rounded top—the Lingam, which is one of the most ancient as well as common of the Hindoo symbols. One of these, in particular, is still in great repute among the natives, and is resorted to by the Hindoo women, who seat themselves upon it for a certain length of time, as a cure for barrenness. I was told that an English lady of Bombay, whose marriage had not had the desired result, was induced to try the experiment, which, to her great surprise, was successful.

After spending some time in the larger temple, two native boys showed us the way to the two smaller ones, which are higher up the hill, on its eastern side. Other visitors have come in the mean time, and a company of sailors were employed in knocking down the pods of the tamarind trees. The husk incloses a thick paste, wrapped around the seeds, with an intensely acid, but agreeable taste. From the gar

between the two peaks of the islands, we looked down into a levelly little valley on the opposite side, gradually widening to the water, near which was a native hamlet. I longed to pitch my tent in one of its palm-groves, and to spend a week in studying the strange gods in the caverns above.

The smaller temples have been much mutilated. The entrances are nearly filled up with rubbish, and the inner chambers are now the abodes of the jackal and the serpent. They were too dark to be properly seen without torches, which we had not, but I could perceive that many of them contained the upright stone, and the usual sculptured tablets on the walls. The outer courts of both were supported by elegant poppy-headed pillars, a few of which have escaped destruction. Excavation would no doubt reveal much that is now hidden, but the Government has no taste for such things, and there are few archæologists in Bombay. The most that has been done is to build a cottage and station a sergeant at the entrance of the great temple, in order to prevent visitors from injuring the sculptures.

The afternoon shadows were growing long by this time, admonishing us to return. The wind had risen, and as it was not entirely favorable, we were obliged to run up the bay, past a point of the Island of Salsette, before we could make a tack for the city. Instead of going on to Bombay, however, we landed at the pier of Mazagaun, and drove to the Botanic Garden, near the Governor's residence, at Parell. The garden is laid out with great taste, and filled with a variety of rare tropical trees, among which are several superb Brazilian palms. I there saw the first banyan-tree, but the specimen was too young to justify its fame. The flaming blossoms of the

azalias, pelargoniums and sagittarias first deepened in hue, and then grew dusky and indistinct in the fading flush of sunset, as I wandered through the palmy alleys, breathing of "nard and cassia," and the voluptuous Persian rose. But the short southern twilight sank away, and I rode back to Bombay, with the silvery, meteoric lustre of the zodiacal light gleaming over my path.

CHAPTER IV

A NAUTCH AMONG THE PARSEES.

New-Years Day—A Tropical Gift—A Parsee Bungalow—Our Reception—Chewing the Betel-Nut—The Nautch-Girls—Their Dances—Supper—Prejudices of Caste—The Bengalee Dance—A Gilded Bridegroom—Piercing Music—Ship-Building in Bombay—Education of the Natives—Their Appeals to Parliament

The morning of New-Year's Day, 1853, dawned clear and beautiful. Lord Falkland, Governor of the Bombay Presidency, gave a splendid ball at his residence at Parell, on the previous evening. The simple ceremony of calling upon him would have insured me an invitation; but as I carelessly neglected to do this, and therefore missed the ball, I accepted the more readily an invitation to attend a *nautch* at the country residence of my Parsee friends, on the following evening. A servant came to my room early on New-Year's morning, with a tray heaped with fruit, a large bunch of roses, and a polite note from Dossabhoj Merwanjee Wadya and his associates, containing the compliments of the season, and an invitation to be at Parell at half-past nine o'clock. I could not help being struck with the difference between New-Year in Bombay and in New York. While my friends were making their

round of calls, muffled in furs, and with red noses and frosty hands, I was sitting on an open verandah, as lightly clad as possible, looking down on the palms and papayas in the gardens below, and listening to the songs of birds gathered on all the house-tops, my New-Year's gift consisting of a pum-melow (a fruit resembling the shaddock, but of much finer flavor), a pile of oranges and golden bananas, and a *pawn*, for chewing, wrapped in a gilded betel-leaf.

Three countrymen—all who were in Bombay, with the exception of the Missionaries—were also invited, as well as two Englishmen, but the remainder of the guests were native, Parsee and Hindoo. A pleasant drive of five miles brought us to the country-house, which was built on land granted to the family by the East India Company, on account of the services they have rendered as ship-builders. It was a spacious one-story bungalow, and brilliantly lighted up for the occasion with hanging lamps of cocoa-nut oil, which gives out a very delicate and pleasant perfume while burning. We were ushered into a hall, around the sides of which were couches made in imitation of sofas, and not so lazy and luxurious as the Turkish divan. The floor was carpeted, and the musicians and nautch-girls were seated in a group in one corner.

Dossabhoy, and our friends, Hirjeebhoy, the head builder in the Bombay dock-yard, Jamsetjee and Cursetjee, received us cordially, and immediately on taking our seats, bunches of fragrant roses were presented to us, over which fresh rose-water was sprinkled from a silver vase. Another servant then appeared with a tray of *pawns*, which the Parsees were already chewing vigorously. Indeed, you rarely see a native, of whatever

condition, without a pawn in his mouth. They are composed of chips of betel-nut, cardamum seeds and betel-leaf, to which some add lime made from mussel-shells. In order to be like the rest, I commenced chewing, and found the taste very much like sassafras, but more astringent. It is by no means disagreeable, and must be rather conducive to health than otherwise, or it would not have become a universal custom. Both the leaf and nut are excellent tonics.* The juice only is swallowed, but the practice of chewing makes both the mouth and teeth, for the time, of a bright red color. I was quite shocked on landing, to see so many natives (as I thought) spitting blood.

In a short time the musicians had finished tuning their instruments, and the two nautch-girls (*bayaderes*) took their places on the floor. The word *bayadere* is a French invention and is unknown in India. These girls were about twenty-five years of age, small in stature, dark-brown in complexion, plain in features, and inert and languid in expression. They were far from being as handsome or graceful as the *Almehs* who danced for us in the temple of Luxor. They wore full robes of a gay color, descending nearly to the ankle, but confined by a broad shawl so far below their hips as to restrict the motion

* Prof. Johnston says: "On those who are accustomed to use it, the betel produces weak but continuous and sustained exhilarating effects. And that these are of a most agreeable kind, may be inferred from the very extended area over which the chewing of betel prevails, among Asiatic nations. In the damp and pestilent regions of India, where the natives live upon a spare and miserable diet, it is really very conducive to health. Part of its healthful influence in fever-breeding districts - probably to be ascribed to the pepper-leaf which is chewed along with the betel-nut."

of their feet. They had also shawls around their heads, trowsers of red silk, and slippers. The musicians commenced singing a melancholy, monotonous measure, with a lively accompaniment on their lutes. The girls joined in the singing occasionally lifting their arms with the utmost deliberation, or slightly shifting the position of their feet. Now one advanced a few steps and as slowly retreated, now the other. I never saw a dance so spiritless and inexpressive.

Some of the songs, on the other hand, pleased me exceedingly. Less wild and barbaric than the Arab chants, they are pervaded with the same expression of longing and of love, and though sung by voices which were occasionally shrill and harsh, still preserved a touching air of tenderness. After witnessing two or three dances, we were called into the other room, to a collation of fruits and sweetmeats, in which the Parsees joined us, contrary to the usual custom of their sect. This restriction, however, does not seem to be a part of their faith, but to have resulted from a long residence among the Hindoos, who maintain such a religious distinction of caste, that to the Brahmin, the mere touch of one of the lower orders is defilement, and can only be removed by bathing and change of apparel. The Mussulmans in India have adopted the same notions, and will neither eat with Christians nor drink from the same vessels.

During the interval, the nautch-girls made a change in the fashion of their dress, by binding their robes in such a manner that they reached only to the knees, and giving their turbans a flattened form, like those worn by the natives of Bengal. In fact, the dance which succeeded was called the Bengalee. It differed little from the preceding, except that

the measure was more animated, and the languid shuffling of the feet done in somewhat quicker time. The song which accompanied it was translated to me, and ran thus: "My beloved Nabob, take me to Calcutta: with the howdah on the elephant, the saddle on the horse." This is the style of poetry of which these songs are usually composed, but some of them cannot be so safely translated. There are nautch girls who have a fame among the natives equal to that of Taglioni or Ellsler in Europe, and who are paid at the rate of five hundred rupees a night, but they are to be found at the Courts of the native sovereigns in Northern India, where the nautches are got up on a grand scale.

The previous evening, on my way home from the Botani Garden, I met a magnificent marriage procession in the streets of the native town. First came a large number of beautiful children in open vehicles, the pearls and spangles of their dresses glittering in the light of torches, which were borne on long poles, and waved in riotous jubilee to the sound of the music. Behind them were boys in jewelled robes, on horseback, with servants holding golden-fringed umbrellas above their heads. The music—a piercing medley of fifes, drums, and lutes—came next, and then the bridegroom, mounted on a white horse. He was a man of about twenty, clad in splendid robes of white silk, embroidered with gold. His turban gleamed with pearls, and his cheeks and forehead were covered with gold leaf. He was a living *El Dorado*, but sat so grave and motionless on his horse, staring straight before him, that he might have been taken for a bedizened statue. A servant, holding a silver screen resembling a fan, walked on each side of him, and behind him came the dowry

borne on men's heads. It was contained in twenty or thirty miniature houses, arranged so as to form a quadrangle, with a temple in the centre.

I passed a number of houses illuminated for marriage festivities, and from one of them there came the sound of a flute more shrill and piercing, I have no doubt, than any other flute in the world. Its tones were so intensely shrill as to become tangible. They were shot out of the open windows like barbed arrows, and whenever any one struck you it was followed by a keen sense of pain. They flew whistling down the street, rattling against the walls, transfixing all civilized ears and torturing all susceptible nerves. I shudder, even now, to think of the smarts I endured while passing that house.

The Wadya family, to which my host belonged, have been for more than half a century the ship-builders of Bombay. The vicinity of the teak forests has occasioned the building of several ships of the line for the British Navy in the dock-yard there. The first of these, the *Minden*, has been in service for nearly fifty years, and her condition still attests the excellence of her construction. It was between her decks, while lying off Fort McHenry, that Francis Key wrote our "Star-spangled Banner." The present head-builder Hirjeebhoy Merwanjee, had on the stocks at the time of my visit, two steamships of eighteen hundred tons each. He was nearly three years in England, studying his profession, and has published a work in English, giving his views of English institutions and society. The Government has done much for the natives in the establishment of such institutions as the Grant Medical College, the Elphinstone Institution, and

others, but much still remains to be done. The amount expended for educational purposes in the Bombay Presidency is about £12,500, which is insufficient to support any general system of instruction. The Board of Education consists of three English residents and three natives; in its operation it embraces instruction in the Mahratta and Guzeratee, as well as the English and Hindostanee languages. The Elphinstone Institution has at present about 1,400 scholars, the great proportion of whom are studying in the English department. They are, however, first required to pass in the vernacular languages. The respect in which such men as Mountstuart Elphinstone and Sir Charles Forbes are held by the natives, shows how truly they appreciate every effort for their improvement, and how eagerly they would respond to any measure which had their good in view.

The more intelligent of the natives took advantage of the approaching renewal of the East India Company's Charter (which expired in April, 1854), to form associations and draw up memorials for presentation to Government, in which they represented the disadvantages of the present system in its effect on the native population. The movement was rather too late to be productive of much effect, but it was interesting as showing the temper of the native subjects in India. I saw none of the memorials except that of the Bombay Association, which was drawn up by Dr. Bhawoo Dajee. It was an admirably written document, moderate and respectful, but at the same time firm and dignified in its tone, stating with great clearness the causes of complaint, and suggesting means of redress.

CHAPTER V.

THE BANGHY CART

Preparations for Departure—Warnings—Filial Gratitude—The Banghy Cart—A Night Gallop through Bombay—The Island Road—Ferry to the Mainland—Despotism of the Banghy-Cart—Morning Scenery—The Bungalow—Breakfast—The Sun as a Physician—An Army of Bullocks—Climbing the Ghauts—Natural Pagodas—The Summit—A Kind Sergeant—The Second Day—Resemblance to Mexico—Natives and Villages—The Menagerie Man in Egypt—An English Cantonment—Dhoolia—The Lieutenant and his Hospitality—A Rough Road—Accident—Waiting in the Jungle—The Bullock-Cart—Halt at Seerpore.

As I was bound for China, and could spare but a very short time for my journeys in India, I remained only a week in Bombay. The information given me by my English friends did not furnish a very satisfactory prospect of visiting Delhi and the Himalayas, and reaching Calcutta, within the space of two months, without a much greater expenditure of money than I was prepared to make. The usual mode of travelling had up to that time been by palanquin, a mode as costly as it is disagreeable. The post-road to Agra, however, had recently been made passable for a small cart which carried the mails, and just before my arrival a *banghy-cart* had commenced running from Bombay to Indore, a distance of 375 miles, or about

half way to the former city. A *banghy* means, I believe, a package, or something of that sort, and the cart answers to a package-express. Mr. Cowasjee Ruttonjee, the contractor, assured me that the trip would positively be made within six days, travelling day and night. The fare was four annas (twelve cents) per mile, or nearly \$47, exclusive of expenses by the way. This, for India, was considered cheap travelling, and I resolved to make a trial of it. I was obliged to give up the idea of taking a servant with me, and to trust entirely to about twenty words of Hindostanee, which I had picked up on board the Achilles. Many were the evil predictions made to me by most of my English friends: "You can never stand the fatigue; you can get nothing to eat; you will be perfectly helpless if any thing happens," etc. But an old officer, who had travelled not only over all India but nearly all the world, wisely comforted me. "Never mind what these people say," said he; "they are accustomed to travel luxuriously, with retinues of servants. Depend upon it, you will get along without the least difficulty."

I sent my heavy baggage by the steamer to Calcutta, limiting myself to two small carpet-bags, which was all that Cowasjee would take in his cart. My Hindoo servant, with the one red and two white stripes on his forehead, procured me a native tailor, who made me several pairs of pantaloons, of a shape so remarkable that I have not been able to wear them, to this day. Perhaps as I grow older, my form will approach nearer to the standard of Hindoo Art, and they will then become serviceable. The striped servant looked very forlorn and disconsolate, as he carried my carpet-bags from Pallankee's Hotel to the Express Office, on the evening of the

3d of January. "O my master!" he bewailed: "I am werry sorry to part with you. You are my father, and I am your son. O my father, I shall never forget you!" Considering that he was of a dark-brown complexion, forty years old, and rather ill-favored, I was not anxious to accept the relationship, but, not to be wanting in parental regard, I gave him nearly double the wages agreed upon. Not only did he show no gratitude, but importuned me for more—so little filial affection is there in India!

The banghy-cart was in readiness before Cowasjee's office, when I arrived. It was a square, springless buggy, with a white canvas top, and extremely heavy shafts and wheels. My baggage and the packages for the interior were stowed in the body of the vehicle, the driver and I took our seats, Cowasjee inclined his body and touched his Parsee mitre, and away we dashed into Monument-square. A groom ran at the horse's head till we were fairly under way, and then climbed upon the box behind us. We went out of the gates of the Fort, crossed the esplanade, and entered the busy native town, where we encountered two marriage processions. The red torches glittered on pearls and gold embroidery, on the silver pyramids of the dowry, and the rainbow silks of the women. Our horse, frightened by the noise of the drums and cymbals dashed off furiously, making directly for a blank wall, before which several persons were passing. The driver seemed powerless, and we came instantly upon the wall, catching one of the natives between it and the wheel. I sprang forward, seized the reins and drew the horse around just in time to save the man's life, though not, I fear, to prevent his being badly injured. The horse now started at a mad gallop down the

street, which was crowded with people. The driver stooped down and raised to his mouth something which, in the darkness, resembled a bottle. He did indeed take a horn—and blew the most terrible blasts, as we careered onwards like Shiva, the Destroyer, the white-robed, ghost-like natives scattering on all sides before us. I grasped the top of the cart tightly and awaited the result, for the horse swerved from side to side in such a manner that a crash seemed inevitable. However, in less time than it has taken to write these lines, we were outside of Bombay, and the cessation of noise and glare restored the animal to his senses.

There was no moon, but we had the brilliant starlight of the tropics, and for an hour after leaving, the zodiacal light stood like a shining obelisk in the west. The road was broad, and as smooth and as hard as a floor, and in less than an hour we reached the first station. Another horse was in readiness, and not less mettlesome than the first, so that we made fully six miles an hour. The road was embowered in mango, sycamore, palm and tamarind trees, whose breath made the night warm and balmy. Our lamps shed transient gleams on the rich masses of foliage, and I was so delighted with the pictures thus brought out of the darkness on either hand, that I reached the end of the gardens and of Bombay Island with regret. A solid stone causeway extends across the shallow strait to the Island of Salsette, whose hills now rose dimly before me. In these hills are the caves and temples of Kenary. During my stay at Bombay I had not time to visit them but I was informed that they are on a much smaller scale than those of Elephanta, though so numerous that the natives reckon their number at nine hundred.

We changed horses twice on the island of Salsette, once at a village of mud and bamboo huts, so thoroughly Egyptian in appearance that I could have believed myself on the banks of the Nile. At midnight we reached the northern end of the island, which is about twenty miles in length. We roused the sleepy ferrymen, who dragged the cart upon a platform laid across two small boats, and slowly rowed us over to the mainland of India. The strait, as well as I could distinguish, is very crooked, and not more than a quarter of a mile in breadth. Up to this time I had not spoken, nor been spoken to, for a very good reason, but no sooner was the cart hauled ashore, than the boatmen came up to me exclaiming: "*kishti-walla: chirramirry!*" (As much as to say; "we are the boatmen, give us a gratuity." I remembered the words, and found them next morning in my vocabulary.) I gave them a small fee, and then the driver came up, saying "Salaam, sahib—*chirramirry!*" So there could be no doubt as to the meaning of "*chirramirry.*"

With a new driver and a new horse I again started forward. The country was more open and undulating, and all signs of gardens and residences disappeared. Now and then we passed a mud village, and about every hour changed horses at a rude station, before reaching which the driver blew furious peals upon his trumpet. In consequence of this, we generally found the horse in waiting, and experienced no delay in changing. The night wore away, the waning moon came up, and then the morning-star; the travelling natives, encamped among the trees, began to bestir themselves, and with the first streak of daylight their heavy ox-wagons were in motion. Now came the horn again into play, and thence

forth **there** was no cessation of its warning blasts. Every thing must give way to the banghy-cart. Woe to the native who, having heard the horn half a mile behind him, still dozed on, allowing his plodding cattle to keep the best track. Down jumped the groom, battering the beasts out of the way, and a touch of the driver's whip not seldom quickened the senses of their masters. No one dared to remonstrate, for the banghy-cart is attached to the Post-Office Department.

Morning showed me an open, rolling country, studded here and there with clumps of trees, and showing occasional signs of cultivation. As it was then the dry season, the grass was brown and withered, and the soil parched. The sea was out of sight, and the broken ranges of the Ghauts before me, seemed near at hand. The road was broad and good, and bridged over the gullies, but so beaten by continual travel, that we swept along in a cloud of dust. I hailed the rising sun with the fervor of a Parsee, for the night had been so cold, that in spite of a thick great-coat, I was chilled to the very bones. I was getting hungry, also, and knowing that we must be approaching a bungalow, I took out Forbes's Hindostanee grammar, and began searching for the words to express my wants. Having prepared a sufficient stock of nouns, and the verbs "bring" and "give," I deemed myself capable of achieving a breakfast.

But first, it is necessary to explain the meaning of a bungalow. I believe it is the general term in India for a residence of the better class, as the English, except in large cities, always speak of their houses as "bungalows." On all the principal lines of road throughout the country, the Government has erected bungalows, at intervals of from ten to twenty

miles, for the accommodation of European travellers. The natives have their *serais*, resembling the Turkish khans, and unless travelling by post, are not admitted into the bungalows. The latter are plain but substantial cottages, furnished only with tables, chairs, and bedsteads, and generally containing two dining and two sleeping apartments. There are cut-houses for the residence of a native servant, called a *peon*, who has charge of the establishment, and for the cooks, or messmen, who are obliged to procure supplies and prepare meals according to a fixed scale of prices. For the use of the bungalow, each traveller pays one rupee (fifty cents) per day. Were it not for this excellent arrangement, one would be obliged to take tents and all the paraphernalia of a household, and to carry supplies with him from place to place. A register for the names of travellers is kept in each bungalow, and they are requested to note the sums paid, in order to prevent dishonesty on the part of the peons. By nine o'clock we reached the village of Khurdee, sixty-four miles from Bombay. The word "hazree" (breakfast) conveyed my intention to the driver, and he answered: "Achehà, sahib" (very well, sir). I succeeded so well with the messman that in an hour an excellent curry and omelette smoked upon the table. The natives, all along the road, have ingrafted some English words upon the Hindostanee, and frequently use them in a very amusing manner. Whenever I asked for eggs, I was almost sure to be asked in return: "*Half biled* or *momlet?*" I was provident enough to supply myself with a paper of tea in Bombay, since it is not always to be had on the road.

On getting into the cart, at the last station before reaching Khurdee, the step broke, and as I fell, my knee struck

upon a projecting bolt, causing such intense pain as almost to deprive me of my senses. By the time we halted again, the joint was so stiff that I could scarcely bend it. The hurt produced such a chilliness that my teeth chattered, and I was fain to sit in the sun while breakfast was preparing. The morning was scorchingly hot, and I soon noticed that the heat seemed to draw out the pain from the injured limb. In fact, after sunning it half an hour I was able to get up and walk as usual, and thenceforth never felt the slightest inconvenience from the injury. This is a case of sun-cure, which I recommend to any one who is anxious to start a new system of healing.

Khurdee lies at the base of the Ghauts, and our road now plunged into a wild, hilly region, covered with jungle. The road was broad, but very rough, and so steep that nothing but the emigrant trail over the Sierra Nevada could equal it. At the worst descents, my conductor called upon the aid of half a dozen bullock-drivers, who seized the shafts and pushed backward with all their force. Our progress was still further hindered by the endless throng of bullocks which we met. They were laden with bags of rice and of grain, and bales of cotton, and on their way downward to the coast. Between Khurdee and Kussara, a distance of twelve miles, we must have passed from fifteen to twenty thousand of them. They were all heavily laden, and jogging on at a slow, patient walk, which would carry them about ten miles a day. Those, however, who are trained to harness and employed by the natives as draught animals, easily travel twenty-five miles a day, even on a long journey. Though the cow is such a sacred beast in India, there is no end to the labor imposed upon her children, nor is she herself always spared.

We were nearly four hours in making the twelve miles over the pass of Rudtoondee, and then came down upon Kussara, a little village situated in a dell at the foot of the Tull Ghaut. The highest parapet of the range was now above us and the final ascent to the table-land commenced. The physical formation of this part of India very much resembles that of the Western Coast of Mexico. The summit level is nearly uniform, but instead of presenting a mural front, it thrusts out projecting spurs or headlands, and is cloven by deep gorges. Sharp peaks rise here and there from the general level, formed of abrupt but gradually diminishing terraces, crowned by domes or towers of naked rock. At a distance, they bear an extraordinary resemblance to works of art, and, what is very striking, to the ancient temples of the Hindoos. Is this an accidental resemblance, or did not the old races in reality get their forms of architecture directly from Nature? It is certainly a striking coincidence that all the hills in the Nubian Desert should be pyramids, and all the peaks of the Indian Ghauts pagodas. The word *ghaut* means a flight of steps, as the Ghauts are a succession of terraces descending from the table-land to the sea; and every principal Hindoo temple is approached by a ghaut. The formation of the summits is a characteristic of Indian scenery. Tennyson, who, I believe, has never been in India, describes in two lines the most peculiar aspects of the country:

*"And over hills with peaky tops engrailed,
And many a tract of palm and rice,
The throne of Indian Cama slowly sailed,
A summer fanned with spice."*

There is a splendid artificial road leading up the Tul'

Ghaut As a piece of engineering, it will vie with some of the best roads in Europe. The grade is so slight that we drove all the way on a fast trot, and the windings around the sides of the gorge gave me grand views of the lower terraces of the Ghauts. At the top, we entered on the great table land of Central India. It was an open, undulating region much better cultivated than any I had yet seen, and crossed, at intervals of twenty to thirty miles, by high ranges of hills. The air was drier and purer than below, and the setting sun shone broad and warm over tracts of wheat and sugar-cane. We rolled along merrily, through the twilight and into the darkness again, and towards nine o'clock came to the large town and military station of Nassick.

I went directly to the bungalow, for I was quite ready for dinner. An Englishman came out of one of the rooms, and not only assisted me in ordering the meal, but sent his own servant to help get it ready. He evidently took me for an officer (for a traveller is a rare sight in India), and meekly remarked, "I am only a sergeant, in the Engineers Corps. I caught the fever in the jungles at Khurdee, and have been sent up here to recover." I was very much fatigued, and lay down upon the bare bedstead, while dinner was preparing. The sergeant brought his pillow and placed it under my head, and when I awoke after two hours' sleep, I found his cloak carefully wrapped around me and himself tenderly watching, that nothing might disturb my slumbers. It was nearly midnight before the banghy-cart came. I took leave of the kind-hearted sergeant, and we set out at a slow pace. We had already crossed the watershed of India, and soon after leaving Nassick, forded the Godavery, one of the largest streams in

the country, which empties into the sea on the Coromandel Coast, not far from Madras. Soon afterwards we entered a large town by a gateway, with a Moorish arch, and threaded the silent streets—a scene which recalled forcibly to my mind, a midnight ramble through the town of Ekhnin, in Upper Egypt.

All the rest of the night we travelled slowly along, through a rolling country, and about nine next morning reached Chandore, only forty-five miles from Nassick. Chandore is a walled town, situated in a hollow at the foot of the Chandore Ghaut. It boasts several Hindoo temples of dark stone, but none of them remarkable for size or beauty. The grotesque idols, their faces smeared with red paint, were visible through the open door. I went to the bungalow for breakfast, and was obliged to wait three hours before the cart came—a delay which enabled me to get a little more sleep. Nevertheless, the heat and glare of the noonday sun so disposed me to drowsiness, that I was several times on the point of tumbling out of the cart. I should have stated that at Khurdee we changed vehicles, and after that I had nothing but a square box on wheels, without springs or cover. We crossed the Chandore Ghaut by a wild pass, half way up which stands a pagoda, so old and black that it might properly belong to the Yezidees, or Devil-Worshippers. Beyond the Ghaut we came upon a waste, hilly region, entirely covered with thorny jungle.

All this part of India reminded me strongly of the table-land of Mexico. There are the same broad, sweeping plains, gashed by deep ravines and gullies; the same barren chains of hills, and the same fertile dips of lowland, rich in corn and cane. I passed through more than one landscape, where, if I

had been brought blindfold and asked to guess where I was, I should have declared at once: "This is Mexico." Substitute the words *nulla* for "arroyo," (gully,) *ghaut* for "sierra," and *jungle* for "chapparal," and you change a description of the Mexican into that of the Indian table-land. I must admit, however, that, in general, Mexican scenery is on a broader and grander scale than here. We Americans need not envy England the possession of India; for, if we were not a people obstinately opposed to the acquisition of new territory—if we were not utterly blind to "manifest destiny," and regardless of the hints which "Geography" is constantly throwing out to us—we might possess ourselves of Cuba and Mexico, and thus outrival her. Some of my readers may laugh at the absurdity of such an idea; but when a man is travelling alone, among a strange people, he is scarcely responsible for all that comes into his head.

The resemblance to Mexico, however, does not extend to the towns and population, which are rather those of Egypt. The Indian native is darker than the Egyptian Fellah, and has a more acute and lively face, but in his habits and manners he has much in common with the latter. He has the same natural quickness of intellect, the same capacity for deception, the same curious mixture of impudence and abject servility, and the same disregard of clothing. The houses are low cabins of mud and bamboo, or in the larger villages, of mud and unburnt bricks, with mud divans in front, and sometimes thatched verandahs resting on wooden pillars. Nothing can be more miserable than the appearance of the smaller villages, which are even inferior to those of the Nile Delta, and I should like to exhibit them to an original Englishman

who went in the same boat with me from Alexandria to Cairo. As we were passing one of the villages on the Nile, he came up to me with a horrified expression of face, grasped my arm, pointed to the huts, and exclaimed: "Look there! people actually live there!" "Is it possible?" said I, with as much astonishment as I could command on such short notice. "Yes," he replied; "Good God, it's dreadful!" This man was a son of a keeper of a menagerie, and was on his way to Central Africa, in search of the Great Hydrocephalus, or some other unknown monster. He was in a furious state of indignation, because Discount & Co., the bankers at Alexandria, had taken four per cent. commission on his letter of credit. "It's only a month since I left England," said he, "and that's four per cent. a month, and that makes forty-eight per cent. a year. Suppose I had been a year on the way, I should have been ruined. If I had money enough to buy the Hydrocephalus, I should not draw a penny, and then they would have to refund the whole of it. But I'll write a letter to *The Times*, and we'll see how much more business of that sort they'll do."

To return to the banghy-cart: we rolled on all the afternoon through alternate jungle and cultivated land, and toward evening reached Mulleigaum, a military cantonment. It is situated in the middle of an open plain, which, although apparently barren, needs but irrigation to make it one vast garden. The neat bungalows of the English officers are empowered in foliage and blossoms, which water alone has soaked out of the soil. The orchards of bananas dropped their plummy leaves, and the thick hedges of Persian roses, crimson with blossoms, scented the air far and wide. Through

the verandahs and open doors I caught glimpses of elegant furniture and pictures within, and once a female figure glided past. I had fancied India to be a place of exile, but nothing could be more cheerful and homelike than these residences. The sepoy were drawn up on the parade-ground for evening review, and a most soldierly appearance they made. We drove to the post-office, and as I had not time to take dinner, I accepted the services of a Portuguese who spoke English, and who offered to procure me supplies for the road. He obtained some biscuits, boiled some eggs, and made me a bottle of strong tea, but refused to accept of the slightest pay for his services.

Thus supplied, I entered on the third night of my journey. It was somewhat cloudy and dark, and I could only observe that our road lay over the same wide uplands, except for a few miles, when passing the Lulling Ghaut. The way was rough and stony, and the thumps I received kept me from falling into the road through drowsiness. An hour past midnight I reached the military station of Dhoolia, 215 miles from Bombay, and was not sorry when the driver informed me that he should go no further that night. Off I started for the bungalow, and on reaching it, was surprised to find the rooms lighted, and a man in English dress on the verandah. He held a small lantern before him, which prevented my seeing his face. "Is this the travellers' bungalow?" I asked. He said nothing, but threw the light of the lamp full upon my face, held it there a few moments, and then cried out: "Why, you're a traveller! Yes. Come in. It's full, but I'll make room for you. I'm just taking a cup of tea: will you take tea, or beer, or brandy-and-water?" *Itchoglan*

bring tea!" There was no resisting such a rapid welcome, and before I had time to put in a word of explanation, I was seated on one end of the table, drinking a cup of tea with the Lieutenant, for such he proved to be. Meanwhile, he was giving orders on all sides. One servant ran for a bedstead; another for a pillow; a third for a quilt. "I'll make you comfortable," said he; "you didn't expect such rough times, did you now? You thought India was like England, didn't you? That's the way. But you want to go to bed. Here, let my servants pull off your boots, and help you undress. You never did that in England, you know, and you won't know how to go about it." And so he ran on, what length of time I cannot tell, for I no sooner lay down, than I fell fast asleep.

I was awakened at sunrise by his servant, with a cup of tea and a plate of biscuit. The Lieutenant walked with me to the Post-Office, and as the cart was not ready, took me to the bungalow of some other officers, who immediately invited me to breakfast. The conversation was so exclusively military, that I did not feel much interested in it. So-and-so, of the 99th, was going to sell out; such-a-one, of "Ours," had applied for two months' leave, etc. Presently the cart came, and I took a cordial leave of them all. The road, after leaving Dhoolia, became indescribably bad. The soil was a soft brown loam, which, after the rains, had been terribly cut up by the heavy bullock-carts, and was now hard and dry. Our horse stumbled slowly along over the ruts, a groom leading him by the head. The country was crossed by deep nullas, or gulleys, many of which were very difficult to pass. The scenery presented no new features, except a singular isolated

hill, resembling a fortress, near Soongheer. Beyond this point it was mostly hilly jungle, with few habitations. During the afternoon, we passed three elephants, which were standing in the shade of a large peepul tree, motionless as ifewn out of basaltic rock.

It was already two o'clock, and we had only proceeded about twenty miles from Dhoolia, when the axle suddenly snapped under the repeated jolts, and I was thrown into the road. I escaped with a slight bruise, and sat down in the jungle to await the issue. As I could neither give nor take suggestions, I was silent; but I had with me that exhaustless fountain of patience, a pipe, and soon attained a mood of cheerful indifference as to what might happen. The driver took out the baggage and packages, and sat down with them on the opposite side of the road; the groom took the horse and galloped off. An hour passed by; two hours; and still we sat in silence, watching the procession of Hindoos, Moslems, bullocks, ponies and camels that came and went between us. At last a bullock-cart dashed up on a fast trot, the baggage was packed upon it, I took my seat and away we went, leaving the broken banghy-cart in the road. Was that the last of it? the reader may ask. We shall see.

We reached a place called Seerpore, at dusk, our brave bullocks having made ten miles in two hours. I had supper, a good night's rest, and breakfast, and there was still no sign of the cart. The messman, who was very civil and attentive, informed me that it would be mended by noon. Meanwhile, there was I, I knew not precisely where. I could not find the place on the map. That it was in India I was certain, because there was a handsome Hindoo temple close be

side the bungalow, and before the temple an immense banyan tree, and under the banyan tree two elephants. I made a sketch of the scene, as a memorial of the adventure.

At last a native entered, and with a profound salaam, said: "*Sahib banghy-cart taiyar hai*" (Sir the banghy-cart is ready).

CHAPTER VI.

THE BANGHY-CART, CONCLUDED—INDORE

Departure from Seerpore—Another Break-down—A Crippled Cart—Palasnehr—Indian Horses and Drivers—Jungle—The Banyan Tree—The Tamarind—The Natives of the Jungle—Military Salutations—The Town of Sindwah—Tokens of Decay—The Sindwah Jungles—A Dilemma—The Vindhya Mountains—The Station of Mbow—Arrival at Indore—The Town—The Rajah's Palace—The Rajah and his History—His Tastes—Hindoo Temples and their Worshippers—The English Residency—Cold Weather.

It was not without some misgivings that I again took my seat in the banghy-cart, and left the place called Seerpore. I was now entering the Sindwah jungles, a desolate region, swarming with tigers, and so unhealthy that from the end of July to the first of January it is impassable. In case of accident there must be detention, and detention in such a case is fraught with danger. However, "nothing venture, nothing win," is the traveller's true maxim. We thumped and bumped along in the noonday heat, making about two miles an hour, and had proceeded five miles, when I saw the axle (which I had been watching) suddenly give way again. I jumped out in time to avoid the crash, and once more took my seat in the jungle, in the shade of a thorny bush. The groom

mounted the horse and rode away; the driver unpacked the baggage and seated himself opposite to me, and thus we sat for three hours. "Patience," after all, is the watchword of life. It may seem incredible, but I was thoroughly patient during all this time.

The groom at last appeared with a new cart—and such a cart! It had been broken so often, that it was a hopeless cripple. The square box had such a pitch forward, and the step was so short, that I could by no possibility keep my seat without holding fast with both hands. By this time it was dusk, and we crept forward gradually, the horse occasionally falling down in the ruts, and coming to a stand-still every fifty yards, until urged forward by repeated cries of "*ai bap! ai bhai!*" (Oh, my father! my brother!) About ten o'clock we reached a village called Palasnehr, only sixteen miles from Seerproe, having been ten hours on the way. The driver succeeded in making me understand that he did not intend to go any further that night. I therefore went to the bungalow, and aroused the sleepy khitmudgra, (butler,) "What can I get for supper?" I asked. "*Kuch na,*" (nothing). So I took a carpet-bag for a pillow, lay down on the bare bedstead, and slept soundly until morning. "Can you get me any thing for breakfast?" I asked again. "*Kuch na.*" And the banghy-cart being ready, I went away hungry from Palasnehr.

The road was a little better, but as we travelled on a trot instead of a walk, the cart lost nothing of its roughness, which, indeed, was rather increased. The labor of holding on taxed me sorely, and as there was no relaxation, except when we stopped to change horses, the muscles of my arms and legs at last became so exhausted that I was ready to double up and

sink together in a heap. My wrists and ankles were swollen for several days afterwards, from the effects of that ride. The horses and drivers on this part of the road are probably the worst in the world. The driver's knowledge is confined to holding the reins, and even this he understands very imperfectly. Instead of choosing the smoothest part of the road he takes the roughest, and if a stone is to be seen, his satisfaction is not complete unless the cart runs over it. He frequently swerves some distance from the direct track to effect this object. As for the horse, he is the master, and if any exertion is necessary you may possibly flatter but cannot force him into it. When first harnessed he never starts of his own accord. One groom stands at his head patting and coaxing, while two others push at the wheels until they press him forward. He then backs, and sometimes sits down on his haunches. More force is put to the wheels, until backing becomes a labor to him, and then he goes forward as long as the road is level. But by and by you come to a slight ascent. He knows already where it is, and unless you keep him on a gallop he stops at the bottom. The groom jumps down and runs to his head. "*Tāb di*" (pat him), says the driver, and while the former pats him on the neck, the latter cries out in most endearing tones: "Oh, my father, my brother, my bully, my brave fellow!" Thus encouraged he makes a start, and gets about half way up the rise, when he stops and leisurely backs down again to the bottom. This is repeated three or four times, and finally some of the bullock-drivers are called on to assist. They lay hold on the wheels, and the horse, instead of drawing up the cart, is himself pushed up with it. On one occasion, where there was a rise of about one foot in ten for a

hundred yards, I was obliged to wait an hour and a half before we succeeded in passing.

Soon after leaving Palasnehr, the road crossed the Sindwah Ghaut, a range of hills about six miles in breadth and covered with jungle. Beyond them opened the valley of the Nerbudda; the Vindhya Mountains, on the opposite side, though fifty miles distant, were dimly visible. Between lay a wild waste of jungle, almost uninhabited, a reservoir of deadly malaria and a paradise for panthers and tigers. The word "jungle," I should explain, is used to express any kind of wild growth, from a thicket to a forest, whether highland or lowland. The different varieties are distinguished as "close iungle, thorn jungle, wet jungle," etc. About Sindwah the iungle is close, composed of thick clumps of shrubbery and small trees, with here and there a magnificent banyan or peepul tree towering over it. In the valley of the Nerbudda there are many banyans, and some of great size. Few trees present grander masses of foliage than this. Instead of a low roof of boughs, resting on its pillared trunks, as I had supposed, it sends up great limbs to the height of a hundred, or even a hundred and fifty feet, and the new trunks are often dropped from boughs thirty feet high. They hang like parcels of roots from the ends of the boughs, and when broken off and prevented from reaching the earth, continue to increase and become woody like the trunk. I have seen a tree on which huge half-trunks, that had never reached the earth, hung from the branches, like the fragments of shattered pillars, hanging from the roof of an Egyptian rock-temple. The leaves of the banyan are large, glossy and dark-green, and in

the winter the foliage is studded with buds of a bright purple color.

The only other large trees that I remarked, were the sycamore (peepul) and the tamarind. The acacia and mimosa are occasionally met with, and the date and brab palms thrive in the valleys. The tamarind frequently rivals the banyan in size, while its foliage is wonderfully graceful and delicate. The leaflets of its slender pinnate leaves are so small, that the Koran could not more forcibly describe the torments of the Mahometan Hell, than when it says that the sinners in the nether fires shall receive, to cool their thirst, just so much water as will lie on one of these leaflets, once in a thousand years. Of the smaller trees and shrubs, there is a great variety, but the tamarind and banyan are the characteristic trees of India, as the palm is of Egypt, and the magnolia and cypress of our Southern States.

From Dhoolia to the Nerbudda, my road was through the District of Candeish, which, two or three weeks previous, was the subject of general attention, on account of the rising of the natives. The disturbance had been quelled, but if I had not had such confidence in the potency of English rule, I should have felt that I was exposed to some danger. We met continually with companies of armed natives—not the mild, abject inhabitants of the cultivated districts, but the tall, fierce sons of the jungle—men with keen eyes, heavy black beards, and a striking expression of courage and defiance in their whole bearing. They did not stoop and touch the earth in humble salutation, as I passed, but looked me full in the face, without a single word of greeting. Some were armed with the long Bedouin guns, some with spears, and all wore sa

bres. They were nearly all on foot, but a few, who seemed to be men of authority, rode on ponies. I should judge they were mostly Mahometans, from their turbans, and from the cast of their features. It is very easy to distinguish between the followers of the rival religions, without reference to any distinguishing mark of dress, and merely from the expression of the face.

We constantly met long trains of laden bullocks and with numbers of *hackrees*, or native ox-carts. Many of the trains were accompanied by *cheprasses*, or Government servant, (distinguished by a band over the shoulders with an inscribed brass plate upon it), and by sepoy. In all my life I never received half the number of military salutations, as during this journey. Of course I was in the East India Company's service, for nobody else travels there; my brown face showed that I had been a long time in the country, and my habit of never expressing astonishment, when among a strange people, was sufficient, in spite of my ignorance of the language, to certify to the fact. Every sepoy drew himself up, faced right about, gave his right arm a wide sweep and brought his hand to his cap. I made an officer's response, of course, but merely gave a slight nod to the salutations of the peasants, though they sometimes almost prostrated themselves before me. Near Sindwah we passed a small village, where all the male inhabitants rushed out of their houses, ranged themselves in a row beside the road, with the elder or chief at their head, and successively touched the dust and their foreheads. It is not to be inferred that these humiliating tokens of reverence and submission to the English power have been forced upon the people. They learned submission long ago

it is natural to them. The Indian servant not only calls you his father, but his King and his God, and when he wants to ask you a special favor, comes to you with a bunch of grass in his mouth, saying he is your beast.

During the forenoon we passed Sindwah, a miserable village at present, though once a place of some importance, as its massive fortress testifies. There is some cultivation near it, but the country shows marks of neglect and decay. I was told that a large part of Candeish, which is now waste jungle, was a flourishing and well-populated region fifty years ago. I could at first find no adequate reason for these tokens of decay; but I believe that, in most instances, they are owing to a superstition of the natives, which prevents them from inhabiting lands belonging to families that have become extinct. They believe that the spirits of the former owners linger upon the soil, and would visit them with calamity, or death, if they persisted in remaining.

All the rest of the day, and part of the night, we jolted on through the lonely jungles. I was in great hopes of seeing a tiger spring across the road, but had no such luck. Although the ground was baked hard and dry, there was still an exhalation from it, as my shadow appeared with a slight halo around it, such as one sees on a summer morning, when the dew begins to dry. I suffered with a dull headache all day, but the rough road might account for this. Towards midnight we reached Akbarpore, on the Nerbudda, having made fifty-four miles. I was too sore to wait for supper, but went to sleep at once, after ordering breakfast at sunrise, when the cart was to be ready again. Sunrise came, and eight o'clock, but neither cart nor breakfast. At last the driver appeared

and made me a number of remarks for which (in my ignorance of the language) I was none the wiser. "Is the cart ready yet?" I asked. "Yes, it is ready, but"—and here my comprehension ceased. A horrid suspicion flashed through my mind: "Is it gone?" "Yes, it is gone, but"—and he became unintelligible again. "Is there no cart?" again I asked. "Yes, there's a cart, but"—That dreadful "but" completely floored me. I went into the kitchen, took the half-cooked breakfast from the fire, and hurriedly ate it, for I had lived on biscuits for two days. I then went directly to the post-station, but there was no cart there. The people made many observations, but all availed nothing, till at last one of them rose and beckoned me to follow him. We went down to the Nerbudda, which is a beautiful river, a third of a mile wide, crossed the ferry, and behold! there stood a new cart, and there lay a new driver, asleep in the sun!

The road was tolerable, I could now sit without holding on, and thus the journey became pleasant again. The valley of the Nerbudda is very rich and fertile, the soil resembling the black loam of Egypt. We passed many fields of flax, covered with blue and white flowers; wheat, cotton, tobacco and poppies, besides small patches of sugar-cane. All seemed to thrive equally well. But a small proportion of the soil is cultivated, and it is no exaggeration to say, that the valley might be made to support a hundredfold its present population. We now approached the picturesque Vindhya Mountains, one of the summits of which was crowned with a white building—the tomb of a Moslem Saint, as well as I could understand the driver. The road passes the mountains, at a place formerly called Ghara, but now Kintrey's Ghaut, it

honor of the engineer. It is, indeed, admirably planned, though somewhat out of repair. The summit, which separates the waters of the two sides of India, overlooks a waste and bleak country. Soon after descending the northern side, we crossed the head-waters of the Chumbul, the largest affluent of the Jumna. At eight o'clock I reached the military station of Mhow, within fourteen miles of Indore, and was so well satisfied that I allowed the driver to stop for the night.

Mhow is a handsome station, the officers' bungalows, surrounded with small gardens, being scattered over an extent of two miles. It stands on a dry plain, 2,000 feet above the sea, and is considered a very healthy place of residence. The highest point is crowned by a large white church, the spire of which may be seen for some distance. The place is included within the limits of the Madras Presidency. I had only a passing glimpse of the town, as I left early next morning. A drive of two hours, over a good road and through a rolling upland country, devoted to the opium culture, brought me to Indore, and I bade adieu to the banghy-cart, hoping I might see no more of it. The journey from Bombay occupied six days and a half, and I accomplished it with less fatigue, though with more bruises than I expected.

Indore is the capital of an independent State, and the station of an English "Resident"—an office which is equivalent to that of an Envoy or Ambassador, except that the Resident meddles rather more in the affairs of the State to which he is accredited. Mr. Hamilton, the Resident at Indore, was absent on a journey, but I was most kindly received by Dr. Impey, the Residency Surgeon, to whom I had a letter. With true Indian hospitality, he took me at once to his

house, where both he and his amiable lady did their utmost to make my sojourn agreeable.

Indore is a town of about 60,000 inhabitants, having been much increased within a few years by the tyranny of the Begum of Oodjein, a holy old city about eighty miles distant many of the inhabitants of which have emigrated to the former place. Portions of Indore are well built, reminding me somewhat of Konia, and other places in the interior of Asia Minor. The houses are generally of wood, two stories high, the upper story projecting and resting on pillars, so as to form a verandah below. The pillars and the heavy cornice above them are of dark wood, and very elaborately carved. In the centre of the town is the Rajah's palace, fronting a small square. It is a quadrangle of about four hundred feet to a side, the portion over the main gateway rising to the height of eighty or ninety feet, and visible for many miles around. The architecture is Saracenic, though not of a pure style. The gateway, however, and the balconies over it, are very elegant, and the main court, surrounded by lofty pillars of dark wood, connected by ornate horseshoe arches, has a fine effect. The outer walls are covered with pictures of elephants, horses, tigers, Englishmen and natives, drawn and colored with the most complete disregard of nature.

On our way to the town one evening, we met the Rajah and his suite, just setting out on an excursion into the country. He was attended by a large retinue of persons, soldiers dressed in the European style, officials in gaudy dresses holding spears and flags, and all the paraphernalia of a petty prince. He is very fond of display, but I must confess that the whole show was rather picturesque than imposing. I had

a good view of the Rajah, who was a young man of about twenty, tall and stout for his age, and with a good humored though not remarkably intelligent face. He wore a crimson robe, and a rich silken turban, studded with jewels. His story is quite romantic. Twelve years ago he was a poor shepherd boy in the neighborhood of Mhow. The former Rajah, Hurry Rao Holkar, having died childless, and without any near relatives, the State might have readily fallen into the possession of the East India Company. Instead of taking it, however, search was made for a successor, and the poor shepherd boy was found to belong to a remote branch of the family. He was thereupon invested with the Rajahship, and Mr. Hamilton, the Resident, was appointed Regent during his minority.

Notwithstanding he was educated under English auspices, the Rajah did not seem to have acquired any English ideas, except a taste for horses and hunting. The only public works of his which were pointed out to me, were a small hospital and school, and a bridge across the river, or rather ravine, on which Indore is built. The latter was a very substantial structure, of hewn stone, and cost upwards of \$100,000. The finest thing I saw in the place was a well, built by one of the former Rajahs. It was a large square shaft, about forty feet deep, with a broad flight of steps leading down to the water, and cool chambers and balconies of hewn stone, for recreation during the hot weather.

In riding through and around the town, I was struck with the number of small Hindoo temples. The principal temple is adjacent to the Rajah's palace; but as Europeans are not allowed to enter, I saw only the outside. In the suburbs, how

ever, there are many sanctuaries erected to the different gods the most of them being open canopies or domes, resting on pillars, and none above twenty feet in height. The idols are generally smeared with red paint, a token that they have recently been worshipped. There were multitudes of beggars, some of whom asked for alms in the name of Vishnu, and others in the name of Allah, the latter being Mussulmen. In one street we passed a house where the piercing shrieks of a wife and the dreadful clatter of a drum announced a marriage festival, and not far off, two women, seated in front of a door, howled incessant lamentation for a corpse within: Destruction and Reproduction, both the attributes of the god Shiva, in whose name a beggar at that very instant demanded charity.

There is a picturesque orchard of mango and date trees on the eastern side of the town, but the soil is too thin on the uplands around it to support much vegetation. The garden of the Resident is artificially made. His residence, which I visited, is a stately stone mansion, with large and lofty rooms, furnished in superb style. He maintains a great state, which he may well do on a salary of £4,000 a year, in a country where labor and the ordinary necessities of life cost next to nothing. The wages of a field-laborer here are two annas (six cents) a day, he finding his own food. Women receive one and a half annas, and boys one anna daily. House servants are better paid, as they are obliged to wear rather more garments, but, as each has his particular business, eight or ten are required to do the work of a small family.

I found the weather unpleasantly cold, coming from the

latitude of Bombay. During the nights the temperature was so low that thin cakes of ice frequently formed on shallow pools. From the supplies thus collected, the English residents are furnished with ice during a part of the hot season.

CHAPTER VII.

THE MAIL-CART.

The Mail-Cart—Setting out from Indore—Night Travel—Stupidity of the Natives—Mussulmen—Nearly an Accident—Scenery of the Road—A Polite Englishman—Miseries of the Journey—A Tiger Party—Budjrungurb—Goonah—A Free Use of Hospitality—The Thugs and Robbers—Second Halt—Miss Burroughs—Going On—The Plain of Hindostan—Approach to Agra—A Landmark.

At sunset on the 11th of January, I took leave of my hospitable hosts at Indore, and again ventured upon unknown seas. I had taken passage for Agra in the mail-cart, a vehicle precisely resembling the banghy cart, but with the advantage of greater speed. The distance to be travelled was 380 miles, and the fare 50 rupees, which is considered very cheap in India, but would be very dear in any other country. The average rate of speed is from eight to nine miles an hour, so that the mail reaches Agra in a little more than two days from Indore; but as few mortal frames would be equal to such work, travellers are allowed to make the journey in several stages, by stepping at any of the dawk bungalows on the road and waiting for the next day's mail.

The mail cart is propelled by two horses, one of which is an outrigger. This facilitates the ascent of slight elevations

in the road, except when the two animals choose to move in different directions, which is by no means a rare occurrence. However, I found that I could retain my position on the box without holding fast with both hands, and this was a great improvement on the banghy cart. We set off at a full gallop, over a hard, well beaten road, and through a rolling, open country. The twilight died away and the young moon went down before we reached Dewas, twenty-four miles from Indore, and thenceforth we galloped by starlight. Ever the same rolling upland, thinly inhabited and scantily cultivated; broad belts of jungle, more dreary and stunted than in the regions south of the Nerbudda, and crossed by frequent abrupt nullas. Occasionally we passed low ranges of stony hills, where the rate of our speed caused a most intolerable jolting. The native villages, slumbering under the broad arms of peepul and banyan trees, were picturesque enough in the gloom, which hid their dirt and deformity, while the grotesque cones of their temples were the only objects that showed with any distinctness. The silent driver always blew a discordant blast on his horn while passing through these villages, and on approaching the post-stations, which are from five to seven miles apart. We always found a few sleepy grooms in waiting with the fresh horses, which were slowly harnessed to our cart, and after going through their exercise of backing and rearing, sprang forward with a galvanic start, and an impetus which did not cease until we were up at the next post.

Thus the night wore away. My only amusement was in watching the Great Bear, as he slowly wheeled around the pole-star, for in my previous watches I had learned to

measure the hours of the night by his progress. The driver now and then made a remark, very profound, no doubt, if I had understood it. I always assented, to avoid discussion, which would have been embarrassing, and if he addressed a question to me, invariably answered: "I don't know." There is no use in telling these people that you don't understand their language, for they jabber away to you just the same as ever. It is much better to make a short and despotic use of the few words you know, and restrict the conversation to those remarks which are indispensable. As we proceeded northward, I noticed that Arabic words were frequently used. The form of salutation was the usual "salaam aleikoom" of the East, and the driver exclaimed, each time that he mounted the cart: "in the name of the most merciful God." In addition to this, he frequently touched the rim of the wheel and his forehead alternately several times with his fore-finger—probably as a charm to prevent accidents, and I devoutly hoped it might be efficacious, for we had no other safeguard. Had the axle snapped, as in the case of the banghy-cart, I should not have gotten off so easily.

When morning came, there was so little change in the features of the landscape that I could have believed myself still in sight of Indore, and yet we had made more than a hundred miles during the night. I was quite benumbed from the coldness of the air, and began to feel the effects of the jolts I had undergone. Soon after sunrise the driver discovered that one of the linch-pins was broken off, so that the wheel kept its place from mere force of habit. He asked me whether he should proceed, but as I knew he only put the question for form's sake, since the mail could not be detained

I told him to drive on, which he did, "in the name of the most merciful God." Our speed, after this, was more furious than before, and a mad gallop of six miles, during which I constantly kept myself braced in an attitude to spring out, brought us to the next post, where we were fortunate enough to find a substitute for the pin. During the day we passed two mail-carts, lying by the road-side, with their axles broken.

Nothing could exceed the monotony of the scenery, which while the dry season lasts, wears a bleak and desolate aspect. During the rains, when the soil is hidden under a deluge of herbage, and the ragged shrubbery of the jungles starts into new bloom and foliage, it must present a very different appearance. Except in the sheltered hollows, where the palm still flourished, there was no token of a tropical climate. I found more interest in observing the crowds of natives whom we met on the road. In addition to the different Indian races, who had now become tolerably familiar to me, there were occasionally men of taller stature, lighter complexion, and a bold, unsubmissive expression of face, whom I took to be Sikhs or Affghans.

About noon we reached a place called Bursud, where there was a traveller's bungalow, occupied by an English family. A lady was standing in the verandah, and I took off my hat to her as we passed. Politeness is its own reward, for no sooner had we stopped to change horses, than the lady's husband made his appearance, and very politely asked me to take some refreshments. The invitation was timely, for the appetite of a hungry man is not satisfied with biscuits (which was all my store), but I had determined to reach Goonah, half-way to Agra, before resting, and could not detain the mail. I only men

tion the circumstance as another instance of the hospitality of the English in India.

By this time I was in that feverish and excitable condition which shows that one's powers of endurance are beginning to give way. I was bruised and shaken from head to foot racked with aches and pains, and above all exquisitely tortured by a small iron rod which ran around the box whereon we sat, to prevent our being thrown into the road. The mark of that rod was imprinted on my flesh for days afterwards. During the afternoon we came into a hilly country where the road was a little better, and I experienced some relief. The hills were covered with jungle, but there was cultivation in the valleys between, especially about the little town of Ragoo-gurh, which is the residence of a Rajah. It is a walled town of rectangular form, with round towers at the corners, but the walls have tumbled down in various places, making unsightly breaches and disclosing the poverty of the dwellings within.

A short distance further we overtook a large concourse of natives, all of whom carried long bamboo poles in their hands. Among them were several cheprassees, or Government servants, and two or three sepoys. They all drew up in a line on each side of the road, making the most profound salaams as I passed between their ranks. I was at a loss to understand this display until, at the end of the concourse, I came upon a magnificent elephant (the largest I ever saw), when I decided that these must be the attendants of the Rajah of Ragoo-gurh. The whole thing was explained, however, by the appearance of two English gentlemen and some attendants carrying a wild boar. They had been out tiger hunting, and the

crowd of natives with bamboos were the "beaters," who are employed in India, instead of dogs, to sweep the jungles and start the beasts from their coverts. One of the gentlemen, I afterwards learned, was one of the most noted tiger slayers in the country, and had just recovered from being dreadfully mangled by a panther, an accident which had lamed him for life. He had suffered fever, lockjaw, paralysis and partial mortification, yet outlived them all, to the amazement of every body and the dismay of the tigers.

At the mouth of a wide bay formed by the hills is the town of Budjrungurh, which, according to an itinerary of the road, is the residence of one of Scindiah's pundits; so that, if I had not the satisfaction of beholding a learned Pundit, I at least saw his habitation. The town is perched on a tongue of land which shoots out from the hills, dropping into a precipice of naked red rock on three sides. With its tottering walls, and the tall, parabolic domes of a cluster of temples on the plain below, it made a striking picture in passing. There was now but one more stage to Goonah, and after passing the shoulder of the hill beyond Budjrungurh, I saw in the distance the goal for which I had been so ardently longing. Its thatched houses, half hidden in groves of tamarind and date-palm, beckoned to me across a broad plain of wheat and poppies, which basked in the warm light of the descending sun. In half an hour I dismounted in the bazaar, having travelled 185 miles in less than twenty-four hours.

The traveller's bungalow was occupied by an invalided officer, who had charge of keeping the post-stations in order. There was a spare room, which I at once appropriated, and throwing myself upon the bare charpoy pedestal, fell asleep

I was aroused by a native, whom I took to be the khitmudgar of the bungalow, and who delivered himself of several unintelligible sentences. I thereupon went to the officer's room, and with an apology for my intrusion, begged him to interpret for me. "Why," said the captain, "he says you have only to order what you like for dinner—beef-steak, mutton chops, sherry, brandy or beer." Here is truly a model bungalow I thought. "Will you tell him," I asked, "to get me the best dinner he can, and a bottle of beer, as soon as possible?" "The dinner is ready," said the servant; which means that you will get it in three hours, and in just that time it was brought to me. But the next day I discovered, accidentally, that the man I had taken for the khitmudgar was the captain's own servant, and that the worthy officer had simply translated his own hospitable message to me!

An English Lieutenant, who was encamped in the village with a company of sepoy, came up and spent the evening with me. He was born in India, and I was the second American he had ever seen. He invited me strongly to stop the next evening at Meeana, where he proposed to encamp, and promised to prepare refreshments for me. He moved away early in the morning, and as I could not stop at Meeana, I saw him no more. The mail-cart came along the next day about two P. M., and as I had spent all the morning in sleep, I felt ready to undertake the latter half of the journey. When I called the true khitmudgar, in order to pay him for my meals, he declared that I owed him nothing, for every thing had been sent to me by the "captain-sahib." I then went to the latter, explained my mistake and apologized for my apparent rudeness, for any other course was out of the question

"Pshaw " said the Captain, bluntly : "don't say a word. As long as I live in the bungalow, travellers are of course my guests."

My host, moreover, warned me against a frightful nulla, or gully, in which the mail-cart was upset a few days before, and the driver's thigh broken. Night came on before we reached the locality, but though we crossed a number of deep nullas, I could not discover the scene of the accident. Robbers are plentiful in this part of the country, and even the mail-cart had just been plundered. All the region between Indore and Agra, was once noted as being the principal haunt of the Thugs, or Stranglers. The system is now almost if not wholly extinct ; at least, the Thugs no longer dare to practise their horrid trade upon Europeans. This is owing to the vigorous measures adopted by the Government, which has lately taken up the task of suppressing infanticide, and will, it is to be hoped, be equally successful.

Not to tire the reader with too many details of my progress, I will only state that about ten o'clock that evening I reached a village called Tongra, on the banks of a small lake, and was there obliged to halt another day, on account of the seat thence to Agra having been previously engaged by an English officer. The rest was not unwelcome, and the silent and attentive khitmudgar was a capital purveyor. On leaving, I indorsed the opinion of Miss Burroughs, who wrote in the traveller's book that this was the only bungalow worthy of the name. I was pleased to see that all travellers since her time had done the same, for several pages were thickly studied with : " Ditto to Miss Burroughs."

At the same hour on the following evening the mail-cart

came, and away we galloped over rolling uplands, through wastes of jungle, and across umberless nullas. Thus the chill, uncomfortable night passed away. The rising sun showed a barren valley, shut in by brown hills, covered with long grass and and. Climbing out of this valley upon a bleak eminence, I saw like a boundless sea before me, the great Plain of Hindostan—that vast, alluvial level, which extends without a break from Calcutta to the Indus. We now entered on a richer and more cheerful region. The villages were embowered in tamarind and sycamore trees, and with the exception of occasional belts of sand, the plain was well cultivated. We were ferried across the Chumbul, the principal affluent of the Junna—a shallow river, nearly half a mile in breadth, and flowing at the bottom of a deep bed which it has worn for itself in the sandy soil.

Passing Dholpore, the residence of a Rajah, and Jajow, a picturesque old place, with a handsome mosque and serai, we rapidly approached Agra. I looked forward to the distant belt of trees which hid the city, with the sensation of a man, who, after drifting for days on a dangerous sea, approaches a safe harbor. At last, a snow-white dome stood suddenly on the horizon, and I hailed the renowned Taj Mahal, for I knew it could be none other. There was Agra, the City of Akbar, and I—to borrow the words of Eothen—I had lived to see and I saw it.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE CITY OF AKBAR.

Akbarabad—The Modern City—The English Cantonments—Rev. Mr Warren—The Fort of Agra—The Jumma Musjeed—Entering the Fort—Judgment-Seat of the Emperor—The Gates of Somnauth—Akbar's Palace—Splendor of its Decorations—The Palace of Glass—A Cracked Throne—The Pearl Mosque—Tomb of Akbar, at Secundra—An Indian Landscape—Saracenic Art—Mission Printing-Office—The American Missions—The Agra Jail—Dr. Walker's System of Education—Arithmetic in Chorus—Effect of the System.

AGRA is still called by the natives **AKBARABAD**—the City of Akbar—from the renowned Emperor to whom it owes its origin. All its former splendor grew up under his reign, and all its architectural remains, except the Taj Mahal, date from his time. In this respect it differs from Delhi, which, although still called by the Mohammedans Shahjehanabad, (from Shah Jehan, the grandson of Akbar), is more especially the capital of the Mogul Emperors, and bears the memorials of many successive reigns. Yet I doubt whether their combined feebleness of lights can equal the sunlike lustre of Akbar's name, and whether their city, with all its stores of historic associations, can so interest and attract the traveller as this, the capital of the greatest man who ever ruled in India

The modern city is not even the shadow of the ancient capital. *That* has wholly passed away, except the Fort—a city in itself—and some ruined palaces on the bank of the Jumna. But for nearly two miles in every direction, the mounds, remains of walls and other indications of habitations are abundant. Much more was to be seen a few years ago than at present, but as the old bricks were constantly taken to construct new buildings, these vestiges gradually disappeared. The population, which once numbered more than half a million, has dwindled to about 70,000, and the native city has little more to interest the traveller than any ordinary Indian town—Indore, for instance. There is one principal street, passing through its whole length to the gates of the Fort, and in this are situated the residences of the wealthier inhabitants, which are generally of brick or red sandstone. The verandahs and hanging balconies, with their exquisite Saracenic arches, carved ornaments and stone lattice-work, remind one of Cairo. The street is also a sort of bazaar, and during the day presents a very busy and animated scene. It is so narrow that two vehicles can with difficulty pass, while all the other streets of the city are only attainable by pedestrians. On the side facing the Jumna there are few striking buildings except the Custom-House, once the palace of a rich native. Stone ghauts, here and there, lead down to the holy stream, which at the time of my visit was so much diminished by the dry season that it did not occupy more than one-third of its bed.

South of the city are the cantonments, divided into the civil and military lines, and occupying a space of five miles in length by nearly two in breadth. The bungalows of the Eng

lish residents are neat, cottage-like buildings of one story, with steep, thatched roofs. Each stands in its own "compound," or enclosure, so that the cantonments present a truly suburban aspect. Broad roads, as smooth and hard as a floor, run in all directions, and offer admirable drives to the inhabitants, whose buggies may be seen at all hours of the day, dashing back and forth. A spacious square, planted with young trees, is called the Park, and beyond this rises the lofty spire of the English Church. The various public buildings—the Bank, the Post-office, the Government House, and others, are distinguished from the private residences by their size, but have little pretension to architectural beauty.

On entering Agra I was taken to the traveller's bungalow, which stands on a waste plat of ground, adjoining the Park. The succeeding day was so cold, dull and rainy, that I remained indoors, and rested my shattered frame. Mr. Thomasson, the Governor of the north-western provinces, to whom I had letters, was absent at Benares, but I was most hospitably received by Rev. Mr. Warren, an American Missionary, under whose roof I sojourned during my stay. Under his guidance, and that of Mr. Hutton, the Editor of *The Agra Messenger*, I visited all the objects of interest in the city and vicinity.

The Fort, which contains the Palace of Akbar, and the celebrated Motee Musjeed or Pearl Mosque, is one of the grandest structures of the kind in India. It is about a mile and a half in circuit, and its stately, embrasured battlement of red sandstone are seventy feet in height. Nothing can be more imposing than the view of this immense mass of masonry, rising high above the buildings of the modern city, and almost

overtopping the domes of the Jumma Musjeed (Sunday mosque), which stands without its gates. Its appearance, nevertheless, is very deceptive with regard to its strength, for the walls, impregnable as they look, are mere shells, and would not stand a single day's cannonading.

Before entering the Fort, I visited the Jumma Musjeed. The front of the mosque faces the principal gate, a broad, enclosed square, which is now used as a market-place, intervening between. The mosque stands on a lofty platform, which is reached by a spacious flight of steps. In India all places of worship, except the inner shrines—the holy of holies—are open to the conquerors, who walk in, booted and spurred, where the Hindoo and Moslem put their shoes from off their feet. I should willingly have complied with this form, as I did in other Moslem countries, but was told that it was now never expected of a European, and would be in fact a depreciation of his dignity. The Jumma Musjeed is a melancholy picture of ruin. The walls which enclose the fore-court are tumbling down, and the inlaid inscriptions which surround the façade are falling out, piece by piece. The body of the mosque is divided into a central and two smaller side-halls, each of which opens upon the court-yard by a lofty, arched portal, and is surmounted by a swelling oriental dome, of corresponding proportions. India being east of Mecca, the mosque of course occupies the western side of the court, and at each of the adjacent corners rises a lofty and graceful minaret. This is the plan on which all Indian mosques are built, and they vary in architectural beauty according as the portals, the domes and minarets approach a true artistic proportion.

Crossing by a drawbridge over the deep moat which sur

rounds the Fort, we passed through a massive gateway and up a paved ascent to the inner entrance, which shows considerable taste. It consists of two octagonal towers of red sandstone, inlaid with ornamental designs in white marble. The passage between them is covered by two domes, which seem to rise from accretions of prismatic stalactites, as in the domes of the Moorish Alhambra. This elegant portal, however, instead of opening upon the courts of palaces, ushers you into a waste of barren mounds, covered with withered grass. But over the blank red walls in front, you see three marble domes, glittering in the sunshine like new-fallen snow, and still further, the golden pinnacles of Akbar's palace, and these objects hint that your dream of the magnificence of the Great Mogul will not be entirely dispelled.

But first, let us visit the modern Arsenal, which was once the *diwan*, or Judgment-seat of Akbar. It was formerly an open portico, or *loggia*, the roof resting on three rows of pillars, which were connected by Saracenic arches; but at present, the outer row of arches being walled up, it forms a spacious hall, divided into three aisles. All the weapons of modern warfare, with here and there a crooked scimeter or battle-axe, of ancient times, are ranged round the pillars and between the arches in those symmetrical groupings peculiar to instruments of death. At the intersections of the central arches hang tri-colored banners of red, blue and yellow, with the names of the British victories in India inscribed upon them in English and Sanscrit. The great curiosity, however, is the celebrated gate of Somnauth, which was carried off by that stern iconoclast, Sultan Mahmoud of Ghuznee. Somnauth was a holy Brahminical city on the coast of Goojerat, and noted at that

time for the wealth and magnificence of its temples. It is related of Mahmoud, that, after having taken the city and commenced demolishing the idols, the Brahmins offered him immense sums if he would spare the deity of their great temple. Mahmoud was only tempted for an instant. "Truth," he said, is better than gold," and raising his iron mace, he smote the idol, which, as it split, poured from its hollow body a store of gold and jewels far exceeding what the Brahmins had offered him. This incident has afforded subject for poetry to Rückert, the German poet, and our own Lowell.

The gates were taken by Mahmoud to his capital of Ghuznee, where they remained until the recent invasion of Affghanistan by the English, when that fantastic individual, Lord Ellenborough, bore them off to Agra. They are about twelve feet high, elaborately carved and inlaid, and said to be composed entirely of sandal-wood. On one of the panels three metal bosses are nailed. According to tradition, they were taken from Mahmoud's shield. In the centre of the hall is the throne whence Akbar pronounced judgment, after the cases had been discussed in his presence. It is a pavilion of white marble, inlaid with jasper and cornelian, in the form of flowers, ornamental scrolls and sentences from the Koran. Below it is an immense slab of white marble, on which he was accustomed to seat himself.

Beyond the arsenal, and in that part of the Fort overlooking the Jumna, is the monarch's palace, still in a tolerable state of preservation. Without a ground-plan it would be difficult to describe in detail its many courts, its separate masses, of buildings and its detached pavilions—which combine to form a labyrinth, so full of dazzling architectural ef

fects, that it is almost impossible to keep the clue. On entering the outer courts, I was at once reminded of the Alhambra. Here were the same elegant Moorish arches, with their tapering bases of open filigree work resting on slender double shafts—a style so light, airy and beautiful, that it seems fit only for a palace of fairies. Akbar's palace is far more complete than the Alhambra. No part has been utterly destroyed, and the marks of injury by Time and battle, are comparatively slight. Here a cannon-ball has burst its way through the marble screen of the Sultana's pavilion; there an inlaid blossom of cornelian, with leaves of blood-stone, has been wantonly dug out of its marble bed; the fountains are dry, the polished tank in the "Bath of Mirrors" is empty, the halls are untenanted—but this is all. No chamber, no window or staircase is wanting, and we are able to re-people the palace with the household of the great Emperor, and to trace out the daily routine of his duties and pleasures.

The substructions of the palace are of red sandstone, but nearly the whole of its corridors, chambers and pavilions are of white marble, wrought with the most exquisite elaboration of ornament. The pavilions overhanging the river are inlaid, within and without, in the rich style of Florentine mosaic. They are precious caskets of marble, glittering all over with jasper, agate, cornelian, blood-stone and lapis-lazuli, and topped with golden domes. Balustrades of marble, wrought in open patterns of such rich design that they resemble fringes of lace when seen from below, extend along the edge of the battlements. The Jumna washes the walls, seventy feet below, and from the balconies attached to the *zenana*, or women's apartments, there are beautiful views of the gardens and

palm-groves on the opposite bank, and that wonder of India, the Taj, shining like a palace of ivory and crystal, about a mile down the stream.

The most curious part of the palace is the *Sheesh Mahàl* (Palace of Glass), which is an oriental bath, the chambers and passages whereof are adorned with thousands of small mirrors, disposed in the most intricate designs. The water falls in a broad sheet into the marble pool, over brilliant lamps, and the fountains are so constructed as to be lighted from within. Mimic cascades tumble from the walls, over slabs of veined marble, into basins so curiously carved that the motion of the water produces the appearance of fish. This bath must once have realized all the fabled splendors of Arabian story. The chambers of the Sultanas and the open courts connecting them are filled with fountains. Though the building is an incrustation of gold, marble, and precious stones, water is still its most beautiful ornament. Within these fairy precincts lie the gardens, still overrun with roses and jasmine vines, in the midst of which fountains are playing. There is also a court, paved with squares of black and white marble, so as to form a *pachisi* board. This is a game resembling backgammon, but, instead of ivory pieces, it was played on this colossal board by Akbar and his wives, or eunuchs, with girls, who trotted from square to square as the moves were made.

On an open terrace in front of the *Diwan e'Khaz*, where Akbar sat on great occasions, is his throne, a slab of black marble, about six feet square. It is cracked entirely through, which my old guide accounted for by saying that when the Mahrattas took Agra, the Rajah of Bhurtpore seated himself on the throne, whereupon it not only cracked from side to

side, but blood gushed out of its top, in two places. When Lord Ellenborough was Governor-General of India, he also sat upon it, causing it to shed blood a second time. There are two red stains on its surface, which sufficiently attest these miracles to all good Mussulmen. Opposite the throne is a smaller one of white marble, where, if tradition may be relied on, the Emperor's fool, or jester, took his place and burlesqued his master.

Before leaving the Fort, I visited the Motee Musjeed, or Pearl Mosque, as it is poetically and justly termed. It is, in truth, the pearl of all mosques, of small dimensions, but absolutely perfect in style and proportions. It is lifted on a lofty sandstone platform, and from without nothing can be seen but its three domes of white marble with their gilded spires. In all distant views of the Fort these domes are seen, like silvery bubbles which have rested a moment on its walls, and which the next breeze will sweep away. Ascending a long flight of steps, a heavy door was opened for me, and I stood in the court-yard of the mosque. Here, nothing was to be seen but the quadrangle of white marble, with the mosque on its western side, and the pure blue of the sky overhead. The three domes crown a deep corridor, open toward the court, and divided into three aisles by a triple row of the most exquisitely proportioned Saracenic arches. The Motee Musjeed can be compared to no other edifice that I have ever seen. To my eye it is a perfect type of its class. While its architecture is the purest Saracenic, which some suppose cannot exist without ornament, it shows the severe simplicity of Doric art. It has, in fact, nothing which can properly be termed ornament. It is a sanctuary so pure and stainless, revealing

so exalted a spirit of worship that I felt humbled, as a Christian, to think that our nobler religion has so rarely inspired its architects to surpass this temple to God and Mohammed.

After visiting the palace, Mr. Warren accompanied me to the tomb of Akbar, at Secundra, about six miles from Agra. Secundra takes its name from Alexander, whose invasion of India has thus been commemorated by the Moguls. The great Macedonian, however, did not penetrate so far as this, his battle with Porus having been fought on the Jhelum, or Hydaspes, beyond Lahore. The road to Secundra is studded with tombs, and there are many remains of palaces on the bank of the Jumna. The tomb of Akbar stands in the midst of a large square garden, which has a lofty gateway of red sandstone in the centre of each of its sides. From these four gateways, which are upward of seventy feet high, four grand causeways of hewn stone converge to the central platform, on which the mausoleum stands. The intermediate spaces are filled with orange, mango, banana, palm and peepul trees. In the centre of the causeways are immense tanks and fountains. The platform of solid stone which terminates these magnificent approaches is about four hundred feet square. The mausoleum, which is square, measures more than three hundred feet on a side, and rises in five terraces, in a pyramidal form, to the height of one hundred feet. Around each of the terraces runs an arched gallery, surmounted by a row of cupolas, resting on small pillars. The material of the edifice is red sandstone, except the upper story, which is of white marble.

A long, descending passage leads from the main entrance to a vaulted hall in the centre of the structure. Light is admitted through a few small openings in the dome, barely suf

ficient to show you a plain tomb, in the form of a sarcophagus with a wreath of fresh roses lying upon it. Beneath it is the dust of Akbar, one of the greatest men who ever wielded a sceptre—the fourth descendant in a direct line from Tamerlane, the grandson of Baber, the Conqueror, and the grandfather of Shah Jehan, in him culminated the wisdom, the power and the glory of that illustrious line. I doubt if the annals of any family that ever reigned can furnish six successive monarchs comparable, in the greatness of their endowments and the splendor of their rule, to Baber, Humayoon, Akbar, Jehan Ghir, Shah Jehan and Aurung-Zebe.

On the summit of the mausoleum, which is open to the sky, and surrounded by screens of marble, wrought into patterns of marvellous richness and variety, stands a second tomb, under a pavilion of marble, covered with a gilded dome. This is exquisitely sculptured, containing the ninety-nine names of God, in raised Arabic characters, infolded in elaborate scroll-work. At each corner of the upper terrace are two marble turrets, the domes of which are covered with gilded and emblazoned tiles. The screens of marble filigree around the sides are arranged in panels, no two of which present the same design. There are small openings, at intervals, through which I looked out on the level country watered by the Jumna—yellow sandy tracts near the river, but receding into green wheat-fields and dark mango-groves. Agra was almost hidden from sight by the trees, but above them rose the spires of two Christian churches, the red battlements of the Fort, and farther off the dome of the Taj, a silvery disc, like the gibbous moon, just hanging on the horizon. A warmth and sunny silence, like that of Egypt, hung over the land

scape. What I had seen of the splendor of the Moguls and what I then saw, overpowered me like a magnificent dream.

We in America hear so little of these things, and even the accounts we get from English travellers are generally so confused and unsatisfactory, that the reader must pardon me, if in attempting the description, I lose myself in details. I thought the Alcazar of Seville and the Alhambra of Granada had already presented me with the purest types of Saracenic architecture, but I was mistaken. I found, in India, conceptions of Art far nobler and embodiments far more successful. There is a Saracenic, as distinctly as there is a Greek and Gothic school of Art—not the inferior, but the equal of these.

At Secundra, the tomb of Akbar's Christian wife, the Begum Mariam, who is believed to have been a Portuguese woman—has been taken by the Church Mission, which has converted it into a printing establishment. It is the largest office of the kind in India, giving employment to about three hundred men, most of whom are natives. Printing is carried on in English, Hindee, Urdoo, Sanscrit and Persian. There is a type foundry connected with it, in which the casting is done entirely by natives. The wages paid in these establishments vary from \$1 50 to \$4 per month. Many of the laborers are Christians, there being a native Christian community of about five hundred persons attached to the Secundra Mission. Most of these, however, are persons picked up during the great famine of 1837, when thousands of children, having been deserted by their parents, were taken by the Missionaries and educated in the Christian faith. During that year the Missions prospered exceedingly. The Presbyterian Mission, at the head of which is Mr. Warren, had just established

seminaries of education for both sexes, where instruction was furnished at a rate which allowed the poorest of the European and half-caste population to send their children. Native scholars were of course admitted, but were obliged to share in the religious instruction of the European children. These schools were under the charge of the Rev. Mr. Fullerton and his wife. Whether Missions in general repay the vast pecuniary expense and sacrifice of life and talent which they exact, is a question concerning which I have strong doubts; but that they have accomplished good in India, and that their ministers are conscientious, zealous and laborious men, I am well satisfied.

Mr. Warren also took me to visit the Agra Jail, in which a new and interesting experiment is now being tested. The jail there is a sort of general penitentiary, whither prisoners are sent from all parts of the north-western provinces. The number then incarcerated was about 2,800. The jail encloses a space of about forty acres, wherein are numbers of small buildings and manufactories, as the prisoners are all required to labor about eight hours a day. Dr. Walker, the Superintendent, who formerly had charge of the jail at Mynpoorie, introduced a system of prison education, which was so successful, that when he was promoted to the management of the great central jail at Agra, he determined to continue it. At first he experienced great difficulty, the prisoners suspecting that some mysterious Christian doctrine lay covert in the multiplication-table and the spelling-book; but his perseverance so wrought upon them that all of those employed at labor within the jail (700 being kept upon the roads, in fettered gangs), were willing scholars.

Dr. Walker was kind enough to conduct me through the jail, and put the prisoners through their exercises. It was a most remarkable spectacle. Here were hundreds of men seated at their looms, weaving carpets, singing the multiplication table in thundering chorus. "*Twelve times twelve*," sang the monitor, in a shrill solo: "*One hundred and forty-four!*" burst out the chorus, in all sorts of voices. We went into the blacksmiths shops where the prisoners, by a refinement of punishment, were made to forge their own fetters, themselves fettered. "*Seven times sixteen*," sang the solo, as he raised his hammer. "*One hundred and twelve*," was roared in answer, drowning the clang and bang of the iron. In the women's department there was a shrill tempest of vulgar fractions; the cooks recited astronomical facts while mixing their rice. Even the hardest cases, confined in solitary cells, were going on with their "*a-b abs*," through a hole in the door, to a monitor standing outside. The murderers, confined for life (of whom there were several hundred), were not exempted, but went through the numerals while they worked at paper-making. I brought away a sheet of paper, made entirely by these wretches, and will present it to King Bomba, whenever he is ready to write his abdication.

There is a monthly examination of the prisoners, and they who can read a short story, and repeat the multiplication table of whole numbers and fractions up to 16×16 , $6\frac{1}{2} \times 25$ and $6\frac{1}{2} \times 6\frac{1}{2}$, are entitled to a visit from their friends or a bath in the Jumna, if Hindoos, and a visit to the Taj, if Moslems. The more advanced scholars are obliged to pass in writing, the facts of astronomy, simple and compound interest, &c. There is great emulation among the prisoners, and their progress is

very rapid. As one result of the system, in their moral improvement, it will be enough to state that in 1851, before it was introduced, the number of punishments administered for offences committed within the jail, was 162; in 1852, after its introduction, the number so punished was 18. It is not much to the credit of the Government that it only allows the miserable sum of five rupees (\$2 50) a month in support of so important an experiment

CHAPTER IX

THE RUINS OF FUTTEHPORE-SIKREE

Excursion to Futtelpore-Sikree—The Road Thither—Approach to the Ruins—Their Extent and Grandeur—The Palace of Rajah Beer-Bul—Perfect Condition of the Remains—Shekh Bushârat-Ali—Age of Futtelpore—The Emperor's Palace—Rooms of the Sultana Mariam—Akbar's Tolerance—The Five Palaces—The Pillar of Council—Profusion of Ornament—The Emperor's Salutation—The Elephant Gate and Tower—The Durgah—Shekh Selim-Chishti—He gives a Son to the Emperor—The Splendor of his Tomb—View from the Gateway—An Experiment—Tiffin in the Palace—The Story of the Rajah Beer-Bul and the Ruby—Last View of Futtelpore-Sikree.

BEFORE leaving Agra I made an excursion to the ruins of Futtelpore-Sikree, which are about twenty two miles to the west of the city. I had been so strongly counselled to visit the place, as well from its historic interest (having been the favorite residence of Akbar), as from the extent and magnificence of its remains, that I postponed for another day, though reluctantly, my departure for Delhi. Mr. Sherer, one of the Secretaries of Government, kindly offered to accompany me, and through his familiarity with the history of those times, the now desolate spot was peopled for me with the phantoms of its former inhabitants. I have rarely had the Past so

vividly restored, or so completely given myself up to its illusions. The day was one of the whitest in my calendar, and not unworthy to be chronicled beside the memorable Theban days of the previous year.

In order to make the excursion in a single day, I had relays of horses sent out in advance, and took my departure before sunrise, in a light *garree*—a two-wheeled vehicle, resembling a genteel cart. The road was broad and good for the first eight miles, and bordered by stately acacia, peepul and neem trees. I passed two or three large walled gardens, belonging to native Rajahs, and a cleanly little village, with several small temples to Vishnu and Shiva. The road gradually became rougher, though the country still continued level and tolerably cultivated. My horses, inspired by the pleasant morning air, trotted merrily along, and before three hours were over, Futtehpore-Sikree was in view. A low range of red sandstone hills appeared in the west, with here and there a crumbling ruin on the crest. The extremity of this range, about four miles distant, was covered with a mass of walls, terraces and spires, crowned with a majestic portal, which rose high above them, gleaming against the sky with a soft red lustre, as the sun shone full upon it.

As I approached nearer, I found that this part of the hill was surrounded by a lofty wall of red sandstone, with a machicolated or notched parapet, and a spacious gate, through which my road ran. It is almost entire, and upwards of six miles in circuit, enclosing a portion of the plain on both sides of the hill. Driving through the deserted gateway, I was amazed at the piles of ruins which met my eye. Here was a narrow hill, nearly a mile and a half in length, and averaging a hun

dred feet in height, almost entirely covered with the remains of palaces, mosques and public buildings, in some places nearly as perfect as when first erected, in others little else than shapeless masses of hewn stones. Innumerable pavilions resting on open arches, cupolas and turrets, shot up from this picturesque confusion; but the great portal, of which I have already spoken, dominated over all, colossal as one of the pylons of Karnak. The series of arched terraces, rising one above another up the sides of the hill, gave the place an air of barbaric grandeur, such as we imagine Babylon to have possessed, and of which there are traces in Martin's pictures. But here there was nothing sombre or stern; the bright red sandstone of the buildings, illumined here and there by a gilded spire, was bathed in a flood of sunshine, and stood, so shadowless as almost to lack perspective, against a cloudless sky. The modern village of Futtehpoore at the foot of the hill, was adorned with beautiful trees, and that part of the plain enclosed within the ancient walls was green with fields of young wheat.

I drove through the long, rambling street of Futtehpoore, not without considerable risk of destroying the stock of the native merchants, for the space between their shopboards was scarcely wider than my *garree*. Then owing to the stupidity of the groom, who had missed the road, I was obliged to return as I came, and finally climbed the hill on foot. In the palace of Rajah Beer-Bul one of Akbar's Prime Ministers, I found Mr. Sherer, who had come out luring the night in a palanquin. The palace was an exquisite building, quite uninjured, and had been fitted up with tables, chairs carpets, etc., for the convenience of visitors to the place

There was a table set in a cool, vaulted hall in the second story, and Mr. Sherer's servants were preparing breakfast in the Rajah's kitchen. We took our seats on the massive stone terrace of the palace, to await the meal. The royal residence of Akbar was on our left; the grand Durgah, or tomb of Shekh Selim-Chishti on the right, and the empty quadrangles into which we looked, showed no trace of ruin. The stone pavements were partly overrun with grass, but not a block of the arched corridors surrounding them had tumbled from its place. How like yesterday seemed the Futtehpore of three centuries ago! The palace was deserted, not ruined, and its lord was not dead, but absent. I felt like an intruder in the sculptured chambers of Beer-Bul, and should not have been much surprised had a chobdâr, with his silver mace, made his appearance, to drive me away.

The guardian of the place, a lusty old Mussulman, named Shekh Busharat-Ali, came to make his salaam and accompany me over the ruins. He was a stout man of fifty-five, with a gray moustache, and a face expressive of great good-will and good-humor. He wore a white turban and a cotton gown, tied on the left shoulder, so as to expose the left side of a most sleek and capacious chest. The Hindoos and Parsees tie their garments on the right shoulder, in opposition to the Mussulmans. Busharat-Ali was a very devout follower of the Prophet, and knew most of the Koran in Arabic. He was greatly delighted when I addressed him in that language, and thereafter was continually repeating prayers and singing passages of the Koran, that I might perceive how much he knew. His knowledge of Futtehpore was much inferior to that of Mr. Sherer, who had carefully studied the history of Akbar's reign, but

he was a pleasant companion during our rambles among the ruins, and we suffered him to go through with his stories and traditions as usual.

After breakfast, we set out to make a thorough survey of the place. I should first state that Futtehpore-Sikree was a country residence of Akbar, and stood in the same relation to Agra that Windsor Castle does to London. It was completed in 1571, and for twelve years his court was stationed there. At that time it must have been a populous place, but it is probable that the dwellings of the lower classes of the natives consisted then, as now, of mud huts, for there are very few ruins on the plain surrounding the hill. The existence of a Mint and other public edifices, on a very large scale, shows that it was considered as a temporary capital, rather than as a mere palace of summer resort.

Commencing with the Emperor's palace, we first visited the separate dwelling assigned to his Christian wife. This, unlike other Moslem buildings, is covered with paintings in fresco, evidently by Persian artists. They are said to represent the adventures of the hero Rustum as related in Firdusi's '*Shah Nameh*.' Certain niches, however, over the doors and windows, contain pictures of a different character, and certainly have a religious significance. On one side are the Hindoo gods and goddesses—the elephant-headed Ganeish-Mahadeo, and Lokshmi—and on the other two tablets, almost obliterated, but still sufficiently distinct to show that one of them is intended for the Annunciation. Akbar's latitude in religious matters is well known, but I had not given him credit for so much toleration as this would imply. Among the ornamental designs of this palace, the Greek Cross is not

unusual, and it is related that when the Jesuits solicited the Emperor's protection, he replied to them: "What would you have? See! I have more crosses on my palace than you in your churches."

The buildings of the palace cover the crest of the hill, having superb views on both sides, over many a league of the fruitful plain. There is quite a labyrinth of courts, pavilions, small palaces, gateways, tanks, fountains, and terraces, and I found it difficult to obtain a clear idea of their arrangement. Most of the buildings are so well preserved that a trifling expense would make them habitable. For a scholar or poet I can conceive of no more delightful residence. Adjoining the palace of the Christian woman, stands the *Panch-Mahal* (Five Palaces), consisting of five square platforms, resting on richly carved pillars, and rising one above another in a pyramidal form, to a considerable height. Mr. Sherer supposes it to have been a sleeping place for the servants connected with the palace. Beyond it is a court-yard, paved with large slabs of sandstone, and containing a colossal *pachisi*-board, such as I have described in speaking of the Palace at Agra. In one corner of the court-yard is a labyrinthine building, of singular design, wherein the ladies of the Emperor's *zenana* were accustomed to play hide-and-seek. A little further is a sort of chapel, two stories high, and crowned with several cupolas. On entering, however, I found that there was but one story, extending to the dome, with a single pillar in the centre, rising to the height of the upper windows. This pillar has an immense capital of the richest sculpture, three times its diameter, with four stone causeways leading to the four corners of the chapel, where there are small platforms of the shape of a

quadrant. Tradition says that this building was used by Akbar as a place for discussing matters of science or religion, himself occupying the capital of the central pillar, while his chief men were seated in the four corners.

In this same court is a pavilion, consisting of a pyramidal canopy of elaborately carved stone, resting on four pillars, which have a cornice of peculiar design, representing a serpent. This pavilion approaches as near the Hindoo style of building, as is possible, without violating the architecture of the palace, which is a massive kind of Saracenic. It was the station of a Gooroo, or Hindoo Saint, whom Akbar, probably from motives of policy, kept near him. The palace of the Sultana of Constantinople is one mass of the most laborious sculpture. There is scarcely a square inch of blank stone in the building. But the same remark would apply to almost the whole of the palace, as well as to that of Beer-Bul. It is a wilderness of sculpture, where invention seems to have been taxed to the utmost to produce new combinations of ornament. Every thing is carved in a sandstone so fine and compact, that, except where injured by man, it appears nearly as sharp as when first chiselled. The amount of labor bestowed on Futteh-pore throws the stucco filigrees of the Alhambra quite into the shade. It is unlike any thing that I have ever seen. And yet the very name of this splendid collection of ruins, which cannot be surpassed anywhere, outside of Egypt, was unknown to me, before reaching India!

We paid rather a hasty visit to the *Diwán-e'-khaz*, the *Diwán e'-am*, and the mint. The latter is an immense quadrangle, half blocked up with ruins. In the diwan-e'-am, is the balcony where Akbar usually made his public appearance

in the morning, to the crowd waiting in the court to see or petition him. He was greeted on these occasions with the cry of "*Allah akbar!*" (God is great!) to which he invariably replied: "*Jilli jellalihoo!*" (May his glory shine!) This was a mode of salutation introduced by himself, because the two phrases contained his name—Jellal-ud-deen Akbar. I have frequently heard a very similar style of address in Bohemia, where the greeting is: "Praised be Jesus Christ!" and the answer: "In eternity. Amen."

On the north side of Beer-Bul's palace, a little further down the hill; is the famous Elephant Gate. Akbar at one time intended to make a fortress of the place, and commenced by building this gate, which is a very noble structure, flanked by two octagonal bastions: but Shekh Selim-Chishti, in whose sanctity the Emperor had great faith, threatened to leave, in case the plan was carried out, and the fortress was therefore relinquished. On each side of the gate is a colossal elephant, on a lofty pedestal, but both the animals have lost their trunks, and are otherwise mutilated. A steep paved road, between gardens, hanging one below the other on arched terraces, interrupted occasionally by the ruins of palaces, leads down the hill to the Elephant's Tower, a minaret about ninety feet high, and studded from top to bottom with the tusks of elephants. There is much discussion concerning its character, but the most plausible supposition is that it was erected by Akbar over the grave of a favorite elephant. It is called by the natives the *Hirun Minar* (Antelope tower).

By this time it was two hours past noon, and I still had the famous Durgah to see. We therefore retraced our steps, and ascended to the highest part of the hill, where the tomb

rises like a huge square fortress, overtopping the palace of Akbar himself. We mounted a long flight of steps, and entered a quadrangle so spacious, so symmetrical, so wonderful in its decorations, that I was filled with amazement. Fancy paved court-yard, 428 feet in length by 406 in breadth, surrounded with a pillared corridor 50 feet high; one of the noblest gateways in the world, 120 feet high; a triple-domed mosque on one side; a large tank and fountain in the centre, and opposite the great portal, the mother-of-pearl and marble tomb of the Shekh, a miniature palace, gleaming like crystal with its gilded domes, its ivory pillars, and its wreaths of wondrous, flower-like ornaments, inwrought in marble filigree. The court, with its immense gate, seemed an enchanted fortress, solely erected to guard the precious structure within.

Shekh Selim-Chishti was a very holy man, who became known as such by his intimacy with tigers, several of whom lived with him in a cave on the hill where his tomb now stands. His renown reached the ears of Akbar, who, finding him to be a man of apparent sanctity and considerable wisdom, built the palace of Futtehpore-Sikree, it is said, to be near him. He consulted him on all important occasions, and, as the story goes, was finally indebted to him for an heir to his throne. For some time after Akbar's accession, he was without a son, and twice demanded of the Shekh whether he should ever have one. "No," said the latter; "it is not so written." Now he, the Shekh, had an infant son of six months old; for these Moslem saints are the reverse of celibates. Upon Akbar coming to make the demand a third time and receiving the same answer, this infant, who was present in his cradle during the interview, suddenly spoke

although never before had he so much as lisped a syllable 'Father,' said he, "why do you send away the Conqueror of the World, in despair?" "Because," said the Shekh, although he marvelled not a little at this unexpected question; "there is no son written for him, unless another will give up the life of a child destined for him; and who will do this?" "If you permit me, father," said the infant, "I will die, that a son may be born to the Emperor,"—and even before the Shekh signified his consent, he gave up the ghost. That day an heir to the throne was conceived, and in due time was born. There are scandalous persons, however, who say that this is an allegory, veiling a truth, and that the Shekh, in procuring an heir for the Emperor, did, in fact, give up his own son, but without destroying his life. Be that as it may, Jehan-Ghir, the son of Akbar, bore the name of Selim until he ascended the throne.

We are allowed to enter the inner *corridor* which surrounds the Shekh's tomb, and to look in, but not to cross the threshold. The tomb, as well as a canopy six feet high, which covers it, is made of mother-of-pearl. The floor is of jasper, and the walls of white marble, inlaid with cornelian. A cloth of silk and gold was spread over it like a pall, and upon this were wreaths of fresh and withered flowers. The screens of marble surrounding the building are the most beautiful in India. They are single thin slabs, about eight feet square, and wrought into such intricate open patterns that you would say they had been woven in a loom. The mosque, which is of older date than the tomb, is very elegant, resembling somewhat the Hall of the Abencerrages in the Alhambra, except that it is much larger, and of white marble

instead of stucco. Bushàrat-Ali informed me that the Durgah was erected in one year, from the wealth left by the Shekh Selim-Chishti at his death, and that it cost thirty-seven lacs of rupees—\$1,750,000.

We ascended to the summit of the great gateway, for the sake of the panoramic view of Futtehpore-Sikree, and the adjacent country. It is a vast plain, and our horizon was described by a radius of twenty miles—a circle of fresh wheat-fields, dotted with mango-groves, and now and then the blue gleam of a river or irrigating canal. There were some low hills in the west, and the famous citadel of Bhurtpore, in that direction, was barely visible. The country, though less garden-like, reminded me of the plain of the Nile. A few years ago it was all an uncultivated waste. Mr. Thomasson, the late Lieutenant-Governor of the north-western provinces happening to be at Futtehpore-Sikree one day, heard a native say that in Akbar's time, the country was annually overflowed, so that the palace was in the midst of a lake. "Well," said Mr. T., "I will overflow it, too." And he ordered the banks of a small river, which flows into the Jumna near Bhurtpore, to be cut away, so that, when the rainy season came, the water spread over about twenty square miles of land. That year the natives had crops such as had never been heard of in those parts, but they had also a fever, which carried off eight hundred persons. However, the Governor made his work good, by cutting a canal to take off the inundation, and now the region has regained its health, and kept its big crops into the bargain.

We went back to Beer-Bul's palace, where the servants had prepared tiffin in the mean time. Bushàrat-Ali sang ar

Arab love-song, and told us tales of the time of Akbar. Some of these could not very well be repeated, as, like most Eastern stories, they were narratives of skilful intrigue; but there was one relating to Beer-bul himself, which I here relate in the Shekh's words, merely omitting some of his endless repetitions of phrases.

"One day," so began the old man, "Akbar-Shah and Rajah Beer-bul were sitting together. Akbar said to Beer-bul, 'What would you do, if a great misfortune fell upon you?' Said Beer-bul, 'I should give myself up to pleasure.' 'How to pleasure,' said Akbar, 'when you were unfortunate?' 'Still,' said Beer-bul, 'I should do it.' The next day Akbar said to Beer-bul, 'Take this ruby, and keep it till I call for it.' Now it was a ruby worth millions of rupees, such as there never was in the world, before nor since. So Beer-bul took the ruby home to his daughter, and bade her keep it carefully, for it belonged to Akbar-Shah; and she locked it up in a chest with three locks.

"Then Akbar sent to the greatest robber in the place, who was condemned to die, and had him brought before him.

Robber,' said he, 'I will give you your life, if you can do one thing for me.' 'What is that?' said the robber. 'You must steal from my Minister, Beer-bul, a ruby which I have given him to keep,' said Akbar-Shah. The robber agreed and no sooner had he gone into the city upon this errand, than he sent for a very cunning little old woman. There is now no woman living who is so cunning as she was, although"—interpolated the Shekh, with a sly twinkle of the eye—"there are still some, who would be a match for Ebliz himself. Well, this little cunning old woman went to Beer-bul's

daughter and engaged herself as maid, and she gradually won her confidence that Beer-bul's daughter showed her the box with three locks and the ruby. So she filched the keys, opened the locks, took the ruby, and gave it to the robber, who brought it to Akbar. Then Akbar threw it into the Jumna, and sent for Beer-bul. 'Bring me the ruby,' said he. 'Very well,' said Beer-bul, and went home to bring it, but behold! it was stolen. 'Well, where's the ruby?' said Akbar. 'Your Majesty shall have it in fifteen days.' 'Very well,' said Akbar, 'but remember that your head is security for it.'

"Beer-bul went home, and said to his daughter, 'We have but fifteen days to live—let us spend them in festivity.' So they ate, and drank, and gave feasts and dances, till in twelve days they had spent many lacs of rupees, and there was not a *pice* left them to buy food. They remained thus two days. On the fourteenth morning, the daughter of a fisherman who fished in the Jumna, said to her father: 'Father, the Rajah Beer-bul and his daughter have had nothing to eat for two days; let me take them this fish for breakfast.' So she took them the fish, which Beer-bul's daughter received with many thanks, and immediately cooked. But as they were eating it there came a pebble into Beer-bul's mouth. He took it out in his fingers, and, wah! it was the ruby. The next morning he went to Akbar-Shah, and said: 'Here is the ruby, as I promised.' Akbar was covered with surprise; but when he had heard the story, he gave Beer-bul two crores of rupees, and said that he spoke the truth—it was better to rejoice than to grieve in misfortune."

The moral of this story is rather awkwardly brought out

but the plot is curious, from its resemblance to the ' Ring of Polycrates.' It was spun out to a much greater length in the Shekh's narration.

I took leave of Mr. Sherer, who was to go back in the evening by palanquin, shook hands with Bushàrat-Ali, and drove slowly down the hill, and out the gate. I was about two miles distant when the sun went down in a broad crimson glory, and my last view of Futtehpore-Sikree was as a dark band sublime against the deepening brilliancy. But I shall long remember the day I spent in its palaces.

CHAPTER X.

THE TAJ MAHAL.

Distant Views of the Taj—Tomb of Itmun e' Dowlah—The Garden of Rama—Night Worship—The Taj Mahal—Its Origin—The Light of the Harem—Portal and Avenue to the Taj—Its Form—Its Inlaid Marbles and Jewel Work—Tomb of Noor-Jehan—The Dome—Resemblance to Florentine Art—Proofs of Saracenic Design—The Echo under the Dome—Beauty of the Taj—Saracenic Architecture—Plan of Shah Jehan—Garree Dawk—Leaving Agra—Night—Allyghur—The Grand Trunk Road—Distant View of Delhi—Arrival.

I PURPOSELY postponed my visit to the Taj Mahal—the most renowned monument of Agra—until I had seen every thing else in the city and its vicinity. The distant view of this matchless edifice satisfied me that its fame was well deserved. So pure, so gloriously perfect did it appear, that I almost feared to approach it, lest the charm should be broken. It is seen to best advantage from the tomb of Itmun e' Dowlah, the Prime Minister of Shah Jehan, which stands in a garden on the northern bank of the Jumna, directly opposite to the city. I spent an afternoon at this tomb and the Ram Bagh, (Garden of Rama,) two miles further up the river. The former is a mausoleum of white marble, elegantly sculptured and inlaid, standing on a raised platform, from the corners of

which rise marble minarets. Its design shows the same purity of taste, the same richness of fancy, which I had previously remarked in the Pearl Mosque, and afterward in the Taj.

The Ram Bagh is a garden which, I believe, formerly belonged to the Mogul Emperors, and is now kept in order as a place of recreation, by the Government. Too much praise cannot be awarded to the British rulers in India, for the care with which they have restored and protected all of these monuments of the past, expending large sums to prevent the mosques, palaces and tombs of the former rulers from falling into decay. On account of the humidity of the soil, and the abundance of insects and reptiles, the Ram Bagh is traversed by raised stone causeways, the principal of which inclose water tanks and fountains. It is a pleasant, shady retreat, with a stone balcony overhanging the rapid Jumna, and commanding a view of many ruined palaces on the opposite bank. There are suites of apartments, comfortably furnished, which are let to visitors at the rate of a rupee per day; but when the applications are frequent, no one is allowed to stay more than eight days, in order to give a chance to others. My friends brought their servants and a handsome tiffin, of which we all partook, in the largest chamber. We returned across the bridge of boats in the evening. The Hindoos had lighted lamps in front of the many little shrines facing the water, and in some of them stood persons waving a torch back and forth before the face of the god, crying out at the same time "Ram, Ram, Ram!" "Ram, Seeta, Ram!" This ceremony, with the pouring of the Jumna water over the image, and decorating it with wreaths of flowers, appeared to be the

only form of worship observed. There are more substantial offerings made, but if the god gets them, the Brahmins take care that he shall not keep them.

To return to the Taj—for the reader expects me to describe it, and I must comply, although reluctantly, for I am aware of the difficulty of giving an intelligible picture of a building, which has no counterpart in Europe, or even in the East. The mosques and palaces of Constantinople, the domed tent of Omar at Jerusalem, and the structures of the Saracens and Memlooks at Cairo, have nothing in common with it. The remains of Moorish art in Spain approach nearest to its spirit, but are only the scattered limbs, the torso, of which the Taj is the perfect type. It occupies that place in Saracenic art, which, during my visit to Constantinople, I mistakenly gave to the Solymany Mosque, and which, in respect to Grecian art, is represented by the Parthenon. If there were nothing else in India, this alone would repay the journey.

The history and associations of the Taj are entirely poetic. It is a work inspired by Love, and consecrated to Beauty. Shah Jehan, the "Selim" of Moore's poem, erected it as a mausoleum over his queen, Noor Jehan—"the Light of the World"—whom the same poet calls Noor-Mahal, "the Light of the Harem," or more properly, "Palace." She is reputed to have been a woman of surpassing beauty, and of great wit and intelligence. Shah Jehan was inconsolable for her loss and has immortalized her memory in a poem, the tablets of which are marble, and the letters jewels:—for the Taj is poetry transmuted into form, and hence, when a poet sees it he hails it with the rapture of a realized dream. Few per

sons, of the thousands who sigh over the pages of Lalla Rookh, are aware that the "Light of the Harem" was a real personage, and that her tomb is one of the wonders of the world. The native miniature painters in Delhi show you her portrait, painted on ivory—a small, rather delicate face, with large, dark, piercing eyes, and black hair flowing from under a scarf adorned with peacock's feathers.

The Taj is built on the bank of the Jumna, rather more than a mile to the eastward of the Fort of Agra. It is approached by a handsome road, cut through the mounds left by the ruins of ancient palaces. Like the tomb of Akbar, it stands in a large garden, inclosed by a lofty wall of red sandstone, with arched galleries around the interior. The entrance is a superb gateway of sandstone, inlaid with ornaments and inscriptions from the Koran, in white marble. Outside of this grand portal, however, is a spacious quadrangle of solid masonry, with an elegant structure intended as a caravanserai, on the opposite side. Whatever may be the visitor's impatience, he cannot help pausing to notice the fine proportions of these structures, and the rich and massive style of their architecture. The gate to the garden of the Taj is not so large as that of Akbar's tomb, but quite as beautiful in design. Passing under the open demi-vault, whose arch hangs high above you, an avenue of dark Italian cypresses appears before you. Down its centre sparkles a long row of fountains, each casting up a single slender jet. On both sides, the palm, the banyan, and the feathery bamboo mingle their foliage; the song of birds meets your ear, and the odor of roses and lemon-flowers sweetens the air. Down such a vista, and over such a foreground, rises the Taj.

It is an octagonal building, or rather, a square with the corners truncated, and each side precisely similar. It stands upon a lofty platform, or pedestal, with a minaret at each corner, and this, again, is lifted on a vast terrace of solid masonry. An Oriental dome, swelling out boldly from the base into nearly two-thirds of a sphere, and tapering at the top into a crescent-tipped spire, crowns the edifice, rising from its centre, with four similar, though much smaller domes, at the corners. On each side there is a grand entrance, formed by a single pointed arch, rising nearly to the cornice, and two smaller arches (one placed above the other) on either hand. The height of the building, from its base to the top of the dome, is 262 feet, and of the minarets, about 200 feet. But no words can convey an idea of the exquisite harmony of the different parts, and the grand and glorious effect of the whole structure, with its attendant minarets.

The material is of the purest white marble, little inferior to that of Carrara. It shines so dazzlingly in the sun, that you can scarcely look at it near at hand, except in the morning and evening. Every part—even the basement, the dome, and the upper galleries of the minarets—is inlaid with ornamental designs in marble of different colors, principally a pale brown, and a bluish violet variety. Great as are the dimensions of the Taj, it is as laboriously finished as one of those Chinese caskets of ivory and ebony, which are now so common in Europe. Bishop Heber truly said: "The Pathans designed like Titans, and finished like jewellers." Around all the arches of the portals and the windows—around the cornice and the domes—on the walls and in the passages, are inlaid chapters of the Koran, the letters being

exquisitely formed of black marble. It is asserted that the whole of the Koran is thus inlaid, in the Taj, and I can readily believe it to be true. The building is perfect in every part. Any dilapidations it may have suffered are so well restored that all traces of them have disappeared.

I ascended to the base of the building—a gleaming marble platform, almost on a level with the tops of the trees in the garden. Before entering the central hall, I descended to the vault where the beautiful Noor-Jehan is buried. A sloping passage, the walls and floor of which have been so polished by the hands and feet of thousands, that you must walk carefully to avoid sliding down, conducts to a spacious vaulted chamber. There is no light but what enters the door, and this falls directly upon the tomb of the Queen in the centre. Shah-Jehan, whose ashes are covered by a simpler cenotaph, raised somewhat above hers, sleeps by her side. The vault was filled with the odors of rose, jasmine, and sandal-wood, the precious attars of which are sprinkled upon the tomb. Wreaths of beautiful flowers lay upon it, or withered around its base.

These were the true tombs, the monuments for display being placed in the grand hall above, which is a lofty rotunda, lighted both from above and below by screens of marble, wrought in filigree. It is paved with blocks of white marble and jasper, and ornamented with a wainscoting of sculptured tablets, representing flowers. The tombs are sarcophagi of the purest marble, exquisitely inlaid with blood-stone, agate, cornelian, lapis-lazuli, and other precious stones, and surrounded with an octagonal screen six feet high, in the open tracery of which lilies, irises, and other flowers are inter

wrought with the most intricate ornamental designs. This is also of marble, covered with precious stones. From the resemblance of this screen and the workmanship of the tomb to Florentine mosaic, it is supposed by some to have been executed by an Italian artist; and I have even heard it stated that the Taj was designed by an Italian architect. One look at the Taj ought to assure any intelligent man that this is false—nay, impossible, from the very nature of the thing. The Taj is the purest Saracenic, in form, proportions, and ornamental designs. If that were not sufficient, we have still the name of the Moslem architect, sculptured upon the building.

I consider it extremely doubtful whether any Italian had any thing to do with the work, though it is barely possible that one may have been employed upon the screen around the tombs. In the weekly account of the expenditures for the building of the Taj, there is a certain sum mentioned as paid to "the foreign stone-cutter," who may either have been Italian, Turkish, or Persian. As for the flowers, represented in bas-relief on the marble panels, it has been said that they are not to be found in India. Now these flowers, as near as they can be identified, are the tulip, the iris, (both natives of Persia,) and the lotus. But I noticed a curious feature in the sculpture, which makes it clear to me that the artist was a native. *The flowers lack perspective*, which would never have been the fault of an Italian artist of Shah Jehan's time—about the middle of the seventeenth century. Bishop Heber has declared that he recognized Italian art in the ornaments of the Taj, but he declared also that its minarets have no beauty, that the Fort of Agra is built of granite, and

fell into many other glaring errors, both of taste and observation, which I have no time to point out.

The dome of the Taj contains an echo more sweet, pure and prolonged than that in the Baptistry of Pisa, which is the finest in Europe. A single musical tone, uttered by the voice, floats and soars overhead, in a long, delicious undulation, fainting away so slowly that you hear it after it is silent, as you see, or seem to see, a lark you have been watching, after it is swallowed up in the blue of heaven. I pictured to myself the effect of an Arabic or Persian lament for the lovely Noor Jehan, sung over her tomb. The responses that would come from above, in the pauses of the song, must resemble the harmonies of angels in Paradise. The hall, notwithstanding the precious materials of which it is built, and the elaborate finish of its ornaments, has a grave and solemn effect, infusing a peaceful serenity of mind, such as we feel when contemplating a happy death. Stern, unimaginative persons have been known to burst suddenly into tears, on entering it; and whoever can behold the Taj without feeling a thrill that sends the moisture to his eye, has no sense of beauty in his soul.

The Taj truly is, as I have already said, a poem. It is not only a pure architectural type, but also a creation which satisfies the imagination, because its characteristic is Beauty. Did you ever build a Castle in the Air? Here is one, brought down to earth, and fixed for the wonder of ages; yet so light it seems, so airy, and, when seen from a distance, so like a fabric of mist and sunbeams, with its great dome soaring up, a silvery bubble, about to burst in the sun, that, even after you have touched it, and climbed to its summit, you

almost doubt its reality. The four minarets which surround it are perfect—no other epithet will describe them. You cannot conceive of their proportions being changed in any way, without damage to the general effect. On one side of the Taj is a mosque with three domes, of red sandstone, covered with mosaic of white marble. Now, on the opposite side, there is a building precisely similar, but of no use whatever, except as a balance to the mosque, lest the perfect symmetry of the whole design should be spoiled. This building is called the *jowib*, or “answer.” Nothing can better illustrate the feeling for proportion which prevailed in those days—and proportion is Art.

In comparing these masterpieces of architecture with the Moorish remains in Spain, which resemble them most nearly I have been struck with the singular fact, that while, at the central seats of the Moslem Empire, Art reached but a comparative degree of development, here, in India, and there, on the opposite and most distant frontiers, it attained a rapid and splendid culmination. The capitals of the Caliphs and the Sultans—Bagdad, Cairo, Damascus, and Constantinople—stand far below Agra and Delhi, Granada and Seville, in point of architecture, notwithstanding the latter cities have but few and scattered remains. It is not improbable that the Moorish architects, after the fall of Granada, gradually made their way to the eastward, and that their art was thus brought to India—or, at least, that they modified and improved the art then existing. The conquest of India by Baber, (grandson of Tamerlane and grandfather of Akbar,) is almost coeval with the expulsion of the Moors from Granada.

But the sun grows hot; it is nearly noon. We have spent

three hours in and around the Taj, and we must leave it. Nothing that is beautiful can be given up without a pang, but if a man would travel, he must endure many such partings. I must add, however, before we go, that on the opposite bank of the Jumna there is an immense foundation-terrace, whereon, it is said, Shah Jehan intended to erect a tomb for himself, of equal magnificence, but the rebellion of his sons, and his own death, prevented it. What the gods permitted to Love, they forbade to Vanity. A shekh, who takes care of the Taj, told me, that had the Emperor carried out his design, the tombs were to have been joined by a bridge, with a silver railing on each side. He told me that the Taj, with its gateways, mosque, and other buildings attached, had cost seven crores of rupees—\$35,000,000. This, however, is quite impossible, when we consider the cheapness of labor in those days, and I believe the real cost is estimated at £3,000,000 (\$15,000,000), which does not seem exaggerated.

On the same evening, after visiting the Taj, I left Agra for Delhi. My kind host, Mr. Warren, whose hospitality was untiring, gave me letters to his colleagues in other parts of India, and his lady furnished me with the needful provisions for the journey. I went by the *garree-dawk*, which was a great improvement both upon the banghy and mail-carts. There were three rival companies for the conveyance of passengers, by carriages, on the Grand Trunk Road, as it is called, extending from Calcutta to Delhi, a distance of nine hundred miles. Four years ago, there was no other way of travelling, except on horseback or in a palanquin. Progress in India, though slow, is perceptible. The *garree* resembles a cab, with the space between the back and front seats filled

up and covered with a mattrass. You provide yourself with a quilt and pillow, stow your baggage into the bottom, and take your ease, as if upon your own bed. Thus you can travel and even sleep, with a tolerable degree of comfort. There are relays of horses, about six miles apart, and if no accident should happen, the garree rolls on at the rate of seven miles an hour.

I left Agra at eight o'clock in the evening. It was a raw, misty, moonlit night, and I found an overcoat indispensable. Indeed, during the week I spent in the place, I suffered continually from cold. We had fires in the morning and evening, and I was fain to get into the sun at mid-day, though warned not to expose myself to his rays. There was no frost, but the making of ice was carried on briskly, and three thousand maunds (120,000 lbs.) were already stored in the ice-house. I sat up to take a last view of the Fort and Jumma Musjeed, paid half a rupee toll at the bridge of boats over the Jumna, and then lay down on my mattrass, to try the effect of my new conveyance. It was really quite agreeable, and except when the horses were changed, or took a fancy to baulk and plunge, I could sleep without difficulty. About three o'clock in the morning, the driver awoke me to announce his *budlee*, or substitute, (a hint for backsheesh,) declaring that we were at Allyghur. This was once a strong fortress, and the scene of a battle between the English and native troops. There is a pillar erected to commemorate it, which pillar I saw in the moonlight, as we drove on towards Delhi.

The morning showed a splendid road, leading over a boundless plain, covered with fields of wheat, barley, mustard

and poppies, and dotted with groves of mango or tamarind trees. Its aspect continued unvaried for hours, except that there was once or twice a low red hill in the distance, or a native town, with whitewashed mosques and mouldy Hindoo temples near at hand. The road was crowded with native travellers, with bullock-carts, ponies, and on foot, and other *garrees*, conveying the "*sahib log*" (nobility) of the land, passed me frequently. I noticed a sort of native omnibus, drawn by slow horses, wherein natives, and they only, are conveyed at the rate of one anna (three cents) per mile. This is a recent invention.

The plain gradually lost its mango groves, and assumed a bleak and sterile appearance. I crossed a river by a handsome suspension bridge, then the Eastern Jumna Canal, and in the afternoon, when still twelve miles distant from Delhi, descried its mosques on the horizon. As I approached, the great fortress-palace built by Shah Jehan, (nearly as large as the Fort, at Agra,) rose from the plain. The city, which lies to the west of it, was almost hidden by trees, which belt it around. The superb domes of the great mosque rose above them, and on either hand I could see immense tombs and other ruined edifices, scattered far and wide over the plain. I crossed the Jumna, which is here as broad as at Agra, by a bridge of boats, passed a very old, crumbling fortress, overgrown with trees and bushes, then the Imperial Palace, now occupied by His Majesty, Akbar II., and was finally set down at the dawk bungalow. The first thing I did, on arriving in the capital of the Great Mogul, was to order dinner, and by the time that business was over, it was too dark to see any thing of the city. I had a letter to Mr. Place, of the *Delhi*

hi Gazette, and after making many inquiries of the chokedar, who finally recognized him as being "Palace Sahib" and the "*chappa-khana-walla*" (printing-office fellow!) procured a guide to his residence. The next morning I shifted my quarters to the shelter of his hospitable roof.

CHAPTER XI

THE CAPITAL OF THE GREAT MOGUL

Delhi—The Mogul Empire at Present—Ruins of former Delhis—The Observatory—A Wilderness of Ruin—Tomb of Sufdur Jung—The Khuttub Minar—Its Beauty—View from the Summit—Uncertainty of its Origin—The Palace of Aladdin—Ruins of a Hindoo Temple—Tomb of the Emperor Humayoon—Of Nizam-ud-deen—Native Sam Patches—Old Delhi—Aspect of the Modern City—The Chandree Choke—Bayaderes—Delhi Artisans and Artists—The Jumma Musjeed—A Hindoo Minstrel and his Songs—The Palace of Akbar II.—Neglect and Desolation—The Diwan—An Elysium on Earth—The Throne Hall—The Crystal Throne—The Court of Akbar II.—A Farce of Empire—The Gardens—Voices of the Sultanas—Palace Pastimes.

DELHI is the Imperial City of India, having been chosen by the Mogul Conquerors as their capital, which it thenceforth remained, except during the reign of Akbar. After the death of Aurungzebe, the power of the Emperors gradually declined; the Mahrattas and Rajpoots laid waste and seized upon their territories, and finally the English, who found that the shortest way of effecting their object as peace-makers was to become conquerors, took what fragments remained of the Empire. The sovereignty, however, is still acknowledged and treated with the same outward ceremonials of respect and submission, as when the Company owned nothing but a factory in Bengal, and the Mogul was lord of all India. The dominions of Akbar II., the present Emperor, the lineal descendant of the House of Tamerlane and his illustrious suc

cessors, are embraced within the walls of his palace, and comprise rather less than a square half mile. The Government allows fourteen lacs of rupees (\$700,000) annually for the maintenance of himself, his family, and the princes attached to his Court—a large and hungry retinue, many of whom cannot venture outside of the walls without running the risk of being seized for his debts. They are all in debt, from the Emperor to his lowest menials, and the Government allowance is always conveyed to the Palace under a strong guard, to prevent its being forcibly carried off by the creditors. This pitiful farce of Royalty is all that remains of the Mogul Empire—once the most powerful and enlightened sovereignty in Asia.

The modern City of Delhi is the latest of the name, and having been founded by Shah Jehan, is still called by the natives Shahjehanabad. There were several Delhis, one of the oldest of which is the city built by Toglukh, and called Toglukhabad, the ruins of which lie about fifteen miles to the south of the present city. Another city, now called Old Delhi, built during one of the succeeding reigns, is about two miles distant. It is still surrounded by lofty walls, with circular stone bastions, and has several thousand inhabitants. But all of the country south of the Jumna, for an extent of more than ten miles in every direction, is strewed with the ruins of palaces, mosques, and tombs. Whenever the city was taken and desolated in the early wars, instead of rebuilding it, the inhabitants founded a new one in the vicinity; and afterwards, whenever the caprice of an Emperor prompted him to erect a new palace, the nobles, and after them the common people, gradually shifted their residences, until the

location of the city was quite changed; and thus, for centuries, Delhi continued to be a migratory capital. For the last two centuries it has been stationary, and will now probably remain so. But the ruins of the former Delhis cover a much greater space than that occupied by the ruins of Thebes, and had they all belonged to one city, it would have been the greatest in the world.

On the day after my arrival, Mr. Place drove me in his carriage to the Khuttub Minar, the pride and boast of Delhi, as the Taj is of Agra. It is eleven miles distant, in a south-westerly direction. This, again, was a day to be remembered. We left at an early hour, and without entering the city, drove along its walls, past the Cashmere and Lahore Gates. It was a balmy morning, with a pure, crystalline atmosphere, such as I had not seen for weeks. The air seemed to be more dry and bracing than at Agra, for though the temperature was lower, I felt the cold much less keenly. At a short distance from the city, we came upon the ruins of a magnificent observatory. The most prominent object was a colossal gnomon, built of stone, and rising to the height of near forty feet. Around this was a circular plane, precisely parallel to that of the ecliptic, and nearly a hundred feet in diameter. There were also two circular buildings, with a double row of narrow slits, or embrasures, around them, and the remains of stone tables in the inside, the circumferences of which were divided into degrees. These buildings were no doubt intended for observing the rising and setting of stars, measuring their distances from each other, and other similar processes. The observatory could only have been used for astronomical observations of a very simple character.

Beyond this all was ruin. The country was uneven and covered in all directions, as far as the eye could reach, with masses of stone and brick, the remains of walls and arches, and the tombs of princes, saints and scholars who flourished during the Mogul dynasty. The tombs were large square buildings, surmounted with domes. Some were merely of brick and mortar, but others of sandstone and white marble, and adorned with very elegant gateways. Grass and bushes were growing out of the rifts of the domes, and the seeds of the peepul tree, taking root in the mortar, had in many places split asunder the strongest masses of masonry. During many miles of our journey, there was scarcely a change in the melancholy panorama. Ruin succeeded ruin, and between and beyond them there were but perspectives of ruin in the distance. The habitations of men were few and scattered, and but little of the soil showed any appearance of cultivation. The wild vulture hovered sullenly over the waste, and the fox and jackal sneaked about the crumbling walls. That beautiful fragment of Persian poetry, recited by Mahmoud the Conqueror, as he entered Constantinople, came into my mind: "The spider hath woven his web in the imperial palaces; and the owl hath sung her watch-song on the towers of Afrasiab."

About six miles from Delhi we came upon the splendid tomb of Sufdur Jung, a prince who was connected with the royal house of Oude. It resembles the Taj in design, but is smaller and built of a mixture of sandstone and marble, the effect of which is very beautiful and pleasing. The present King of Oude has appointed a sum for its repair and preservation, but there are no signs, in the general air of neglect which pervades the place, of any money having been thus ap

plied I was quite charmed with the beauty of the architectural details, in this edifice; the arched windows, the vaulted ceilings of the chambers, and the designs of the marble balconies, were among the finest things of the kind which I saw in India.

From the top of the tomb we first saw the Khuttub Minar, and after five more miles of ruin, drew up in the court-yard of a caravanserai near its base. The unusual form of the Khuttub detracts from its height, when seen from a distance, but greatly increases it on a nearer view, by exaggerating the perspective. Hence, unlike some towers which seem to shrink as you approach them, the Khuttub, which at a few miles' distance resembles an ordinary factory-chimney, swells to a sublime altitude when you are in its vicinity. It is a round pillar, of 240 feet in height, the diameter at the base being 35 feet, but gradually diminishing to less than 10 feet at the top. It is divided into five stories, the relative height of which decreases in the same ratio as the diameter of the shaft. Each story has a heavy cornice of the richest sculpture, surmounted by a low stone balustrade. The three lower stories are entirely of red sandstone, fluted, or rather reeded with alternate convex and angular divisions, and belted at short intervals by bands of Arabic inscriptions, sculptured in relief, and of colossal size. The two highest stories are mostly of white marble, without inscriptions, and deviate slightly from the diminishing slope of the pillar, whence it is generally supposed that they were added at a later period. Some English officers, thinking to improve the work, crowned it with a grotesque cupola, which was a ridiculous excrescence on the shaft, until Lord Hardinge ordered it to be taken down.

Such are the dimensions and style of the renowned Khutub, but they are very far from expressing the majesty of its appearance, or the rich and gorgeous sculpture with which it is adorned. As I stood a short distance from the base, my gaze travelling slowly from bottom to top, and from top to bottom, Mr. Place declared it to be the finest single tower in the world, and asked me whether I did not think so. I said, "No," for just then I had Giotto's Florentine Campanile and the Giralda of Seville in my mind, and could not venture to place it above them; but the longer I looked, the more its beauty grew upon me, and after spending three or four hours in its vicinity, I no longer doubted. It is, beyond question, the finest shaft in the world.

We mounted to the summit by a winding staircase of 378 steps, which became so narrow, as the diameter of the shaft diminished, that some of my corpulent friends could never have reached the top. The view was very extensive, and on such a bright, warm day, very beautiful, in spite of its desolation. On all sides there was a brown, undulating waste, dotted with ruins, but enlivened by an occasional garden or wheat-field. Low, red hills in the south and west, a glimpse of a blue lake in the distance, the massive battlements of the deserted City of Toglukh in the south-east, and the domes of Delhi in the north, made up the panorama. When the air is very clear, the crests of the Himalayas, two hundred miles distant, can be discerned on the horizon.

There is a difference of opinion as to whether the Khutub is of Hindoo or Moslem origin. Nothing positive is known concerning the date or design of its erection. Some suppose it to have been a watch-tower, others a monument

others a minaret, others again a gigantic symbol of Shiva. Both the Hindoos and the Moslems claim it, the former alleging that the Arabic inscriptions were subsequently added by the conquerors. A short distance to the north there is the base of a tower similar in design, but of much grander dimensions, the building of which was relinquished after it had been raised about fifty feet from the ground. This, the Hindoos say, was commenced by the Moslems, in order to surpass the Khuttub, which they found impossible. Without entering into a discussion for which I am not prepared, I may venture to say that the three lowest stories appear to me to be of Hindoo construction, both from the singular manner in which the shaft is reeded, and from the absence of arches in the openings for air and light. The arch (which was first introduced into India by the Moslems) appears in the upper stories, and it is generally admitted that they were added at a later period. Some of the Arabic inscriptions refer to the repair of the shaft, and date from the reign of Feroze Shah, about four and a half centuries ago.

The Khuttub stands in the midst of a wilderness of ruins. There are the arcades of what was once a splendid Hindoo temple, changed into the court-yard of a mosque which was begun on a magnificent scale, but never finished, and the conflicting styles are mixed together in the most incongruous manner. A college of marble and sandstone, in the later Moorish style, stands on one side of it, and a few hundred paces in an opposite direction, lie the ruins—fancy such a thing, if you can—of the palace of Aladdin! The genii have taken back their windows of ruby and pearl, the gold and ivory have disappeared, and there are now only a few shapeless chambers, tottering to their fall. The remains of the Hindoo temple

show that it must have been one of the finest in this part of India. The arcades are supported on several hundred columns, scarcely any of which are similar. They are covered, from cap to pedestal, with elaborate sculpture, including figures of the gods, of dogs, horses, monkeys and elephants, of the chain and bell, the pomegranate, and other religious emblems. The domes at the corners of the quadrangles are not vaulted, but formed by flat stones laid diagonally across and overlapping each other, as in the Cyclopean remains of Italy. In the court stands a pillar of iron about eighteen feet high, and called by the natives "Feroze Shah's Walking-Stick." It bears an inscription in a very ancient character, which long puzzled the scholars, but was finally deciphered by Mr. Prinsep. The column appears to have been set up in token of victory, by a king who flourished about a century before the Christian Era. There are others, similar to it, in other parts of India.

There was not sufficient time to visit Toglukhabad—the ruins of which, indeed, are only remarkable for their massive masonry ; so, after peeping into Sir Theophilus Metcalf's elegant country residence, which was made out of one of the old tombs, we drove back to Delhi, taking the tomb of the Emperor Humayoon by the way. This lies to the south-east of the city, adjoining a walled palace or fortress, which is still inhabited. The tomb is on a grand scale, rising to the height of one hundred feet, from a noble terrace of solid masonry, but has a most wretched, forlorn air. The floors are covered with litter and filth, the marble screens broken and battered, the dome given to bats and owls, and the spacious garden has become a waste of weeds. From the terrace, I counted upwards of fifty similar palaces of the dead, several of them, if not on a scale of

equal grandeur, yet even superior in design and in the richness of their decoration.

There was an old porter, who attended for the sake of a trifle, by way of backsheesh, and on our leaving, urged us to visit the tomb of Nizam-ud-deen. I was beginning to feel tired of so much decayed splendor, but my friend said that the place was really curious, and so we drove back about half a mile. Here there was a small native village—perhaps a remnant of one of the old Delhis—crowded in among the tombs. Nizam-ud-deen had truly a splendid mausoleum, of white marble with gilded domes, and there was an inclosure of marble fretwork of great beauty, surrounding the tomb of a daughter of the present Emperor. It was a labyrinth of a place, with a dark, deep tank in the midst, surrounded by high walls on three sides, with a flight of steps leading down to the water, on the fourth side. While we were looking into it, three or four half naked boys made their appearance on the high roofs overhanging the tank, and offered to jump down, for a few annas apiece. I accordingly agreed, hardly thinking they would dare such a thing, when three of them boldly sprang from the highest platform, about seventy feet above the water. The fearful picture they made in descending quite took away my breath, and there was a sound when they struck the surface, as if they had fallen upon stone. They soon rose again, and came scrambling up the steps to get their money, complaining, with chattering teeth, of the coldness of the water.

In returning to the city, we passed around the walls of Old Delhi, which are upward of eighty feet high. I was anxious to see the interior, but it was then too late, and another opportunity did not afterwards occur. Mr Place, who had resided

in Delhi for ten years, told me that he had never been inside the walls.

Modern Delhi was the largest and most picturesque native city I had then seen. The houses are of brick and stucco painted in gay colors, and very few of them less than two stories in height. They have tiled roofs, which gives the place, when seen from a minaret, a strong resemblance to Smyrna, and other large Turkish towns. It covers an extent of about two square miles, but is very compactly built, and the population is reckoned at near 200,000 souls. Most of the European residents have their bungalows on the heights outside of the Cashmere Gate, and near the military cantonments. There is an aqueduct of hewn stone traversing the city, which supplies the inhabitants with drinking water, brought from a distance of seventy-five miles, the water of the Jumna being strongly impregnated with natron, and injurious to health. The palace, which is surrounded by a deep moat, has a massive gateway and barbican in the centre of its western front. An open space intervenes between it and the city, and exactly opposite the gateway begins the Chandnee Choke—the Broadway of Delhi, which runs directly through the centre of the city, to the Lahore Gate. It is a noble avenue, somewhat resembling a Parisian *boulevard*, having a small aqueduct, fringed with trees, on each side of the main highway, and separating it from the paved sidewalks. The houses are made picturesque by their wooden galleries and balconies, and some of them are very pretty specimens of architecture.

When the heat of the day has subsided, and the afternoon shadows are growing long and cool, all the natives of any standing or pretension repair to the Chandnee Choke. Then

broad as it is, it can scarcely contain the gay throngs that parade up and down its whole extent. There are Princes of the Emperor's Court, mounted on brilliantly caparisoned elephants; country Chiefs on horseback, with a fierce air, and weapons in bundance; Hindoo Baboos, with the symbol of their caste painted on their foreheads; *hackrees*, drawn by bullocks, and resembling pagodas on wheels, behind whose tassels and dusty red curtains sit the discreet ladies of the land; travelling merchants, slowly pacing along on camels; Sikhs, with forked black beards; long-locked Affghans, with bright, treacherous eyes; and Persians, grave as the maxims of Saadi, besides a vast retinue on foot, exhibiting the most brilliant combinations of color in their garments. The ordinary dress is pure white but here you see in addition, caps and scarfs of the most vivid shades of crimson, blue, green, yellow and orange, with a profusion of gold fringe and spangles. The merchants sit cross-legged in their shops, looking out on the array, and chatting cheerfully with passing acquaintances, while from the balconies above, the Bayaderes, clad in their most attractive finery, play the part of sirens to the crowd below.

Here, as in Egypt, only females of this class are allowed to show their faces unveiled, and one has no other authority for forming an opinion regarding the beauty of the sex. Among the many faces I saw while passing through the Chandnee Choke, there were but two which were really beautiful, while most of them were so coarse and repulsive that I should think there was little danger of their drawing many victims into their toils. But there was scarcely a house, the upper story of which was not occupied by these creatures. A native court in India, with its army of pensioned idlers, is

a hot-bed for all forms of vice, and Delhi is only surpassed in this respect by Lucknow and Hyderabad.

In addition to the manufacture of shawls and scarfs, in which its artisans are only inferior to those of Cashmere and Umritsir, Delhi is celebrated for its jewelry. The gold and silver smiths produce articles of exquisite workmanship, and occasionally very fine jewels are to be met with. Those of a secondary value, such as agate, onyx, cornelian, topaz, carbuncle and moon-stone, are very plentiful, and may be had at a trifling rate: The bed of the Jumna abounds in beautiful cornelians, sards and agates. In rambling among the shops I saw several natives of Cashmere, who were exceedingly handsome men, with skin as fair as a European's and soft brown hair. They belonged evidently to the pure Caucasian stock. A native miniature painter showed me the portrait of a Cashmerian Sultana, which was a vision of perfect loveliness. The features were like those of a high-born English beauty, but with an enchanting touch of Southern languor in the dark eye, the drooping, fringed lid, and the full, crimson lip. He had also a portrait of Tootee Beegum, a Sikh princess, whose style of beauty was thoroughly Oriental—a brilliant, passionate face, capable of expressing the extremes of firmness and tenderness. The delicacy of touch and artistic truth of these native artists is extraordinary. I know of but few miniature painters in America who could equal them. In landscapes they are not so successful for though the pictures are very laboriously finished, and show fair idea of perspective, they lack color and atmosphere.

The Jumma (or Jooma) Musjeed at Delhi is a noble structure, equalled only, as a mosque, by the Motee Musjeed at Agra. It is on a much larger scale than the latter. It stands

in the middle of the city, at the meeting of four of the principal streets, and is raised on a grand platform of masonry twenty feet high, with broad flights of steps leading up on each side. The material is sandstone and white marble, the three superb domes being built of both, disposed in vertical bands, or stripes. At a distance, when softened by the haze, they resemble huge balloons of striped silk, hovering over the city. We were allowed to walk rough-shod through the courtyard, and to climb one of the minarets, but two Hindoo pilgrims from Ajmere were ignominiously driven out, on attempting to enter. We inquired the reason of this, and were told that the "sahib" had ordered it so, on account of recent fights which had occurred between the rival sects. The two religions, nevertheless, are blended in some degree among the low and ignorant classes, the shrines and sacred places of each being held in common reverence by them. The two Rajpoots whom we saw ejected, seemed very much mortified that they were not allowed to visit this sanctuary of the Mussulmen.

A very curious illustration of Progress in India was furnished to me one day, during my sojourn with Mr. Place. We were dining together in his bungalow, when a wandering Hindoo minstrel came along with his mandolin, and requested permission to sit upon the verandah and play for us. I was desirous of hearing some of the Indian airs, and my host therefore ordered him to perform during dinner. He tuned the wires of his mandolin, extemporized a prelude which had some very familiar passages, and to my complete astonishment, began singing: "Get out of the way, Old Dan Tucker!" The old man seemed to enjoy my surprise, and followed up his performance with "Oh, Susanna!" "Buffalo Gals," and other

choice Ethiopian melodies, all of which he sang with admirable spirit and correctness. I addressed him in English, but found that he did not understand a word of the language, and had no conception of the nature of the songs he had given us. He had heard some young English officers singing them at Madras, and was indebted entirely to his memory for both the melodies and words. It was vain to ask him for his native Indian airs: he was fascinated with the spirit of our national music, and sang with a grin of delight which was very amusing. As a climax of skill, he closed with "*Malbrook se va-t-en guerre*," but his pronunciation of French was not quite so successful. I had heard Spanish boatmen on the Isthmus of Panama singing "Carry me back to ole Virginny," and Arab boys in the streets of Alexandria humming "Lucy Long," but I was hardly prepared to hear the same airs from the lips of a Hindoo, in the capital of the Great Mogul.

It only remains for me to describe my visit to the Emperor's Palace. Mr. Place having previously sent a messenger to announce the visit, we found two chobdars (beadles) with silver maces, waiting for us outside of the great gate. We were allowed to drive through, the sentinels presenting arms, into a small court, through a second bastioned gateway, and down a stately, vaulted passage, to a large, open quadrangle where we dismounted and proceeded on foot. The vaulted gallery must have once been an imposing prelude to the splendors of the palace, but it is now dirty and dilapidated, and the quadrangle into which it ushers the visitor resembles a great barn-yard, filled with tattered grooms, lean horses and mangy elephants. The buildings surrounding it were heavy masses of brick and sandstone, and were rapidly falling into ruin

But there was another gate before us, and I hastened through it, hoping to find something which would repay the promise of the magnificent exterior. There was, indeed, the Palace of Shah Jehan, but in what condition! Porticoes of marble, spoiled by dust and whitewash, exquisite mosaics with all the precious stones gouged out, gilded domes glittering over courts heaped with filth, and populated with a retinue of beggarly menials. This was all that was left of the Empire of Tamerlane and Akbar—a miserable life-in-death, which was far more melancholy than complete ruin.

The only parts of the palace I was allowed to see were the *diwan*, the throne-hall and the mosque—all of which bear a general resemblance to the palace of Akbar, at Agra, but are more wantonly despoiled. The *diwan* is an elegant arcade formed by three rows of arches, with a pavilion of the purest marble in the centre, inlaid with gold and precious stones. Over this pavilion is the inscription in Persian, which Moore has introduced in his “Light of the Harem,”—“If there be an Elysium on Earth, it is here—it is here.” What an Elysium at present!

The throne-hall is a square canopy resting on massive square pillars. It is constructed entirely of white marble, very highly polished, the pillars being inlaid with cornelian and bloodstone, and the ceiling richly gilded. In the centre of this once stood the famous peacock throne, which has recently been removed, and we were unable to get a sight of it. By persevering, however, we succeeded in seeing the crystal throne of the Great Mogul, which is four feet in diameter by two in height, and the largest piece of rock crystal known to exist. The bases of the pillars in this splendid hall were painted

with roses and tulips, the colors of which were very well preserved. The mosque—an imitation of that in the palace at Agra—did not appear to have heard a prayer for years.

Akbar II. has reigned in this little dominion since 1805 and is now upward of eighty years of age. He was the last of the line, but having four sons, the succession will be continued. He devotes his time to literature, amusements and sensuality. The Mussulmen speak highly of his literary acquirements, and his poems in the Persian language are said by those who have read them to possess considerable merit. There is a Court newspaper, entitled *The Lamp of News*, published within the palace, but its columns are entirely devoted to the gossip of the city, and private scandal. Until recently the law administered within the palace bore a resemblance to the bloody rule of former days. Persons who had incurred the royal displeasure had their hands, ears or noses cut off, and were then thrust out of the gates. Finally the English Resident at the Court hinted to his Majesty that these things were very disagreeable and ought to cease. "What!" said the descendant of Tamerlane; "am I not King in my own palace?" "Undoubtedly," blandly replied the Resident; "your Highness is the Conqueror of the World and the Protector of Princes; but such a course is not pleasing to the Governor-General, and it would be a great evil to the world if the friendship of two such mighty and illustrious Sovereigns were to be interrupted!" The forms of respect to the phantom of the old authority being thus preserved, the Emperor instituted a milder regimen.

We finished our visit by a walk in the gardens. Here, the old trees, rankly overrun with parasitic plants, with an under

growth of wild and unpruned rose-bushes, afforded a pleasant relief to the decay of the imperial halls. But the garden-pavilions were tumbling down, the pools and fountain-basins were covered with a thick green scum, and rank weeds grew in all the walks. We lingered for some time under the windows of the *Zenana*, listening to the clatter of female voices, and trying to draw therefrom some inference as to the features of the Sultanas. Alas! the tones were all too shrill to have come from beautiful lips. On our way out, several sentinels belonging to the Emperor's boy-corps stood at the interior gates and made very respectful salaams as we passed. The poor little half-starved, half-clothed wretches are obliged to exercise daily, and often four hours at a time. Most of the male inmates of the place were perched upon the roofs, engaged in flying flocks of pigeons, which they made to advance or recede, separate and unite again, by uttering a peculiar cry and waving a long rod with a little flag on the end of it. At the gate we dismissed the chobdars with a gratuity, and I went home.

“The spider hath woven his web in the imperial palace.”

CHAPTER XII

JOURNEY IN A PALANQUIN.

Departure for the Himalayas—"Laying a Dawk"—Last View of Delhi—A *Ekaj* Night—Quarters at Meerut—The Dawk Agent—Hindoo Punctuality—Meerut—Palanquin Travelling—Tricks of the Bearers—Arrival at Roorkee—Adventures in Search of a Breakfast—First View of the Himalayas—A Welcome Invitation—Roorkee—The Ganges Canal—Its Cost and Dimensions—Method of Irrigation—The Government and the People—Aqueduct over the Selanee River—Apathy of the Natives.

At the close of my stay in Delhi, I found that precisely half the time which I had allotted for my transit through India had expired, and but a single month remained. However, although nearly a thousand miles from Calcutta, I determined to push on to the Himalayas, and get a glimpse of the highest mountain in the world. Once on the Grand Trunk Road, on my return, I could depend on making a hundred miles a day by the *garree-dawk*, without excessive fatigue, and there were few points of interest, except Allahabad and Benares, to detain me on the way to Calcutta. I therefore made arrangements—"laid a dawk" is the Indian expression—for a trip to *Lander*, the highest point in the Himalayas, which can be conve

nently reached during the winter season, by way of Roorkee and Hurdwar. The distance of Landowr from Delhi is nearly two hundred miles, and there is no carriage dawkh beyond Meerut, fifty miles from the latter city. I was therefore obliged to travel by *palkee dawkh*, or palanquin. A statement was drawn up of the different places I intended to visit, with the length of my stay at each, and a messenger dispatched to summon the bearers to be in readiness at the proper time, at the different stations along the road. Twelve days were allowed for the trip to Landowr and back to Meerut. The expenses of the dawkh, including the hire of the palanquin amounted to nearly \$60.

The garree, or carriage, for Meerut called for me on Wednesday afternoon, the 26th of January, and I took leave of Mr Place, after having been most hospitably entertained by him for four days. The weather was dark, raw and lowering, and I had not crossed the tedious bridge over the Jumna, before the rain began to fall. My last view of Delhi was dull and misty; the palace of Shah Jehan loomed up more grandly than ever, but the domes and minarets of the Jumma Musjeed, which need to be touched with sunshine, on a background of blue sky, lost half their airy grace. I had a comfortable cart, with a mattress on the bottom, and disposed my carpet-bags in such a way as to make it as easy as an arm-chair. The rain increased, however, the roads became wet and slippery, and the plain had a dull November look, which was very dreary. I was delayed by the obstinacy of the horses, who finding the cart a little heavier than usual, did their best to disable it. Night soon came on, the rain rattled on the roof, and drawing my quilt around me, I lay down and slept until

aroused by the driver, asking where he should take me, for we had reached Meerut. I directed him to go to the "*punch ghur*" (punch house), as a hotel is termed, in this part of India. There I found consummams, chokedars, and the other varieties of servants usually attached to a bungalow, but no one who spoke English. I did my best to get a note conveyed to the person who was to furnish me with a palanquin and bearers the next morning, but found the thing quite impossible.

I arose betimes, and set out to find the agent, for seven o'clock was the time appointed for starting. After endless questions and a walk of three miles, I was finally directed to a mean house, in the door of which stood one of the meanest individuals in appearance, that I ever beheld. He was a half-caste, of a dirty complexion, unwashed, pitted with the small-pox, limping, and dressed in a vile cloak covered with grease and patches. He informed me that the bearers were ready, and pointed to the palanquin, which was standing in the verandah. The man's appearance made me suspicious, and though there was really a palanquin, I feared that before travelling far I should find it to be a little buggy. He promised to send it to the hotel, whither I hastened, expecting to find breakfast ready as I had ordered. Vain hope! There is no equivalent for "punctuality" in the Hindostanee tongue. I waited an hour; the palanquin arrived; I stormed in English, for, unfortunately, I knew no anathemas in their language, but the cooks were miracles of calmness and deliberation. When breakfast finally came, I was obliged to eat a few mouthfuls hurriedly and depart, lest I should give the bearers along the road a chance to claim demurrage.

Meerut resembles the other Indian cantonments in most

respects. It has a number of handsome bungalows, besides a church with a very ambitious spire. Owing to an abundance of good water, its gardens and orchards are much more luxuriant than those of Agra and Delhi. It must be both an agreeable and healthy place of residence. The sky was clear, after the rain of the previous day, and the air delightfully cool and bracing, though colder than I desired. I rode with the palanquin windows open, and found that by propping myself against a carpet-bag, I could get a tolerable view of the country on both sides. There was little variety in the scenery, as I was still on the great Plain of Hindostan. I noticed, however, some change in the vegetation; the tamarind and taree-palm were but rarely to be seen; the peepul and saul were the principal trees. The wheat was much more backward than in the warmer plains about Agra.

I had eight bearers, four of whom only carried the palanquin at one time. They relieved each other every half-mile, and all of them gave place to a new set, at the end of the stage, which varied from eight to ten miles. There was, besides, a mussalchee, or torch-bearer, who, during the day, carries the superfluous garments of the bearers, and demands backsheesh when they are changed. The amount given is four annas ($12\frac{1}{2}$ cents), to each set of bearers. They usually average about four miles an hour on good roads, carrying the palanquin along on a slow, sliding trot, every step of which they accompany with a grunt. I do not know a more disagreeable method of travelling. It is as necessary to preserve a nice equilibrium as in a Turkish caique, and as you lie at full length in a narrow box, you cannot turn your cramped limbs without thrusting your body too far on one side or the other. The jolting

motion of the palanquin is unpleasant, and the measured grunts of the bearers give you the idea that they are about to drop you, through fatigue, while nothing can be more annoying than their constant stoppage to shift the pole from one shoulder to another. Sometimes they groan out, "*juláee jào!*" (go quickly!) and when they meet any body in the road, they cry: "Take care! we have a great Lord inside!"

Thus I jogged on all day, through a tame and monotonous country. I looked continually to the north, for a glimpse of the Himalayas, and once thought I saw some sharp white peaks, but they gradually moved together and changed their forms. Toward evening my bearers stopped at a village, which they said was the end of their *chokee* (stage), but that the new bearers, who ought to have been in waiting, had gone on to another village, about a mile distant. To avoid the delay of waiting their return, they offered to take me on to the village for an additional backsheesh; and I consented. When I arrived, however, and found the new bearers in readiness, I asked them: "Is this the beginning of your *chokee*, or the village behind us?" "This is the place," they all exclaimed; whereupon the others were quite abashed at finding their trickery exposed, and their expected backsheesh lost. At sunset I passed through Mozuffernuggur, a large town about thirty-six miles from Meerut. At the next *chokee* beyond it, I was delayed an hour and a half by the non-appearance of the bearers. My men began to shout, and the cries were taken up by one person and another, till they seemed to radiate through the whole country, and fill the air, far and near. The men were at last gathered together, and we went on by torch-light. The night was clear and cold, and I lay muffled up, cramped

and shivering, until we arrived at the station of Roorkhee, three hours past midnight.

There was a Government bungalow, to which the bearers conveyed me, awoke the sleepy chokedar, kindled a cocoa-nut lamp, and left me. I removed every thing from the palanquin to the room, fastened the doors, and then lay down upon the charpoy (bedstead), where I slept until morning. On awaking, my first sensation was that of hunger, for I had fasted twenty-four hours, so I summoned the chokedar, and ordered him to get breakfast for me. "*Bohut achchhi*," (very well,) said he, and then went on to make some statement, the most prominent words of which were "*ghurreeb purwar*." I asked him for tea, for eggs, for fowls, but though he always replied "very well," there was sure to follow something about "*ghurreeb purwar*." At last I decided that these words referred to some necessary article, without which he could not provide breakfast. I thought of the Arabic words *gurra*, a gourd, and *geerbeh*, a water-skin, and it was quite plain that "*ghurreeb purwar*" must mean either a tea-kettle or a frying pan. "Well," said I, when he had repeated the words for the twentieth time, "I have no *ghurreeb purwar*; you must get one. Go and borrow one from the Sahibs!" The man stared at me in a wild way, and went off, but not to provide breakfast. I learned afterwards that "*ghurreeb purwar*" was a title addressed to myself, and means "Protector of the Poor." It is addressed to all Europeans in these parts, and no exclusive honor is meant thereby, as Bishop Heber supposed, when he wrote in his Journal, that the people, on account of his kindness to them, had bestowed upon him the title of "Protector of the Poor."

While anxiously waiting for breakfast, I amused myself by reading a list of the books in the Library of the Ganges Canal at Roorkee, which hung upon the wall. Who would have guessed that an humble author, in scrambling about the world, should find one of his works in the furthest corner of India, at the very foot of the Himalayas? Yet so it was; and the fact made the place less inhospitable, in spite of my hunger. Where my words have already been, I thought, shall not my body find nourishment? and while trying to reason myself into the impression that there was a breakfast somewhere in Roorkee, which it was destined that I should eat, I walked out upon the verandah.

It was about eight in the morning: an atmosphere of crystal, and not a cloud in the sky. Yet something white and shining glimmered through the loose foliage of some trees on my right hand. My heart came into my mouth with the sudden bound it gave, when, after plunging through the trees like one mad, tumbling into a ditch on the other side, and scrambling up a great pile of dirt, I saw the Himalayas before me! Unobscured by a single cloud or a speck of vapor, there stood revealed the whole mountain region, from the low range of the Siwalik Hills, about twenty miles distant, to the loftiest pinnacles of eternal snow, which look down on China and Thibet. The highest range, though much more than a hundred miles distant, as the crow flies, rose as far into the sky as the Alps at forty miles, and with every glacier and chasm and spire of untrodden snow as clearly defined. Their true magnitude, therefore, was not fully apparent, because the eye refused to credit the intervening distance. But the exquisite loveliness of the shadows painted by the morning on those

enormous wastes of snow, and the bold yet beautiful outlines of the topmost cones, soaring to a region of perpetual silence and death, far surpassed any distant view of the Alps or any other mountain chain I ever saw. As seen from Roorkee the Himalayas present the appearance of three distinct ranges. The first, the Siwalik Hills, are not more than two thousand feet in height; the second, or Sub-Himalayas, rise to eight or nine thousand, while the loftiest peaks of the snowy range, visible from this point, are 25,000 feet above the sea. Far in the north-west was the Chore, an isolated peak, which is almost precisely the height of Mont Blanc, but seemed a very pigmy in comparison with the white cones beyond it.

I had a letter to Col. Cautley, the Superintendent of the Ganges Canal, and hastened to deliver it in time to share his breakfast. He was not in Roorkee, as it happened; but I learned from the servant that there was a "sahib" living in the house, and sent the letter in to him. The "sahib" did just what I had hoped, that is, he came out and asked me in to breakfast with him—which I was but too ready to do. The letter was forwarded to Capt. Goodwyn, the next in command, and before the meal was concluded I received a kind note from that officer, offering me a room in his house.

Roorkee has suddenly risen into note from being the headquarters of the Engineers employed on the Ganges Canal. A large workshop is in operation, and the Government has just established a College for educating Civil Engineers. The Europeans are comparatively few, and the native town is inhabited almost entirely by the workmen employed on the Canal. It is a pleasant, healthy place, scattered over a rising ground, overlooking the Valley of the Ganges, and en-

joys one of the finest prospects of the Himalayas to be had from any part of the plains. A very handsome Gothic Church (designed by Mr. Price, the gentleman to whom I was indebted for a breakfast) had been recently erected, and this, with the open, turfy common in front of the town, and the absence of tropical trees, reminded me strongly of England.

The Ganges Canal is one of the grandest undertakings of the present day. It has been constructed under the direction and at the expense of the Government, mainly for the purpose of irrigating the level, fertile tracts between the Ganges and Jumna, but also to afford the means of transporting the productions of the country to the head of navigation on the former river, at Cawnpore. The labor of more than ten years had been expended on it at the time of my visit, and four or five years more were considered necessary to complete it.* It will be eighty feet wide, varying in depth according to the season, but probably averaging eight feet, and, including its numerous branches, will have an extent of eight hundred miles! It taps the Ganges at Hurdwar (eighteen miles to the north-west of Roorkh), and returns to it again at Cawnpore, a distance of more than four hundred miles. The total cost, when completed, will not fall much short of £2,000,000, but it is expected to yield a return of £500,000 annually. This calculation is based on the success of the East and West Jumna Canals, which are comparatively on a small scale. The former of these was finished in 1825, since when it has paid all the expense of construction, together with an annual interest of 5

* The water was let into the main trunk of the Ganges Canal in the summer of 1854, and the work, so far as it has gone into operation is perfectly successful.

per cent thereupon, and £320,000 clear profit. The latter, finished a few years since, has paid the cost and interest, with £30,000 profit.

The use of the water for irrigation is not obligatory upon the inhabitants, but they are generally quite willing to avail themselves of it. There are three ways in which it is furnished to them: First, by villages or companies of cultivators contracting for as much as they want; secondly, by a fixed rate per acre, according to the kind of grain, rice being the most expensive and cotton the cheapest; and thirdly, by renting an outlet of a certain fixed dimension, at so much per year. Along the Jumna Canals the people do not wait, as formerly, to see whether the crops will be likely to succeed without irrigation, but employ it in all seasons, and are thereby assured of a constant return for their labor. The Ganges Canal will be of vast importance in increasing the amount of grain produced in Hindostan, the design of the Government being to *render famine impossible*. It is to be hoped that such a dreadful spectacle as the famine of 1838, when hundreds of thousands perished from want, will never again be witnessed in India. That such things have happened is the natural result of the tenure by which land is held and cultivated. The Government is the proprietor, and the *zemindars*, or tenants pay 75 per cent. of the assessed value of the products. The land is sub-let by the *zemindars* to the *ryots*, or laborers, and these, the poor and ignorant millions of India, of course gain little or nothing beyond a bare subsistence. If the crops fail, they have nothing at all. The Ganges Canal will therefore, to a certain extent, prevent famine, by assuring perennial crops. It will enrich the Government, because, in addition to the sale

of the water, it will increase the rent of the lands as they become more productive, but it will very slightly mitigate the condition of the ryots.

The greatest modern work in India is the Canal Aqueduct over the Selanee River, at Roorkee. It is entirely constructed of brick, and, including the abutments, is about a quarter of a mile in length, by a hundred and eighty feet in breadth. There are sixteen arches, of about seventy feet span, and rising twenty feet above the river, the foundations of the piers being sunk twenty feet below the bed. The arches are four feet thick, in order to support the immense pressure of such a body of water. Hundreds of workmen were employed on the structure, and a small railroad had been laid down for bringing the materials. A locomotive was imported from England, but, through the neglect of the native firemen, soon became a wreck. During the short time it was in operation a great number of accidents occurred. It was found almost impossible to keep the natives off the track. Their stupidity in this respect is astonishing. If you have a hard heart you may run over as many as you like in a morning's ride. for they will assuredly not get out of your way unless you force them to it.

CHAPTER XIII

HURDWAR AND THE GANGES.

Native Workmen at Roorkee—Their Wages—Departure for Hurdwar—Afternoon View of the Himalayas—Peaks visible from Roorkee—Jungle grass—Jowalapore—Approach to the Siwalik Hills—First View of the Ganges—Ganges Canal—Prediction of the Brahmins—An Arrival—The Holy City of Hurdwar—Its Annual Fair—Appearance of the Streets—The Bazaar—A Himalayan Landscape—Travel in the Jungle—A Conflagration—The Jungle by Torch-Light—Arrival at Dehra.

BEFORE leaving Roorkee I paid a visit to the workshops, where I was much struck with the skill and aptness of the natives employed. The shops are instituted for the purpose of constructing the implements used on the Canal works. The machinery is driven by steam and conducted entirely by natives under European superintendence. One of the departments is devoted to the construction of mathematical instruments, which are fully equal to those of English manufacture. "The natives," to use the words of the Superintendent "learn in one sixth of the time which an English workman would require." Their imitative talent is wonderful, but they totally lack invention. This makes them a people easily improved, as they are anxious to learn, but never knowing more than is taught them, never using their knowledge as a lamp to explore the unknown fields of science or art. These workmen

are paid from four to eight rupees a month, according to their skill, but the ordinary laborers on the Canal, though hired at four (\$2), do not, owing to their indolence, generally receive more than two rupees per month, out of which they find themselves. It is said that one rupee (fifty cents,) monthly, covers all their necessary expenses.

After two days at Roorkee, I summoned the bearers to be in readiness at sunrise, the next morning. Capt. Goodwyn was kind enough to see that all the arrangements were complete, besides ordering me an early breakfast, and his amiable lady provided me with a tiffin, which I was to eat in Col. Cantley's bungalow at Hurdwar. The morning was bright and cold, and as I was borne down the bank to the Selanee River, I noticed that a light rime lay upon the grass. The bearers shivered as they waded through the chill water, though their bare legs were nearly as tough and leathery as an elephant's. I opened the palanquin so that I might look on the Himalayas, as I lay, but their cold morning gleam was not so beautiful as the warm red flush which had lain on them during the previous afternoon and evening. I had accompanied my hosts to the cricket-ground, where there was a match between the military and the civilians. The game was explained to me, and politeness required that I should take an interest in its progress; but my whole soul had gone off to the Himalayas, and I could see or think of nothing else. I was most struck with their exquisite beauty of form and coloring. The faintest pink of the sea-shell slept upon the steeps of snow, and their tremendous gulfs and chasms were filled with pale-blue shadows, so delicately pencilled that I can only compare them to the finest painting on ivory. When I reflected that each of

those gentle touches of blue was a tremendous gorge, ' where darkness dwells all day ; ' that each break in the harmonious flow of the outline on the sky—like the break in a cadence of music, making it sweeter for the pause—was a frightful precipice, thousands of feet in depth and inaccessible to human foot, I was overpowered by the awful sublimity of the picture. But when their color grew rosy and lambent in the sunset, I could think of nothing but the divine beauty which beamed through them, and wonder whether they resembled the mountains which we shall see in the glorified landscapes of the future world.

The snowy chain visible from Roorkhee extends from Nepal to the borders of Cashmere, and includes some of the highest peaks, though not the very highest, in the Himalayas. In front rise the Gungootree and Jumnotree, the sources of the Jumna and Ganges, about 25,000 feet high; further to the eastward, Buddhreenath, a little lower; and in the distant north-east, the summit of Nundidevi, which has an altitude of nearly 26,000. Dwalagheri, Chumalari, and a third peak which, according to recent measurements, is fully 30,000 feet above the sea, are further to the eastward. There is generally much cloud and mist upon them during the winter season, and at Roorkhee they told me there had not been so fine a view of them for two months, as on the morning of my arrival.

After crossing the Selanee River, I was carried on through a low tract, at first covered only with long jungle grass, ten feet high, but afterward studded with picturesque topes, or groves, of mango and peepul trees. Being sheltered by the Siwalik Hills, and inundated by the overflow of the Ganges

the vegetation was very luxuriant, and had more of a tropical character than upon the plains. In the dense jungles along the Ganges, about fifteen miles from Roorkee, there is an abundance of tigers, leopards and wild elephants. The deer, antelope and wild boar are also frequent. On my way to Hurdwar I passed through Jowalapore, a queer old town which appeared to have some share in the sanctity of the neighboring city. I sat up in the palanquin to have a better view of the place and people, as I was borne through its tortuous streets. There were a number of temples and caravanserais, and the roofs of the houses were tenanted by sacred apes, whose posteriors were painted of a bright crimson color. The inhabitants looked at me with curiosity, and some of them made very respectful salaams. There was a bazaar and market in full operation, which were almost an exact counterpart of those of the smaller Egyptian towns. Among the crowd I noticed two handsome, fair-skinned Cashmerians.

The road now approached the Siwalik Hills, which were steep and covered with jungle to the summit. The gorge through which the Ganges forces its way at Hurdwar made an abrupt gap in their chain, revealing a striking view of the second or Sub-Himalayas, which now completely hid the snowy peaks. It was nearly noon by this time, and the day was warm and summer-like. The bearers threaded the shade of the mango topes, crossed the canal, passed, without entering, the town of Khunkhul, and finally set me down at Col. Cautley's bungalow, at Myapore. This is a little village about half a mile from Hurdwar, at the point where the canal leaves the Ganges. The bungalow—a thatched cottage, pleasantly enbowered in trees—was comfortably furnished

though untenanted. I took possession for the time; the servant set about making tea for me, and sent word for the new bearers to be ready in two hours.

Meanwhile I strolled out to see the head of the canal. In ten minutes I stood on the lofty banks of the Ganges, looking down on his clear blue stream. The gorge lay open before me; the hills rose on either hand covered with a wilderness of jungle; the white pinnacles of the temples of Hurdwar shone over the top of a belt of trees; the sacred ghauts led down to the water; but beyond all, crowning the huge blue bulk of the Sub-Himalayas, towered the snowy cone of Gungotree. It was an impressive scene. Here was the river beneath my feet; there one of his most sacred cities; and in the remote distance the snows wherein he is cradled. I went down the bank, and there, at the last gate of the Himalayas, where they let him out upon the plain of Hindostan, drank of the Holy River.

The dam across the Ganges at the head of the Canal was of course postponed until the remainder of the work should be finished, but the abutments and a regulating bridge of red sandstone were already completed. The canal was expected to take away nine tenths of the river at this place—a prospect which spread terror among the Brahmins. They declared that the goddess Gangajee had announced to them in a vision, that she would never lie quietly in any other than her accustomed bed. If the English turned her out of it she might be forced to go a few miles, but she would assuredly break loose and return. The Brahmins, therefore, predicted the total failure of the Canal. The removal of so much water will be a disadvantage to those who inhabit the

banks, but Col. Cautley supposes that the loss will be supplied by springs in the river-bed.

While I was preparing to leave, a garree drove up, out of which descended a ruddy, powerful man, a lady and two fat and rosy children. The gentleman, who had charge of the operations at Mappyore, immediately addressed me in the most cordial manner. He had just brought his family down from Landowr in the Himalayas, to spend a few days, and I learned from him that the snows were fast melting. He had been five years in America, and professed himself delighted to meet a citizen of that country. I would willingly have prolonged my stay, but the bearers were waiting, so we shook hands and I was carried on to Hurdwar.

This is one of the most curious cities in India. It lies on the western bank of the Ganges, exactly in the gorge formed by the Siwalik Hills. There is but one principal street, running parallel to the water, and crossed by others so steep as to resemble staircases. Broad stone ghauts descend to the river, to allow the pilgrims facility of bathing. Between them, upon platforms of masonry of various heights, are temples to the Hindoo gods, principally to Ganeish and Shiva. The emblem of the latter divinity, the *lingam*, or symbol of the Phallic worship, is seen on all sides. Its signification, however, would never be guessed by a stranger, nor is there any thing indecent in the ceremonies with which it is worshipped. The temples are from twenty to fifty feet high—none, I think, of greater altitude—and generally built of gray sandstone. There is great similarity in their design, which is a massive square shrine, surmounted by a four-sided or circular spire, curving gradually to a point, so that the

outline of each side resembles a parabola. All parts of the building are covered with grotesque but elaborate ornaments and many of the spires are composed of a mass of smaller ones, overlapping each other like scales, so that at a distance they resemble slender pine-apples, of colossal size. There are fifty or sixty temples in and about the city, some of them being perched on the summit of cliffs rising above it. Most of them are whitewashed, and have a new and glaring appearance; but there are others, enclosed in large courtyards, which are very black and venerable, and seem to be regarded with more than usual reverence. I could see lamps burning before the idols, in the gloomy interiors, but was not allowed to enter. There is a great annual *mela*, or fair, held at Hurdwar, which is sometimes attended by a million and a half of persons. I believe there are never less than five or six hundred thousand present. The natives flock from all parts of Hindostan and Bengal, from the Deccan, the Punjâb, from Cashmere, Affghanistan, Tartary and Thibet, some as religious devotees, some as worldly tradesmen. For miles around the place it is one immense encampment, and all the races, faces, costumes, customs and languages of the East, from Persia to Siam, from Ceylon to Siberia, are represented. Buying and selling, praying and bathing, commercial fleecing and holy hair-cutting, and all kinds of religious and secular swindling, are in full operation; and Hurdwar, which is at other times a very quiet, lonely, half-deserted, out-of-the-way nook, is then a metropolis, rivalling London in its tumult. Some of the missionaries usually attend on such occasions, in the hope of catching brands from the burning, but the fires are generally

so hot that they do little more than scorch their fingers for their pains.

As I passed slowly through the streets, I was much entertained by the picturesque and filthy appearance of the town. Its holiness was apparent at a glance. It reminded me of one of those naked *fakeers* covered with dirt and ashes, who by gazing steadfastly upon their navels, attain the beatitude of saints. The streets were narrow, very dirty and enclosed by high black houses. Blacker and more dirty were the temples. On the low, thatched verandahs in front of the shops, sat groups of sacred monkeys, with painted posteriors, like those of Jowalapore. They were silent and contemplative, but the sacred bulls, who blocked up the streets below them, exhibited a cool impudence, which nothing but a human being could surpass. The inhabitants were all engaged in plaiting bamboo splits into baskets. I could not imagine what all this basket-making was intended for, until I reflected that the time of the Fair was approaching, and that the Brahmins would need them as depositories for their spoils. Another part of the Bazaar was entirely filled with a display of beads; a still larger department was devoted to the sale of idols, hundreds of whom squatted cross-legged on both sides, staring at me with marvellously good-humored faces. Ganeish looked so comical with his elephant's ears and trunk that I felt tempted to give the latter member a tweak. But in the remaining portion of the bazaar was stowed nothing but assafoetida, which is brought over from Thibet. It must have been of good quality for the fragrance was overpowering. My bearers hurried through, crying out, as they had

done since entering the town: "Make way for the Maharajah!"

Passing around the hill, the road began to descend, and a superb view of the Dehra Dhoon—a large valley enclosed between the Siwalik Hills and the Sub-Himalayas—presented itself to my view. Before me lay the Ganges, its waters glittering in the sun, as it spread them out in the valley, after forcing a pass through a deep, dark gap in the mountains before me. These mountains, the Sub-Himalayas, stretched far to the west, point lessening and fading beyond point, till the magnificent perspective of the Dhoon was closed by the distant Chore, the twin brother of Mont Blanc. Snow sparkled on all the summits, though the main range was quite out of view. On my left the rich, woody undulations of the Siwalik Hills swept into the distance, and the great valley below, as far as my eye could reach, appeared to be a boundless forest. I was now fairly within the Himalayas, and this view gave a splendid promise of the scenery which they infold.

The jungle grew more dense as we advanced, and the signs of habitation less and less frequent. The forests were the finest I had seen in India, composed principally of saul trees, with clusters of bamboo in the hollows. In some places they were so laced together with vines, which had in turn become trees, that their recesses were almost impenetrable. Hundreds of bright-green parrots chattered on the boughs, and flowers of brilliant colors gleamed in the foliage. My bearers trotted rapidly through these beautiful solitudes, for tigers are plentiful, and the carcass of a cow, covered with vultures, which lay near the road, hinted of them. There

were at least fifty huge birds, shrieking and fighting for the morsels which remained, and some of them, who were already gorged, could with great difficulty get out of the way of my men. Toward evening, I was startled by a roaring sound, resembling a high wind advancing through the forest. But soon dense volumes of white smoke became visible, and occasionally streamers of flame shot above the tree-tops. A turn in the road discovered an open tract at the foot of the hills, covered with tall jungle-grass, which the natives had set on fire. The grass was very thick, and from eight to ten feet high, so that the conflagration was on a grand scale. The flames, of a brilliant scarlet color, pressed along the slope with the fury of a charging battalion, and their deep roar, with the incessant snapping and crackling of the grass, made a noise truly awful. I was strongly reminded of my unlucky attempt at burning out lions, on the White Nile, a year previous. The fire had just leaped over the road, and my bearers passed in safety.

We were obliged to cross several spurs of the Siwalik range. The same forest still spread its thick fold over them, and the turnings of the road as it rose or descended, gave it the appearance of a labyrinth. Sunset came on as we were traversing the crest of a long ridge, whence there was a fine view over the leafy wilderness below me, and while I was borne along by the silent bearers, looking down on the darkening valley or watching the last flush fading from the Himalayan snows, I felt that there might be times when palanquin travelling was agreeable. I was a little startled, on being carried into a gloomy glen, to see a dozen men burst out of the thickets, but it appeared that they were

travelers, who had taken a nearer path, known only to themselves.

When it grew dark, the mussalchee lit his torch and walked beside the palanquin, waving the light to and fro, that the bearers might see where to put their feet. The red glow illuminated, with splendid effect, the masses of foliage on either hand, and I lay watching it for hour after hour, till I fell from reverie into sleep. I was awakened once when the bearers were changed and a second time, when, two hours after midnight they set me down at the hotel in Dehra.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE HIMALAYAS.

Exception by Mr. Keene—We start for the Himalayas—The Dehra-Dhoun—Morning View of the Sub-Himalayas—Leopards—Rajpore—Wilson, the “Ranger of the Himalayas”—Climbing the Mountain—Change of Seasons—The Summit of the Ridge—Village of Landowr—Snow-Drifts—The Pole and the Equator—Rev. Mr. Woodside—Mast-Head of the Sub-Himalayas—View of the Snowy Peaks—Grand Asiatic Tradition—Peculiar Structure of the Himalayan Ranges—Scenery of the Main Chain—The Paharrees—Polyandry—The Peaks at Sunset—The Plain of Hindostan—A Cloudy Deluge.

ON visiting Mr. Keene, the Deputy Magistrate of Dehra, the morning after my arrival, I was at once installed as an inmate of his house during my stay, and invited to accompany him to Mussooree and Landowr, on the following day. The invitation chimed so thoroughly with my own plans, that I accepted it, together with his hospitality. Mr. Keene is one of the few persons in the East India Company's Service, who have devoted their leisure to literary pursuits. He is one of the main props of *Saunders' Magazine*, a very creditable monthly periodical, published at Delhi; and I do not betray a secret, when I state that he is also the author of the frequent poems signed “H. G. K.,” which appear in *Blackwood*.

We rose early the next morning, and after a cup of tea, set off in Mr. K.'s buggy for Rajpore, at the foot of the mountains. The town of Dehra is situated near the centre of the Dhoon, or Valley, of the same name, which is a tract about seventy miles in length by fifteen in breadth, between the Siwalik Hills and the Sub-Himalayas, and extending from the Ganges to the Jumna. Protected alike from the hot winds of the plains, and the cold blasts of the hills, it is one of the most fertile regions in India, and one of the most beautiful which I saw. From Dehra, the whole extent of the magnificent valley is visible. The curves of the Himalayan range fill up its vistas, on either hand, with views of the loftier summits, and thus it appears completely shut out from the world. The vegetation is much more luxuriant than upon the plains, and owing to its sheltered position, most kinds of tropical fruits thrive well, although it lies between 30° and 31° N.

The morning was mild and cloudless, the road excellent, and we rattled along merrily between clumps of bamboo and groves of mango-trees, occasionally looking up to the snows that sparkled six thousand feet above us. The houses on the very summit of the mountain were distinctly visible. The vast sides and shoulders of the range were scantily clothed with jungle, through which showed the dark-red hue of the soil, softened to a lurid purple by distance. Toward their bases the jungle was dense and green, except where the soil had been cleared and formed into terraces for cultivation. The surface of the valley presented a charming alternation of grain-fields, groups of immense mango trees, and patches of woodland. resembling, in its general aspect

the Midland Counties of England. Mr. Keene pointed out a hill to the eastward, as the scene of a bloody battle during the war with the Goorkhas, or hill-tribes, and the spot where Gen. Gillespie fell. The fortress, which formerly crowned the hill, has been entirely demolished. The jungles in the valley abound with wild beasts. Only two weeks before, a lady who was taking an afternoon ride to Rajpore, saw two full-grown leopards lying in a field, not more than fifty yards from the road. The beasts gazed at her very complacently, as well-bred leopards might, but attempted no familiarities.

In an hour we reached Rajpore, which sits upon the lowest step, or foundation stone of the mountain. On some fine wooded knolls to the west of it there are several handsome bungalows, the summer residences of invalided or furloughed officers. There is also a little hotel, whither we drove, in order to hire ponies for the climb of seven miles to Landowr. A tall, heavy-featured weather-beaten gentleman of forty-five or fifty, was standing in the verandah. He had a red Scotch complexion, gray eyes, and yellow hair on the sides of his head, the crown being bald. There was something indolent and phlegmatic in his air, and I was greatly surprised when Mr. Keene pointed him out to me as Wilson, the noted "Ranger of the Himalayas," as he is generally called. We entered into conversation with him at once. He had come down from Landowr that morning on his way to Dehra, but would be back in the hills in a few days. He has lived almost exclusively among the upper ranges of the Himalayas for more than ten years, and knows every pass (so he informed me), as far as Cashmere. His wanderings have extended as far as Ladak, or Leh, in Thibet, the capital of a state which is at present tributary to Goolah

Singh, the Rajah of Cashmere. He said there was no difficulty in reaching either Cashmere or Ladak, and if I had had two months more—but one cannot see every thing. Wilson has much influence over the *pahirrees*, or mountaineers, and his services are in great request during the summer, when sporting tours are made in the upper Himalayas. In addition to the ibex, bear, and mountain sheep, there are abundance of superb golden pheasants and other magnificent specimens of the feathered race, the skins of which he preserves, and which, when sent to Calcutta for sale, produce him a handsome return.

I hired a pony for two rupees, and we immediately set out for Landowr. Mr. Keene, being the Deputy Magistrate of the Dhoon, was escorted through the town by the local police, who took their departure with profound salaams. The road, which was merely a narrow path for horses, notched along the abrupt side of a spur of the mountain, commanded a striking view of a deep gorge on the right hand, the sides of which were terraced and covered with a luxuriant crop of wheat. As we ascended further, the Dhoon extended below us, checkered with forests and fields, while the white fronts of houses dotted its verdurous map. I was reminded of the view from Catskill Mountain-House, but missed the clearness and brilliancy of our American atmosphere. Here there was a film of blue vapor on the landscape, like a crape over my eyes, through which the more distant objects glimmered in indistinct and uncertain forms. The further we climbed, the dimmer became the scene, until there remained but a vapory chaos—the mere ghost of a world below us, out of which rose the summits of the Siwalik Hills as if upheaved by the subsidence of the agitated elements.

The road was excessively steep, and only wide enough to admit of two horsemen passing each other. In many places it overhung descents which were so nearly precipitous that a stone flung out would strike the earth many hundreds of feet below. The jungle became more scanty, and the wild flowers ceased. Patches of snow appeared on the heights on either side, and gushes of a cold wind, sweeping through gaps in the range, now and then blew in our faces. At length we reached the top of a ridge, an outlying spur from the summit upon which Landowr is perched. The road became more level, and when skirting the tremendous gulf separating the branches of the range, was protected by a balustrade. A gateway cut in the rock admitted us to the north side of the ridge we had ascended, and the passage through it introduced us to a scenery of such a different character, that it might well be called the Gate of the Seasons. Behind us the sun shone warm, the grass was green and a few blossoms still kept their places on the trees; but around and before us were beds of snow, bare, brown patches of sward, and leafless boughs. Only the oak—an evergreen variety, with a leaf resembling the beech—and the rhododendron, retained their foliage. The height before us was sprinkled with one-story bungalows, which clung to such narrow ledges of the mountain over such abrupt and frightful gulfs, that they seemed to have been dropped and lodged there. The precipitous village and the houses scattered along the irregular summit is called Landowr. The place has an extent of a mile and a half, and half the inhabitants, at least during the summer, are English. On one of the highest points, is a large military hospital. About two miles to the

West of Landowr is Mussooree, which is scattered in like manner, over a ridge nearly a thousand feet lower.

The street of the native village through which we passed was covered with snow to the depth of three feet, and owing to the constant thaw which was going on, our horses had some difficulty in getting through. The roofs were in many places broken by the weight of snow which had fallen upon them. However we reached Mr. Keene's bungalow without accident, where his tenant, Lieut. B., anticipated our wishes by ordering tiffin to be got ready. I had now reached the summit of the second range of the Himalayas, 8,000 feet above the sea. The cottage where we were quartered was perched on a narrow shelf, scooped out of the side of the mountain. From the balcony where I sat, I could have thrown a stone upon the lowest house in the place. For the first time in several weeks, the thermometer was above freezing-point, and the snows with which the roof was laden poured in a shower from the eaves. Around me the heights were bleak and white and wintry, but down the gorge below me—far down in its warm bed—I could see the evergreen vegetation of the Tropics. Buried to the knees in a snow-drift, I looked upon a palm-tree, and could almost smell the blossoms of the orange-bowers in a valley where frost never fell. It was like sitting at the North Pole, and looking down on the Equator.

I had a letter to Mr. Woodside, an American Missionary who lived upon the highest point of Landowr, and Mr. Keene and I visited him during the afternoon. We had still half a mile to climb before reaching the summit of the mountain, which I found to be a sharp, serrated crest, not more than

ten yards in breadth. Mr. Woodside's house commands a view of both sides of the Sub-Himalayas; and a natural mound beside it has been ascertained, by measurement, to be the loftiest spot in this part of the range. The house and mound were purchased by a benevolent Philadelphian, as a sanitarium for Missionaries—a thing much needed by that class. I suggested to Mr. Woodside the propriety of planting a tall flagstaff on the mound, and running up the national colors on certain anniversaries.

The view from this point best repaid me for my journey to the hills. The mound on which we stood was conical, and only twenty feet in diameter at the summit. The sides of the mountain fell away so suddenly that it had the effect of a tower, or of looking from the mast-head of a vessel. In fact, it might be called the “main truck” of the Sub-Himalayas. The sharp comb, or ridge, of which it is the crowning point, has a direction of north-west to south-east (parallel to the great Himalayan range), dividing the panorama into two hemispheres, of very different character. To the north, I looked into the wild heart of the Himalayas—a wilderness of barren peaks, a vast jumble of red mountains, divided by tremendous clefts and ravines, of that dark indigo hue, which you sometimes see on the edge of a thunder-cloud—but in the back-ground, towering far, far above them, rose the mighty pinnacles of the Gungootree, the Jumnootre, the Budreenath, and the Kylàs, the heaven of Indra, where the Great God, Mahadeo, still sits on his throne, inaccessible to mortal foot. I was fifty miles nearer these mountains than at Roorkhee, where I first beheld them, and with the additional advantage of being mounted on a footstool, equal to

one third of their height. They still stood immeasurably above me, so cold, and clear, and white, that, without knowledge to the contrary, I should have said that they were not more than twenty miles distant. Yet, as the crow flies, a line of *seventy* miles would scarce have reached their summits!

Though not the highest of the Himalayas, these summits form the great central group of the chain, and contain the cisterns whence spring the rivers of India, Thibet and Burmah. The snows of their southern slopes feed the Jumna and Ganges; of their northern, the Sutledj, the Indus and the Brahmapootra. Around this group cling the traditions of the Hindoo Mythology. Thence came the first parents of the race; there appeared the first land after the deluge. And upon the lofty table-lands of Central Asia, whereor those peaks look down, was probably the birth-place of the great Caucasian family, from which the Hindoos and ourselves alike are descended. Far to the north-west, where the Altay, the Hindoo Koosh (or Indian Caucasus), and the Himalayas, join their sublime ranges, there is a table-land higher than Popocatepetl, called, in the picturesque language of the Tartars, the "Roof of the World." Under the eaves of that roof, on the table-land of Pamir, if we may trust Asiatic tradition, dwelt the parents of our race. I fancied myself standing on the cone of Gungootree, and looking down upon it. The vast physical features of this part of the world are in themselves so imposing, that we are but too ready to give them the advantage of any myth which invests them with a grand human interest.

There is a peculiarity in the structure of the Himalayas

of which I had not heard, until I visited them. At their north-western extremity, on the frontiers of Cashmere and Afghanistan, the lower or Sub-Himalayas are lofty, and so separated by deep valleys from the higher or snowy range, as almost to form a parallel chain. As we proceed eastward, however, the relative height of the two ranges gradually changes. The peaks of the Upper Himalayas increase in height, while those of the Sub-Himalayas decrease. A little to the east of the Dhoon, the Siwalik Hills cease entirely. The Sub-Himalayas gradually dwindle away toward Nepaul, becoming more narrow and broken as they approach the termination of the chain. Dwalagheri, in the main Himalayan chain, once supposed to be the highest mountain in the world, is in Nepaul. But further to the *east*, is Chumalari, which is still higher, and recent measurements have discovered that another peak, still further eastward, in the former province of Sikim, is higher than Chumalari. This regular increase of altitude in the Himalayas, as you proceed eastward, is very curious. The height of Dwalagheri is estimated at 27,000 feet; Chumalari, a little more than 28,000, and the third peak, the name of which I forget, fully 30,000 feet! The Rev. Mr. D'Aguilar, whom I saw at Roorkee, penetrated to the glaciers of Jumnootree. He informed me that in ascending the Himalayas, the productions become not only of the temperate zone, but English in their character; the flowers, fruit and shrubs being almost identical with those of England. In the valleys, however, is found the *deodar*, or Himalayan cypress, which grows to a height of more than 200 feet. There is a temple near the source of the Ganges, but owing to the danger and difficulty of the

journey, comparatively few pilgrims reach it. The air of the mountain is pure, fresh and invigorating, and the *pahar rees* are said to be both physically and mentally superior to the inhabitants of the plains. Mr. D'Aguilar considered them as a strikingly honest and faithful race. Owing to the difficulty of procuring subsistence, and the necessity of restricting the increase of population, Polyandry has existed among them from time immemorial. The woman and her husbands live together harmoniously, and the latter contribute each an equal share to the support of the children. Among these people the saying will particularly apply: "It's a wise child that knows its own father." Another of their customs is still more singular. Their ideas of hospitality compel them to share not only their food, but their connubial right with the stranger, and no insult is so great as a refusal to accept it. While in Landowr, I saw several of them walking bare-legged through the snow, which troubled them as little as it would a horse. They were handsome, muscular fellows, with black eyes, ivory teeth and a ruddy copper complexion.

I spent the afternoon with Mr. Woodside, and at sunset went again upon the mound, to witness the illumination of the Himalayas. Although there were clouds in the sky, the range was entirely unobscured, and the roseate glare of its enormous fields of snow, shooting into flame-shaped pinnacles, seemed lighted up by the conflagration of a world. It was a spectacle of surpassing glory, but so brief, that I soon lost the sense of its reality.

I was called, however, to witness another remarkable phenomenon. Turning from the fading hills, I looked to the

south. The Dehra Dhoon was buried under a sea of snow white clouds, which rolled and surged against each other sinking and rising, like the billows of an agitated sea. Where we stood, the air was pure and serene; but far away, over that cloudy deluge—which soon tossed its waves above the peaks of the Siwalik Hills—more than a hundred miles away—and high in air, apparently, ran a faint blue horizon-line, like that of the sea. It was the great plain of Hindostan, but so distant that the delusion was perfect. The great white billows rose, and rose, whirling and tossing as they poured into the clefts of the hills, till presently we stood as on a little island in the midst of a raging sea. Still they rose, disclosing enormous hollows between their piled masses; cliffs, as of wool, toppled over the cavities; avalanches slid from the summits of the ridges and slowly fell into the depths; and as I looked away for many a league over the cloudy world, there was motion every where, but not a sound. The silence was awful, and as the vast mass arose, I felt an involuntary alarm, lest we should be overwhelmed. But to our very feet the deluge came, and there rested. Its spray broke against the little pinnacle whereon we stood, but the billows kept their place. It was as if a voice had said: “Thus far shalt thou come, and no further: and here shall thy proud waves be stayed.”

CHAPTER XV.

SCENES IN THE DEHRA DHOON

Return to Dehra—The Dhoon—System of Taxation—The Tea-Culture in India—Tea-Garden at Kaologir—Progress by Force—Ride to the Robber's Cave—A Sikh Temple—A Sunny Picture—Sikh Minstrelsy—Rajah Loll Singh—English Masters and Native Servants—Preparations for Departure.

WE returned from Landowr on Wednesday afternoon, the 2d of February. Lieut. B. urged us to remain another day, but the Himalayas (which I had gone up the mountain at sunrise to see) were half covered with clouds, the snow was melting on all sides, and the paths were almost impassable from mud and slush. There was said to be a specimen of the *yak*, or Tartar cow, at Mussooree, which I should have seen, but for three miles of sloppy road. As it was, I was glad to escape from the dreary though sublime heights of Landowr, and return to Dehra, with its groves and sunny gardens. The air was still more hazy than on the preceding day, but as we descended, the phantom valley flushed into form and color, and in an hour and a half from the time my pony tumbled down in a snow-drift, I reined him up under a palm-tree.

Dehra, as I have already stated, is one of the loveliest spots in India. Judging from the number of handsome

bungalows in and around the town, the Anglo-Indians are of a similar opinion. As much of the valley is entirely given up to jungle, parts of it, which are marshy and undrained, are considered unhealthy, but a little attention would make it one of the healthiest, as it is one of the most fertile districts in Northern India. A small irrigating canal has been carried through the central part, but it does not even pay the expenses, so feeble and defective is the agriculture of the Dhoon. There are reckoned, within its limits, a hundred villages, but the population must be very scanty, since the revenue obtained by Government only amounts to 22,000 rupees. When I state that the tax imposed upon the *zemindars*, who hold the land as Government tenants, amounts to 75 per cent. of the estimated value of the products, it will be seen how trifling the actual yield must be. The *ryots*, or peasants, to whom the land is sub-let by the *zemindars*, are only able to eke out a bare subsistence, so that here, where thousands of acres of the best land are lying waste, the greater part of the inhabitants are in a state of extreme poverty. This system, by which the East India Company is the virtual proprietor of all the territory under its exclusive control, must necessarily be a check to the prosperity of India and the civilization of its people; but when I expressed such an opinion to the English residents, I was generally met by the remark (the same often used by Americans, apologetic of Slavery): "We did not make it—we found it so."

The introduction of the Tea Culture into India is an interesting experiment—if, indeed, it can still be considered an experiment. The Government, within the past ten years, has devoted much attention to it. All the principal varieties

of the tea-plant have been imported, experimental gardens laid out, at different points in the Himalayas, from Assam to the north-western frontier of the Punjab, and Chinese workmen procured to teach the preparation of the leaves. Mr. Fortune, whose travels in China, on his mission to effect these objects, have excited considerable notice, had been dispatched a third time to that country, to procure fresh supplies of plants and workmen. The Tea Plant was first introduced into Assam, a district north of Bengal and lying on the Brahmapootra River. A company was formed about fifteen years ago, for the cultivation and manufacture of Tea; but through ignorance and inexperience, it was for some time a losing concern. At present, however, it has so far succeeded as to produce 300,000 pounds of Tea, and to pay 10 per cent. annually to the Company. The experimental gardens in the northern and western parts of the Himalayas have been established more recently, and the natives are now beginning to take up the cultivation of the plant.

One of the gardens is at Kaologir, about three miles from Dehra, and I visited it in company with Mr. Keene. Mr. Fortune considers that a level alluvial soil, like that of the Dhoon, is not so well adapted for tea as the hilly country about Almorah and in the Punjab, and if he be correct I did not see the plant in its greatest perfection; though I should think it difficult for any plantation to present a more flourishing appearance than parts of that at Kaologir. It consists of three hundred acres of level ground—a rich, dark loam, mixed with clay—and contains plants in every stage of growth, from the seedling to the thick, bushy shrub, six feet high. It was then the blossoming season, and the next

crop of leaves would not be gathered before May. The plant bears some resemblance to the ilex, or holly, but the leaf is smaller, of a darker green, and more minutely serrated. The blossom is mostly white—in some varieties a yellowish-brown—and resembles that of the wild American blackberry. The plants were set about three feet apart, in rows four feet from each other, with small channels between, for the purpose of irrigation. Mr. Fortune, however, considers that irrigation is rather injurious than otherwise.

Mr. Thomson, the Superintendent of the plantation, assured me that the average yield of the plants, after they had reached a proper growth for plucking, might be set down at 1 cwt. per acre, though, under favorable circumstances, it could be increased to 200 lbs. At present, the Dehra and Almorah teas sell for purely fancy prices, being bought up with avidity at the annual sales, at from two to three rupees a pound. Dr. Jameson, who has charge of all the Tea plantations in the north-west, estimates that when the culture shall have become general, Tea can be profitably produced at six annas (18 cents) the pound. The zemindars, who are with difficulty brought to accept of the slightest innovation, are very reluctant to undertake the culture, although the Government not only releases them from all tax upon land planted with Tea shrubs, but binds itself to buy from them, at a remunerative price, all the Tea they can produce. It is now proposed to *command* every zemindar who leases property beyond a certain number of acres, to cultivate five acres of the Tea plant. Those who know the natives best say that **this** is the only way in which Tea Culture can be rapidly extended; the natives being perfectly willing to obey any

commands, although they may be immovable to all persuasion. I have been told that when urged to introduce certain improvements into their system of agriculture, they often answer: "If you really want us to do so, why don't you give us the *hookm* (command)?" There would seem to be some reason, then, in such a despotic mode of introducing the Tea Culture. I drank of both the Dehra and Almorah Teas, which were deliciously pure and fragrant, though much stronger than the adulterated Teas exported from China.

The garden at Kaologir was kept in fine order, the fields being perfectly clean and free from weeds, and separated from each other by hedges of Persian roses, of the deepest crimson dye and intensest summer perfume. We passed through the plantation, and struck across an open tract of country toward the tents of Mr. Thornhill, the Magistrate of the Dhoon. He received us hospitably under the shade of his patriarchal mango-trees, and lent us two horses, to take us to the Robber's Cave, which was three or four miles distant, among the hills at the base of the Himalayas. We had a charming ride through alternate groves, jungles and grain-fields. The great mountains before us lay warm and red in the afternoon sun, and away to the west, like a soft, white cloud, the Chore lifted his snowy head. The peasants were at work in the fields, and boys, clad only in the *dhotæ*, or breech-cloth, tended the cows as they browsed along the edges of the jungle.

Finally the path brought us to the brink of a deep sunken glen, the sides of which were walls of magnificent foliage. It extended before us for nearly a mile, narrowing as it approached the hills, two of which overhung and finally blocked it up. Our horses scrambled down with some difficulty, and

we followed the course of a clear mountain stream, which issued from the further extremity. As the glen grew narrower, its sides became more steep and lofty, yet so thoroughly draped with shrubs and pendant vines, that scarcely a particle of soil was visible. The foliage rolled down in gorgeous masses, on either hand, dipping its skirts in the clear, bright stream, that flowed at the bottom. But the glen at length became a ravine, the ravine a crevice, and the hills closed, leaving only a split, as of an earthquake, for the passage of the water. A cold wind blew continually from the opening. We rode within it a short distance to notice the splendor of the leafy, sunlit glen, seen through the black jaws of the gloomy passage. The rock is a coarse conglomerate of limestone, whence I suspect that the "Cave," as it is called, is a natural grotto, and not a crevice produced by an earthquake, as some persons suppose. By wading in the bed of the stream, you can pass entirely through the hill, a distance of nearly a mile, emerging into a similar glen on the opposite side. I was struck with the resemblance of the place to the famous "Annathal," near Eisenach, in Germany.

One morning I made a visit to a Sikh temple, of great sanctity, which stands at the further end of the town. It is connected with the tomb of a Gooroo, or Saint, and is about two hundred years old. It is enclosed in a spacious court, and appears to have been built on the site of some older edifice, as a portion of the gateway is evidently of much earlier date than the tomb. One of the buildings, now used as a habitation, has a portico of very grotesque design, covered with paintings representing events in the Saint's life, and, singularly enough portraits of some of the Hindoo gods. The religion of the Sikhs

is a compromise between Islam and Hindooism, rejecting all the minor divinities of the latter and accepting, in their stead, the One God of the Moslems, without the full recognition of Mahomet as his Prophet. They abjure caste, but, probably out of regard for the feelings of their converts, abstain from eating cow's flesh. Their moral code is very similar to that of the Hindoos and Moslems. One of the pictures in the portico illustrates a miracle which happened to the Sikh Saint, during a visit which he made to Mecca. Being directed by the Moslem priests to sleep with his feet to the Kaaba, he refused, and lay down with his head towards it, but during the night it turned around in a marvellous manner, and presented itself to his feet!

A second gateway admitted us into a garden, containing the tomb of the Saint, and the tombs of his four wives. The former stands in the centre, the latter in the four corners of a paved court, and are connected with each other by narrow stone causeways. The Saint's tomb is covered with a lofty dome, and surrounded with a cloister, richly enamelled and painted, in the style of the Mogul tombs about Agra and Delhi. It has no pretensions to architectural beauty, but was a most picturesque object, with its white dome, its deep shadowy arches, and the brilliancy of its colors half touched with sunshine, half buried in the shade of two massive peepul trees. Over the corner of the platform rose the stems of the palm and Italian cypress, and beyond the garden-wall appeared the tufted tops of some clumps of bamboos. It was a picture ready for the sun-steeped pencil of Cropsey.

But after we had passed around to the front, another picture, not less beautiful, was speedily formed. A blind Sikh

fakcer, who had pilgrimed his way thither from the Punjab, lay in the sun, half-propped against one of the pillars with a *sitar*, or Indian violin, in his hand. We asked him to play for us, whereupon he slowly tuned the strings, took up a short bow and began playing one of those passionate melodies of love and languishment, which you only hear in a southern clime. The body of the violin was of wood, curved and ribbed so as to resemble a crooked gourd, or a segment of a fossil ammonite. It had a short neck, and four strings of catgut, under which were eight very slender wires, out of the reach of the bow, but tuned so as to give out a spontaneous accord to the notes produced upon the strings. The tones were like those of an ordinary violin, but very pure, sweet and ringing. I should think the instrument capable, in the hands of a master, of producing the most exquisite musical effects. In the Sikh's hands, it spoke truly the language of Southern love, now passionate, now imploring, but falling always into the same melting cadences, which were too beautiful to be monotonous. He sang, like the Arabs, in a succession of musical cries. Around him were Sikh priests and a knot of half-naked boys, some basking in the full glare of the sun, some seated under the arches of the tomb. They were all necessary parts of the picture. Would the music have had the same meaning, if the Sikh had been seated under a pine, on the Catskill?—No; that same pine is not more different from the palm which I saw while listening to the song, than is Man, in the North, from Man, in the South.

On our return home we called at the house of the Rajah Loll Singh, a Sikh Chieftain, to whom the English are in-

debted in a great measure for the conquest of the Punjaub. But, having been treacherous to his countrymen in the first place, he was afterward accused of meditating treachery to the English, and had only recently been released from temporary imprisonment at Agra. He had a pension of 1,000 rupees a month from the Government, with which he rented a handsome bungalow, and was living in considerable style. He had a great passion for dogs, and was something of a *shikarree*, or sportsman. The guards at his residence presented arms as we rode up, and we were soon afterwards received by the Rajah himself. Loll Singh means "Red Lion," and the name well suited his stout, muscular figure, heavy beard and ruddy face. He was richly dressed in a garment of figured silk, with a Cashmere shawl around his waist, and a turban of silk and gold. Rings of gold wire, upon which pearls were strung, hung from his ears to his shoulders. His eye was large, dark and lustrous, and his smile gave an agreeable expression to a face that would otherwise have been stern and gloomy. As he spoke no English, my conversation with him was confined to the usual greetings, and some expressions of admiration respecting a favorite spaniel, which he called "Venus." He spent the same evening at Mr. Keene's, appearing in a very rich and elegant native costume, with an aigrette of large diamonds and emeralds attached to his throat.

I was much amused by noticing the opinions of different English residents, respecting their native servants. Some praised their honesty and fidelity in high terms; others denounced them as liars and pilferers. Some trusted them implicitly with their keys, while others kept their cupboards

and closets carefully locked. Nearly all seemed to agree however, that one can never wholly depend on their truthfulness. There are laws prohibiting the master from beating his servants, and indeed blows are of no effect. The punishment now adopted, is to fine them, which has been found very efficacious. They care little for being reproved, if in their own language, but are greatly annoyed by the use of English terms, which they do not understand. Thus, to address a man as: "You wicked rectangle!" "You specimen of comparative anatomy!" &c., would be a much greater indignity than the use of the vilest epithets, in Hindostanee.

After having enjoyed Mr. Keene's hospitality for five days, I ordered my bearers to be ready on Saturday for the return to Meerut. The day, however, brought a thunder-storm and rain in torrents, obliging me to postpone my departure until the following morning. Rajah Loll Singh offered me his elephant, for the ride through the Siwalik Hills, and as my kind host proposed to take me across the Dhoon in his buggy, I sent the palanquin and bearers on in advance, to await me at Mohun, on the other side of the pass

CHAPTER XVI

JOURNEY TO MEERUT AND CAWNPORE.

Erle to Shahpore—The Rajah's Elephant—The Pass of the Siwaik Hills—I Resume the Palanquin—The Large Punch-House—Saharunpore—The American Mission—The Botanic Garden—A Dreary Journey—Travellers—Salutations—Return to Meerut—A Theft—Journey over the Plains—Scenery of the Road—The Pollution of Touch—Fractions Horses—Arrival at Cawnpore—Capt. Riddell—The English Cantonments.

I LEFT Mr. Keene's pleasant residence at Dehra on Sunday morning, the 6th. The thunder-storm had passed away, the sky was blue and vaporless, the verdure of the beautiful valley freshened by the rain, and the heights of the Sub-Himalayas were capped with new-fallen snow. My host and I took a hasty breakfast, and then set off for Shahpore in his buggy. The distance was nine miles, the road muddy, full of deep pools left by the rain, and ascending as we approached the hills, so that we made but slow progress. From the mouth of the pass I turned to take a last view of the lovely valley. Just within the opening is Shahpore, a native hamlet, consisting of about a dozen bamboo huts. Mr. Keene was here met by one of the native police, who engaged to

send a cheprassee with me to Mohun, for the purpose of seeing that my bearers were ready.

The Rajah had kept his promise, and his big she-elephant had already arrived. She knelt at the keeper's command, and a small ladder was placed against her side, that I might climb upon the pad, as I had been unable to borrow a howdah. I had a package of bread and cold roast-beef, to serve me as a tiffin, but was careful to conceal it from the driver, other wise himself and the elephant, with all her trappings, must have undergone purification on account of the unclean flesh. I took a reluctant leave of Mr Keene, seated myself astride on the pad, with the driver before me, on the elephant's neck, and we moved off. The driver was a Sikh, in a clean white and scarlet dress, and a narrow handkerchief bound around his head. His long, well-combed hair was anointed with butter, and, as his head was just under my nose, I was continually regaled with the unctuous odors. He carried a short iron spike, with which he occasionally punched the elephant's head, causing her to snort and throw up her trunk, as she quickened her pace. I found the motion very like that of a large dromedary, and by no means unpleasant or fatiguing. Though walking, she went at the rate of about five miles an hour. I noticed that the driver frequently spoke to her, in a quiet, conversational tone, making remarks about the roads and advising her how to proceed—all of which she seemed to understand perfectly, and obeyed without hesitation.

After leaving Shahpore, the road ascended through a wild gorge of about half a mile, where it reached the dividing ridge and thence descended into a winding glen, which showed traces of having been worn through the hills by the action

of water Our path followed the bed of the stream for the distance of eight miles, where the pass opens upon the great plain. The scenery is very wild and picturesque, the hills being covered to their very summits with jungle, the abode of the tiger and wild elephant. None of the peaks are more than 1,000 or 1,200 feet above the bottom of the glen, yet in their forms they have a striking similarity to the great Himalayan range. They are sharp and conical, frequently with a perpendicular front, like a bisected cone, and are divided by deep and abrupt chasms. I was quite charmed with the succession of landscapes which the windings of the pass brought to view, and nothing was wanting to complete my satisfaction but the sight of a tiger. The jungle was filled with parrots, a bird with plumage blue as a turquoise, and flocks of wild peacocks. The plumage of the latter bird is much more brilliant than that of the domesticated fowl, although the body is smaller. Near the entrance of the pass, a large congregation of monkeys, each seated on a huge boulder left by the floods, gravely watched me as I passed.

At Mohun I found my palanquin standing in front of the Police office, which was a bamboo hut. The cheprassees were very obsequious in their offers of service, and immediately called together my bearers. I sent back the elephant, seated myself cross-legged in the palanquin, and made a very fair tiffin out of the prohibited cow's-flesh and bread. Saharunpore was twenty-nine miles distant, and it was already noon. I therefore urged on the bearers, in the hope of arriving before dark. The plain was very monotonous, swept by cold winds from the hills, and appeared like

a desert, by contrast with the luxuriant Dhoon. The sun went down, and I was still stretched in the tiresome palanquin, but about dusk the mussalchee (torch-bearer) came and asked where they should take me. I supposed there was a hotel in Saharunpore, and answered; "to the *punch ghur*" (punch-house or hotel). "Which one?" he again asked. At a venture, I answered: "the *burra* (large) punch-ghur." Away they went, and in a quarter of an hour, the palanquin was set down. "Here is the punch-house," said the mussalchee. I crept out, and found myself at the door of the Station Church! There happened, however, to be some natives passing through the enclosure, who directed me to the dawk bungalow, as there was no hotel. I called on the Rev. Mr. Campbell, an American Missionary, in the course of the evening, and he at once quartered me in his house.

As my bearers were engaged to start for Meerut the next morning, my kind host arose before sunrise and took me in his buggy to see something of the place. The cantonments are scattered over a wide space, and have not the comfortable air of those at Meerut. The lanes are lined with the *casurena* or Australian Pine, a lofty, ragged looking tree, with very long and slender fibres, which gives the place the air of an English or German country town. The native city has a population of about 80,000 inhabitants, and appeared to be an industrious and flourishing place. The American Mission at Saharunpore is supported by the Presbyterian Board. The Missionaries have erected a handsome church, two spacious dwelling-houses, and a school house, all within the same enclosure, besides an agency in the native town for the distribution of books, and the dis-

cussion of religious matters with any of the natives who choose to come forward. Mr. Campbell was sanguine as to the ultimate success of Missions in India. Their schools of education (embracing also religious instruction) are certainly doing much to enlighten the race; but so far as I could learn, very few scholars change their faith, though educated as Christians. They look upon the Christian Doctrine very much as we look upon the Greek Mythology. They are interested in it, they admire portions of it, yet still go on worshipping the lingam, and keeping up the distinctions of caste. I have no doubt that *caste* is at the bottom of all this, and that many who are convinced in their own hearts of the truth of Christianity, dare not avow it, on account of the ban of excommunication from their friends and kindred, which would immediately follow.

Mr. Campbell took me to the Botanic Garden, where I had the pleasure of meeting Dr. Jameson, who has charge of the Tea Culture in the north-west. The Garden is one of the finest in India. It is laid out with great taste, and contains nearly all the indigenous trees and plants, besides many exotics. I there saw, for the first time, a cinnamon tree, the large glossy leaves of which were redolent of its spicy blood. The cinnamon is brother to our native sassafras. It is of so refined and dainty a nature, that there are but few parts of the world where it will grow.

I left Saharunpore at ten o'clock, congratulating myself, as I entered my palanquin, that it was the last journey I should make in such a disagreeable vehicle. It was a veiled, cool and dreary day; the plains had even a wintry look, and

nothing could be more monotonous. I was heartily sick of the journey before night. The Himalayas were so obscured that nothing but a large leaden-colored mass was to be seen on the horizon. The road was crowded with people among whom were several Englishmen in their palanquins, on their way up to the hills. Numbers of native women also passed, some in the *hackree*, or bullock-cart, and others borne in a *dhoolie*, a rude sort of palanquin made of bamboo, and covered with a cotton cloth. These are the "ferocious Dhoolies," who, according to Sheridan, in one of his Parliamentary speeches, "carried off the unfortunate wounded" from the field of battle—the orator, ignorant of Hindostanee, supposing that the "dhoolies" were a tribe of savage people.

At dusk I reached a station where the bearers were not on hand, but such vigorous search was made for them that I was not detained more than half an hour. The native salutation in these parts is "Ram, Ram!" and the answer the same—as if one should say, in English, "God, God!" instead of "Good morning." I was no longer addressed as "Protector of the Poor," but received the Persian title of *Khodawend*, which signifies "My Lord." About nine o'clock I reached Mozuffernuggur, only half way to Meerut. I rolled myself in my quilted *rezaya*, closed the palanquin, except when the bearers cried out for backsheesh, and so slept, lozed, and waked alternately through the long, chilly night. The first streak of dawn showed me the buildings of Sirdhana (the former residence of the famous Begum Somroo) on the right, and just as the sun rose the shivering bearers set me down at the hotel in Meerut.

I visited the unwashed individual of whom I spoke in :

former chapter, returned him his palanquin, and then engaged a garree to Cawnpore. The distance was 273 miles, and the cost of a comfortable garree, with relays of horses, about \$16. In order to rest, and to allow time for the necessary preparations to be made, I did not leave until evening—a delay which enabled the native servants at the hotel to steal from me a handsome box of Cashmere manufacture—the present of a friend—containing several beautiful Delhi miniatures. I did not discover the loss until reaching Cawnpore, and was the more annoyed at it, as there was then no chance of replacing the miniatures.

The night of leaving Meerut, I again passed Allyghur, much to my regret, for I desired to see the famous pillar of Coel. Morning dawned on the plains of Hindostan. There is almost as little variety in the aspect of these immense plains as in that of the open sea. The same fields of wheat, poppies, grain and mustard alternate with the same mango or tamarind groves; the Hindoo temples by the roadside are the same dreary architectural deformities, and the villages you pass, the same collections of mud walls, thatched roofs and bamboo verandahs, tenanted by the same family of hideous fakeers, naked children, ugly women (who try to persuade you that they are beautiful, by hiding their faces), and beggars in every stage of deformity. But I noticed, as I proceeded southward, spacious caravanserais, built of burnt brick, though ruined and half deserted; richer groves of tamarind and brab palm; and the minarets and pagodas of large towns which the road skirted, but did not enter. I stopped at the bungalow of Etah for breakfast, which was ready in an hour. The bungalows on this road

are much superior to those in other parts of India. The floors are carpeted, and there are mattresses and pillows on the charpoys. The rooms have a neat, homelike air, and are truly oases in that vast wilderness—for such India still is, except where the European hand has left its trace. The day passed away like other days on the plains. It was warm during the mid-hours, and the road was very dusty, in spite of the recent rains. It is a magnificent highway, and would not suffer by comparison with any in Europe. The amount of travel is so great, that from sunrise until sunset, I beheld an almost unbroken procession of natives of all descriptions, from the Affghan and Sikh, to the Goorkha of the hills and the Mahratta of the Deccan, with tattoos (as the little country ponies are called), camels, elephants, Persian steeds, buffaloes, palanquins, dhoolies, hackrees, bullock trains, and the *garrees* of luxurious travellers like myself. I can, however, feel neither the same interest in, nor respect for, the natives of India, as for the Arab races of Africa and Syria. The lower castes are too servile, too vilely the slaves of a degrading superstition, and too much given to cheating and lying. One cannot use familiarity towards them, without encouraging them to impertinence. How different from my humble companions of the Nubian Desert!

About noon I passed Mynpoorie, a civil and missionary station, though not, I believe, a military cantonment. Towards evening I stopped for an hour at another bungalow, to take dinner, and then started for Cawnpore. The driver was changed again at dusk, and as I was very thirsty, I asked him to get me a drink of water, before giving him his backsheesh. Unfortunately, I had forgotten to bring :

glass with me, and the people refused to let me touch one of their brass drinking-vessels, as this would occasion them a violent scouring, if not the destruction of the article. After some search, a clay vessel of the rudest description was found, with a spout like a tea-pot, and I was allowed to drink by holding it above my head and pouring the stream down my throat. I had learned the trick of this on the Nile, or it might have been a strangling matter. To such an extent are the accursed laws of caste carried, that where the English have ruled for nearly a century, their very touch is defilement. On my trip from Bombay to Agra, being ignorant of the practical operation of these laws, I frequently helped myself to the cups of the natives, when they refused to furnish me with drink. In this way, very innocently, I occasioned the destruction of considerable crockery.

We had several fractious horses during the night, but I had learned patience by long experience, and so lay still and let the beast take his course. I think we must have been detained in one spot nearly half an hour, by a horse that *would* dash from side to side, obstinately refusing to go forward. In the traveller's book at the bungalow where I dined, I read the memorandum of a gentleman who had been left in the lurch by the driver and groom, after they had taken the bits out of the horse's mouth. He was run away with, and narrowly escaped being dashed to pieces. I feared, once or twice, that I might have the same driver and groom, and the same wicked tattoo. At last, when the Great Bear (my nocturnal dial) had passed his occultation, and I knew that the dawn would appear in half an hour,

was set down at the Cawnpore Hotel. Shortly after I arrived, a salute of nineteen guns announced the departure of the Governor of the North-West.

Looking out of the window of my room, after sunrise, I saw the Ganges flowing beneath it—not a sparkling mountain stream, as at Hurdwar, but a deep, muddy river, lined with barges. The opposite bank was a beach of white sand, which glared painfully in the sun. After a visit to a half-blood, or *Eurasian* banker, I went to the Joint Magistrate Capt. Riddell, whom I found dispensing justice to the natives, under the shade of a huge umbrella tent, in the midst of his own umbrageous compound. He received me very courteously, and insisted on my removing to his house but as I had made arrangements to leave the same evening for Lucknow, I could only promise to spend Saturday morning with him after my return.

Cawnpore is a pleasant spot, though it contains nothing whatever to interest the traveller. It is one of the largest cantonments in the Mofussil (the Anglo-Indian term for the rural districts), and the scattering bungalows of the civil and military residents extend for five miles along the western bank of the Ganges, which is high and steep. The town is shaded with neem trees of great size. In walking past the bungalows, I noticed many elegant and well kept gardens, and was more than once greeted with the delicious odor of violets in bloom. Close beside the beds of this humble Saxon flower hung the scarlet buds of the Syrian pomegranate, or the tattered plumes of the tropical banana. The residences are large, but their enormous roofs of thatch contrast oddly with verandahs supported by Ionic pillars

The Church is a large Gothic edifice, English from turret to foundation stone, and an exile, like those who built it. A Gothic building looks as strangely among palm-trees, as an Oriental palace on the shores of Long-Island Sound

CHAPTER XVII.

A DAY AT LUCKNOW.

Crossing the Ganges—Night-Journey to Lucknow—Arrival—A Mysterious Visitor—A Morning Stroll—The Goomtee River—An Oriental Picture—The Crowds of Lucknow—Col. Sleeman, the Resident—Drive through the City—The Constantinople Gate—Architectural Effects—The Imambarra—Gardens and Statues—Singular Decorations of the Tomb—The Chandeliers—Speculation in Oude—Hospital and Mosque—The King's New Palace—The Martinlere—Royalty Plundered—The Dog and the Rose-Water—Destruction of the King's Sons—The Explosion of a Fiend—Misrule in Oude—Wealth of Lucknow—A Ride on a Royal Elephant—The Queen-Dowager's Mosque—Navigating the Streets—A Squeeze of Elephants—The Place of Execution—The Choke—Splendor and Corruption.

THE post-garree for Lucknow called for me in the evening, at the hotel. There is a good road from Cawnpore to the former place, with communication twice a day, and the distance, fifty-three miles, is usually made in seven hours. In a few minutes after leaving, we reached the bridge of boats over the Ganges, where I, as the passenger, was obliged to pay half a rupee at each end. This is a regulation peculiar to the Cawnpore bridge, distinguishing it from all others in the world. After crossing the river, we came upon a long plank causeway, extending over the sandy flats on the opposite side. The night was dark and damp, and I closed

the panels on each side and disposed myself to sleep. The country between the two places is an extension of the great plain, and there is nothing on the road worth seeing.

On awaking out of a sound sleep, about three o'clock in the morning, I found the garree standing before the door of the dawk bungalow and post-office, which are both in one building. The drowsy chokedar showed me into a room with *eight* doors, containing a table and charpoy covered with a rude matrass. I tried to fasten the doors but four of them, which led into other parts of the building, had no locks. I then half undressed and lay down on the matrass to finish my night's rest. It might have been an hour afterward, as I was lying in that dim condition betwixt sleeping and waking, when I heard a slight noise at one of the doors—a muffled vibration, as if it had suddenly opened to a gentle pressure. Listening intently, with all my senses preternaturally sharpened, I heard a very slow and cautious footstep upon the matting, and was trying to ascertain in which direction it moved, when I distinctly felt the gentlest touch in the world, as if some one had passed his hand down my side. I sprang up in some alarm, uttering an involuntary exclamation, but could neither see nor hear any thing, nor did any thing appear until I became fatigued with watching, and fell asleep again. But, from the fact that several attempts at robbery were made the same night, I have no doubt whatever that it was an artful thief in search of plunder, and probably one of those adroit scamps to be found only in India, who will take the clothes off a man's back while he is asleep, without awaking him.

After an early cup of tea, I started off on a solitary stroll, postponing my visit to Col. Sleeman, the English Resident, until after breakfast. I set out at random, but soon ascertained the direction in which the principal part of the city lay, by glimpses of its fortress walls, domes and airy minarets. I did not feel inclined, however, to plunge into its depths without a guide, but followed the course of a bazaar, which was filled with venders of fruit, vegetables and firewood. Crowds of people passed to and fro, the gaudy dresses of many of the natives betraying, as at Delhi, the presence of a native court. Some were borne in palanquins, some mounted on elephants, and a few on fine horses of Arabian blood. They looked at me with curiosity, as if an Englishman on foot was an unusual sight. On the way I passed several small mosques, which showed an odd mixture of the Saracenic and Hindoo styles, a hybrid in which the elegance of Saracenic architecture was quite lost. Whichever way I looked, I saw in the distance, through the morning vapors, the towers of Hindoo temples, or the bulbous domes of mosques, many of them gilded, and flashing in the rays of the sun.

The street I had chosen led me to a bridge over the river Goomtee, which here flows eastward, and skirts the northern side of the city. The word *Goomtee* means literally, "The Twister," on account of the sinuous course of the river. Looking westward from the centre of the bridge, there is a beautiful view of the city. Further up the river, which flowed with a gentle current between grassy and shaded banks, was an ancient stone bridge, with lofty pointed arches. The left bank rose gradually from the water, forming a long hill, which was crown

ed with palaces and mosques, stretching away into the distance, where a crowd of fainter minarets told of splendors beyond. The coup d'œil resembled that of Constantinople, from the bridge across the Golden Horn, and was more imposing, more picturesque and truly Oriental than that of any other city in India. The right bank was level, and so embowered in foliage that only few domes and towers were visible above the sea of sycamores, banyans, tamarind, acacia, neem and palm-trees. I loitered on the bridge so long, enjoying the refreshing exhilaration of such a prospect, that I am afraid the dignity of the great English race, in my person, was much lessened in the eyes of the natives.

The picture, so full of Eastern pomp and glitter, enhanced by the luxuriance of Nature, was made complete by the character of the human life that animated it. Here were not merely menials, in scanty clothing, or sepoy's undergoing daily pillory in tight coats and preposterous stocks, but scores of emirs, cadis, writers, and the like, attired in silken raiment and splendidly turbaned, continually passing to and fro, with servants running before them, dividing the crowds for the passage of their elephants. The country people were pouring into the city by thousands, laden with their produce, and the bazaars of fruit and vegetables, which seemed interminable, were constantly thronged. At first I imagined it must be some unusual occasion which had called such numbers of the inhabitants into the streets; but I was told that they were always as crowded as then, and that the population of Lucknow is estimated at 800,000 inhabitants! It is, therefore, one of the most populous cities in Asia, and may be ranked with Paris and Constantinople, in Europe. Its length is seven miles, the extreme breadth four miles, and the central part is very densely populated.

After breakfasting at the bungalow, I called upon Col Sleeman, the East India Company's Resident, whose works on India, combined with his labors for the extirpation of the Thugs or Stranglers, have made his name known in Europe and America. The Residency is a large and lofty building, deserving the name of a palace, and surrounded by beautiful gardens. I had no letter to Col. Sleeman, but took the liberty of asking his advice relative to the things best worth seeing in Lucknow, as I had but a day to spare. Nothing could exceed the prompt and kind response of that gentleman. He immediately ordered his carriage, and as he was personally occupied, sent one of his native secretaries to conduct me through the city. I entered the bazaar again in grand style, with postilion, grooms and footmen, who ran in advance to clear a way, and obliged even the elephants to stand on one side. Nevertheless the streets were so densely crowded, that we proceeded very slowly. After threading the masses of the populace for about a mile and a half, between rows of three-story native houses, mosques, and caravanserais, we reached what appeared to be the heart of the city. A spacious gateway spanned the street, over which a forest of tall minarets and gilded domes rose in the distance. Passing through the arch, we entered an open square, with a large mosque and hospital on the left side, and a magnificent gate of white marble beyond. This is called the *Roomie Derwazee* or Constantinople Gate, from an idea that it is copied from a gate in that city, but I have no recollection of any gate there which even remotely resembles it.

After passing the Roomie Derwazee, I was startled by the unexpected splendor of the scene. I was in the centre of a group of tombs, mosques and pavilions, all of which were of

marble or covered with white stucco, and surmounted with swelling Oriental domes, which shone like solid gold—fitting crowns to the slender arches, and the masses of Saracenic filigree and fretwork, from which they sprang. A huge stone tank, with flights of steps descending into it on all sides, occupied the foreground of the picture. Around its banks, and between the dazzling pavilions, ran a boskage of roses in full bloom, in the midst of which a few tall palms shot up into the sunshine. It was nearly noon, and the sun, now almost vertical, poured such an unrelieved glare upon the scene, that my eyes were not strong enough to endure it for more than two or three minutes.

On the left was the gate of the Imambarra, or tomb of Azuf ed-Dowlah, one of the former Nawabs of Oude, and here the carriage drew up. I alighted, and entered a quadrangle surrounded by the same dazzling white architecture, with gilded domes blazing against the intense blue of the sky. The enclosed space was a garden, in which stood two beautiful mausoleums of marble. Several feeble fountains played among the flowers, and there was a long pool in the midst, with a bridge over it, and grotesque wooden figures of sepoy, of the size of life, standing guard at each end. Scattered about the garden were also several copies in plaster of classical statues, and one in marble of Actæon and his hounds. Although Lucknow is a thoroughly Moslem city, most of the inhabitants, as well as the royal family, belong to the sect of Sheeahs—the descendants of the partisans of Ali—who do not scruple to make pictures or models of living things. This is a cause of great annoyance and sorrow to the Sonnees, or orthodox Mussulmen, who hold it to be a sin in the sight of God. The idea originated, no doubt

in the iconoclastic zeal of the Prophet and his immediate successors.

On ascending the marble steps leading to the edifice at the bottom of the garden, I imagined for a moment that I beheld a manufactory of chandeliers. Through the open marble arches nothing else was at first visible. The whole building was hung with them—immense pyramids of silver, gold, prismatic crystals and colored glass—and where they were too heavy to be hung, they rose in radiant piles from the floor. In the midst of them were temples of silver filigree, eight or ten feet high, and studded with cornelians, agates and emeralds. These were the tombs. The place was a singular jumble of precious objects. There were ancient banners of the Nawabs of Oude, heavy with sentences from the Koran, embroidered in gold; gigantic hands of silver, covered with talismanic words; sacred shields, studded with the names of God; swords of Khorassan steel, lances and halberds; the turbans of renowned commanders; the trappings of the white horse of Nasr ed-Deen, mounted on a wooden effigy; and several pulpits of peculiar sanctity. I had some difficulty in making out a sort of centaur, with a human head, eyes of agate, a horse's body of silver, and a peacock's tail, but was solemnly informed that it was a correct representation of the beast Borak, on which the Prophet made his journey to Paradise. The bridle was held by two dumpy angels, also of silver, and on each side stood a tiger about five feet long and made of transparent blue glass. These, I was told, came from Japan.

I had some difficulty in believing that this curiosity shop was the tomb of the Poet-King, Azuf ed-Dowlah; but so it was. The decorations are principally due to the taste of the

present king who is silly almost to imbecility, and pays the most absurd sums for his chandeliers and glass tigers. The two finest chandeliers cost him \$50,000 each; but it is not to be supposed that all this money went into the pocket of the merchant. The Grand-Vizier, and other officers of Court, had their shares, down to the eunuchs. The King gave a small garden palace to one of his wives not long ago. A wall was necessary to screen a part of the garden from the view of the public, and a mason was called upon to undertake the work. On being asked to state the cost he at first said 100,000 rupees, but, calculating afterwards, that of this sum the Grand-Vizier would keep the half, the Minister of the Treasury 20,000 rupees, and various other privileged bloodsuckers a proportionate share, while the building of the wall would actually cost 5,000 rupees, he gave up the contract, as a losing job! No description can fully illustrate the corruption of the Court of Oude. It is a political ulcer of the most virulent kind, and there is no remedy but excision. For the sake of Humanity, the East India Company would be fully justified in deposing the monarch and bringing the kingdom under its own rule.

Returning through the Constantinople Gate, I entered the large building adjacent, which was formerly a hospital, and still contains the tomb of its royal founder. Its architecture is purer than that of the Imambarra. The proportions of the halls are admirable, and the deep embroidered arches of the portico have the finest effect. Adjoining this edifice is a mosque built upon a lofty platform of masonry. It is an ambitious work, but falls behind those of Delhi, and the minarets are so large as to be out of all proportion. On the return to Col Sleeman's, I passed under the walls of an old palace, which

were lined with massive buttresses. I was told that it is used as a retreat for the wives of former kings.

Capt. Sleeman (the Resident's nephew), who has charge of suppressing the Dacoits, or organized robber-bands of India, took me upon the flat roof of the Residency, whence there is a fine panorama of Lucknow. Two-thirds of the city are as completely buried in foliage as the suburbs of Damascus. To the east, at a short distance, was the king's new palace, where he at present resides—a line of white walls and terraces, about half a mile in length, and topped with a mass of gilded towers and domes. Permission to visit it is not given without application two or three days previous, so that I was obliged to be content with an outside view. Near it is the palace of Feroze Buksh another cluster of gilded domes, and in the distance the marble tower of the Martinière. This is a college founded by General Martine, a French adventurer, who came out to India as a common soldier, entered the service of the King of Oude, and died a millionaire. The building, which is of marble, and in a style of architecture resembling nothing on Earth (nor, I should hope, in Heaven), was erected by him during his lifetime, as a palace for the King. The latter, however, refused to take it off his hands, secretly resolving to seize upon it as soon as the old General was dead. Martine, who knew much more of human nature than of architecture, determined to block this game of the King, and when he died, had himself buried in a vault made under the foundation of the building, where he still lies, with a company of soldiers in effigy, keeping guard over his remains. No Mussulman will sleep in a house where any one is buried and the King was obliged to respect the General's will

which devoted the building to a college, under the name of the Martinière.

To such an extent are the Kings of Oude plundered that a French cook, who spent some years in the service of a former monarch, is reported to have gone home with a fortune of \$350,000. It was recently discovered that one of the parasites of the Court had been receiving two seers (four lbs.) of rose-water and a jar of sweetmeats daily for thirty years—and for what service? The father of the present King was annoyed, thirty years ago, by the barking of a dog. He sent for the owner, and commanded him to silence the animal. “Your Majesty,” said the man, “nothing will stop his barking, unless he has two seers of rose-water and a jar of sweetmeats given him every day.” “Take them, then,” said the King, “only let us have no more noise.” The knave took his rose-water and sweetmeats daily, and lived luxuriously upon the proceeds for thirty years.

The present King is even more foolish and credulous, although he has received a good literary education, and has the Persian poets at his tongue’s end. Although not more than forty years old, his excesses have already reduced him to a state of impotence. Nevertheless, his wives and eunuchs flatter him that he has begotten a large number of children, who are carried off by a demon as soon as they are born. About once a week (so I was informed) the Chief Eunuch rushes into his presence, exclaiming in great apparent joy, “O Lord of the World a son is born unto you!” “Praise be to God!” exclaims the happy King; “which of my wives has been so highly honored?” The eunuch names one of them, and the King rises in great haste to visit her and behold his new offspring. But sudden

ly cries and shrieks resound from the women's apartments. A band of females bursts into the room, shrieking and lamenting 'O great King! a terrible demon suddenly appeared amongst us. He snatched your beautiful son out of the nurse's arms and flew through the window with a frightful noise." And so this trick is repeated from week to week, and the poor fool continually laments over his lost children.

Not long since a Portuguese mountebank happened to hear of this delusion. He repaired to the King, told him that he had discovered the nature of the demon that had molested him, and would destroy him, for a certain sum. The King agreed to the terms, and in a few days, the people of Lucknow were startled by seeing a great body of workmen engaged in digging trenches in a meadow near the river. After several days' labor, they threw up a rude fortification of earth, in the centre of which they buried several barrels of powder. The Portuguese declared that he was in the possession of charms, which would entice the demon into the fort, whereupon the train should be fired, and instantly blow him to atoms. A favorable night was selected for the operation, and the inhabitants of the city were shaken out of their beds by a terrific explosion, followed by a salvo of 121 guns, as a peal of rejoicing over the slaughter of the demon. But alas! the scattered fragments of the fiend reunited, and he has since then carried off nearly a score of the King's new-born progeny.

This weakness of character, it may readily be imagined, is the prime cause of the evils under which Oude is groaning. The Grand-Vizier is an unprincipled tyrant, and to such a degree of resistance have the people been driven, that the revenues are collected yearly with cannon, and a large armed force

Oude is the garden of India, and though now so waste and exhausted, from a long course of spoliation, yields a revenue of three crores of rupees (\$15,000,000), only one third of which reaches the King's hands. The rest is swallowed up by the band of venal sycophants who surround him. An officer who knew Oude in the reign of Saadet Ali, forty-five years ago, told me that he remembered the time when all the country from Lucknow to Benares bloomed like a garden and overflowed with plenty. Now it is waste, impoverished, and fast relapsing into jungle. Thousands of people annually make their escape over the frontier, into the Company's territories, and at Cawnpore it is not unusual to see them swimming the river under a volley of balls from their pursuers. Great numbers of males of the lower classes enlist as sepoy, in the Company's regiments, and it is estimated that of 200,000 natives from all parts of India who now serve in the army, 40,000 are from Oude alone.

Nevertheless, there is far more life, gaiety and appearance of wealth in Lucknow than any other native city in India. This is principally accounted for by the large sums that flow into the city from other quarters. The former monarchs of Oude, fearful of revolutions which might thrust their families from the succession, were in the habit of lending large sums to the East India Company, at an interest of five per cent., for the purpose of securing some property for their posterity, in case of trouble. Of late years the Company has declined to receive any more such loans, but still continues to pay interest on £6,000,000. At present many of the rich men of Oude invest their surplus funds in the Company's paper. There are besides many pensioners of the Government residing in Lucknow, and it is estimated that in addition to the interest paid, 120

lacs of rupees (\$6,000,000), come into Oude yearly from the Company's territories.

In the afternoon, Capt. Sleeman kindly offered to accompany me on a second excursion through Lucknow. We were joined by one of his friends, and mounted on three of the King's largest elephants. With our gilded howdahs, long crimson housings, and the resplendent dresses of the drivers and umbrella-holders who sat behind us, on the elephants' rumps, we made as stately a show as any of the native princes. It was the fashionable hour for appearing in public, and, as we entered the broad street leading to the Roomee Derwazee, it was filled with a long string of horses and elephants, surging slowly through the dense crowd of pedestrians. We plunge boldly into the tumult, and, having the royal elephants, and footmen gifted with a ten-man power of lungs, make our way without difficulty. It is a barbaric pageant wholly to my liking, and as I stare solemnly at the gorgeous individuals on the elephants that pass us, I forget that I have not a turban around my brows. We duck our heads involuntarily, as we pass through the great gates, though the keystone is still twenty feet above them.

We pass the Imambarra, and a long array of other buildings and at last halt in front of the new mosque, which the King's mother is having built. It is large and picturesque, but shows a decline in architecture. The minarets are much too high. They have fallen down twice, and one of them is going to fall again. The domes are troubled with the same weakness, and, although the devout old lady has already spent \$5,000,000 on the mosque, I doubt whether she will ever be able to finish it.

Turning back, we plunge into the heart of the city--into

the dark, narrow, crooked old streets of the Lucknow of last century. The houses are three stories high, projecting so that the eaves almost touch, and exhibit the greatest variety in their design and ornament. My attention is divided between looking at them, and watching my elephant. The street is so narrow and crooked that we run some risk of crushing our howdahs against the second-story balconies, but the beast, with his little, keen, calculating eye, knows precisely how far to go without striking. We pass several elephants safely, and are getting accustomed to the novel and intricate by-way, when up comes an enormous beast, ridden by a human elephant, in a green silk robe. The animal looks puzzled, and the man looks sullen, and vouchsafes us no greeting. He is a Cadi's secretary, it is true, but our elephants, being royal, take precedence of his. Neither beast will advance, for fear of wedging themselves together. At last my driver encourages his elephant; he tells him to press close against the wall and slip past; my howdah shoots under a balcony, but I bend profoundly and escape it. We press through, one after another, and the fat gentleman in the green silk gets awfully squeezed. Now we devote our attention to prying into the second stories of the houses, but the windows are all latticed, and there are sparkles through the lattices, which we take to be the flash of eyes.

"Here is the gate where the heads of malefactors are exposed," says one of my companions, and I look up with a shuddering expectancy, thinking to see a bloody head spiked over the arch. But there is none at present, and we pass on to the place of execution—a muddy bank overhanging;

a sewer, filled with the drainage of the city. Here the heads of the condemned are struck off, after the death-warrant has been thrice made out and signed by the king. This is a custom peculiar to Oude, and wisely adopted to prevent the ruler from shedding blood without due reflection. The first and second orders which the executioner receives are disregarded, and the culprit is not slain until the command is repeated for the third time.

We return through the Choke, the main street of the old city, after having penetrated for two miles into its depths. There is a crush of elephants, but the street has a tolerable breadth, and no accidents happen. We are on a level with the second-story balconies, which are now tenanted (as those in the Chandney Choke of Delhi) by the women of scarlet, arrayed in their flaunting finery. We see now and then an individual of another class, which I should name if I dared—but there are some aspects of human nature, which, from a regard for the character of the race, are tacitly kept secret. But see! we have again emerged into the broad street and begin to descend the slope towards the river. The sun is setting, and the noises of the great city are subdued for the moment. The deep-green gardens lie in shadow, but all around us, far and near, the gilded domes are blazing in the yellow glow. The scene is lovely as the outer court of Paradise, yet what deception, what crime, what unutterable moral degradation fester beneath its surface!

CHAPTER XVIII.

ALLAHABAD, AND A HINDOO FESTIVAL

Return to Cawnpore—An Accident—The Road to Allahabad—Sensible Pilgrims—Morning—Beauty of Allahabad—The American Missionaries—The Hindoo Festival—The Banks of the Ganges—Hindoo Devotees—Expounding the Vedas—The Place of Hair—A Pilgrim Shorn and Fleeced—The Place of Flags—Venality of the Brahmins—Story of the Contract for Grass—Junction of the Ganges and Jumna—Bathing of the Pilgrims—A Sermon—The Mission—Subterranean Temple—The Fort of Allahabad.

I LEFT Lucknow at nine o'clock on the evening of the 11th, in the garree for Cawnpore. I was unable to sleep, from toothache, and was lying with shut eyes, longing for the dawn, when there was a jar that gave me a violent thump on the head, and one side of the garree was heaved into the air, but after a pause righted itself. The horse started off at full speed, dragging the wreck after him, but was soon stopped, and I jumped out, to find the spring broken, and the hind wheels so much injured that we were obliged to leave the vehicle in the road. The driver had no doubt fallen asleep, and the horse, going at his usual rapid rate, had hurled the garree against a tree. Leaving the groom to take charge of the remains, the driver took the mail-bag on his head, my carpet-bag in his hand, and led the horse toward Cawnpore. I

followed him, and we trudged silently forwards for an hour and a half, when we reached the Ganges, at daybreak. It was lucky that the accident happened so near the end of the journey.

The same afternoon I left Cawnpore for Allahabad, in a garree, as usual. Still the same interminable plains, though the landscape became richer as I proceeded southward, except when the road approached the Ganges, where there are frequent belts of sandy soil, worn into deep gullies by the rain. The fields of barley were in full head, the mustard in blossom, and the flowers of the mango-tree were beginning to open. The afternoon was warm and the road very dusty. I passed the town of Futtehpore at dusk, but experienced an hour's delay during the night, which I was at a loss to account for until I found the next morning that the driver had taken two natives on the roof of the garree, as passengers to Allahabad. They were pilgrims to the Festival, and were thus depriving themselves of the greatest merit of the pilgrimage, which consists in making the journey on foot. There is now quite a sharp discussion going on among the learned pundits, as to whether the *merit* of a religious pilgrimage will be destroyed by the introduction of railroads. That railroads will be built in the course of time, is certain; that thousands of pilgrims will then make use of them, is equally certain; a prospect which fills the old and orthodox Brahmins with great alarm.

I passed a dreary night, martyred by the toothache. When the sun rose I saw the Ganges in the distance, and the richness and beauty of the scenery betokened my approach to Allahabad. The plain was covered with a deluge of the richest grain, fast shooting into head, and dotted with magnificent groves of neem and mango trees. The road was thronged

with pilgrims, returning from the Festival, and the most of them, women as well as men, carried large earthen jars of Ganges water suspended to the ends of a pole which rested on their shoulders. In spite of the toils of the journey and the privations they must have undergone, they all had a composed, contented look, as if the great object of their lives had been accomplished.

In two hours I reached the Allahabad Cantonments, but failing to find the residence of Mr. Owen, of the American Mission, I directed the driver to take me to the hotel. On the way we passed through the native town, which abounds in temples and shrines. Flags were flying in all directions, drums beating, and several processions could be discovered marching over the broad plain which intervenes between the town and the fort. The day was gloriously clear and balmy, and the foliage of the superb neem and tamarind trees that shade the streets, sparkled in the light. I remembered the story of the Mohammedan Conquerors, who were so enchanted with the beauty of the country, and so well satisfied with the mild and peaceable demeanor of the inhabitants, who gave up the place without striking a blow, that they named it Allahabad—the City of God. Its original name was Priâg, a Hindoo word signifying “the Junction,” on account of the confluence of the Ganges and the Jumna.

The first face I saw at the hotel was that of a fellow-traveller across the Desert, whom I had last seen at Suez. He had just come up from Calcutta, on his way to Lahore. I saw but little of him, as Mr. Owen insisted on my taking a room at his house, where I was again on American soil, on the banks of the Jumna. I have rarely passed a day more agree

ably than in his pleasant family circle, which was enlarged in the evening by the presence of his colleagues, the Rev Messrs. Shaw and Hay. The American Missionaries in India, wherever I have met them, were to me what the Latin monks in Palestine were, but not like the latter, with a latent hope of reward. They are all earnest, zealous and laborious men, and some of them, among whom I may mention Mr. Owen, and Mr. Warren, of Agra, are ripe scholars in the Oriental languages and literature.

Mr. Owen had an appointment to preach to the natives in the afternoon, and I accompanied him to the scene of the festival, on the banks of the Ganges. The climax of the occasion was past, and the great body of the pilgrims had departed for their homes, but there were still several thousands encamped in and around the town. On the plain, near the Ganges, stood an extempore town, consisting of streets of booths, kept by the native merchants, who took care of their temporal and spiritual welfare at the same time, with a dexterity which would have done credit to a Yankee. Upon mounting a dyke which had been erected to restrain the water of the Ganges during inundations, I again beheld the Holy River and its sandy and desolate shores. It was indeed a cheerless prospect—a turbid flood in the midst, and a hot, dreary glare of white sand on either side. The bank of the river, from the point where we stood to its junction with the Jumna—a distance of nearly half a mile—was covered with shrines, flags, and the tents of the fakeers, which consisted merely of a cotton cloth thrown over a piece of bamboo. There were hundreds of so-called holy men, naked except a single cotton rag, and with their bodies covered with ashes or a

yellow powder, which gave them an appearance truly hideous. Their hair was long and matted, and there was a wild gleam in their eyes which satisfied me that their fanatical character was not assumed. Many of them were young men, with keen spirited faces, but the same token of incipient monomania in their eyes. Some few were seated on the ground, or in the shade of their rude tents, rapt in holy abstraction, but the most of them walked about in a listless way, displaying their disgusting figures to the multitude.

The shrines, of which there were great numbers, were tawdry affairs of tinsel and colored paper, with coarse figures of Mahadeo, Ganeish, Hanuman and other deities. Many were adorned with flowers, and had been recently refreshed with the water of the Ganges. I was struck with the figure of an old grey-bearded saint, who was expounding the Vedas to a Brahmin, who, seated cross-legged under a large umbrella, read sentence after sentence of the sacred writing. The old fellow showed so much apparent sincerity and satisfaction, and was so fluent in his explanations, that I was quite delighted with him. Indeed, there was not the slightest approach to levity manifested by any one present.

We threaded the crowd of ghastly Jogees, Gosains and other ashy fakeers, to the Place of Hair-Cutting—an enclosed spot, containing about an acre and a half of ground. Here the heads and beards of the pilgrims are shorn, a million of years in Paradise being given by the gods for every hair so offered up. The ground within the enclosure was carpeted with hair, and I am told that on great occasions it is literally knee-deep. There were only two persons undergoing the operation, and as I wished to inspect it more closely, I entered the enclosure.

When the repugnance which the Hindoos have toward destroying animal life is understood, the reader will comprehend that I did not venture among so much hair without some hesitation. A fellow with a head of thick black locks and a bushy beard had just seated himself on the earth. We asked him who he was and whence he came. He was a Brahmin from Futtehpore, who had made a pilgrimage from Hurdwar, where he had filled a vessel with Ganges water, which he was now taking to pour upon the shrine of Byznath, beyond Benares. In reward for this a Brahmin who was standing near assured us that he would be born a Brahmin the next time that his soul visited the earth. The barber took hold of a tuft on the top of his head, which he spared, and rapidly peeled off flake after flake of the bushy locks. In less than five minutes the man's head and face were smooth as an infant's, and he was booked for fifty thousand million years in Paradise. But the change thereby wrought upon his countenance was most remarkable. Instead of being a bold, dashing, handsome fellow, as he at first appeared, his physiognomy was mean, spiritless, and calculated to inspire distrust. I should not want better evidence that Nature gave men beards to be worn, and not to be shaven.

As soon as the shearing was finished, three Brahmins who had been hovering around carried the subject off to be fleeced. They were sharp fellows, those Brahmins, and I warrant they bled him to the last *pice*. The Brahmins of Allahabad are not to be surpassed for their dexterity in obtaining perquisites. They have apportioned India into districts, and adjoining the Place of Hair they have their Place of Flags, where there are upwards of two hundred flags streaming from high poles. The devices on these flags represent the different districts

The pilgrim seeks the flag of his district, and there he finds the Brahmin licensed to take charge of him. There is no fixed fee, but every man is taxed to the extent of his purse. One of the Rajahs of Oude, who had been shorn a short time previous to my arrival, gave the fraternity six elephants and the weight of a fat infant son in Cashmere shawls and silver.

In justice to the Brahmin caste, I should remark that those who serve as priests in the temples are not to be confounded with the secular Brahmins, many of whom are fine scholars, and enlightened and liberal-minded men. But the priesthood is perhaps more corrupt than any similar class in the world. They do not even make a pretence of honesty. An acquaintance of mine bargained with some Allahabad Brahmins to supply him with grass for thatching his house. They showed him a satisfactory sample, and he agreed to pay them a certain price. But when the grass came it was much worse than the sample, and he refused to pay them full price. The matter was referred for arbitration to three other Brahmins, who decided in the gentleman's favor. But the contractors declared they would have the full price. "Why do you not bring me good grass, then?" said the gentleman. "Because we have it not," they answered. "Why then did you send me such a sample?" "To make you contract with us," was the cool reply. "You may take the quarrel into Court, for I shall not pay you," declared the gentleman. "We shall not go to Court, for we shall certainly lose the cause," said they; "but we *will* have the money." Thereupon they went to the carpenter who was building the house, and who was a Hindoo related the case, and called upon him to make up the full sum. The astonished victim declared that it was no affair of his. "Ne

matter," said they, "if you don't pay it, one of us will commit suicide, and his blood will be upon your head"—this being the most terrible threat which can be used against a Hindoo. The carpenter still held out, but when the oldest of the Brahmins had decided to kill himself, and was uncovering his body for the purpose, the victim was obliged to yield, and went off in tears to borrow the money. Truly, this thing of caste is the curse of India.

Passing the Place of Flags, where the streamers were of all imaginable colors and devices, we descended to the holiest spot, the junction of the Ganges and Jumna. According to the Hindoos, *three* rivers meet here, the third being the Seriswattee, which has its source in Paradise, and thence flows subterraneously to the Ganges. There were a number of bamboo platforms extending like steps to the point where the muddy waters of the Ganges touched the clear blue tide of the Jumna. [In this union of a clear and a muddy stream, forming one great river, there is a curious resemblance to the Mississippi and Missouri, and to the Blue and White Niles.] Several boats, containing flower-decked shrines, with images of the gods, were moored on the Jumna side, the current of the Ganges being exceedingly rapid. The natives objected to our getting upon the platforms, as they were *kana*, or purified, and our touch would defile them, so we stood in the mud for a short time, and witnessed the ceremony of bathing. The Hindoos always bathe with a cloth around the loins, out of respect for the Goddess Gungajee. There were about a dozen in the water, bobbing up and down, bowing their heads to the four points of the compass, and muttering invocations. Others, standing upon the bank, threw wreaths of yellow flowers upon the water. On our return to

the encampment of the fakeers, we visited a pit-shrine of Hanuman, the monkey god, who helped Rama in his conquest of Ceylon. He lies on his back in a deep hole, and is a hideous monster, about twelve feet long, carved out of a single piece of stone. Several natives were prostrating themselves in the dust, around the mouth of the pit.

Mr. Owen preached for half an hour in the mission tent among the fakeers. A number of natives flocked around, listening attentively, and made no disturbance, though two or three of them were Jogees of the most fanatical kind. They were apparently interested, but not touched. Indeed, so deeply rooted are these people in their superstitions, that to awake a true devotional feeling among them must be a matter of great difficulty. In the evening I attended Divine service in the Mission Church, and was much pleased with the earnest and serious air of the native converts. They were all neatly dressed and behaved with the utmost propriety. The Missionaries have instructed four natives, who were ordained as ministers, under the names of Paul, Thomas, George and Jonas. The mission school was attended by three hundred pupils, the most of whom were natives, and all received religious instruction. There is also a printing office under the charge of the Rev. Mr. Hay, in which, during the previous year, six millions of pages, in the Hindoo, Urdu, and Persian languages had been printed. The Lieut. Governor of the Northwest, during his visit to Allahabad, spoke in public in the highest terms of the labors of the American Missionaries.

On my way to the fort the next morning, with Mr. Owen, we met one of the Ameers of Scinde, who was a prisoner at large in Hindostan. In the fort three princes of Nepaul were

kept in very strict confinement, on account of having been engaged in a conspiracy. The most remarkable thing in the fort is a subterranean temple, evidently of great antiquity. It consists of a single low hall, supported by square pillars, and contains many figures of Mahadeo in niches around the walls, and a quantity of lingams scattered over the floor. There is a narrow passage issuing from it which has not been explored. Some of the Brahmins say it leads to Benares, and others to Hell. In the centre of the fort stands a column of red sandstone, resembling the iron pillar at Delhi, and with an inscription in the Pali character. The arsenal, which occupies part of the *zenana* of the Emperor Akbar, is the largest in India. In other respects the fort is not remarkable, though, having been repaired by the English, it is in better condition to stand an attack than the immense shells which tower over Agra and Delhi

CHAPTER XIX

THE HOLY CITY OF INDIA.

Crossing the Ganges—Pilgrims Returning Home—Vagaries of the Horses—Benares—Prof. Hall—The Holy City—Its Sanctity—The Sanscrit College—Nevel Plan of Education—Village of Native Christians—The Streets of Benares—Sacred Bulls—Their Sagacity and Cunning—The Golden Pagoda—Hindoo Architecture—Worship of the Lingam—Temple of the Indian Ceres—The Banks of the Ganges—Bathing Devotees—Preparations for Departure.

AT noon, on Monday, the 14th, I left the hospitable roof of Mr. Owen, at Allahabad. On reaching the Ganges, I found the drawbridge open, and a string of upward bound vessels passing through. There were thirty-nine in all, and so slowly were they towed against the stream, that full two hours elapsed, and I still sat there in the heat, contemplating the white and glaring sand-flats of the opposite shore. There was an end of it at last; my garree was pushed across, and over the sands, by a crowd of eager coolies, and having attained the hard, macadamized road, shaded by umbrageous peepul and neem trees, I whirled away rapidly toward Benares. My road lay along the northern bank of the Ganges, through a very rich and beautiful country. The broad fields of wheat and barley just coming into head, were picturesquely broken by "topes" of

the dark mango or the feathery tamarind, and groves of the brab palm. It was a land of harvest culture, with all the grace of sylvan adornment which distinguishes a park of pleasure.

The road was thronged with pilgrims returning from the great *mela*, or fair, of Allahabad. During the afternoon I passed many thousands, who appeared to be of the lowest and poorest castes of the Hindoos. They all carried earthen jars filled with the sacred water of the Junction (of the Ganges and Jumna), which they were taking to pour upon the shrines of Benares or Byznath. At the stations where I changed horses, they crowded around the garree, begging vociferously. "O great Being, an alms for Shiva's sake!" One half-naked, dark-eyed boy of ten years, accosted me in fluent Arabic, exclaiming: "O great lord, may Peace repose upon your turban!" with such a graceful and persuasive air that he did not need to ask twice. But for the others, it was necessary to be both blind and deaf, for there was no charm in the serpent-armed Destroyer to extort what had been given in the sacred name of Peace. As night approached, the crowds thickened, and the yells of my driver opened a way through their midst for the rapid garree. They moved in a cloud of dust, of their own raising, and I had no comfort until the darkness obliged them to halt by the roadside and around the villages, after which the atmosphere became clearer, and the road was tolerably free from obstruction.

The horses, however, gave me no peace, and every change, at the relay stations, seemed to be for the worse. After balking at the start, they would dash off in fury, making the body of the garree swing from side to side at every bound, till a crash

of some kind appeared inevitable. One of these careers was through a long and crowded village, in which a market was being held. I did not count how many times my flying wheels grazed the piles of earthenware, and the heaps of grain and vegetables, but I know that there were screams of alarm, gesticulations, fright and confusion, from one end of the village to the other, and how we ran the gauntlet without leaving a wake of ruin behind us, is a mystery which I cannot explain. I gradually became too weary to notice these aberrations of the propelling force, and sinking down into the bottom of the *garree*, fell into a sleep from which I was awakened at midnight by the driver's voice. I looked out, saw a large Gothic church before me, in the moonlight, and knew by that token that the goal was reached.

The next morning I called upon my countryman, Mr. Fitz-Edward Hall, to whom I had letters, and, according to Indian custom, immediately received the freedom of his bungalow. Mr. Hall, who is a native of Troy, New York, is Professor of Sanscrit in the Sanscrit College at Benares, and enjoys a high and deserved reputation throughout India for his attainments, not only in the classic language of the Brahmins, but also in the Hindoo and Urdee tongues. With his assistance I was enabled to take a hasty but very interesting survey of Benares, within the two days to which my stay was limited.

Benares, the Holy City of the Hindoos, and one of the most ancient in India, lies upon the northern bank of the Ganges, at the point where it receives the waters of the two small tributaries, the *Burna* and *Arsee*, from whose united names is derived that of the town. All junctions of other rivers with the Ganges are sacred, but that of the Jumna and the invisible

Seriswattee at Allahabad, surpasses all others in holiness. Nevertheless, Benares, from having been the spot where Mahadeo (if I am not mistaken), made his last *avatar*, or incarnate appearance on the earth, is so peculiarly sanctified that all persons who live within a circuit of five miles—even the abhorred Mussulman and the beef-eating English—go to Paradise, whether they wish it or no. According to the gospel of the Brahmins, the city and that portion of territory included within the aforesaid radius of five miles, is not, like all the rest of the earth's bulk, balanced upon the back of the great Tortoise, but upheld upon the points of Shiva's trident. In this belief they boldly affirmed that though all other parts of the world might be shaken to pieces, no earthquake could affect the stability of Benares—until 1828, when without the least warning towers and temples were thrown down, hundreds of persons buried in the wreck, and half built quays and palaces so split and sunken, that the boastful builders left off their work, which stands at this day in the same hideous state of ruin. This mundane city, however (they say), is but a faint shadow, a dim reflection of the real Benares, which is built upon a plain half-way between Earth and Heaven.

The English cantonments encircle the old Hindoo city. Owing to the deep, dry beds of the small rivers, scarring the rather arid level which it covers, the settlement has not the home-like, pleasing features of others in Hindostan. There are a few handsome private mansions, a spacious church, and the new Sanscrit College, which is considered the finest modern edifice in India. To those who are familiar with the East India Company's efforts in this line, such an opinion will not raise very high expectations. The College is a Gothic cross—

a reminiscence of Oxford, and beautiful as it is in many respects, we should prefer something else, to project against a background of palms and tamarinds. It is built of the soft rose colored sandstone of Chenar, and the delicate beauty of its buttresses and pinnacles, wrought in this material, make us regret that the architect had not availed himself of the rich stores of Saracenic art, which the mosques and tombs of the Mogul Emperors afford him. Gothic architecture does not, and never can be made to harmonize with the forms of a tropical landscape.

The plan of this College is unique and has of late been the subject of much criticism. It was established by the East India Company sixty-three years ago, for the purpose of instructing the children of Brahmins in the Sanscrit Philosophy and Literature, and since the construction of the new building, the English College has been incorporated with it. The Principal, Dr. Ballantyne, who is probably the profoundest Sanscrit scholar living, has taken advantage of this junction to set on foot an experiment, which, if successful, will produce an entire revolution in the philosophy of the Brahmins. The native scholars in the English College are made acquainted with the inductive philosophy of Bacon, while the students of Sanscrit take as a text-book the Nyaya system, as it is called, of Guatama, the celebrated Hindoo philosopher. There are many points of approach in these two systems, and Dr. Ballantyne has been led to combine them in such a way as finally to place the student, who commences with the refined speculations of Guatama, upon the broad and firm basis of the Baconian system. The latter is thus prepared to receive the truths of the physical sciences, a knowledge of which must gradually, but inevitably overthrow the gorgeous enormities of his religious faith.

After visiting Mr. Reid, the Commissioner of the District Mr. Hall accompanied me to the Mission establishment of the English Church. Here there is a small village of native Christians, whom I could not but compassionate. Cut off forever from intercourse with their friends, denounced as unclean and accursed, they showed their isolation by a quiet, patient demeanor, as if they passively sustained their new faith, instead of actively rejoicing in it. There was, however, a visible improvement in their households—greater cleanliness and order, and the faces of the women, I could not but notice, showed that the teachings of the missionaries had not been lost upon them. I wish I could have more faith in the sincerity of these converts; but the fact that there is a material gain, no matter how slight, in becoming Christian, throws a doubt upon the verity of their spiritual regeneration. If lacking employment, they are put in the way of obtaining it; if destitute, their wants are relieved; and when gathered into communities, as here, they are furnished with dwellings rent-free. While I cheerfully testify to the zeal and faithfulness of those who labor in the cause, I must confess that I have not yet witnessed any results which satisfy me that the vast expenditure of money, talent and life in missionary enterprises, has been adequately repaid.

I spent a day in the streets and temples of Benares. As a city it presents a more picturesque and impressive whole than either Delhi or Lucknow, though it has no such traces of architectural splendor as those cities. The streets are narrow and crooked, but paved with large slabs of sandstone; the houses are lofty, substantial structures of wood, with projecting stories, and at every turn the eye rests upon the gilded conical

domes of a Hindoo temple or the tall minaret of a Mchammedan mosque. It is a wilderness of fantastic buildings, in which you are constantly surprised by new and striking combinations and picturesque effects of light and shade. I should have been content to wander about at random in the labyrinth, but my companion insisted on going at once to the Golden Pagoda, or great temple of Mahadeo, and thither we accordingly went.

The narrow streets were obstructed, in the vicinity of the temple, with numbers of the sacred bulls. Benares swarms with these animals, which are as great a nuisance to the place as the mendicant friars are to Rome. They are knowing bulls, perfectly conscious of their sacred character, and presume upon it to commit all sorts of depredations. They are the terror of the dealers in fruits and vegetables, for, although not always exempted from blows, no one can stand before their horns—and these they do not scruple to use, if necessary to secure their ends. Sometimes, on their foraging expeditions, they boldly enter the houses, march up stairs and take a stroll on the flat roofs, where they may be seen, looking down with a quiet interest on the passing crowds below. From these eminences they take a survey of the surrounding country, calculate its resources, and having selected one of the richest spots within their circles of vision, descend straightway, and set off on a bee-line for the place, which they never fail to find. When the fields look promising on the other side of the Ganges, they march down to the river banks, and prevent any passenger from going on board the ferry-boats until they are permitted to enter. They cross and remain there until the supplies are exhausted, when they force a passage back in the same manner. The gardens of the English residents frequently

suffer from their depredations, and the only effectual way of guarding against them is to yoke them at once, and to keep them at hard labor for a day or two, which so utterly disgusts them with the place that they never return to it. It is also affirmed that they carefully avoid the neighborhood of those butchers who supply the tables of the English, having observed that some of their brethren disappeared in a mysterious manner, after frequenting such localities.

We were fortunate in our visit to the Golden Pagoda, for it was one of the god's festival days, and the court and shrines of the temple were thronged with crowds of worshippers. The most of them brought wreaths of flowers and brass vessels of Ganges water, to pour upon the symbols of the divinity. The Pagoda is built of red sandstone, which seems to have grown darker and richer by age, and by contrast with the blazing gold of its elaborate spires, has a wonderfully gorgeous appearance. The style of architecture is essentially the same in all Hindoo temples. The body of the structure is square and massive, enclosing the shrine of the god. From a cornice of great breadth, and often covered with sculptured ornaments, rises a tall spire, of parabolic outlines, which has the look of being formed by an accretion of smaller spires of similar form. It has a general resemblance to a pine-apple or rugged pine-cone. Where the temple is enclosed within a court, as in this instance, there are usually a number of separate shrines, and the clusters of spires and small ornamental pinnacles, entirely covered with gilding, form a picture of barbaric pomp not unworthy the reputed wealth "of Ormuz or of Ind." The shrines stood within dusky recesses or sanctuaries, lighted by lamps filled with cocoa-nut oil. They were in charge of

priests or neophytes, who offered us wreaths of jasmine-blossoms, fragrant, and moist with Ganges water. I was about to accept some of them, but Mr. Hall requested me not to do so, as the act was one of worship, and would be looked upon as showing respect to Mahadeo.

The body of the temple abounded with stone images of the *lingam*, on all of which lay wreaths of flowers, while the worshippers, male and female, poured over them the water of the sacred river. The worship was performed quietly and decently, with every outward appearance of respect, and there was nothing in the symbols themselves, or the ceremonies, to give foundation to the charges which have been made, of the obscenity or immorality of this feature of the Hindoo faith. The *lingam* is typical of the creative principle, and by no means to be confounded with the Priapus of the Greeks; it rather points to the earlier phallic worship of the Egyptians, with which it was no doubt coeval. There is a profound philosophical truth hidden under the singular forms of this worship, if men would divest themselves for a moment of a prudery with regard to such subjects, which seems to be the affectation of the present age. So far from the Hindoos being a licentious people, they are far less so than the Chinese on one hand or the Mussulmen on the other, and from what I can learn, they are quite as moral as any race to which the tropical sun has given an ardent temperament and a brilliant vitality of physical life.

I also visited the temple of Unna-Purna—one of the names of the Goddess Bhavani, the Indian Ceres. It stands on a platform of masonry, surrounded by a range of smaller shrines. Hundreds of worshippers—mostly peasants from the surrounding country, were marching with a quick step around

the temple, with their offerings in their hands. The shrine of the Goddess was so crowded that I had some difficulty in obtaining a view of her dusky figure. The gay, cheerful aspect of the votaries, with their garlands of flowers and brazen urns of water, recalled to my mind the Eleusinian Festivals of Greece, and the words of Schiller's Hymn flashed into my memory :

“ Windet zum Kränze die goldenen Ähren ! ”

We afterwards went down to the Ganges, and wandered along, past shattered palaces, sunken quays, temples thrown prostrate, or leaning more threateningly than the belfry of Pisa, through a wilderness of fantastic and magnificent forms, watching the crowds bathing in the reeking tanks, or the open waters of the river. Broad stone ghauts (flights of steps) covered the bank, rising from the river to the bases of stately buildings, fifty or sixty feet above. The Ganges here makes a broad bend to the northward, and from these ghauts, near the centre, we saw on either hand the horns of the crescent-shaped city, with their sweeps of temples, towers and minarets glittering in the sun. A crowd of *budgerows*, or river boats, were moored all along the bank, or slowly moved, with white sails spread, against the current. The bathers observed the same ceremonies as I had noticed at Allahabad, and were quite decorous in their movements, the men retaining the *dhotee*, or cotton cloth twisted about the loins. The Hindoos are greatly shocked by the English soldiers, who go naked to the embraces of the Goddess Gunga,—not from that circumstance as connected with bathing, but as a want of respect to the holy stream. I finished my visit to the city, by taking a boat and

slowly floating down the Ganges in front of it, until its confused array of palaces, and ghauts, and golden spires was indelibly daguerrotyped upon my memory.

The necessity of reaching Calcutta in time for the Hong Kong steamer of the last of February, obliged me to refuse an invitation to a week's tiger-hunting in the jungles of the Vindhya Hills—a prospect which I did not relinquish without some bitter regrets. I thereupon made preparations for my last “garree-dawk” of 430 miles, with a pleasant prospect of a bruised head or broken bones, for after so many narrow escapes, I decided that I either bore a charmed life, or my share of injury was near at hand.

CHAPTER XX.

THE ROAD FROM BENARES TO CALCUTTA

Moonlight on the Ganges—The Unholy River—Scenery of the Plains—Egyptian Landscapes—Sasseram—Mountains near the Soane River—View of the Ford-Crossing—The Second Day's Journey—The Hills of Behar—Meeting with an Acquaintance—Wild Table-Land—Sunset—A Coolie Trick—The Aborigines of India—Triumph of the Red-haired Lady—Horse Gymnastics—The Lady Defeated—Munglepore—An Eccentric Night-Journey—The City of Burdwan—Tropical Scenery—Wrecked on the Road—A Wrathful Delay—Wrecked again—Journey by Moonlight—Another Wreck—An Insane Horse—The Hoogly River—Yet Another Accident—A Morning Parade—The End of "Garree-Dawk."

It was nearly midnight, on the 16th of February, when I left a genial company of Benares residents, and started on my lonely journey to Calcutta. My conductor did not pass through the city, but drove around it to Raj Ghaut, five miles distant. The horse was unharnessed, the carriage dragged down the bank by coolies, and deposited on a ferry-boat. I stretched myself comfortably on the mattress, propped against a carpet-bag, and looked out on the beautiful moonlit river. No spicelamps, set afloat by amorous Hindoo maidens, starred the silvery smoothness of the tide. Alas, I fear that the poetry of the Indian world is in a rapid decline. There was no sound

during our passage but the light dip of oars, and the shores, faintly touched by the rays of the setting moon, were wrapped in the hush of slumber. Thus, with a solemn, scarcely perceptible motion, I was ferried across the sacred river.

A plank road led over the sandy flats on the opposite side, and my horse required the assistance of half a dozen coolies, to reach the level of the cultivated land. We rolled on at a lively pace through the night, and the rising sun found me at Durgowtee, thirty-six miles from Benares. Here a handsome suspension bridge crosses the river Karamnasa, the waters of which are so unholy as to destroy the whole merit of a journey to Benares, should they touch the pilgrim's feet. The bridge was built by a late Rajah of Benares, to prevent the thousands of pilgrims who pass along this road, from forfeiting the reward of their devotion. Notwithstanding this act of pious charity, the Rajah was so unpopular among his people, that they considered it very unlucky to mention his name before breakfast. The country was still a dead level, and though dry at this season, is marshy during the rains. The last season had injured the road greatly, so that for a distance of twenty or thirty miles, but little of it was passable. A rough temporary track had been made beside it, and hundreds of workmen were employed in constructing bridges over the nullas, and repairing the embankments. The country, at first almost bare of trees, and covered with but moderate crops, gradually became warmer and richer in its aspect. The vegetation increased in luxuriance, and the profusion of the brab palm spoke of the neighborhood of the tropics. The villages were shaded with huge banyans, peepuls and other umbrageous trees. The Vindhya Mountains appeared blue and distant in the south.

west, and a nearer range in front marked my approach to the Soane River.

The landscapes reminded me more of Egypt than any other part of India. There was the same summer richness in the foliage of the trees, the same vivid green in the broad fields of wheat and barley, then fast ripening, and the same luxury of color in the patches of blossoming poppy. But the air, instead of the crystalline purity of the Egyptian atmosphere, was steeped in a glowing blue vapor—softened by a filmy veil of languor and repose. The sun poured down a summer glow, though a light breeze now and then ran over the fields, and rolled along the road in clouds of whirling dust. Notwithstanding my lazy enjoyment of the scenery, I found my appetite gradually becoming sharper, and was not sorry to reach the large town of Sasseram, where I halted at the bungalow long enough to procure an afternoon breakfast. Resuming my journey, I reached the banks of the Soane River about five o'clock. The mountains on the left, which follow its course, cease at the distance of some miles from the road, whence they have the appearance of a long bluff promontory, projecting into the sea. In advance of the last headland rises an isolated peak with a forked top, precisely as I have seen a craggy island standing alone, off the point of a cape. There is no doubt that Central and Southern India at one time constituted an immense island, separated from the main land of Asia by a sea whose retrocession gave to the light the great plains of Hindostan and the Indus.

The Soane is believed to be the Erranoboas of the old Greek geographers, and at his junction with the Ganges they located the great city of Palibothra. He has a royal bed in

which to roll his waters, which were then sbrunken to a shallow flood by the dry season. Standing on the western bank, the channel stretched away before me to a breadth of nearly four miles—a waste of bare yellow sand, threaded by the blue arms of the river. Here and there companies of men and oxen dotted its surface, and showed the line of the ford. The tents of those who were waiting to cross on the morrow were pitched on the bank, and the gleam of fires kindled near them shone out ruddily as the sun went down. It was a grand and impressive scene, notwithstanding its sombre and monotonous hues. Such, I imagine, must be the fords of our own Nebraska, during the season of emigration. I paid an official of some kind two rupees, after which my horse was unharnessed, and three yoke of oxen attached to the garree. Descending to the river bank a short distance above, the garree was put upon a ferry-boat, to be taken across the deepest part, while the bullocks were driven through to await us on the other side. The main stream is about half a mile wide, and beyond it lie alternate beds of sand, and small, fordable arms of the river. We moved at a snail's pace, on account of the depth of the sand. While in the midst of one of the deepest channels, the water reaching to the body of the garree, one of the oxen twisted his head out of the yoke and darted off. There was great plunging and splashing on the part of the natives for a few minutes, but they succeeded in recovering him, and at length, after a passage of more than two hours, we attained firm earth on the opposite side.

In spite of the lovely moonlight, I shut up the garree, and courted slumber. I passed a tolerable night, and at daybreak reached Shergotty, one hundred and thirty miles from Be

nares. The country, for ten miles after leaving that town, was level and gloriously rich. The wheat and barley were taking on their golden harvest hue, and the plantations of poppy sparkled in the sun like sheets of freshly-fallen snow. The villages were frequent, thickly settled, and had a flourishing air. The road still swarmed with Hindoo pilgrims, returning from Benares and Allahabad, almost every one carrying his two jars of Ganges water. At the stations I was assailed by clamorous beggars of all ages and sexes. The troops of coolies on the road were also annoying, by laying hold of the garree at the difficult places, running with it half a mile, and then demanding backsheesh. They made a ridiculous feint of pushing with all their strength, although I could see that there was not the least strain on their muscles, and constantly cried out, with much energy. "Push away there — a great lord is inside!"

I was now in the hilly province of Behar, where the country becomes more undulating, and the cultivation more scanty. A chain of mountains which had been visible for some time in front, began to enclose me in their jungly depths. The road still continued good, the ascents being gradual, and the nullas crossed by substantial bridges. The hills were covered with jungle to their very summits, and the country on either hand, as far as I could see, was uncultivated. The people had a wild, squalid look, and showed evidence of different blood from the race of the plains. I halted in the afternoon at the bungalow of Dunwah for my single daily meal, and while waiting for it, a garree drawn entirely by coolies came up the road from the Calcutta side. The traveller, it seemed, had intentions similar to mine, for his coolies brought him to the bun-

galow, and I soon heard his voice in the next room, ordering tea and "*moorghee grill*" (broiled chicken). When I was employed on my own meal, he came in to see who I was, and we were both surprised to find that we had been fellow-passengers on board the *Haddington*, and had parted company at Suez, more than two months before.

Leaving Dunwah, I had two chokees of gradual ascent, among hills covered with jungle, and then reached, as I thought, the dividing ridge, and anticipated a corresponding descent; in place whereof, a level table-land, dotted with detached mountain groups, opened before me as far as the eye could reach. Though thinly inhabited, the soil appeared to be fertile, and the air was purer than on the plains of the Ganges. It was a wild, romantic region, and gave me the idea of a country just beginning to be reclaimed from a state of nature. One would scarcely expect to find hundreds of miles of such land, coëxistent with the dense population of other parts of India. Yet, during my travels, I saw a vast deal of waste and uncultivated territory. Were all its resources developed, the country would support at least double its present population.

The sunset was beautiful among those woody ranges, and the full moonlight melted into it so gently that it seemed to arrest and retain the mellow lustre and soothing influences of twilight. At a chokee which I reached soon after dusk, the people represented to me that the road beyond was mountainous, and that two coolies would be necessary, in addition to the horse. "Well," said I, "let two of you come." I waited in vain for the hills, however, for we went forward at a full gallop, the whole distance. Looking behind to see whether

this increase of speed was occasioned by the coolies, I discovered those two gentlemen comfortably seated on the rumble, with their legs dangling in the air, while every few minutes they uttered cries of such energy, that one would have supposed they were straining every nerve with the violence of their efforts. When we reached the station, they came up boldly and demanded their pay, whereupon I retorted by asking pay of them for their conveyance. They slunk away, quite chop-fallen at my discovery of their trickery.

At dawn the next morning, I reached a town called Topee-chancee. Beyond this point the mountains gradually receded on either hand, and at last appeared only as isolated peaks, rising from the plain. Near Gyra, there is a lofty single peak, celebrated as being the sacred hill of the Jains, who are said to have five temples on the summit. None of them are visible from the road. The natives I met in this part of Behar differed considerably in appearance from the Hindoos of the plains, and probably belonged to the aboriginal tribes who are still found among those hills. The head is much larger and longer, in proportion to the size of the body, which is short, thick and muscular. Several German missionaries have located themselves in this region, and are said to have had considerable success in their labors for the conversion of these wild tribes.

During the forenoon I was overtaken by a green garree, in which sat two ladies. As it approached, I heard a shrill voice urging on the driver, who lashed his horse into a gallop, and as the vehicle passed, the elder lady thrust her head out of the window, and nodded to me with an air of insolent triumph. She had a decidedly red face, diversified with freckles, keen

gray eyes, a nose with a palpable snub, and a profusion of coarse hair, of a color, which I will charitably term auburn. It was rather humiliating to be passed in the race by a female of that style of beauty, but I did not dispute her triumph. After leaving Gyra I journeyed all the afternoon over an undulating upland, covered with jungle and crossed by broken chains of hills, which sank into long, regular, surfy swells, as I approached the plains of Bengal. Thus far, beyond a few balks and harmless gymnastics, I had slight cause to complain of the horses furnished to me; but here my troubles commenced in earnest. The initiative was taken by a vicious animal, which bolted away from the station, dashed off the road, and after hurling the garree within six inches of a pit ten feet deep, was recovered, and with much persuasion induced to go forward. I was comforted, however, by passing in my turn, the green garree, but the red-haired lady this time turned her face steadfastly away from me, while a scowl of ill-humor added to the upward tendency of her nose. I looked out and nodded triumphantly, but she only sneered with more freezing contempt. She overtook me again at Burdwan, the next morning, but after that I kept the lead, and saw no more of her.

As night approached, I reached the boundary of the hills; an unbroken level extended to the horizon. The air was exceedingly mild and balmy, and the moonlight so delicious that I sat up for hours, enjoying it. At Munglepore, which I reached about eight o'clock, I met a gentleman and lady, on their way to the North-West, in a private carriage, drawn by coolies. I had a pleasant half-hour's talk with them, and on leaving, the gentleman gave me his name as Major——, of the

—th, and asked me to visit him if I ever came to the Punjab. The horses, that night, deprived me of all sleep. Sometimes the garree was planted firmly for half an hour in one spot, and then with a sudden impulse it shot forward with flying speed, swerving from one side of the road to the other, until a collision of some kind seemed inevitable. Once, the horse ran away, and was only brought up by dashing against the abutment of a bridge; and at another time, being awakened by an unusual movement of the garree, I looked out and found it on the steep side of a hill, with three natives holding on to the uppermost wheels, to prevent it from overturning. Notwithstanding all these perils, we succeeded in reaching Bardwan, seventy-two miles from Calcutta, by daybreak.

This is a large town, and the residence of a Rajan. It is a beautiful place, about two miles in length, and has a large number of European residences. Here I was first struck with the difference between the vegetation of Bengal and the north-western provinces. Instead of those level Egyptian plains, with their tops of mango and tamarind, here were the gorgeous growths of the West Indies, or the Mexican *tierra caliente*. In the gardens of the Europeans, the *Poinsettia* hung its long azure streamers from the trees, and the *Bougainvillia* raised its mounds of fiery purple bloom; the streets were shaded with lofty peepul trees, mixed with feathery groups of the cocoa palm; the native huts were embowered in thickets of bamboo, over which towered the cotton tree, with its bare boughs and clusters of scarlet, lily-shaped blossoms. I arrived at Burdwan at such an early hour, and the new garree and horse were gotten ready for me with so little delay, that there was no time to procure breakfast, before leaving the town. I

set out with the expectation of arriving at Calcutta the same evening, but had not proceeded more than five miles, when the horse began to plunge, struck his hind feet through the front of the garree, snapped the axle, and left me stranded on the road.

I dispatched the driver with the horse, back to Burdwan, to bring another vehicle, and took my seat on the ruins to watch over my baggage. Two hours thus passed away; three hours; the sun stood high and hot in the heavens, and at last my pipe, to which I invariably turn for patience, failed of its effect. Twenty-four hours had elapsed since I had eaten, and the pangs of fasting were superadded to the wrath of deceived hopes. Another hour elapsed and it was now high noon; I hailed the natives who passed, and tried to bribe them to drag my carriage back to the town, but they either could not understand, or would not heed me. Still another hour, and with it, finally, the new conveyance came. My wrath was too great for words, but if looks could have affected him, the driver would have crumbled to ashes on the spot. Now, thought I, the Fates are satisfied, and I shall be allowed to pursue my journey in peace. But, after making a mile or so of the second stage, the horse, perceiving two empty wagons by the road-side, dashed up against them with the garree, and there remained. Neither blows nor entreaties would induce him to budge a step, and the driver finally unharnessed him and went back for another. This time I only waited *two* hours, and I neither smoked nor spoke, for I was fast approaching the apathy of despair. Toward sunset I reached a bungalow and achieved a meal, after which, somewhat comforted, I continued my journey.

As the road approached the Hoogly River, the country became more thickly settled, and the native villages were frequent. The large mansions, gleaming white in the moonlight, the gardens, the avenues of superb peepul trees and groves of palm, spoke of the wealth and luxury of the inhabitants. The road was shaded with large trees, between whose trunks the moonshine poured in broad streaks, alternating with dark-nesses balmy with the odor of unseen flowers. I became tranquil and cheerful again, deeming that my trials were over. Vain expectation! While passing through the very next vil-lage, the horse ran madly against a high garden wall on the right hand, and there stuck. He was unharnessed, the garree dragged into the middle of the road, harnessed again, and we started. The same thing happened as before; he gave two frantic leaps, and dashed us against the wall. If ever there was an insane animal, that was one. Six times, as I am a Christian, he dashed me against that wall. The driver's whip was soon exhausted, and I, beside myself with anger, having nothing else at hand, took my long cherry-wood pipe, and shivered it to pieces over his flanks. But he was inspired by the Fiend, and I was obliged to send him away and hire coolies to drag the vehicle as far as the Hoogly, six miles dis-tant, where I arrived shortly after midnight.

I was ferried across the river, took another horse, and hav-ing only two stages to Calcutta, confidently lay down and went to sleep. I was awakened in half an hour by the stopping of the garree. Will it be believed that *that* horse, too, had come to a stand? Yet such was the plain Truth—Fiction would never venture on such an accumulation of disasters—and once more the driver went back for another animal, leaving the gar

ree, with myself inside, in the middle of the road. I slept, I knew not how long, until aroused by the sharp peal of volleys of musketry. The sun was up; I rubbed my eyes and looked out. There I was, in the midst of Barrackpore, in front of the parade-ground, where some four or five thousand Sepoys were going through their morning drill. I watched their evolutions, until the last company had defiled off the field, for the driver, probably surmising my fondness for military spectacles, did not make his appearance for another hour.

And now we sped down the grand avenue, which, straight as an arrow, and shaded by giant banyans and peepuls, leads from Barrackpore to Calcutta. Gradually palace-like residences, surrounded with gardens, made their appearance on either side of the road. These, in turn, gave place to bamboo huts, with thatched roofs. Presently, a muddy moat appeared, and having crossed it, I felt that I was at last inside of the Mahratta Ditch, and that my perils were over. In half an hour afterwards I was quartered at Spence's Hotel; my journey of 2,200 miles in the interior of India was finished, and I bade adieu—for ever I trust,—to "garree-dawk."

CHAPTER XXI.

CALCUTTA—THE BRITISH EMPIRE IN INDIA.

Impressions of Calcutta—The Houses of the Residents—Public Buildings and Institutions—Colleges—Young Bengal—Museum of the Asiatic Society—The Botanic Garden—Calcutta at Sunset—Scene on the Esplanade—English Rule in India—Its Results—Its Disadvantages—Relation of the Government to the Population—Tenure of Land—Taxes—The Sepoys—Revenue of India—Public Works—Moral Changes—Social Prejudices.

I REACHED Calcutta on the 21st of February, and embarked for Hong Kong, on the 28th. My stay was consequently too short to justify me in attempting more than a general description of the city, and the impression which it made upon me. After the glowing accounts I had heard in the Provinces, of its opulent social life and architectural magnificence, I confess to a feeling of disappointment. It is the London, or rather the Paris, of India, and the country magistrate, after years of lonely life in the jungles, or in some remote cantonment, looks forward to a taste of its unaccustomed gayeties, as one of the bright spots in his life of exile. But it by no means deserves to arrogate to itself the title of the "City of Palaces," so long as Venice and Florence, or even Cadiz and La Valletta, remain in existence. It is not a city of palaces, but—the European portion at least—a city of large houses; and the view of the long line of mansions on the Chowringhee Road, extend

ing northward to the Government Palace and the City Hall, as seen from the banks of the Hoogly, is certainly an architectural diorama, which would not disgrace any capital in Europe. Beyond this view, which, as it is the first that strikes the eye of a stranger arriving by sea, explains the unbounded admiration of many travellers, there is little to satisfy one's expectations. It is a fair outside, a frontispiece of wealth and parade, concealing the insignificance and poverty of the interior. Penetrate the thin crust, which hints of greater splendors behind it, and you are soon lost in winding, dusty avenues, lined with the mean and narrow dwellings of the lower classes of the native population.

The houses of the European residents, and of the wealthy native Baboos, are all built on the most spacious plan. The chambers are very large and lofty, for the purpose of coolness, and the open, arched verandas of the exterior throw a little grace around the large, blank masses of building. The material employed is brick and mortar only, which is plastered and painted white or cream-colored. On account of the damp, hot atmosphere of Bengal, the painting must be renewed every year, otherwise it becomes mildewed. The upper stories display a great quantity of windows, with green jalousies before them. These mansions are mostly furnished in a rich and elegant style, though straw matting takes the place of carpets, and broad *punkas* (for creating an artificial current of air) hang from the ceiling. A large retinue of servants—varying from ten to thirty—move about in their long white garment and flat turbans, hearing your commands with folded hands and a profound inclination of the head. The style of living is sumptuous, but rather too closely modelled after London

habits. Perhaps there is no community in Europe which lives in a style of equal luxury, this being the headquarters of the General Government, and the seat of many of the best offices in its gift.

Calcutta has little to show, in the way of architecture. The Government Palace is said to be a very cool and comfortable residence, which, in that climate, compensates for many defects; but let the reader picture to himself five immense cubes of masonry, touching each other precisely like five black squares on a chess-board, with a low dome over the central one, and he will have a correct picture of it. The City Hall, a semi-Greek structure, is to my eye the finest building in the place. It has a noble hall, supported by two rows of Corinthian columns. The Metcalfe Hall, with a Corinthian portico, the new Hospital, Hare's Hindoo College, the Medical College, and other edifices, are proud testimonials of the public spirit and liberality of the citizens of Calcutta, and their architectural excellence is a matter of secondary importance. The new Cathedral, however, which has lately been erected at a cost of \$150,000, reflects little credit on its projectors. It is Gothic, of an impure and disproportionate character, and being planted at one of the most prominent points on the Chowringhee Road, must be a perpetual eyesore to such of the residents as cherish a taste for Art. Several flourishing colleges have been established, of late years, for the improvement of the native population. That which was founded by the late David Hare, Esq., ranks among the first. I received an invitation to attend a performance of *Hamlet*, in English, by a company of Hindoo students, within its walls. Another philanthropic citizen had just completed a college for females, the

success of which is doubted, as the Hindoo girls are betrothed very early, and after that ceremony, kept in strict seclusion. There are two mission schools, under the patronage of the Church of Scotland, in each of which there are more than a thousand pupils. Although the conversions to Christianity are comparatively few, the enlightened influence of Education, and, more especially, of European society, is making itself felt among the intelligent native families, and a party which styles itself "Young Bengal" is rapidly increasing its ranks. The young men, whose faith in the absurdities of the religion of their fathers is destroyed, have just entered the stage of utter scepticism, through which they must pass in order to reach the true Gospel. Their scorn and irreverence is manifested in eating the flesh of the sacred cow, making themselves tipsy with the forbidden blood of the grape, and disregarding the awful limits and restrictions of caste. Many Europeans are shocked at these proceedings, but I think they are hopeful signs. You cannot tear the deep-rooted faith of ages out of the heart of a race without tearing up with it all capacity for Faith. But a new soil gradually forms, and the seed of Truth, if dropped at a happy moment, takes living hold therein

During my stay in Calcutta, I enjoyed the hospitality of my countryman, Mr Barstow, and his partner Mr. Ashburner, a Scotch gentleman. Here, as every where throughout India, every door is opened to the stranger, with a spontaneous and generous hospitality which is equalled in no other part of the world. Mr. Chas. Huffnagle, the American Consul, to whom I was indebted for many kind attentions, accompanied me to the Botanic Gardens, and to the Museum of the Asiatic Soci

ety. The latter embraces a fine library, including many rare works in Oriental languages, a large zoological and mineralogical collection, and a number of Hindoo antiquities, gathered from different parts of India. Among the latter is a stone covered with Pali characters, from which Mr. Prinsep, the distinguished scholar and antiquarian, obtained his clue to the reading of inscriptions in that language. The Museum, however, is evidently suffering from neglect; the statues and sculptures taken from ancient temples, are scattered about the grounds, and exposed to the action of the weather, and many of the specimens of natural history have been injured by the ravages of the white ants. The Botanic Garden, which is on the opposite bank of the Hoogly, three or four miles below the city, is a beautiful spot, and contains an unusually rich collection of the trees and plants of the Tropics. The banyan tree, with its 110 trunks, is considered a great lion, but I had seen specimens of more than double the size in the valley of the Nerbudda. Among the ornamental plants, I was most struck with the *Amherstia nobilis*, a native of Burmah, with glossy green foliage, and long, pendent spikes of scarlet flowers; the *Bougainvillia spectabilis*, one broad sheet of purple bloom and the *Poinsettia*, whose sky-blue clusters, ten to fifteen feet in length, hung like streamers from the trees on which it leaned.

From half an hour before, until an hour after sunset, Calcutta is to be seen in its greatest glory. Then, all who can procure an equipage, drive on the esplanade, an open space of three or four miles in length by nearly a mile in breadth, extending along the banks of the Hoogly, from the Government Palace to Fort William, and still further, to the country sub

urb of Garden Reach. All the splendor of Chowringhee Road fronts on this magnificent promenade, and I forgave the pride of the Calcuttanees in their city, when I joined the brilliant stream of life in the main drive on the banks of the river, watching hundreds of lordly equipages passing and repassing, while on the other hand, the three miles of stately residenceet—palaces, if you insist upon it—shone rosy-bright in the face of the setting sun. The Parsee, the Hindoo and the Mussulman mingled in the ranks of the pale Englishmen, and reclined in their carriages, or drove their mettled Arabs with as much spirit as the best of their conquerors. Their Cashmere shawls, their silks and jewels, and the gay Oriental liveries of the syces and footmen, gave the display an air of pomp and magnificence which threw Hyde Park and the Champs Elysées into the shade. The fine band from Fort William, playing lively airs on the green, gave the crowning charm to the hour and the scene. The languor of the Indian day was forgotten, and the rich, sensuous life of the East flashed into sudden and startling vividness. I shall try to retain the impression of these sunset views of Calcutta, for they belong to that class of memories which are but enriched by time.

Here, on the eve of my departure from India, is a fitting occasion to say a few words on the character and the results of the English rule. The Government of the East India Company presents an anomaly to which there is no parallel in history. It is a system so complicated and involved, embracing so many heterogeneous elements, and so difficult to grasp, as a whole, that the ignorance manifested even in the English Parliament, with regard to its operations, is scarcely to be wondered at. From the rapidity of my progress through the

country, and the disconnected and imperfect nature of my observations, I feel some reluctance in venturing upon the subject, and the reader must be contented to receive a few general impressions, instead of a critical dissection of the system, which, indeed, would occupy too much space, even if I were competent to undertake it.

My previous notions of English rule in India were obtained chiefly from the articles on the subject in the progressive newspapers of England, and were, I need hardly say, unfavorable. The American press is still more unsparing in its denunciations, though very few of the writers have any definite idea of the nature of the wrongs over which they grow so indignant. That there are wrongs and abuses which call for severe reprehension, is undeniable; but I have seen enough to satisfy me that, in spite of oppression, in some instances of the most grinding character, in spite of that spirit of selfish aggrandizement which first set on foot and is still prosecuting the subjugation of India, the country has prospered under English Government. So far from regretting the progress of annexation, which has been so rapid of late years, (and who are *we*, that we should cast a stone against this sin?) I shall consider it a fortunate thing for India, when the title of every native sovereign is extinguished, and the power of England stretches, in unbroken integrity, from Cashmere to Cape Comorin. Having made this admission, I shall briefly refer to some of the most prominent evils and benefits of the system.

It is the misfortune of India that it is governed by a commercial corporation, which annually drains the country of a large proportion of its revenues. It is true that the amount of the dividend on the East India stock is fixed by Parliament

and cannot be exceeded; but that stock, with the debts incurred, by various expensive wars, amounts to upwards of \$225,000,000, to meet the interest on which requires an annual expenditure of \$15,000,000. Besides this, a large amount of money passes out of the country in the form of salaries and pensions (the Civil Service being much better paid than any other service in the world), so that a constant system of depletion is carried on, which would have greatly impoverished the country by this time, had not its effects been partially counteracted by other and compensating influences in the Government. The governing machinery is also very unwieldy and lumbering, fettered by a system of checks, which, as some of the departments are seven thousand miles apart, renders it extremely difficult to introduce new measures, no matter how urgent may be the necessity for their adoption. Parliament in this instance adheres to the old maxim of *quieta non movere*, and although the charter of the East India Company comes up for renewal once every twenty years, few steps have been taken to lop off the old excrescences and simplify the action of its executive powers.

The relation of the Government to the laboring millions of India is one that has been frequently condemned. It was inherited from the former rulers, but has since undergone considerable modification, and not, I am sorry to say, for the better. It is substantially that of landlord and tenant, the Government holding all the land as its own property, and leasing it to the inhabitants according to a certain form of assessment. In some instances it is leased directly to the laborers in others to *zemindars*, or contractors on a large scale, who sub-let it to the former at an advanced rate, and practise ty

rannical extortions upon them, in order to increase their own profits. The worst feature of this system is, that the rents increase in proportion to the productiveness of the land, so that it discourages the laborer from endeavoring to improve his portion. I have been informed that the amount received by Government averages about 75 per cent. of the value of the produce. The consequence is that the laborers, whether leasing from the *zemindars* or directly from the Government officers, make but a bare subsistence from year to year. In almost any other country they would be kept permanently at starvation point, but in India their wants are so few and their habits of life so simple, that the amount of positive distress is comparatively small. For a common laborer, such as are employed by Government on roads and canals, four rupees a month, or \$24 a year, is considered good wages, and there are millions who manage to subsist on half this sum.

In Bengal and Madras the condition of the laboring population is most unfavorable, on account of the peculiar land systems which have been adopted in those presidencies. In Madras, where what is called the Ryotwar system is in force, a general assessment of all produce and property is made every year, and the rents fluctuate according to this standard, within the limits of a maximum rate, fixed by Government. But in order to carry out this system, the assistance of a large number of petty native officials is required, and the abuses which are perpetrated under it are said to be absolutely monstrous. In the north-west provinces, where an assessment is only made every thirty years, and the occupation and cultivation of a tract of land constitutes a sort of claim to the renewal of the lease, the country is in a much more flourishing state. The

soil is under excellent cultivation, and the inhabitants are thrifty and contented, while in the neighboring kingdom of Oude, grinding taxes are extorted every year by the force of an armed soldiery, districts which twenty years ago blossomed as a garden, are now waste and deserted, and thousands of oppressed subjects annually escape into the Company's territories, where they find at least security of life and property. Despotie as the Company's government certainly is, it is a well-regulated despotism, and its quiet and steady sway is far preferable to the capricious tyranny of the native rulers.

It speaks well for the Government that its military service is popular among the natives. There is no conscription, the Sepoy regiments being raised entirely by voluntary enlistment, and could be increased to any extent, if desired. The military force amounts to about 240,000 men—larger, one would suppose, than is actually needed, since it entails a great expense upon the country. The men are well fed and clothed—with the exception of the tight coats and stiff leather stocks in which they are tortured daily—and receive a liberal pay. They make excellent soldiers, and when placed on the flanks of a European battalion, march to battle as bravely as any in the world. For discipline, drill and soldierly appearance, some of the regiments would be noted anywhere.

The land revenue is of course the main source of supply to the Government, but there are some other taxes which are almost as severely felt by the population. The manufacture of opium is a Government monopoly, which yields a nett annual revenue of \$15,000,000. The duty on salt is enormous, and as this is an article of universal consumption, is very severely felt. It amounts in some parts of the country to two rupees (\$1) the

maund, while in the territories of native princes the article may be bought for six annas (twenty cents) the maund. The internal customs which formerly existed have been abolished, and a gradual amelioration of the burdens under which the native population has been weighed down, seems to be taking place. Though very slow to expend any money in public works, the Government still moves forward in this direction—and lately by guaranteeing to the holders of stock in the India Railroad Companies five per cent. for twenty years, gave a powerful impetus to an undertaking which will in time change the whole aspect of the country. The Grand Trunk Road, extending from Calcutta to Delhi, a distance of 900 miles, and now being carried on to Lahore, is one of the finest highways in the world. The Ganges Canal, which will cost \$10,000,000 when finished, will cover with perpetual harvests the great peninsular plain between the Ganges and Jumna, and render famine impossible in the north of India. There is scarcely a large city in the Company's dominions without its schools, its colleges and its hospitals, supported mainly by Government bounty.

The moral changes which have been wrought within the last hundred years, or since the battle of Plassy laid the true foundation of the present vast commercial appanage, are even greater than the physical. The Civil Service, though liable to objection, from the favoritism practised in the appointment of its officers, and their promotion by seniority, without regard to talent or capacity, still secures to the native a more just and equitable administration of law than he could obtain from magistrates of his own race. The horrid practice of *suttee*, or widow-burning, has been totally suppressed; the confederation

of Thugs, or Stranglers, which extended throughout all Central India, has been broken up, and the Dacoits, or robber bands, which are still in existence along the Ganges, and in the hilly country at the foot of the Himalayas, are gradually becoming extinct. With few exceptions, order and security reign throughout the whole of India, and I doubt whether, on the whole, there has been less moral degradation and physical suffering at any time since the power of the Mogul Emperors began to decline.

There is one feature of English society in India, however, which I cannot notice without feeling disgusted and indignant. I allude to the contemptuous manner in which the natives even those of the best and most intelligent classes, are almost invariably spoken of and treated. Social equality, except in some rare instances, is utterly out of the question. The tone adopted towards the lower classes is one of lordly arrogance, towards the rich and enlightened, one of condescension and patronage. I have heard the term "niggers" applied to the whole race by those high in office; with the lower orders of the English it is the designation in general use. And this, too, towards those of our own Caucasian blood, where there is no instinct of race to excuse their unjust prejudice. Why is it that the virtue of Exeter Hall and Stafford House can tolerate this fact without a blush, yet condemn, with pharisaic zeal, the social inequality of the negro and the white races in America?

My visit to India occupied only two months, and consequently some of my conclusions may be too hastily drawn. I have never made a more interesting, or instructive journey, or visited a country better worthy of thorough and conscientious

study. The historical problem which it presents is yet distant from its solution, and it is one which no member of the Anglo-Saxon race can contemplate with indifference.

CHAPTER XXII.

FROM CALCUTTA TO HONG KONG.

Departure from Calcutta—Descending the Hoogly River—An Accident—Kedgerree—The Songs of the Lascars—Saugor Island—The Sandheads—The Bay of Bengal—Fellow-Passengers—The Peak of Narcondan—The Andaman Islands—Approach to Penang—A Malay Garree—Beauty of the Island—Tropical Forests—A Vale of Paradise—The Summit—A Panorama—Nutmeg Orchards—The Extremity of Asia—The Malayan Archipelago—Singapore—Chinese Population—Scenery of the Island—The China Sea—Arrival at Hong Kong.

THE steamship *Pekin* was advertised to leave Calcutta at daylight on the 28th, so I drove down to Garden Reach, where she lay, the evening previous, and passed the night on board. When I went on deck, the sun was rising broad and red between the tall Australian pines on the bank; steam and smoke were jetting out of the steamer's funnels; crowds of natives, with a few Europeans, were gathered on the shore, and all the confusion of letting go cables, bringing baggage at the last moment, shouting from the paddle-boxes, and ringing bells on the forecastle, showed that we were about to start. The steamer's head was swung around by the tide, then running at the rate of seven or eight knots an hour; we ran upon two buoys placed near the shore, broke some floats from the port wheel, and then started for the sea. A little below our anchorage we passed the

Bishop's College, on the western bank of the Hoogly. It consists of several detached buildings, in the hideous Indo-Gothic style introduced by the English. It is an ostentatious institution, and of little practical use in a religious point of view.

We swept too rapidly past the beautiful residences on both banks of the Hoogly—spacious white mansions standing in lawns shaded with the mango, the cocoa-palm and the Australian pine, overgrown with jungle creepers, and surrounded with gardens gay with the crimson *Bougainvillia* or the long white chalices of the *Datura*, fringing the water's edge. Two miles further these evidences of taste and luxury disappeared, and the scattered villages of the natives, with a few patches of corn and cane around them, kept back the primeval jungle. Turning the angle of Garden Reach, we lost our distant view of the Ochterlony Monument, the beacon of Calcutta, though the numbers of native and foreign craft, with steam-tugs, ascending and descending the river, still showed our proximity to a mart of commerce. For some distance along the western bank the people are brick-makers, and their quaint pyramids of yellow clay frequently rise above the tops of the cocoa trees. The Bengalees live in thatched bamboo huts, directly on the water's edge, with a dense rank wilderness behind them. The cocoa-nut palm is the principal tree, though the mango also flourishes, and the graceful *areca* is sometimes seen. The cotton tree, with its showers of scarlet, lily-shaped blossoms, is a most brilliant object, and splendidly stars the deep green background of the jungle. Tigers are abundant in these parts, and the river abounds with crocodiles, but I left India without having seen either of those beasts. The green parrot screamed from the tops of the palms, brown vultures swept lazily

through the air, and a few sea-gulls skimmed the waves, but no more ferocious animals met my eyes.

About thirty miles down the river, we ran into a handsome three-masted schooner, carrying away her bow-sprit and cutting in twain one of our quarter-boats. We went more slowly after this, for the navigation was becoming intricate, on account of the breadth of the river and the frequency of sand-banks. The shores being a dead level, and the jungle with which they are covered not very lofty, they soon sank to a low green line on either side, and the native villages ceased. As far as Diamond Harbor, about sixty miles below Calcutta, there is a good road on the eastern bank, and telegraph stations at intervals. The river is here four miles broad, and gradually widens as we approach the sea. We dropped down to Kedgerree, on the western bank, about sunset, and there halted until the next morning at ten, in order to cross St. James's Bar with the flood tide. As we were hoisting anchor, the smoke of a steamer was descried in the offing, and on nearer approach she proved to be the *Tenasserim*, returning from Rangoon with Lord Dalhousie, the Governor General, and suite on board.

While listening to the songs of the Lascars, and Chinamen, as they were getting up the anchor, I was struck with the resemblance of one of their refrains to one of the songs of the Nile boatmen. The rhythm was trochaic trimeter, with a redundant syllable, precisely like the "*Ed-dookkan el-liboodeh fayn?*" of the Arabs. The chorus of these Lascars was '*Panch sepparree Bombay-ka* "' (Five betel-nut palms of Bombay.) They sang in perfect accord, and the air was really very sweet and melodious. The rhythm was marked by a strong accent on the long syllables, which seems to be a gen

eral custom of Eastern singers. Another simple and common measure with the Hindoos is: "*Hathee-par howdah, ghora-par jeen*" (the howdah on the elephant, the saddle on the horse), which corresponds to that of Motherwell's ballad:

"Home came the saddle,
He nevermore!"

We crossed the mouth of the river to Saugor Island, quite sinking the western shore, and after running past its solitary light-house and dreary tiger jungles, stood out for the Sandheads. The extreme point of Saugor Island is believed by the Hindoos to mark the junction of the Ganges with the sea, and they accordingly esteem it as one of the holiest spots in India. At a certain season of the year they flock thither in great numbers, for the purpose of bathing and offering sacrifices. This was my last view of India, for, although we were threading the channels of the Sandheads and surrounded by the muddy waves of the Gunga, for two or three hours afterwards, no land was visible. About noon we discharged the pilot, and having fairly entered on the broad Bay of Bengal, headed for Penang.

The voyage across the bay was remarkably pleasant. There was a profound calm in the air and on the water, and our progress through it created but a faint semblance of a breeze. The mercury ranged from 80° to 85°, the temperature at which indolence becomes a luxury. I had been so bruised, jolted, shaken and excited by my journey through India, that the sweetness of the air, the repose of the sea, and the quiet movement of our vessel, were exceedingly grateful and refreshing. There were only six other passengers, and

each of us possessed an entire state-room—a great advantage in a voyage in the tropical seas. The captain, a red-haired giant in appearance, was one of the frankest, heartiest and most genial of commanders, and the other officers were quiet and gentlemanly in their manners. Among the passengers were Sir Lawrence Peel, Chief Justice of Bengal, and Mr. Dorin, Secretary of the Board of Directors of the East India Company.

After sailing two or three days across the Bay, towards the Burmese coast, we passed one night through the Cocos Islands, off the northern point of the Great Andaman. The next day we saw the island of Narcondan—a single volcanic peak, which rises from the water to the height of 2,500 feet. Its summit was hidden in clouds, and its sides completely covered with the richest vegetation. It is singular that so little should be known of the Andaman Islands, which lie high up the Bay of Bengal, almost on the route between Calcutta and Burmah. The larger island is about a hundred miles in length, and has a splendid harbor at its northern extremity. The East India Company at one time attempted to make a settlement there, but failed on account of sickness among the colonists. The natives of the islands are believed to be similar to the Papuans, though some consider them a branch of the African race. It is said that they are cannibals, but very little is known of their habits and modes of life.

Approaching the promontory of Malacca, we caught a distant view of the island of Salanga, and then stood in nearer the eastern shore. On the morning of the 6th of March, we made the island of Penang, which is separated from the peninsula by a strait less than a mile in width. The town of Pe

Penang lies on the inner side, where the narrowness of the strait forms a secure harbor for vessels. The eastern half of the island is nearly level, rising to the west into a group of lofty mountains, clothed to the summits with forests. A strip of silver beach along the shore, divided the pale emerald of the sea—a hue which betrays a floor of coral—from the darker tint of the forests of cocoa palm, which rose behind. Here and there a picturesque Malay village crouched in the shade, and numbers of small fishing craft dotted the surface of the water. A Chinese junk, with sails of matting, divided into a score of reefs, and with a great black eye on each side of her square bows, moved slowly past us on her way to Singapore. The morning wind, blowing off the land, fanned us with spicy odors, and hinted of the groves of nutmeg and clove-trees, for which Penang is celebrated.

When the steamer came to anchor, and we were informed that seven hours was the limit of our stay, I determined to visit the signal-station on the summit of the highest peak of the island, about eight miles distant, and set off at once, in company with one of the officers. We landed at a little wooden jetty, where a number of light garrees, with a pony harnessed to each, were collected, in anticipation of employment. One of the passengers, who was stationed at Penang, engaged two saddle-ponies for us, and dispatched them in advance, to await us at the foot of the mountain, while we proceeded thither in a garree. The road was admirable, and the Malay groom, running at the pony's head, propelled him forwards even too fast for our liking. The purity of the air, the cloudless beauty of the day, and the glorious groves of balm and bloom—of deep green shades, and glossy lustres, and gorgeous coloring—

through which we drove, have never been surpassed, in all my experience of the tropics. I thought then, and I think so still, that Penang is the most beautiful island in the world. The dwellings of the English residents are large, airy bungalows, embowered in gardens, and surrounded by groves of cocoa and areca palm, the nutmeg and bread-fruit trees. The native town, inhabited by Chinese and Malays, is small, and lies close upon the water, but for miles around it extends a succession of beautiful residences and rich plantations, reaching to the foot of the hills. The Chinese houses, scattered along the road, with their great red hieroglyphics, and the queer, solemnly-stupid yellow faces of their inmates, catch the eye of the traveller from the west, and tell him that he has at last reached the borders of the Far East.

After a drive of four miles, we entered a little dell, where a stream of water, stealing through the woods, fell over the rocks in a miniature cascade. Several lithe Malay youths were bathing in the shallow pool at its foot, and their glowing brown bodies glistened in the sun. Here we mounted our ponies, and commenced the ascent. The path wound backwards and forwards through dense thickets, between banks covered with gigantic fern, till it attained a ridgy spur of the mountain, which it followed upward to the central heights. We soon entered the forests, which gradually became so dense and dark as to shut out every ray of the sun. Trees of thick, glossy foliage, mingled their tops a hundred feet above our heads, and in their shade arose a luxuriant undergrowth. Ferns, whose fronds were frequently from ten to fifteen feet in length, bent their arching plumes above our heads; strange plants, of new and graceful form, clustered on either hand, and

birds of bright plumage darted in and out of the foliage. There was one, hidden in thickest shades, whose clear, prolonged, bell-like note, rang continually through the forest—a wild, wizard call, which overflowed all the air, and was taken up in one spot as soon as it ceased in another.

We had advanced in this way about two miles, when an opening in the trees disclosed a view to the south, into the heart of a valley of more than Arcadian loveliness. It might have been three miles in length by less than a mile in breadth, and the orchards of palm, orange and spice-trees which covered its lap, almost concealed the dwellings of the planters. It lay between hills of billowy green, which, uniting at the farther end, formed a gorge or gateway of forests, through which shone the dark-blue sphere of the sea. It was a landscape from the paradise of dreams, basking in the light of its own serene and perfect beauty. As I looked down on it from that window of the region of shade, I could have believed that I stood on the Delectable Mountains, and that the valleys of the Land of Beulah were at my feet.

Again we plunged into the depth of the forest, and after two miles more of climbing, which moistened every hair in the coats of our sturdy little ponies, reached the flag-staff, 2,500 feet above the sea. Here there is a summer residence of the Governor, and half a dozen private bungalows. The pure air of the heights, with the refreshing temperature, which stands at from 70° to 75° during the whole year, make this a most delightful place of resort. I climbed to the cross-trees of the flag-staff in order to get an uninterrupted view of the wide summer panorama. The lowland of Penang, with its orchards and gardens, lay at my feet; across the strait stretched

many a league of forest, divided here and there by the gleaming windings of rivers, and far back in the vapory distance arose the mountain spine of the Peninsula of Malacca. To the south and west, over scattered island-cones of verdure, curved a great hemisphere of sea, behind which, hidden by the warm noonday haze, were the mountains of Sumatra. That part of the peninsula lying opposite to Penang has been acquired by the East India Company, and erected into a province, with the title of Wellesley; further south, Malacca and Singapore are English dependencies; the gap between Arracan and Tenasserim has been filled up by the recent annexation of Pegu, and now, of two thousand miles of coast line between Calcutta and Singapore, there are not more than two hundred, to which the English title is still wanting. The Anglo-Indian Empire stretches from Beloochistan to the China Sea. They now talk of the *natural* boundaries of Burmah as obviating the need of further annexation to the Eastward; but when did their lust of aggrandizement ever heed any natural boundary except the sea?

On our return to the ship we visited a nutmeg plantation. The trees, which are from twenty to thirty feet in height, are planted in rows, at intervals of about twenty feet. The leaf is dark green and glossy, resembling that of the laurel, and the fruit, at a little distance, might be taken for a small russet-colored apple. When ripe the thick husk splits in the centre, showing a scarlet net-work of mace, enveloping an inner nut, black as ebony, the kernel of which is the nutmeg of commerce.

The clove-tree, not then in its bearing season, has some resemblance to the nutmeg, but the leaf is smaller, and the foliage more loose and spreading. As we drove through the orchard

the warm air of noon was heavy with spice. The rich odors exhaled from the trees penetrated the frame with a sensation of languid and voluptuous repose. Perfume became an appetite, and the senses were drugged with an overpowering feeling of luxury. Had I continued to indulge in it, I should ere long have realized the Sybarite's complaint of his crumpled rose-leaf.

In the Strait of Malacca, the heat was rather oppressive, the thermometer standing at 88° in the coolest part of the ship. We ran down within sight of the peninsula, and on the afternoon after leaving Penang, had a distant view of the town of Malacca. The next morning I went on deck, just in time to see the southern extremity of the Continent of Asia. The Peninsula of Malacca tapered away to a slender point, completely overgrown with palm and mangrove trees, which rose in heavy masses from the water's edge. At the end, a single cocoa-palm stood a little in advance of its fellows, leaning outward, as if looking intently across the Southern Sea. The water was smooth and glassy, and belts of a paler green betrayed the hidden banks of coral. Island after island arose in the distance, until we were inclosed in an archipelago of never-fading verdure. They were tenanted entirely by the Malay races; some were hilly and irregular in appearance, while other rose like green cones from the tranquil sea. The Island of Singapore, which we were approaching, was comparatively low, but not without a picturesque beauty in the irregularity of its shores. The strait through which we sailed resembled an inland lake rather than a part of the ocean, for the islands were so crowded together in the distance as quite to intercept the sea-horizon. Presently we entered what seemed a river--the

narrow strait between Singapore and a small adjacent island, and halted alongside a large wooden pier, in what is called the New Harbor.

The town of Singapore is three miles distant, but as the steamer remained twenty-four hours to coal, we embarked in garrees drawn by Malay ponies, and were carried straightway to the "London Hotel," where we remained until next day. The town is purely commercial, and has grown up principally within the last ten or fifteen years. The population is estimated at 40,000 or 50,000, the greater part of whom are Chinese. There are several of their pagodas in the place, and three large burying-grounds, densely populated, in the vicinity. This was my first sight of a large Chinese community, and the impression it left was not agreeable. Their dull faces, without expression, unless a coarse glimmering of sensuality may be called such, and their half-naked, unsymmetrical bodies, more like figures of yellow clay than warm flesh and blood, filled me with an unconquerable aversion. The scowling Malay, with his dark, fiery eye, and spare but sinewy form, was ennobled by the comparison, and I turned to look upon him with a great sense of relief.

The Island of Singapore is hilly and undulating, although no part of it rises more than 500 feet above the sea. On the eastern side of the town is the English suburb, which contains a number of pleasant residences. The Governor's mansion is delightfully situated on a hill above, commanding a fine view of the harbor, and the large island of Bintang in the distance. The hills around it are covered with turf as fresh and green as that of England. The temperature of the island, which lies in 1° 18' N., is healthy and agreeable, and scarcely varies

throughout the whole year. The vegetation is kept constantly fresh and luxuriant by frequent showers. The interior of the island is covered with plantations of pepper and nutmeg. The depredations committed by tigers are said to be frightful, since in spite of a government bounty for their destruction, more than three hundred persons are annually devoured by them.

We left Singapore on the morning of the 9th, and after passing the island of Bintang, entered the China Sea. Notwithstanding it was the season of the north-east monsoon, we were favored with calm weather and clear skies. During the first two days we passed Pulo Aor, and the barren groups of the Anambas and Natunas, after which nothing occurred to break the monotony of the voyage, until the morning of the 16th, when in the midst of a thick and rainy gale from the north, which came up suddenly during the night, we made the rocks called the Asses' Ears, off the Ladrone Islands, at the mouth of the Gulf of Canton. We got shelter from the heavy swell under the lee of the Lemma Island, and as the clouds broke away a little, saw before us the barren hills of Hong Kong. In two hours more we were at anchor in the harbor.

CHAPTER XXIII.

VOYAGE UP THE COAST OF CHINA.

Trip to Macao—Attached to the U. S. Embassy—On Board the Steam-frigate *Susquehanna*—Departure from Macao—The Coast of China—The Shipwrecked Japanese—Their Address to the Commissioner—The Eastern Sea—The Archipelago of Chusan—The Mouth of the Yang-tse-Kiang—The Steamer Aground—Rumors of the Rebels—Arrival at Woosung—Entering the Woosung River—Chinese Junks—Appearance of the Country—Approach to Shanghai—Arrival.

ON arriving at Hong Kong, one of my fellow-passengers entered my name at the Club House, a part of which was fitted up as a hotel. The weather was cold, raw and cloudy, and I spent the greater part of my time in-doors, reading the late files of European journals. The U. S. steam-frigate *Susquehanna* was lying in the harbor, ready to sail for Macao, and as I desired to visit Canton, I accepted Capt. Buchanan's invitation to cross in her to the former place, whence I could take the Canton steamer. She left Hong Kong on the morning of the 20th, and after a pleasant run of four hours anchored in Macao Roads. I went ashore, expecting to proceed to Canton on the morrow: but no one knows what a day may bring forth. Upon calling on the U. S. Commissioner, the Hon. Humphrey

Marshall, to whom I had letters, he generously offered to attach me to the Embassy, that I might be able to accompany him to the seat of war in the North. So rare an opportunity of seeing the most interesting portion of China during the present remarkable crisis in the history of the Empire was not to be neglected; and on the following morning I again found myself on board the *Susquehanna*, listening to the thunders of the salute which welcomed the Commissioner. It was worth all my long wanderings in foreign lands and among strange races, to experience the pride and satisfaction of walking the deck of a national vessel, and hearing again the stirring music of our national airs. One must drink deep of absence and exile to learn the tenderness of that regard for his native land, which at home lies latent and unsuspected at the bottom of his nature. I want no man for a friend, whose heart will not beat more warmly at the sight of his country's banner floating on a distant sea.

The handsome stern-cabin of the *Susquehanna* was appropriated to the use of the Commissioner, and his suite, consisting of Dr. Peter Parker, Secretary of Legation, Mr. O. H. Perry Private Secretary, and myself. We found in Capt. Buchanan the Commander, all that his reputation as a gentleman and a brave and gallant officer, led us to anticipate; while the officers under his command justified the high opinion I had formed of our naval corps, from the few whom it had previously been my good fortune to meet. Under such auspices, our voyage up the coast of China was one of the most agreeable I ever made.

We left Macao, about nine o'clock on the morning of the 21st, and stood outward to sea, past the Lemma Island. The

day was warm and calm, and the barren Chinese coast was unobscured by cloud or vapor. It is a bold, rugged shore, indented with small bays and estuaries, and bounded by a fringe of lofty island-rocks, which are for the most part uninhabitable. In its general features, it resembles the coast of California, but is in reality more sterile, though hardly more so in appearance. Towards evening we saw the promontory called Breaker Point in the distance, and during the night passed within half a mile of the Lamock Islands. The next morning was dull and overcast. We were already within the Straits of Fu-kien, or the Formosa Channel, as it is now called, and had a strong head-wind. During the day we had occasional glimpses of the islands and promontories of the coast, on our left, but too dark and indistinct to be satisfactory. About noon, we passed the headland of Quemoy, north of the Bay of Amoy, which is one of the five ports opened to foreigners by the English war. Its commerce, however, is next to nothing, nearly all the foreign trade being concentrated at Canton and Shanghai.

On Monday afternoon the thirteen shipwrecked Japanese sailors, who, having been picked up at sea and taken into San Francisco, were sent to China by the order of our Government, and placed on board the *Susquehanna*, were summoned in a body upon the quarter-deck to pay their respects to the "big mandarin," as they termed Col. Marshall. They made a very profound inclination of the head, removing their caps at the same time. Dr. Parker addressed them in Chinese, which they did not understand when spoken; but as the Chinese characters are known to the Japanese (the same character signifying the same word in both languages), he was enabled to communicate with them. They appeared cheerful and in good

condition. They were nearly all dressed in sailor costume with clothes which the officers and men had given them. It was curious to note the variety of feature, form and expression among these men, all of whom belonged to the same class. There was one with an unusually broad face and dark complexion, who corresponded to Golownin's description of the Kurile inhabitants of the northern portion of the Empire. They wore their hair short upon the crown and front of the head, but hanging loose and long at the back and sides, which Dr. Parker declared to have been the former Chinese custom, shaven heads and long tails having been introduced by the Mantchow Dynasty. The features of these Japanese were much better than those of the corresponding class of Chinese. The day following their presentation a note written in Chinese characters was addressed by them to Col. Marshall. It was very fragmentary and laconic, owing, no doubt, to the small stock of characters in the writer's possession. It was addressed on the envelope: "To the American King—from thirteen Japanese," and the contents were as follows: "We, thirteen Japanese men, have fathers, mothers, young brothers, old brothers, wives, children. You go to Shanghai: go to Japan!"

On Wednesday we continued to advance against a strong head-wind, catching but few and cloudy glimpses of the coast. During the day we passed the mouth of the estuary of Foo-chow-foo, another of the five ports. Before night, we had passed through the Formosa Channel, and were in the Tong-hai, or Eastern Sea, which is bounded by China, Corea, the Japanese Island of Kiusiu, and the Lew-Chew Archipelago. The next morning we were off the province of Che-Kiang. Soon after sunrise we made a small island called the Straw-Stack, and still

further, a headland called Mushroom Peak, from its shape, the sides being perpendicular, and the summit slightly projecting over them. At the other extremity of the same promontory there was a tall isolated rock resembling a pagoda. The afternoon was raw and foggy, and as there was a large number of fishing junks off the coast, our steam-whistle was blown repeatedly, as a signal for them to get out of the way.

On Friday there was a dense fog, with frequent showers of rain, and we saw no land until evening, when we made the rocks called the Brothers, at the eastern end of the Archipelago of Chusan. We had had no observation for a day or two, but when the fog lifted and showed the rocks, we were not a mile from our supposed position. The night set in dark and stormy, and as the tides and currents, which prevail in this part of the Archipelago, are very uncertain, we felt our way in the fog into a strait between the islands of Chusan and Chinsan, and came to anchor under the lee of the latter. It blew violently during the night, but the gale had the effect of clearing away the fog, so that we were able to get under way again at daylight.

We rounded the eastern point of Chinsan, and running in a north-west course, soon made the two groups called the Rugged Islands and Parker's Islands. The water became yellow and muddy, showing that we were already within the influence of the great Yang-tse-Kiang River, and when scarcely abreast the southern entrance, it was as turbid as the Mississippi at New Orleans. The volume of water brought down by the river must be enormous; the southern mouth, which comprises about two thirds, or less, of the main stream, is thirty miles in breadth. Parker's Island was green and beautiful, and appeared to be cultivated. Most of the other islands were lofty.

rugged, as their name denotes, and hopelessly barren. The smaller ones were mere rocks, cleft and divided by deep chasms, like those on the western coast of Scotland. The wind was keen, cold, and strong from the north, and the thermometer down to 60° . The sky was a cool, pale blue, veiled with haze, but the sun shone cheerily at intervals. As we approached our destination, the Japanese desired another interview with the Commissioner. It was intimated that they wished to land at Shanghai, make their way to Chapoo, the Chinese port of communication with Nagasaki, and embark in a junk for the latter place. Chapoo is south of Shanghai, on the Bay of Hang-Chow, and about ninety miles distant.

At noon we reached Gutzlaff Island, at the mouth of the Yang-tse-Kiang (Son of the Sea), and commenced the difficult navigation of the river. The island is a round, rocky hillock, rising 210 feet from the water. From its prominence, and position at the mouth of the river, it is a valuable landmark for vessels. The Yang-tse-Kiang is here about twenty miles broad, flowing between the mainland of China, and the large island of Tsung-Ming. Both shores are a dead level, dyked to prevent inundation, like the banks of the lower Mississippi, and not to be seen from the narrow channel in the middle of the river, which is lined on both sides by extensive sand-banks. We had a strong wind and tide against us, and did not lose sight of Gutzlaff Island until near four o'clock. The water became more dense and yellow as we proceeded, and the paddles of the steamer stirred up large quantities of the soft mud of the bottom. The depth of the stream varied from four to five fathoms.

At six o'clock, as the crew was beaten to quarters, it was

noticed that the engines moved sluggishly, and soon afterwards the ship refused to obey her helm. She was immediately stopped, and a careful sounding showed only two and three quarter fathoms. The previous sounding had been disturbed by the wake of the wheel, and the sinking of the lead into the ooze mud, so that we had run about half a mile upon the South Shoal before being aware of it. The engines were backed, but the strong northern gale and ebb tide kept us stationary for about an hour, after which the ship began to move by fits and starts. The guns were run forward to lighten her stern, and the tide setting in her favor, she worked herself off by nine o'clock, and came to anchor in deep water.

We started again the next morning, with the flood tide. The day was crystal-clear, and a bracing wind blew from the north-east. In an hour or two we were hailed by an American pilot, who had been taking a French vessel out of the river. He startled us with the news that the rebels had invested Nanking with an army of 200,000 men, captured all the Chinese war-junks in the Yang-tse-Kiang, and cut off supplies from the beleaguered troops—with many other particulars, which, like all rumors afloat at that time, were greatly exaggerated. In another hour the mainland of China was visible on our left—a low shore, covered with trees, and dotted with the houses of the natives. Numbers of junks were anchored along the beach, and the wreck of a European vessel told of the dangers of the navigation. The island of Tsang-Ming was barely visible to the east. We reached the mouth of the Woosung River about noon, and cast anchor a mile from the shore, to wait for a tide to carry us over the bar. On making signals, a junk came out for the mails, with which she started

at once for Shanghai. The mouth of the river was crowded with vessels, the greater part of which were native junks. The stream is about half a mile in breadth, and is protected by two batteries, the northern one having 126 guns. The shore is well wooded, and the trees, with their thin texture and the greenish-gray hue of their budding leaves, showed that we had again reached a climate where spring is known.

Mr. P. S. Forbes, U. S. Consul at Canton, and Mr. Cunningham, Vice-Consul at Shanghai, who had ridden down to Woosung in expectation of the *Susquehanna's* arrival, came on board shortly after we dropped anchor. At 4 P. M., the tide being again flood, we stood into the river through the fleet of junk sat its mouth. It was a delicate piece of manœuvring, but the vessel minded her helm admirably, and threaded the mazes of the crowded anchorage without touching one of the craft. The tide carried us safely over the bar, and we kept on up the river at nearly our full speed. The stream was covered with junks lying at anchor or sailing up and down. Our steam-whistle warned them to clear the track, and they obeyed with alacrity, the crews gathering upon the high poops to survey us as we passed. Most of the junks had inscriptions across the stern and along the sides of the hull. Some, which Dr. Parker read, denoted that the vessel was in Government service: others had fantastic names, such as "The Favorable Wind," "Happiness," &c. All the larger ones had four masts, each mast carrying a single oblong sail, made of very closely woven matting, crossed with horizontal slips of bamboo, so that it could be reefed to any extent required. The people had a lighter complexion and more regular features than the

natives of the southern provinces, and in lieu of the umbrella hat wore the round black cap of the Tartars.

The country on both sides of the river is a dead level of rich alluvial soil, devoted principally to the culture of rice and wheat. The cultivation was as thorough and patient as any I had seen, every square foot being turned to some useful account. Even the sides of the dykes erected to check inundations were covered with vegetables. These boundless levels are thickly studded with villages and detached houses, all of which are surrounded with fruit-trees. I noticed also occasionally groves of willow and bamboo. The country, far and wide, is dotted with little mounds of earth—the graves of former generations. They are scattered over the fields and gardens in a most remarkable manner, to the great detriment of the cultivators. In some places the coffins of the poor, who cannot afford to purchase a resting-place, are simply deposited upon the ground, and covered with canvas. The dwellings, but for their peaked roofs, bore some resemblance to the cottages of the Irish peasantry. They were mostly of wood, plastered and whitewashed, and had an appearance of tolerable comfort. The people, who came out to stare in wonder at the great steamer as she passed, were dressed uniformly in black or dark blue. Numerous creeks and canals extended from the river into the plains, but I did not notice a single highway. The landscape was rich, picturesque and animated, and fully corresponded with what I had heard of the dense population and careful agriculture of China. I was struck with the general resemblance between the Woosung and the lower Mississippi, and the same thing was noticed by others on board.

Before sunset, we discovered in the distance the factories

and flagstaffs of Shanghai. The town had a more imposing appearance than I was prepared to find. The river makes a sharp bend to the south-west at this point, and over the tops of the trees on the southern bank, we could see a forest of masts, a mile in length, belonging to the native junks. The number of foreign vessels anchored before the factories did not exceed twenty. Rounding the point, we swept between the shipping, past the stately row of tall European residences, and a neat church (Gothic), to the reach in front of the American Consulate, one of the largest and handsomest buildings on the river. The English war-steamers *Hermes* and *Salamander*, and the brig *Lily*, lay anchored there, and the French war-steamer *Cassini*, a little further up the stream. Beyond them commenced the wilderness of junks, packed side by side in one unbroken mass. As the anchor dropped our band struck up "Hail Columbia" followed by the English and French national airs.

Mr. Cunningham invited the Commissioner and his suite to take rooms at the Consulate, where that splendid hospitality which distinguishes the foreign communities in China is practised to its fullest extent. We found various and contradictory rumors afloat with regard to the Chinese rebels, but it was generally believed that Nanking had fallen into their hands. The merchants were in hourly expectation of hearing that the great city of Soo-Chow, the capital of the silk-growing district, and only seventy miles from Shanghai, had been invested.

CHAPTER XXIV.

AN ATTEMPT TO VISIT NANKING

The Commissioner decides to visit Nanking—Preparations for the Voyage—Departure of four Japanese—The *Susquehanna* leaves—Woosung—Bush Island and Tsung-Ming—We strike the Blonde Shoal—The Chinese Pilots—Escape of a Boat—Off the Shoal—Mr. Bennett's night cruise after the Boats—Unfavorable Reports—The Return—End of the Expedition—Successful Trip of the *Susquehanna* in the Summer of 1854.

THREE days after our arrival, the Commissioner decided to start for Nanking. The near approach of the rebel forces to the foreign settlement of Shanghai, the uncertainty with regard to their views towards foreigners, and the utter impossibility of obtaining reliable accounts from the seat of war through the Chinese authorities, led him to this step. The visit was projected with the sole view of obtaining information, that he might best know how to guard the interests of American citizens in China. Like the representatives of England and France in Shanghai, he determined on preserving the strictest neutrality during the civil war then raging in the North. But if, as all accounts concurred in representing, Nanking had already fallen, it was a matter of importance that the rebel leaders should be assured of this neutrality and of the

necessity, on their part, of respecting the rights of foreign citizens. The adoption of this course was rendered still more imperative by the falsehoods which the Chinese authorities, and especially the Taou-tai (Governor) of Shanghai had published and circulated concerning the enlistment of foreign aid.

Two hundred tons of coal were taken on board the *Susquehanna*, and application was made to the Taou-tai for native pilots who knew the river. These he readily furnished, hoping perhaps that our appearance off Nanking would be interpreted to the advantage of the Imperialists. Hundreds of Chinese continued to visit the *Susquehanna* up to the hour of her departure. Several of the American residents made application to accompany us on the voyage, but, with the exception of Mr. Forbes, no other passenger was taken on board. Previous to sailing, four of the Japanese left our ship. One of their countrymen—one of those who were turned back from Japan in the *Morrison*, in 1837—was then residing in Shanghai, and he promised to assist them. Neither Capt. Buchanan nor the Commissioner had any authority to keep them on board. They desired their countryman, Otokitchi, to say that they thanked the officers and men of the ship from their hearts, and would never forget their kindness toward them. Two of them wept like children when they left.

We started at floodtide, on the afternoon of the 1st of April. The *bund*, or quay, of Shanghai was crowded with spectators of our departure. We were two hours and a half reaching Woosung. The rich plains on either hand were greener and more beautiful than they appeared on the passage up. The willow trees planted along the numerous little canals intersecting the country were rapidly bursting into leaf. In

spite of these tokens of spring, a keen, benumbing wind blew from the north-east, and the cabin was not comfortable without fire. There is perhaps no other part of the world where spring is so tardy. We crossed the bar without difficulty, but afterwards had to thread a fleet of junks, filling up a reach of more than half a mile. This feat was admirably managed, without running afoul of any of the craft, though the winding channels between them were scarcely broader than our beam. The *Susquehanna* obeyed her helm as readily as a ferry-boat. We anchored for the night in the main channel of the Yang-tse-Kiang, a mile from shore.

At daybreak, the ten Chinese boats which had been engaged for the purpose of going ahead to feel the channel, started in advance. We hove anchor and left at seven o'clock. The four Chinese pilots were on deck, seemingly confident of their ability to carry us through. Just above Woosung, we passed Bush Island; the large island of Tsung-Ming, separating the northern and southern mouths of the Yang-tse-Kiang, was visible beyond it in the distance. Both of these islands have been formed from the alluvial deposits of the river, and are yearly increasing in size. Capt. Potter (an American pilot, who accompanied us) informed me that ten years ago there was but one bush on the smaller island (whence its name), and not an inhabitant. At present it is covered with trees and thickly studded with cottages. Tsung-Ming, a century ago, was a sand-bar; at present it supports a population of six hundred thousand. The immense deposits brought down by the Yang-tse-Kiang, the Hoang-Ho, and other rivers must in the course of time entirely fill up the mouth of the Yellow Sea.

Our mosquito fleet was still visible, running rapidly ahead with the monsoon filling their square sails, and I was looking through a telescope at the clusters of Chinese who were watching us from the shore, when the ship suddenly struck upon a shoal. She was only going at half-speed, and the engine was stopped soon enough to prevent her jamming very hard upon the sand. Still, there she stuck, and as the ebb-tide had just commenced, every effort was made to get her off before the water fell. There were fourteen feet at the bows, and three and one fourth fathoms at the stern: the bottom hard sand. The wheels were backed and a hawser sent out over the stern, to warp her off, but without avail. The place where we struck proved to be the Blonde Shoal, twelve or fifteen miles from Woosung. The accident was entirely owing to the carelessness or treachery of the principal Chinese pilot. We had boats enough to have sounded out for us all the shoals as far as Harvey's Point, but he insisted on sending them ahead, saying that he was perfectly familiar with the channel, and did not require their services for a hundred *li* (thirty miles) further. He put on an offensive, stately air, and carried his head high until chastised by Mr. Cunningham's comprador, who accompanied us as interpreter and commissary. The latter, on receiving an impertinent reply to a question which he had asked by command of Capt. Buchanan, immediately struck the pilot in the face, and brought him to his knees in supplication.

When it was found we could not get off, Capt. Buchanan determined to send the Chinese bum-boat, which accompanied us, ahead to the other boats, with one of the pilots. But the men, instead of keeping up the river, immediately made all speed for the shore. One of the brass field-pieces was hauled

to the stern, brought to bear on her, and a few shots fired across her bows, in order to bring her back, but she continued to make away, although the balls ploughed up the sea just beyond her. It happened that the pilot was not on board, as was supposed, but had remained with us, though in great fear for his life. Mr. Bennett, Master of the *Susquehanna*, was then sent off for the pilots, in one of the ship's cutters. At ebb-tide we had but eight feet water under our bows and seventeen under the stern.

At midnight on Saturday night it began to blow very violently from the north, so that about five o'clock, when the tide had risen a few feet, the vessel seemed to be slowly working herself loose. The foresail was bent on, and she immediately gave evidence of feeling it. A few backward strokes of the wheels urged her clear of the shoal, and she hung buoyantly in deep water. But in the distance of a few ship's lengths the water suddenly shoaled again, and she was brought to anchor in five fathoms, with some little difficulty. The utter inefficiency of the pilots was again displayed by their declaring that the channel was on the right of the shoal, when our own soundings the day previous had shown that it was on the left side.

About eight o'clock, Mr. Bennett made his appearance in the cutter. He and his crew were benumbed with cold, having passed the whole night on the river. After running about twenty miles, he stood in toward Harvey's Point, at the northern extremity of Tsung-Ming, where the fleet was to have waited; but on inquiring of some fishermen, learned that it had gone further up the river. About ten miles further, he found the junks at anchor in a creek, on the southern bank

By the time they were collected together, it was ten o'clock at night. Capt. Potter and the comprador went on board the boats, which were ordered to follow the cutter, and return to the *Susquehanna*. They all got under way at the same time, but in the darkness of the night the cutter soon lost sight of them. She grounded repeatedly on the shoals, and finally got entangled among the bamboo fishing-stakes. The sea continuing to rise, and the gale to blow more violently, she was obliged to come to anchor until morning, when she put off again and beat down to us. Capt. Buchanan and the Commissioner decided, on hearing Mr. Bennett's report, that it was expedient to return to Woosung. The necessity of putting back was keenly regretted by all on board, but the extreme peril to which the vessel was exposed, in case the voyage was continued, left no other alternative. We were obliged to wait for the first of the flood-tide, to run down to Woosung, which detained us until four o'clock. In the mean time, Capt. Potter and the comprador arrived with the other boats. The former reported that no dependence could be placed either on the chart or the Chinese pilots, and that the only way in which the *Susquehanna* could go up the river, would be to re-survey and buoy out the channel—a work which could not be accomplished in less than two weeks. The failure of our undertaking, the results of which promised to be of great interest and importance at the time, is another proof of the unfitness of large steam frigates for the service required in Chinese waters. Two small, active steamers, such as the English possessed in the *Hermes* and *Salamander*, would do more work than a score of unwieldy leviathans.

We returned down the river the way we came, but on ap

proaching Woosung were again exposed to danger through the ignorance of the pilots. The water suddenly shoaled, in spite of their assertion that we were in the deep channel, and our hull touched just as the engines began to back water. We got off barely in time. The command having been given to let go the starboard anchor, a seaman, who was standing upon the port anchor, mistaking the order, and thinking it was about to drop with him, sprang into the river. He was picked up, however, with no other injury than a good drenching.

The next morning we were delayed for some time in crossing the bar, by a large fleet of grain-junks, bound outward on their way to Peking. A Portuguese *lorcha*, bearing the flag of the Taou-tai, passed us on her way up the Yang-tse-Kiang. The *Susquehanna's* hull touched on the bar, in two and three quarter fathoms, but the engines dragged us safely over. Within the bar lay a still larger fleet of junks, ready to proceed to Peking. Each of them had the words "*Kiang-nan*" on the stern,—literally "South of the River," *i. e.*, the Yang-tse-Kiang. A handsome outward-bound junk bore the poetical name of the "Ocean Star." At noon we were again at Shanghai, and dropped anchor in the old position, in front of the American Consulate.

So ended the expedition to Nanking.

NOTE.—The *Susquehanna* made a second attempt to reach Nanking in the summer of 1854, after her return from Japan. She had on board the Hon. Robert M'Lane, successor to Col. Marshal, as U. S. Commissioner to China. On this occasion, the small steam-*brig* *Confucius* was employed to run in advance of the *Susquehanna* and sound out the channel. After passing

Blonde Shoal no serious difficulty was experienced, a depth of from eight to seventeen fathoms having been found in the Yang-tse-Kiang, as far as Nanking. After the Commissioner had communicated with some of the rebel chiefs, and the object of the voyage was accomplished, a further exploration of the river was made as far as Wu-hu, a large town sixty miles above Nanking. No foreign vessel had ever before advanced beyond the latter city. The river was found to be everywhere broad and deep, flowing through superb valleys; the soil was fertile and capable of supporting an immense population. The current was very swift, and the *Susquehanna*, on her return, frequently ran at a speed of sixteen or seventeen knots. Her appearance, especially in the regions beyond Nanking, created the greatest astonishment among the Chinese, thousands of whom crowded the banks as she passed. The voyage was completed with entire success, no accident of any kind having occurred

CHAPTER XXV.

A SHANGHAI JOURNAL.

Life in Shanghai—The Rebels Expected—My Journal—The Fall of Nanking—The Grain Trade—Soo-Chow Threatened—Barbarities at Nanking—Rumors Concerning the Rebels—Capture of Lorchas—Threats towards Foreigners—Alarm of the Taou-tai—A Rebel Proclamation—Imperial Rewards and Pardons—Col. Marshall's Proclamation—Nanking Besieged by the Imperial Army—Flight from Shanghai—Sir George Bonham—Meetings of the Foreign Residents—Ransom for Shanghai—Soo-Chow not Taken—Uncertainty—Mr. Meadows at Soo-Chow—Defensive Works Commenced—Trouble with the Men of Foo-Kien—Marauders in the Country—Burning of Thieves—The Foo-Kien Grave-yard—Desertion of the City—A Rumored Battle—Death of Tien-teh—Mr. Meadows—Various Rumors—Return of the *Science*—Destruction of Chin-kiang-foo—The Excitement Subsides.

AFTER our inglorious return, the Embassy was again shifted to the American Consulate, and we became once more the guests of our kind friend, Mr. Cunningham. I was supplied with a room and the services of a young Chinese valet, and having, as etiquette prescribed, made the first calls upon the American and English residents, received in due course of time invitations to dinner in return. The presence of the *Susquehanna*, with a fine band of music on board, was the occasion of a round of festivities, which were kept up with more or less energy, during the remainder of my stay. The presence of both the American and English Commissioners, and of five vessels of war at once, was an unusual event for Shanghai, and

in spite of the rumored approach of the rebels, the ignorance of their disposition towards foreigners, and the anticipation of an assault, society there had never before been so gay and animated.

During the first fortnight of April, we were in almost daily expectation of the appearance of the vanguard of the rebel army. Each hour brought a new rumor, and each day led to conclusions and conjectures which the morrow proved to be unfounded. Although the true rebellion did not commence until some months afterwards, and the recollection of those days has doubtless been obliterated from the memories of the foreign residents of Shanghai, by the more stirring events which followed, they were sufficiently exciting and interesting at the time. I know no better way of giving a picture of the uncertainty of all news in China, than by transcribing a few pages from a journal which I kept at the time :

April 5th, 1853.

At length we have positive news that Nanking has fallen. The Taou-tai of Shanghai admits it, which is a certain sign of its correctness. The information was received yesterday by M. de Montigny, the French Consul, through the Catholic Missionaries at Nanking, but the fact was doubted by most of the merchants here until the Taou-tai confirmed it. In the final assault, 20,000 Tartars were slain. The streets were blocked up with corpses, and 1,000 *cash* each was paid by the victors for their removal. Twenty thousand rebel troops were left to garrison the city, and a body of 40,000 was dispatched to intercept the imperial troops on their way from Peking, to raise the siege. The rebels, it is said, will establish their

capital at Nanking, and for the remainder of the year will content themselves with consolidating their power in the South and West.

One circumstance, which has operated in their favor, is the almost total destruction of the grain trade between the South and North, by means of the Grand Canal. This has been caused within a few years by inundation between the Yang-tse-Kiang and the Hoang-ho, which have damaged the Canal to such an extent as to render it impassable for the larger class of vessels. The immense transportations of grain, for the supply of the northern portion of China, which were formerly made entirely through this channel, are now transferred to the coasting-junks, which sail at this season from Shanghai, Chapoo and Ningpo.

The city of Soo-Chow, it is said, has paid a ransom of 700,000 taels, to be exempted from capture and pillage. There seems to be no doubt of this, as business is beginning to revive there, and several Soo-Chow families, who had fled to this place, returned last night to their homes. It is not yet known whether a descent on Shanghai is meditated, but word reached us yesterday that Tien-teh does not intend to interfere in any way with foreigners in China.

April 6th.

Yesterday Mr. Forbes conversed with a native, who returned in one of the Taou-tai's *lorchas* from Nanking. The man is known to the Americans here, who place full reliance on his communication. He states that, after the taking of Nanking the city was given up to sack and slaughter, during three days and 20,000 Tartars—men, women and children—were massa

ered. The Viceroy was quartered and his remains nailed to the four gates of the city. Previous to his death his veins were opened and his blood made to flow into a large vessel of water which the conquerors drank. His daughter, a girl of nineteen, was stripped in the public square, bound upon a cross, and her heart cut out. Many of the Tartar officers were thrown into boiling oil, or tied to stakes surrounded with bundles of oiled straw, and slowly roasted to death. The recital of these atrocities has aroused the utmost horror and indignation among the foreign residents. They were previously, almost to a man, disposed to rejoice at the success of the rebels.

That the Viceroy has been slain, is beyond a doubt. Col. Marshall has received the news officially, through the Governor of Soo-chow, upon whom the functions of Viceroy now devolve, and who is supposed to possess the seals; though another account says they were lost at Nanking. The ransom paid by the merchants of Soo-Chow only exempts the city from pillage. The rebels announce their determination to attack it, and the gates have been closed for several days.

The rumors afloat to-day are still more alarming. The rebels are stated to be marching to Hang-Chow, a large city about midway between here and Ningpo, at the head of the intervening gulf. Their proclamations have been received by the Governor of Soong-Keang, a city only forty miles from this place, and it is also supposed that they have been privately sent here, to the native merchants. T'ien-teh was to have been formally inaugurated as Emperor yesterday, at Nanking. Among the tribute sent from Soo-Chow were 1,000 pieces of yellow silk to be used on the occasion.

The Taou-tai this morning sent word that twenty of the

lorchas which he had dispatched to the relief of Nanking had fallen into the hands of the rebels; who, he feared, having the papers in their possession, would attempt to pass the Custom House at Woosung under false colors, and gain possession of that port. A lorcha, which he had sent up a week ago with \$100,000, came back with an acknowledgment of its reception, signed by one of the rebel chiefs. It is reported that the captain, or supercargo, quietly delivered the money and took the receipt, thinking it was all right. The merchants here hinted to the Taou-tai that the sooner all his grain-junks were cleared for Pekin, the better, and he acted upon this suggestion. The river to-day was crowded with sails, and at least sixty or seventy junks dropped down to Woosung. There are still upwards of a thousand in port, and the foreigners are anxious that they should all be removed. In case of an attack they would undoubtedly be fired by the rebels, and set adrift to float down upon the foreign shipping.

Mr. Meadows, the interpreter of the British embassy, has been informed by a Chinese banker that the rebels have addressed the native inhabitants of Shanghai, bidding them be assured, as it is not them, but the foreign population, whom they intend to attack. After the rumors of T'ien-teh's Christianity and his pacific intentions towards foreigners, this news is rather startling, but there may be some reason for crediting it. The fact that the foreigners here have received no communication from the rebels is in itself suspicious—the custom of the latter having invariably been to send the proclamations in advance of their coming. Those who write upon their doors the word “*Obedience*” are saved from pillage.

April 7th.

This has been a day of excitement. About noon we received intelligence that an attack would certainly be made on Shanghai. There were rumors of a proclamation which stated that the Chinese inhabitants had nothing to fear, but that the Taou-tai must be given up, as they intended to punish him for sending supplies to Nanking. The foreign residents would not be interfered with, provided they gave security not to carry on the opium trade. There are now vessels lying at Woosung laden with opium to the amount of \$3,000,000. This rumor if true, would stir up the English to more active measures, Sir George Bonham's avowed policy at present being a masterly inactivity.

The Taou-tai is alarmed. He called to-day upon the English and American Consuls. He denies that Soo-Chow is fallen, says his wives and treasures are still in the city, but that, on the approach of danger, he will remove them to the Custom House, in the midst of the foreign settlement. About three o'clock several English officers imagined they heard the report of cannon at Woosung. I mounted to the roof of the Consulate, whence the shipping at that port is discernible, but could perceive no signs of firing. However, the English deemed it expedient to land 140 men with three or four field-pieces, and had companies of armed sailors patrolling the streets in the evening.

A document has at last been procured, which was taken from one of the gates of Soo-Chow. It is issued in the name of two of the rebel generals, declaring their intention to take Chin-Keang-foo, Soo-Chow, Hang-Chow, Soong-Keang and Shanghai. The Mantchows, it says, are utterly annihilated,

and as for the foreigners, they are not human beings. The inhabitants of the three first-named cities have nothing to fear but all good Chinese residing in the two last should immediately remove to the distance of 100 *li* (33 miles), until the army has passed through, as it is by no means certain that there will not be fighting at Shanghai. This document explains the great panic of the Chinese to-day, and their hasty emigration from the city, which has been going on without interruption, from sunrise to the present hour (11 p. m.). The streets are crowded with porters, carrying off chests and boxes of valuables.

Mr. Taylor, an American Missionary, showed me some translations from the *Pekin Gazette*, from which it is evident that the Imperial Court is in great consternation. The Emperor declares his anxiety is so great that he can neither eat nor sleep. The capture of Woo-Chang-foo and Ngan-King is announced, but no mention is made of the siege of Nanking. The Taou-tai of this place is to be promoted for his loyalty. Several Generals, *who were slain by the rebels*, are promoted to the rank of Governor, and others who ran away, but *died afterwards*, are, on that account, absolved from the punishment due to their cowardice! So imbecile and absurd a Court as that of China never before governed a great Empire. Its duration or overthrow is a matter of complete indifference.

Col. Marshall drew up a proclamation this evening, to be issued by the representatives of France and America, since Sir George Bonham refuses to co-operate. It is a brief but forcible paper, declaring that, security of life and property having been assured to the citizens of both countries on the faith of treaties with the Emperor of China, no invading army could be

permitted to occupy the foreign settlement here, or exact a tribute from the inhabitants. Furthermore, that the pillage of Shanghai would endanger the foreign residents, and would be resisted. With regard to the contest now waging, a strict and impartial neutrality would be preserved. It is proposed to forward this proclamation to the rebels to-morrow.

April 9th.

Yesterday a dispatch was received, to the effect that Nanking had been invested by the Imperial troops, and that the rebel forces had gone back from Soo-Chow for its relief. It was addressed to the Taou-tai by Heang-Yung, a Tartar General who appears to have acted bravely at the taking of Woo-Chang-foo. According to the proclamation of the Taou-tai, this general arrived before Nankin on the 31st of March, in advance of the main body of the Imperial troops. He calls upon the inhabitants of the province not to be alarmed, as the rebels will be exterminated to a man. Now the proclamation of Lo and W'ang, the two rebel generals, states that Tien-teh was crowned Emperor at Nanking on the 31st of March, and it is unlikely that both events occurred at the same time. Notwithstanding the proclamation of the Taou-tai the emigration from the city, yesterday, was more active than ever. The *bund* (quay) and streets were crowded with porters, conveying the goods and treasures of the wealthy class, who are flying for refuge to the villages in the country.

No proclamation has yet been issued by the foreign representatives. Sir George Bonham yesterday sent around the draft of one, which differed in no material point from that of Col. Marshall, except that it was more diffuse, and carefully avoided

speaking of the rebel forces. In order to secure the consent of all to a single declaration, Col. Marshall amalgamated the two but Sir George still refuses to co-operate. M. de Montigny has subscribed to the American proclamation, which will probably be issued this morning. The English still keep a body of armed sailors on shore, and on board all the vessels of war the usual drill with small arms is carried on every day.

Yesterday afternoon the English and American residents met at their respective Consulates to adopt measures of defence. Twenty-seven Americans came together and discussed the matter, in true American style: each one wanted to have his own way, and only ten subscribed to Mr. Cunningham's proposals that a company should be formed, armed and exercised. Several of the Missionaries were quite ready to enter into this arrangement, and one of them, who is a graduate of West Point, offered to undertake the task of drilling them. The English acted with more unanimity, and the most of them subscribed their names to a similar proposal.

The Chinese merchants of Shanghai have made up the sum of \$340,000 for the ransom of the city. Yesterday a deputation from them was sent off to Tien-teh, to remain with him as hostages for the payment, until the city shall be taken. It is said that the Taou-tai himself subscribed largely to the sum. Several of the "long-haired rebels" are reported to be in the city, and there is no doubt that their spies are already here. Fifteen hundred desperadoes from the province of Foo-Kien are waiting the moment of attack, to commence pillaging; but the Chinese who now remain have the impression that the Americans and French will defend the city.

April 10th.

We have now come to the conclusion that for the present we have no reason to fear an attack on Shanghai. The army which was marching upon Soo-Chow has not yet made its appearance before that city, having probably gone back to raise the siege of Nanking. Since the Taou-tai's proclamation no further news has been received, but the foreign residents are satisfied that they are safe for at least ten days longer. The Chinese continue to flock out of the city, though not to such an extent as during the previous two days. Now, since the alarm has subsided, the English have begun to adopt active measures of defence. Yesterday afternoon they had forty or fifty sailors at work, throwing up a three-gun redoubt, at the northern end of the race-course. The sailors and marines were drilled in artillery practice at the same time, on the green in the centre of the course.

To-day the news of the advance of the Imperial army upon Nanking is confirmed. Mr. Meadows left here last night at midnight, for the rebel camp, disguised as a Chinaman. He took along a European dress, to wear after arriving, and is understood to possess an order from the Taou-tai to the local authorities on the road, to facilitate his progress.

April 13th.

We are still in the same delightful state of uncertainty, in regard to the future. The rebels and the Imperial forces commanded severally by Tien-teh and Heang-Yuen, have met, and, according to Chinese custom, appointed day before yesterday for the battle: so that we may expect to hear *something* in two days more—but it is too much to hope that we will get

the truth, or any thing near it. On Monday evening, a letter was received from Mr. Meadows, who has reached Soo-Chow. He found the city perfectly tranquil. The deputation of merchants commissioned to take the ransom to Tien-teh, had returned after proceeding as far as Chin-Kiang-foo, where they found a body of the Imperial troops. They were obliged to hasten back, to prevent the ransom from falling into the wrong hands. This corroborates the report of the rebels having retreated from Chin-Kiang-foo and fallen back upon Nanking, in order to concentrate their strength for an encounter with Heang-Yuen's army.

Meanwhile the work of defence goes on. The English have taken it upon themselves to construct a double ditch from Soo-Chow creek across to the north-western angle of the city wall, covering the rear of the foreign settlement. An attack, if made at all, will most probably be made from the native city, across a creek which is commanded by the big guns of the *Susquehanna*. At a meeting held at the English Consulate yesterday, the resident merchants decided to bear the expenses of the work. Several hundred coolies have been employed upon the ditch, which is a slight affair, that would not resist a charge of European cavalry, but may prove sufficient against Chinese. The breastwork runs directly across the race-course, and to-day has reached the graveyard of the men of Foo-Kien, a body of whom came to stop proceedings. The Chinese have a great regard for the graves of their ancestors, which, indeed, are the only objects for which they exhibit the least reverence. These Foo-Kien people are a fierce, disorderly set, and the natives of Shanghai are in great dread of them. The assistant Engineer of the English steamer *Salamander*

mysteriously disappeared two days ago, and has not returned. When last seen on Monday night, he was quarrelling with some Foo-Kien boatmen, and it is now surmised that they murdered him. Several dead bodies have floated down the river within a few days.

We hear already of bands of marauders in the vicinity. The magistrates of the different districts have formed a league for their protection, and have resolved to burn alive any man who is caught plundering. Two cases have occurred within a few days. On Monday a band of forty robbers entered a village about two miles from here and demanded a quantity of rice from the inhabitants—which was paid. Two of the men, however, lingered behind, and demanded of one of the villagers that they should be paid 20,000 *cash* (about \$14). The man said he had but 8,000 *cash* in the house, which he would give them. While pretending to get it he found means to whisper to a coolie, who went out and summoned the people. The house was surrounded, the robbers taken and condemned to be burned. One of them was placed beneath the pile, and securely bound. The other was laid upon the top, and several times burst the cords which held him and sprang from the flames. He was relentlessly dragged back, until all power of resistance was lost. In a village about ten miles from here, four Canton men were found plundering a pawnbroker's shop, and suffered the same horrible fate. In every village is suspended a gong, which is to be sounded in case of an attack.

It is from these bands of desperadoes that the older residents anticipate trouble. The Mission Establishment beyond Soo-Chow creek has been furnished with arms by Capt. Buchanan, and its inmates keep up a watch at night. Mr. Yates, of the

Baptist Mission, who had placed his family on board one of the merchant vessels, has returned to his house. In passing through the city yesterday, I noticed many streets which were almost entirely deserted. Mr. Shortrede, the Editor of the *Friend of China*, who came down from the hills two days ago, met two hundred boats on their way to Soo-Chow, laden with people and property.

April 15th.

The difficulty with the Foo-Kien men has not yet been settled. On the Chinese coolies being prevented by a band of them from digging up the graves, the English brought a field-piece, loaded it, and threatened to fire in case they did not retire. For a time they dispersed, but soon returned in much greater numbers. It is now said that they have decided to allow the breastwork to be thrown up, in case pledges are given by the English, that when the danger is over the earth shall be restored to its former place. This demand will be complied with and the work will proceed, but as the embankments are made upon the line of a proposed road which the merchants have been endeavoring to open, it may be doubted whether the latter will keep faith with the men of Foo-Kien. On my visit to some American Missionaries in the city yesterday, I was struck with its air of desolation. There are streets where hardly a house is inhabited. Where we found crowds on our first arrival, there is now scarcely a single soul to be seen. I have no doubt that 50,000 persons have emigrated from the city within the past two or three weeks.

News reached us yesterday, that a battle had been fought

before the walls of Nanking, in which the advantage rested with the Imperial troops. Great numbers were slain on both sides, and the revolutionary army had retired within the walls. A letter was also received from Mr. Meadows, who is still at Soo-Chow, where he intends remaining. He repeats the stories which had already reached us, with the additional fact that Tien-teh is actually dead, as was surmised by some, and that the name of the present chief is Tae-ping. Mr. Meadows appears in European costume, and has received no molestation. He has put himself in connection with the mandarins, and expects to be protected. The celebrated pagodas on Golden Island in the Yang-tse-Kiang, opposite Chin-Kiang-foo, are said to have been entirely destroyed by the rebels, and all the Buddhist priests beheaded. If this be true, the library of Chinese Literature on the island—one of the most valuable in the Empire—has probably perished also.

April 17th.

Flying rumors from Nanking, favorable to the rebels, now begin to reach us. It is quite evident, from the tenor of the various reports, that the Imperialists have at least gained no success. An intelligent Chinaman, who was on board one of the Taou-tai's lorchas, in the neighborhood of Nanking, states that the accounts we had received of the valor of Heang-Yuen, the Tartar general, are without foundation. The people have unbounded confidence in the rebels, whom he represents as just and humane in their dealings with them. Heang-Yuen, he says, keeps aloof and avoids giving battle. A native messenger dispatched by the Rev. Mr. Taylor, about two weeks ago, re

turned yesterday, having succeeded in reaching Nanking. His account is greatly exaggerated: he says there are 500-000 Tartar troops around Nanking, and an equal number of rebels within the walls. The latter never intended to have advanced upon Shanghai, and the report of their march towards Soo-Chow after the taking of Nanking was occasioned by the flight of the Imperial troops in that direction.

The American bark *Science*, despatched by the Taou-tai to the relief of the Imperial fleet, arrived at Woosung on Thursday night, and Capt. Roundy was here at breakfast yesterday morning. He only ascended the Yang-tse-Kiang seventy-five miles, and attributes his difficulties entirely to the Chinese pilots. There is water enough for the largest vessels in the channel, which, however, is narrow and tortuous. A letter was received last night from Capt. Bush, of the schooner *Dewan*, which had reached Chin-Kiang-foo. He states that he had landed and walked through the city, which was entirely deserted—not a soul to be seen. The inhabitants had all gone to Nanking, but under what circumstances, he does not inform us. A letter was also received from Mr. Meadows, who had been deserted by all his servants, and was unable to procure a boat to proceed further.

The foreign residents now no longer apprehend an attack, but the native merchants are still in a state of alarm.

The period covered by these extracts from my journal was the most exciting portion of my residence at Shanghai. After the first alarm had subsided, the fugitive Chinese returned, trade resumed its usual course, and the place enjoyed several months of comparative quiet. During the following year

1854, however, all that we had anticipated in the spring of 1853 actually came to pass. The city fell into the hands of the rebels, and the defence the foreign merchants had thrown up as a protection against them, served, singularly enough, to protect themselves from the assaults of the Imperialists.

CHAPTER XXVI

A CHINESE PROMENADE.

Chinese and Foreigners at Shanghai—Situation of the City—A Chinese Promenade—Burying-Grounds—Money for the Dead—A Baby Tower—The Ningpo House—Coffins—Chinese Gypsies—A Street of the Suburbs—The City Gate—A Chinese Pawnbroker's Shop—A Temple—The Statue of Boodh—A Priest at his Devotions—Stenches of the Streets—Beggars—Shops—View of the Tea-Garden—Chinese Gamblers—An Artistic Mountebank—The Baptist Chapel—Scene from its Tower—The Hills—Fanciful Signs—Missionary Labors in China—Apathy of the People—A Chinese Residence—The Library—The City Prison—Torture of the Prisoners—A Bath House—Character of the Mongol Form—The Tutelar Deity of Shanghai—Boodh at Sunset—Kite Flying.

DURING the two weeks chronicled in the foregoing journal notwithstanding the warlike excitement which was more or less shared by all, I devoted several days to visiting the Chinese city and the points of interest in its environs. Unlike Canton and the other cities of the South, Shanghai is thrown open without restriction to the foreigner, and he may even wander unmolested for a distance of thirty or forty miles into the interior. The natives there, instead of despising the "outside barbarians," look up to them with profound respect; the cry of "*Fan-kwei!*" (foreign devil!) which pursues you in Canton, is never heard in the streets; the stupid faces of the

populace are turned towards you with an expression of good will, and there is no hindrance whatever to your studies of the peculiarities of Chinese character and habits. I was soon quite satisfied with the extent of my observations. Superficial as they were, I found nothing in the subject sufficient to tempt me into a further endurance of the disgusting annoyances of a Chinese city. I shall ask the reader's patience during the promenade on which I propose to take him, since it is for the first and last time. The scenes we shall witness are curious, in spite of their disagreeable features, and a conscientious traveller must describe things as he sees them. But, first let me give some necessary details of the topography of Shanghai.

The city lies upon the right bank of the Whang-po (or, as it is called by foreigners, the Woosung) River, about fourteen miles above its junction with the Yang-tse-Kiang. The river here makes a sharp bend to the south, so that the city faces the east. The Chinese town, which is walled, is in the form of a semi-circle, with its chord upon the river. It is about five miles in circumference, and contains a population of 300,000. To the north of this, and separated from it by a small creek, is the foreign settlement, which extends along the river for three-quarters of a mile. The houses are large and handsome, frequently good examples of the simpler forms of the Palladian style, and surrounded by gardens. Along the water is a broad quay, called the "*bund*," (from an Indian word,) which is the evening resort of the residents, and the great centre of business and gossip. The foreign community, exclusive of the missionaries, consists of about 170 persons, 14 of whom are ladies. It is, beyond dispute, the most cheerful, social and agreeable community in China.

I was greatly indebted to the Rev. Charles Taylor, of the Methodist, and the Rev. M. T. Yates, of the Baptist Mission, for pilotage through the mazes of Shanghai, and explanations of the many curious scenes we witnessed by the way. Although it required several short excursions to make me familiar with the objects which most interest the stranger, I hope, in the course of one extended walk, to bring them all under the reader's notice, so that there will be no necessity for again taking him within the city walls.

Leaving the American Consulate, we proceed westward along the banks of a little creek, lined with willow trees. Beyond the limits of the settlement we come upon extensive burying-grounds, where rank grass and weeds hide the tombstones, centuries old. These places are sacred, and though the dead have long been forgotten, and their families become extinct, no one dares to interfere with the soil under which they rest. In the midst of one of these neglected cemeteries, stands a horse, of the natural size, sculptured in gray granite. On many of the tombs are heaps of silvered paper, made into the form of ingots of *sycee* silver, which are carried there and burnt, for the purpose of paying the expenses of the dead, in the other world. The usual order of things is reversed in this case, and what is merely the shadow here, becomes the substantial silver there. Judging from the quantities consumed, the dead must live in a most extravagant style. Between the graves and the city wall stands a low building, in a clump of cedar trees. This is one of the "Baby Towers," of which there are several near the city. All infants who die under the age of one year are not honored with burial, but done up in a package, with matting and cords, and thrown into

the tower, or rather well, as it is sunk some distance below the earth. The top, which rises about ten feet above the ground, is roofed, but an aperture is left for casting in the bodies. Looking into it, we see that the tower is filled nearly to the roof with bundles of matting, from which exhales a pestilent effluvium.

Some distance further, near the north-western angle of the city wall, we reach the "Ningpo House," as it is called, a beneficial institution of an interesting character. It was built and is supported by a club of Shanghai merchants and traders, who are natives of Ningpo, for the purpose of affording relief to those of their countrymen who may become destitute, and taking charge of the bodies of those who die. It is a collection of low buildings, principally of stone, and separated by paved court-yards into the different departments which it embraces. In one part we find the aged and infirm furnished with food and shelter, both of the plainest kind; in another we enter what appears to be a great coffin warehouse, but is in fact a repository of dead bodies. The ponderous coffins of poplar or sycamore plank, stained of a dark red color, and covered in some instances with gilded hieroglyphics, are ranged in compartments, according to the sex and time of decease of the occupant. They are thus kept for three years, when, if not reclaimed by their relatives at Ningpo and transported thither for burial, they are deposited in a cemetery adjoining the buildings. The bodies are firmly packed in fine lime, which prevents any exhalations from the coffins. We should not suspect that in the warehouse through which we pass there are upwards of a hundred corpses, some of which have been there nearly the whole of the allotted time. There

are several other beneficial institutions of a similar character in Shanghai, and their provisions appear to be carried out with fidelity and conscientiousness. In each of the establishments there is a hall hung with lanterns, and usually containing the idol of one of their gods, wherein the Directors meet, to smoke, drink tea, and discuss their affairs.

Not far from the Ningpo House, there is a camp of Chinese Gypsies. These outcasts have little in common with the Gypsies of Europe and the East. They are of pure Mongolian blood, and only resemble the former in their wandering habits, their distinct social government, and their mendicity, which constitutes, in fact, almost their only means of support. Their degradation is almost without parallel, and I doubt if there be any thing in human nature more loathsome than their appearance. Here they are, on this bleak hillock, over which a few stunted cedars are scattered. Their lairs—for they cannot be called tents—of filthy matting are not more than four feet high, and barely large enough to contain two persons. They are built upon the cold, wet earth, with perhaps a little straw to protect the bodies of the inmates. Two or three stones and a heap of ashes, on the side of the hill, are all their domestic appliances. As we approach, a wild head, with long, tangled hair, and deep-set, glaring black eyes, is thrust out from each of the lairs. Some lie still, merely following us with their gaze, like a beast surprised in his den; others crawl out, displaying garments that are dropping to pieces from sheer rottenness, and figures so frightfully repulsive and disgusting, that we move away repenting that we have disturbed this nest of human vermin.

We now enter an outer street, leading to the northern gate of the city. It is narrow, paved with rough stones, and carpeted

with a deposit of soft mud. The houses on either hand are of wood, two stories high, and have a dark, decaying air. The lower stories are shops, open to the street, within which the pig-tailed merchants sit behind their counters, and look at us out of the corners of their crooked eyes, as we go by. The streets are filled with a crowd of porters, water-carriers, and other classes of the laboring population, and also, during the past week or two, with the families and property of thousands of the inhabitants, who are flying into the country, in anticipation of war. At the corners of the streets are stands for the sale of fruit and vegetables, the cheaper varieties of which can be had in portions valued at a single *cash*—the fifteenth part of a cent. A bridge of granite slabs crosses the little stream of which I have already spoken, and after one or two turnings we find ourselves at the city gate. It is simply a low stone arch, through a wall ten feet thick, leading into a sort of bastion for defence, with an inner gate. Within the space is a guard-house, where we see some antiquated instruments, resembling pikes and halberds, leaning against the wall, but no soldiers. A manifesto issued by the Taou-tai—probably some lying report of a victory over the rebels—is pasted against the inner gate, and there is a crowd before it, spelling out its black and vermilion hieroglyphics.

Turning to the left, we advance for a short distance along the inside of the wall, which is of brick, about twenty feet thick, with a notched parapet. Carefully avoiding the heaps of filth and the still more repulsive beggars that line the path, we reach a large, blank building, about two hundred feet square. This is a pawnbroker's shop—for the Chinese are civilized enough for that—and well worth a visit. The front an

trance admits us into the office, where the manager and his attendants are busily employed behind a high counter, and a crowd of applicants fills the space in front. We apply for permission to inspect the establishment, which is cheerfully granted; a side-door is opened, and we enter a long range of store-houses, filled to the ceiling with every article of a Chinese household or costume, each piece being folded up separately, numbered and labelled. One room is appropriated wholly to the records, or books registering the articles deposited. There are chambers containing thousands of pewter candlesticks; court-yards piled with braziers; spacious lofts, stuffed to the ceiling with the cotton gowns and petticoat-pantaloons of the poorer classes, and chests, trunks, boxes and other cabinet-ware in bewildering quantities. At a rough estimate, I should say that there are at least 30,000 costumes; when we asked the attendant the number, he shrugged his shoulders and said: "Who could count them?" There are three or four other establishments, of nearly similar magnitude, in the city. They are regulated by the Government, and are said to be conducted in a fair and liberal spirit.

At the next angle of the wall stands an old Boodhist temple, before the door of which lie two granite lions, broken and overthrown. Squatted on a pedestal within is a gilded idol, about five feet high, while in recesses on either hand are the guardians or watchers of the temple—gigantic figures, armed with swords, and glittering with the gaudiest colors of the Chinese pallet. We pass through this vestibule and ascend a flight of steps to an inner temple, where the god appears in colossal form, and in spite of his slack hands fallen on his knees, his heavy, hanging abdomen, his bloated cheeks, and the

good-humored silliness of his face, his appearance is at least respectable. Any colossal representation of the human body, if not an intentional caricature, is to a certain degree majestic and impressive; and though the Chinese Boodh stands, in rank of idolship, far below the Indian Brahma and the grand Egyptian Amun-Re, one cannot flout him to his face. In a chamber adjoining this we find a female divinity—the Queen of Mercy—whose Chinese title I forget. Hearing a continual thumping noise in the room beyond, we push open the door and surprise a Boodhist priest at his devotions. He is seated at a table with a book open before him, from which he is chanting prayers with a monotonous, drawling tone, while with one hand he thumps incessantly with a small wooden hammer upon a hollow drum of the same material. This drum is called by the same name as the great fish upon which the earth rests, and which its sound soothes into quiet. When, at any time, even for a minute, there is no drum beaten throughout the whole world, the fish at once becomes uneasy, and his contortions occasion earthquakes. The priest wears a yellow robe, his skin is yellow, his head is shaven bald, his face is puckered with wrinkles, and altogether he is one of the oddest and funniest old men that ever was seen. He looks up, nods, with a queer twinkle in his eyes, looks down again, and up again, but never once pauses in his chanting or his thumping.

We now take a street which strikes into the heart of the city, and set out for the famous “Tea Gardens.” The pavement is of rough stones, slippery with mud, and on one side of the street is a ditch filled with black, stagnant slime, from which arises the foulest smell. Porters, carrying buckets of offal, brush past us; public *cloacæ* stand open at the corners, and

the clothes and persons of the unwashed laborers and beggars distil a reeking compound of still more disagreeable exhalations. Coleridge says of Cologne :

“I counted two and seventy stanches,
All well defined—and several stinks;”

but Shanghai, in its horrid foulness, would be flattered by such a description. I never go within its walls but with a shudder and the taint of its contaminating atmosphere seems to hang about me like a garment long after I have left them. Even in the country, which now rejoices in the opening spring, all the freshness of the season is destroyed by the rank ammoniated odors arising from pits of noisome manure, sunk in the fields. Having mentioned these things, I shall not refer to them again; but if the reader would have a correct description of Shanghai, they cannot be wholly ignored.

It requires some care to avoid contact with the beggars who throng the streets, and we would almost as willingly touch a man smitten with leprosy, or one dying of the plague. They take their stations in front of the shops, and supplicate with a loud, whining voice, until the occupant purchases their departure by some trifling alms; for they are protected by the law in their avocation, and no man dare drive them forcibly from his door. As we approach the central part of the city, the streets become more showy and a trifle cleaner. The shops are large and well arranged, and bright red signs, covered with golden inscriptions, swing vertically from the eaves. All the richest shops, however, are closed at present, and not a piece of the celebrated silks of Soo-Chow, the richest in China, is to be found in the city. The manufactures in jade-stone, carved

bamboo, and the furniture of Ningpo, inlaid with ivory and boxwood, are still to be had in profusion, but they are more curious than elegant. Indeed, I have seen no article of Chinese workmanship which could positively be called beautiful, unless it was fashioned after a European model. Industry, perseverance, and a wonderful faculty of imitation belong to these people; but they are utterly destitute of original taste.

The "Tea Garden" is an open space near the centre of the city, devoted to the recreation of the populace. In the midst of a paven square is a pool of greenish, stagnant water, in which stands a building of two stories, with the peaked, curved, overhanging roofs, which we always associate with Chinese architecture. It is reached by bridges which cross the water in curious zigzag lines, so that you walk more than double the actual distance. On the opposite side are several similar buildings, surrounded by masses of artificial rock-work, but the only token of a garden is a pair of magnolia trees, clothed in the glory of their fragrant, snowy blossoms. Every body remembers the old-fashioned plates of blue Liverpool ware, with a representation of two Chinese houses, a willow tree, a bridge with three Chinamen walking over it, and two crows in the air. These plates give a very good representation of the Tea Garden, which is a fair sample of what is most picturesque in Chinese life. The buildings are tea-houses, and on entering we find them filled with natives of all classes, drinking strong decoctions of the herb, and smoking their slender pipes of bamboo, with bowls about the size of a lady's thimble. The tea is prepared in enormous pots suspended over furnaces of clay. The master of the house shows us a vacant table, but we decline his hint, and pass out to view the crowds in the square

Here is a man leading a white goat with only three legs which he wishes to sell, but on a careful examination we perceive that one of the fore legs has been neatly amputated while the animal was young. There are half a dozen gaming tables, each surrounded by its crowd of players and spectators. The Chinese are inveterate gamblers, and as the stakes at many of these tables are as low as a single cash, few are so poor that they cannot make a venture. One of the methods has some resemblance to the "little jokers," so well known at our race courses. The player has three sticks, the ends of which are thrust through his fingers. There is a hole through each of the other ends, which are held in his hand; a cord is passed through one of them, and the play consists in guessing *which* one, as the cord may be transferred from one to the other by a quick movement of the fingers. I put a "cash" on the board, make a guess, and win a cake of suspicious-looking candy, which I give to the nearest boy, to the great merriment of the bystanders. There are also stands for the sale of pea-nuts, reminding us of the classic side-walks of Chatham street, and for the sake of Young America, we must invest a few cash in his favorite fruit. But here is an entertainment of an entirely novel character. A man seated on the pavement, holds in his hand a white porcelain tile, about a foot square. This he overspreads with a deep-blue color, from a sponge dipped in a thin paste of indigo, and asks us to name a flower. I suggest the lotus. He extends his fore-finger—a most remarkable fore-finger, crooked, flexible as an elephant's trunk, and as sharp as if the end had been whittled off—gives three or four quick dashes across the tile, and in ten seconds or less (o! there is the flower exquisitely drawn and shaded, its snowy

cup hanging in the midst of its long swaying leaves. Three more strokes, and a white bird with spread wings, hovers over it; two more, and a dog stands beside it. The rapidity and precision of that fore-finger seem almost miraculous. He covers the tile with new layers of color, and flower after flower is dashed out of the blue ground.

The Chapel of the Baptist Mission is in a street near the Tea Garden, and its tower, about seventy feet high, affords an excellent panoramic view of the city and surrounding country. Looking down upon the city, we see nothing but a mass of peaked roofs, covered with tiles which are blackened by age, and here and there the open courts and heavier architecture of temples. The serrated line of the wall surrounds it, and the rich alluvial land extends wide beyond, dotted with villages, clumps of cedar, groves of fruit-trees, or the mounds of ancient cemeteries. The broad river winds through the centre of the landscape, and the number of junks gliding over its surface with their square sails spread to the east wind, give animation to the scene. In front of the city they are anchored in a dense mass a mile in length, and numbering not less than two thousand. The din of gongs and drums and the sputtering of fire-crackers, burnt to secure the aid of the water-gods, reaches us at this distance. Eight or nine miles up the river stands a tall pagoda, and as the air is clear to-day the summits of "The Hills," as they are called by the foreign residents, are faintly visible in the west. These hills, which are a favorite resort of foreigners during the hot season, are twenty-five miles distant. They are the first range which breaks the vast level of the plains, and command a view of the large

town of Soong-Keang in the interior, and the country stretching toward Soo-Chow.

Looking to the river, our eyes are attracted by a large tea-warehouse, on the wall of which are painted four enormous characters. Our missionary friend interprets them as signifying "The Place of Heavenly prepared Leaves." In the fanciful and figurative character of their signs, the Chinese remind us of the Arabic races. There is a shop for the sale of *samshoo*, or rice-whiskey, in Hong-Kong, which bears over its door the following inscription: "The joys of Paradise are nothing but a state of perpetual intoxication!" The announcements of vessels up for California are headed with the enticing call: 'To the Golden Mountains!'

Notwithstanding the efforts of many zealous and devoted missionaries who have been sent to China, the number of genuine converts is very limited. The Chinese nature appears to be so thoroughly passive, that it is not even receptive. A sort of listless curiosity leads them to fill the chapels of the missionaries, and to gather in crowds around those who preach in the public places, but when the exhortation is finished, away they go, without the least ripple of new thought in the stagnant waters of their minds. The mental inertia of these people seems to be almost hopeless of improvement. Even while the present rebellion is going on—a struggle which, one would suppose, would enlist their sympathies, if a single spark of patriotism or ambition remained—the great mass of the people maintain the most profound apathy. Some advocate of universal peace has cited China as the example of a nation which has successfully pursued a pacific policy; but I say, welcome be the thunder-storm which shall scatter and break up, though by

the means of fire and blood, this terrible stagnation! Wh would not exclaim with Tennyson:

“Better fifty years of Europe than a cycle of Cathay.”

But we are curious to inspect the dwelling of a Chinaman of the better class, and our friend, who is fortunately able to assist us, conducts us to the house of a wealthy old merchant. It is a stone building, recently erected, and every thing about it indicates great neatness, and an approach to taste in the owner. In the open verandahs are boxes of the *mau-tan*, or rose-scented peony, with gorgeous white and crimson blossoms, and the *lan-whei*, a water-plant of an orchideous nature, with a long spike of yellowish-green flowers. The *mau-tan* also decorates the rooms, which are hung with lanterns of stained glass. The furniture is of wood, of a stiff, uncomfortable pattern, but elaborately carved. The owner, an urbane polite old gentleman, regales us with cups of stewed tea, whose delicate aroma compensates for the absence of milk and sugar, and asks us up stairs into his library. The shelves are covered with Chinese works, bound in their wooden covers, and in the centre of the room stands a bronze frame, with three apertures at the top, and a bundle of arrows. The latter are the implements of a game which the host explains to us, by taking the arrows to the further end of the room, seizing one by the tip of the shaft with his thumb and fore-finger, and throwing it so as to fall into one of the small circular openings of the frame. We try a game, whereof the victory, owing to his more extensive practice, remains with him.

Toward the northern side of the city is the prison. On each side of the outer gate is painted the figure of an avenging

divinity, whose black face and glaring eyeballs strike terror into the minds of the natives. This gate gives admittance to a quadrangular court, surrounded by ranges of cages or cells, wherein the prisoners are subjected to different degrees of punishment, according to their crimes. Some are in chambers divided by strong bamboo gratings; others at large, with heavy shackles fastened to their legs; and the more criminal cases are confined separately in narrow cages, which bind them in the smallest and most cramped space, with their knees drawn up to their chins. Their heads project through holes in the top, and as we pass, their faces are turned to us with a wild, haggard look of suffering. Some of them have been kept for weeks, immovable in those frames of torture, and their condition is too horrible for description. The cell adjoining that in which they lie, and divided from it only by some bamboo stakes, is the one appropriated by the Chinese authorities for foreign prisoners. On the beams are carved a number of names, principally German, and probably those of refractory sailors. The English Government, in those ports where the Consul possesses judicial authority—as in China, Turkey, and the Barbary States—always erects a separate prison for the confinement of English subjects. Our Government, however, from an admirable economy, prefers thrusting its citizens into these loathsome dens, the condition and associations of which increase tenfold the horrors of imprisonment. A few days ago the entire crew of an American vessel in port passed a night in the very cell before us.

On our way to the city wall we pass one of the public baths, and curiosity induces us to step in. The building is low, damp and dirty, and filled with a rank, steamy, unclean

atmosphere. It consists of three apartments, in one of which the bathers undress, bathe in the next, and lounge smoking on the benches, in an unembarrassed state of nudity, in the third. As it is towards evening, they belong mostly to the lower classes, and look quite as filthy after the bath as before. The water is not changed throughout the day, and its appearance and condition may perhaps be imagined. The small tank is filled in the morning, and kept heated by a furnace under it. The price of a bath diminishes in proportion as the water gets dirty, until, in the evening, it falls to a single cash (the fifteenth part of a cent). By holding my breath, I remain in the dark, reeking den, long enough to see two yellow forms immersed in the turbid pool, and then rush out stifled and nauseated. Among the bathers in the outer room there are several strong, muscular figures, but a total want of that elegant symmetry which distinguishes the Caucasian and Shemitic races. They are broad-shouldered and deep-chested, but the hips and loins are clumsily moulded, and the legs have a coarse, clubby character. We should never expect to see such figures assume the fine, free attitudes of ancient sculpture. But here, as every where, the body is the expression of the spiritual nature. There is no sense of what we understand by Art—Grace, Harmony, Proportion—in the Chinese nature, and therefore we look in vain for any physical expression of it. De Quincey, who probably never saw a Chinaman, saw this fact with the clairvoyant eye of genius, when he said: "If I were condemned to live among the Chinese, I should go mad." This is a strong expression, but I do not hesitate to adopt it.

Before terminating this long and, perhaps, wearisome ramble, let us enter the great temple of the tutelar divinity of

Shanghai. The obese idol, cross-legged, and with his hands upon his knees, is fifteen feet high, and seated upon a pedestal of about twelve feet. He is gilded from head to foot, and looms grandly through the dusk of the lofty hall. On each side are the gilded statues of nine renowned Chinese saints and sages—eighteen in all—of the size of life. The sacred drum, four or five feet in diameter, and raised on a prop of heavy timbers, stands on one side of the entrance, and the great bell—a universal feature of Boodhist temples—on the other. We beat the drum and strike the bell with a mallet, until the temple rings with a peal of barbaric sound. The priests look on, smiling, for the act is not one of irreverence, but of devotion, in their eyes, and while we are amusing ourselves, we do homage to the great Boodh. The broad interior of the temple is dusky with the evening shadows, when the last red beam of sunset, falling through an upper window, strikes full upon the golden face of the god, lighting that only, so that the large features blaze upon us out of the gloom, as if moulded in living fire. It is as if Boodh had asserted his insulted majesty, and while he is thus transfigured we own that he is sublime.

On our return to the foreign settlement, we hear loud, humming noises in the air, and looking up, see a strange collection of monsters hovering in the sky. An enormous bird, with outspread wings of red and gold, is soaring directly over our heads; a centipede, twenty feet long, is wriggling yonder; a fanciful dragon shoots hither and thither; and a mandarin, in his robes of state, makes his airy *ko-tows*, or salutations, to the gazers below. The natives are indulging in their national amusement of kite-flying, and as long as there is light enough left they will continue, with the eagerness of children, to ma-

nœuvre their painted toys. We draw a long breath of relief when we have passed the wall and the muddy creek, and as we walk homeward, mentally revolve the question, whether it is worth satisfying one's curiosity at the expense of so much annoyance and disgust.

CHAPTER XXVII

EARTHQUAKES AND OFFICIAL VISITS.

An Earthquake—Sensations it Produced—Its Effects—Additional Shocks—The Bowling Alley—Hairs in the Soil—A Shower of Sand—Visit of the Taou-tai to Col. Marshall—Chinese Visiting Cards—The Taou-tai's Appearance—Reception of the Dignitaries—A Chinese Military Review—The Soldiers and their Equipments—Their Discipline—Uncouth Weapons—Absurdity of the Parade—The Commissioner visits the Taou-tai—Reception—The Taou-tai's Residence—Chinese Refreshments—Departure.

OUR attention was for a time diverted from the alarm and excitement occasioned by rumors of the approach of the rebels, through the unexpected visitation of an earthquake, which occurred on Thursday night, the 14th of April. On that evening, M. de Montigny, the French Consul, entertained Col. Marshall at dinner. Capt. Buchanan and Purser Barry, of the *Susquehanna*, Mr. Cunningham, Capt. de Plas, of the French steamer *Cassini*, and several other gentlemen were present. About a quarter past 11 o'clock, as the guests were taking leave, some of them being still in the passage, putting on their overcoats, for it was a dark, drizzling night, there was a sudden, violent noise, the timbers of the house cracking and the walls swaying to and fro. I was standing just under the eaves at the time, and my first impression was that the building was tumbling down upon me. I made a spring into the court,

with a strange feeling of bewilderment, for every thing was reeling and unsteady. All this was the work of an instant. There was a cry from the ladies within, and they came rushing out in great terror, exclaiming: "an earthquake! an earthquake!" We stood in the open court-yard, awaiting a second shock. The earth continued to heave with a slow, regular motion, gradually diminishing, until the throbs ceased. It produced a slight giddiness and nausea in some of us. Immediately after the shock passed away, a wild outcry arose from the Chinese city, and the large wooden drums in the temples were heard sounding far and near. The object of this was to soothe the great fish upon which the earth rests, and by whose uneasiness the earthquake was caused.

On reaching the Consulate, we found that everybody in the house had felt the shock, and the chandeliers in the drawing-room were still vibrating from it. Mr. L., one of the clerks, stated that his attention was first called to it by seeing several doors which had been locked, fly open without any apparent agency. In the other house belonging to Russell & Co., a chimney was thrown down, and one of the joists drawn from its socket and forced through the ceiling. About fifteen yards of a high brick wall around Mr. Nye's house was overthrown, and a large Chinese warehouse in the city almost entirely destroyed. The dogs (of which there is no scarcity in Shanghai) howled dismally while the motion lasted. The direction of the wave was from north-east to south-west, and the extent of its motion was, I should judge, about two feet. Shanghai is subject to slight shocks, but this was the most severe which had been felt for several years. The nearest volcanoes are in

the Japanese island of Kiusiu, about six hundred miles distant.

About midnight two additional shocks were felt, but they were much lighter than the first. On retiring to rest, we found that a number of articles in the rooms had been thrown upon the floor. In the morning I walked up to the northern part of the settlement, where the shock appeared to have been much more violent than at the southern end. In Mr. Nye's *godown* (warehouse) the heavy bales of goods were hurled from their places. Several chimneys were sprung and walls cracked, but the nature of the soil on which Shanghai stands—an elastic, clayey loam, two hundred feet in depth—saved the place from greater injury. In company with some friends I went to the bowling-alley, the walls of which had previously showed a disposition to give way, and were supported on one side by props. After playing an hour or two, we noticed that the southern wall had suddenly sunk outwards more than six inches, and was cracked from top to bottom. There had been, in fact, another smart shock at that very time, and we had not perceived it. The props alone prevented the whole building from coming down upon our heads.

The Chinese servants stated in the morning that hairs were always found in the earth after an earthquake, and brought up two or three gray horse-hairs—or what appeared to be such—which they professed to have found in the yard. Several of the gentlemen immediately went down and commenced searching, and to their astonishment found numbers of gray filaments from four to ten inches long. They projected two or three inches from the soil, and were most abundant among the grass. They were strong, like a coarse hempen fibre, and were readily drawn

out without breaking. After a careful examination with a powerful magnifying glass, it was found that they had not the tubular structure of hair, but what they were and whence they came, was a mystery. Some of the profane summarily accounted for them by declaring that the shock of the earthquake caused the earth's hair to stand on end, from fright. They were picked up in nearly all the gardens in town. The Chinese say they are only found for three days after a shock, which, so far as I could learn, also proved correct.

Another circumstance attending the earthquake, was the shower of fine dust, which fell for two or three days afterwards. The same thing was noticed after the earthquake of 1846, which was less violent. The wind was from the north-west, and the sand, which some suppose to come from the great Desert of Kobi, in the interior of China, was so fine as to be impalpable, yet filled the air to such an extent that the sun was covered with a yellow film, and the view obscured as by a thick haze. The Chinese reported that a town about thirty miles distant had been entirely swallowed up, and that a tract of land a mile square had sunk, and had been replaced by a deep lake. We decided at once to pay a visit to the spot, but on inquiry found so many contradictory stories regarding it, that it was quite impossible to discover where the town was. There were three or four slight shocks afterwards at intervals of two or three days.

On the 9th of April, the Taou-tai of Shanghai paid an official visit to Col. Marshall, and to the frigate *Susquehanna*. He had given notice of his intention two days before, and came in state, attended by four mandarins, and with a long retinue of scarecrow followers. A little in advance of their

arrival, the cards of the dignitaries were sent to the Commissioner. They were long slips of crimson paper, inscribed with rows of glaring hieroglyphics, and enclosed in crimson envelopes, The Taou-tai's ran thus: "Woo-keen-chang, of the Ta-Tsing Empire, by Imperial appointment Salt Commissioner, Intendant of the Circuit of the Prefectures of Soo-Chow, Soong-Keang and Tae-Tsung, in the province of Keang-nan, holding the rank of Judge, promoted five degrees, &c., presents his compliments." One of the others was still more remarkable: "Lan-wei-wan, of the Ta-Tsing Empire, Haefung of the Prefecture of Shanghai, in the province of Keang-soo, and *expectant* of the office of Prefect, knocks his head and presents compliments." How titles would multiply in America, if all the "expectants" of office adopted this plan! We should be overrun with such characters as—Hon. Elijah Pogram, Expectant Minister to Russia; Jedediah Peabody, Expectant Collector of Sag-Harbor—and so to the end of the chapter.

The Taou-tai was received with all due distinction, and his interview with the Commissioner lasted about an hour. He was a small man, near fifty years of age (his mustache denoting a grandfather); his complexion was a pale, bloodless yellow, his eyes lively and piercing, and his rather contracted features expressed a keen, shrewd and unscrupulous character. He was formerly a hong merchant of Canton, and is still best known to foreigners by his old name of Sam-qua. He spoke the "pigeon English," or commercial jargon, with tolerable fluency, though the conversation was partly carried on in Chinese, by Dr. Parker. He was dressed in robes of a rich, stiff silk, embroidered with the insignia of his office, and wore a cap with the single peacock's feather and opaque red button of a mandarin of the

third class. In his suite was the Colonel of the regular troops stationed at Shanghai—a tall, dignified old mandarin, who conducted himself with a grave and courteous dignity, beside which the Taou-tai, with his fidgety and undecided manners, showed to disadvantage. On entering the room where the Commissioner received them, they all performed the *Ko-tow*, or national salutation, by clasping their hands in front of their breasts, and bowing profoundly with a shaky motion, like those porcelain mandarins with which we are all familiar. They were regaled with tea, champagne and port, and took wine with great gravity, rising and bowing profoundly when they drank. After leaving the Commissioner they went on board the *Susquehanna*, where Capt. Buchanan received them with a salute of nine guns. They all expressed the greatest astonishment and admiration at the size and strength of the vessel.

During the visit, Col. Marshall expressed a wish to witness a review of the Chinese garrison of Shanghai, and the Taou-tai at once promised to make a public display of the troops, in order to exhibit his military resources to the foreign community. Accordingly, as we were entering the city the next afternoon, a frightful clamor of gongs announced the approach of some unusual spectacle, and we soon became aware that the Taou-tai was fulfilling his promise. First came half-a-dozen old six-pounders, mounted on clumsy carriages, which made a frightful clatter as they rolled over the rough pavement. They were followed by porters bearing chests of ammunition, slung from bamboo poles; then a company of soldiers in dark blue dresses, with a circular coat-of-arms on the breast and back, armed with long spears; another company, with ginjalls, a long, heavy stock, mounted on a tripod when it is fired, and

carrying a ball about the size of a grape-shot; afterwards more spearmen, alternating with companies of matchlocks, and followed by more lumbering six-pounders, chests of ammunition, gongs, yellow banners, covered with hieroglyphics, and other curious and fantastic objects—the procession rushing along without order or organization, shouting and laughing, or brandishing their arms in the most uncouth and barbaric style. Such a display never was witnessed in Shanghai before. There were about four hundred regular soldiers, some of whom were exceedingly well-formed, lusty men, and clothed in an appropriate costume—a short tunic girdled around the waist, full trousers gathered at the knees, and tight leggings—but the greater portion were evidently porters and peasants, hired for the occasion, to swell the ranks of the soldiery, and produce an impression of the Imperial power.

There were in the procession some very curious weapons, which I do not suppose any other army in the world can exhibit. In addition to pikes for sticking the enemy, poles for punching them, clubs for beating them, and flails for threshing their heads, I saw some wooden beams about five feet long with handles at each end, the use of which is—to *push them out of the way!* When part of the procession was retarded at any point, the companies behind them made up the loss, by rushing down the street at full speed, leaping in the air as they went, charging with their lances, swinging their flails and shaking their clubs, with cries which were meant to be terrific, but which were ludicrous in the extreme. Among the officers who rode on shaggy native ponies, we recognized the venerable Colonel, who bowed to us with a touch of pride in passing. Last of all, preceded by yellow banners and a deafening tem

pest of gongs, came the Taou-tai himself, in his green sedan chair, followed by the Government executioners, in red dresses and high conical caps, decorated with the long tail-feathers of the pheasant. The grave and self-satisfied air of the high official was most amusing. The whole thing was like a Chinese travesty of Don Quixote. After parading through the principal streets of the foreign settlement, the procession returned to the city, which it entered by the western gate.

A few days afterwards, Col. Marshall returned the visit of the Taou-tai, at his official residence within the city. He was accompanied by Dr. Parker, Secretary of Legation, and Mr. Cunningham, Vice-Consul. The party set out in sedan chairs, crimson cards having been sent in advance, according to Chinese custom. Along the way—a distance of a mile or more—the Taou-tai had stationed attendants with gongs, which were direfully beaten, as we passed. It was a raw, rainy day, and the streets had more than their usual quantity of mud and filth. After entering the city gate, I, who was last in the procession, was rather startled at finding my chair suddenly dropped in the mud. Looking out, I found the bearers deliberately bargaining at a stall for new straw-sandals, which they purchased and put on their feet leisurely enough, before they picked me up again. On reaching the Taou-tai's residence, the salute of three guns had been fired, and the discordant noises of a dozen dire instruments were dying away. I was carried through a wooden portal of a dark-red color, across a paved court-yard, and finally deposited in a portico or verandah, where the Taou-tai had just formally received the Commissioner and the rest of his suite. The attendants made a loud announcement of some kind as I

passed the portal, which was repeated from one to the other, till it reached the Taou-tai at the same time with myself.

We were conducted through a plain but spacious hall, open on two sides to the air, across a small inner court, and into another hall, or audience-room, partially closed by movable screens. It was gaudily furnished, but without an extravagant show of wealth. The predominant color was dark-red, and the walls were relieved with painted tablets of light-blue or green, containing long inscriptions. The floor was covered with a red felt cloth, and straight-backed chairs of camphor-wood were placed around small tables of the same material, containing boxes of sweetmeats. The Commissioner was conducted to a raised divan in the centre, covered with red cloth, upon which he and the Taou-tai seated themselves, with refreshments between them. The latter was more at his ease than on the former occasion, and did the honors of his mansion with more grace than I had anticipated. The conversation was animated, and principally of a general nature, though he made occasional reference to the rebellion. After his manifestoes concerning the success of the Imperialists, I did not consider his expressions on the subject as worthy of much attention, and the commencement of the material part of the entertainment soon gave me a more interesting field of observation.

Cups of birds-nest soup were presented to us, together with porcelain spoons and chop-sticks of ivory and silver. This curious dish fully justifies the taste of the Chinese; it is exceedingly delicate and nutritious. The Chinese wine, served warm, in square silver cups, was also quite palatable, and there was a preparation of almonds, sugar, and rice flour, boiled into a paste, to which we all did full justice. It was, however, a light

collation rather than a regular meal, and the greater part consisted of dried and candied fruits, such as oranges, dates, citrons and various kinds of nuts. At the conclusion segars were offered to us, while the Taou-tai took his bamboo pipe. There was a host of attendants, all prompt, silent, and respectful. Sam-qua was too long a resident of Canton, not to have taken some hints from the habits of the foreign merchants there.

At our departure, he accompanied the Commissioner to the outer court. Three guns were fired off as the chair of the latter passed through the portal; the musicians, stationed in a gallery on the side of the court, struck up a horrible discord, which made the gongs that sounded along our homeward march melodious by contrast. The curious natives thronged the streets, to stare at us, and it was a relief when we reached the foreign suburb of Shanghai.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

INCIDENTS OF LIFE IN SHANGHAI.

Spring at Shanghai—Appearance of the Country—Crops—National Conveyance of China—Houses of the Lower Classes—Sail on the Elver—The Pagoda—Village Market—Sweetmeats and Children—Showers of Cash—Chinese Horticultural Exhibition—The *Lan-wei*—Chinese Love of Monstrosity—Moral Depravity of the Race—Landscape Gardening—A Soldier and his Drill—The Cangue—Visit of the *Hermes* to Nanking—The Rebels—Their Christianity—Condition of the City—Arrival of the U. S. Steam-Frigate *Mississippi*—Commodore Perry—Col. Marshall's Chinese Dinner—Mr. Robert Fortune.

SPRING, at Shanghai, comes slowly. When we arrived, at the close of March, the trees were budding into leaf, but did not attain their full foliage before the middle of May. The weather during April was dull and showery, with a lower temperature than would be looked for elsewhere in the same latitude. There was scarcely an evening when fire was not necessary to our comfort. Until all the summer crops had been planted, and for a week or two afterwards, there was little satisfaction in going into the country, where the vernal odors of grass and flowers were wholly lost in the intolerable stench arising from pits of manure. But towards the end of April, when the rumors of war became less frequent, when the shocks of earth

quakes had subsided, and the sun made his appearance from time to time, I took many afternoon strolls in various directions, and became familiar with the country life of the Chinese.

There is nothing striking or picturesque in the scenery of this part of China. The country is a dead level, watered with sluggish creeks, and intersected with ditches and canals. It is studded far and near with shapeless mounds of earth erected over obsolete natives; sparingly dotted with clumps of dark cedar-trees or plantations of the inestimable bamboo, and enlivened by occasional hamlets, which, shaded with bushy willows, have a pleasant, rural aspect when seen from a distance, but are mostly disgusting when you draw near. The soil is a very rich clay-y loam, and yields abundant crops of rice, wheat, sweet potatoes, beets, beans, pea-nuts, and the other staples of Chinese food. Much of it must have been originally marsh land, which has been drained by canals and the gradual rise of the coast, from the deposits of the Yang-tse-Kiang. The paths from village to village are on narrow dykes, winding between the fields, and crossing the ditches by bridges formed of single large slabs of granite, which are brought down from the hills. Occasionally you see a highway, six or eight feet broad, paved with blocks of stone, laid transversely, but I doubt whether a carriage could go in any direction further than two or three miles from the city. I sometimes met a Chinaman of the better class mounted on a sturdy little pony, and once encountered a traveller from Soo-Chow in the national conveyance of China—the wheelbarrow! He was seated sideways, with his legs dangling below, while his baggage, placed on the opposite side, served to trim the vehicle. It was a one-

horse wheelbarrow, propelled by a stout coolie, with a strap over his shoulders, and made a doleful creaking as it passed. The persons whom I met showed every sign of civility and respect, and had time permitted, I might have extended my strolls to a distance of thirty or forty miles, without meeting any hindrance. In the villages I frequently entered the houses of the people, to which they made no objection, but seemed rather gratified at the distinction. The domestic arrangements were very simple; the dwellings were all of one story, rarely having more than two rooms, and containing only the rudest appliances of a household. The beds were usually of matting, with bamboo pillows, but the poorer natives slept upon coarse mats laid upon the earth, with wooden stools under their heads. It is not advisable to be too curious, or to spend much time in inspecting Chinese dwellings, on account of their abundant vitality. For the same reason, many features of domestic life among the lower classes must be passed over in silence.

We made an excursion one morning to the pagoda, which stands on the left bank of the Whang-po River, about eight miles above the city. The wind was fair, and Mr. Cunningham's fleet clipper-yacht soon carried us past the thousand junks and notched brick walls of Shanghai. It was in the beginning of May, and the shores, low and greenly wooded, bore some resemblance to those of the Delaware, below Philadelphia. We passed several large junks, which had come through from the Bay of Hang-Chow, by a canal which leads from the old city of Chapoo to the Whang-po River. After a run of an hour and half, we moored the yacht at the mouth of a small creek, and walked to the pagoda, which was a quarter of a mile distant. It is built of pale red sandstone, and with its

ten stories diminishing in beautiful proportion, each overhung by a pointed, up-turned roof, it is truly a graceful object. The pagodas are the only symmetrical things in Chinese architecture, and I think it doubtful whether the idea of them was not first borrowed from India. All of those which I saw, or which travellers generally see in China, are comparatively modern.

There was a little village scattered about the foot of the structure, and the country people were holding a market there. The supply of vegetables, sweetmeats, and cheap, coarse articles of dress was very large: the jugglers were present in strong force, and the beggars were over-zealous in their attendance, I amused myself with buying many varieties of nondescript pastry and confections, at such cheap rates, that it was difficult to pay little enough. I then distributed my purchases among the children, the larger of whom took them with avidity, while the younger and more shy held back from the foreign barbarian, until encouraged by their pleased parents. To escape from the popularity which followed, we climbed to the summit of the pagoda, whence we beheld a circular panorama, described by a radius of twenty-five miles. It was beautiful only from its extent, and its monotony of green, through which wandered a few brown veins of rivers. I soon turned to contemplate the more animated mandscape at my feet. Seeing a crowd of beggars standing together in dejected attitudes, I cast a handful of cash into the air, in such wise that the coins would fall plump among them, and then dropped behind the parapet of the pagoda. There was a metallic rattle on the stones, followed by a cry of amazement, for nothing was visible, of course, and they had not seen us ascend the pagoda.

Several other miraculous showers followed, but a desire to see the beggars scramble, betrayed us at last. We were greeted with loud cries, and arms thrown greedily aloft, beckoning for more. I cast among them upwards of twenty handfuls, and by thus expending the munificent sum of forty cents, enjoyed the feelings of a monarch, who scatters golden largesse.

One day I attended a native horticultural exhibition, which was held in an old temple, within the walls. The open courts of the building were filled with rows of flowering plants, in earthen pots and vases, which were also arranged in circles around some weak fountains in the centre. There were some fine specimens of the *mau-tan*, or peony, white, pink, and crimson, and with an odor very similar to that of the rose; but the most admired flower seemed to be the *lan-whei*, a bulbous water-plant, with a blossom resembling that of the orchids in form, yet of a dirty yellowish-green hue. The great aim of the Chinese florist is to produce something as much unlike nature as possible, and thus this blossom, which, for aught I know, may be pure white, or yellow, in its native state, is changed into a sickly, mongrel color, as if it were afflicted with a vegetable jaundice, or leprosy. There was a crowd of enthusiastic admirers around each of the ugliest specimens, and I was told that one plant, which was absolutely loathsome and repulsive in its appearance, was valued at three hundred dollars. The only taste which the Chinese exhibit to any degree, is a love of the monstrous. That sentiment of harmony, which throbbed like a musical rhythm through the life of the Greeks, never looked out of their oblique eyes. Their music is a dreadful discord; their language is composed of nasals and consonants; they admire whatever is distorted or un

natural, and the wider its divergence from its original beauty or symmetry, the greater is their delight.

This mental idiosyncrasy includes a moral one, of similar character. It is my deliberate opinion that the Chinese are, morally, the most debased people on the face of the earth. Forms of vice which in other countries are barely named, are in China so common, that they excite no comment among the natives. They constitute the surface-level, and below them there are deeps on deeps of depravity so shocking and horrible, that their character cannot even be hinted. There are some dark shadows in human nature, which we naturally shrink from penetrating, and I made no attempt to collect information of this kind; but there was enough in the things which I could not avoid seeing and hearing—which are brought almost daily to the notice of every foreign resident—to inspire me with a powerful aversion to the Chinese race. Their touch is pollution, and, harsh as the opinion may seem, justice to our own race demands that they should not be allowed to settle on our soil. Science may have lost something, but mankind has gained, by the exclusive policy which has governed China during the past centuries.

I soon grew tired of the jaundiced *lan-wheis*, and diverted myself with examining a labyrinthine garden in the rear of the temple. It was a piece of rock-work, of the most absurd and grotesque character. The fragments of gray, disintegrated limestone were plastered and riveted together in the form of precipices and mountain-peaks, one of which was at least twenty feet high, with a cork-screw path encircling it many times before it allowed the adventurous traveller to mount the capstone. In the crevices of the rocks were little basins of soil

in which magnolias and *mau-tans* were growing, while, far down in the depths of the valleys you saw several green, slimy lakes, from three to five feet in length. After having sufficiently enjoyed this sublime view, I discovered a means of exit through a low, arched grotto into the street, and did not scruple to make use of it.

Continuing my walk at random, I came to a very old, dilapidated temple, in the southern part of the city. The jolly fat idols had been removed, and the place was occupied as a barrack by some of the Taou-tai's troops. Several indolent soldiers were hanging about a tank of water in the centre of the court-yard, and the thought of seeing a Chinese military drill came into my mind. I offered the least lazy and most good-humored of the party fifty *cash* to perform his exercise, and found him quite willing to comply. He soon appeared with a wooden weapon about five feet long and one foot wide, with a handle like that of a fiddle-bow, running parallel to its length, and fastened at each end. This he brandished in the air, first on one side, then on the other, sometimes swinging it like an axe, sometimes drawing it downwards with both hands like a comb, and occasionally thrusting one end of it behind him, as if he was warding off an attack in the rear. The attitudes were very amusing, and each imaginary blow was accompanied with a howl of defiance, and an expression of face which was meant to be terrific. The performance lasted about half an hour, and I considered that the cash were well earned.

On my return home, I saw near the city gate a man suffering the punishment of the *cangue*. This is a heavy wooden wheel, which is fastened around the criminal's neck, and projects outwards so far that he cannot touch his head with his

hands. He therefore runs the risk of starvation, unless he has friends or relations, who are able and willing to feed him. All the inconveniences resulting from this mode of punishment soon become tortures, and when the culprit is sentenced to undergo it for two or three months, his plight would be insupportable to any but a Chinaman. The man in question had a wretched, haggard look, but I saw no one who seemed to commiserate him in the least.

On the 23d of April, the British war-steamer *Hermes* left for Nanking, with Sir George Bonham on board. As the *Hermes* drew four or five feet less water than the *Susquehanna*, it was supposed that she would be able to proceed up the Yang-tse-Kiang. Sir George's object was to communicate with the rebels, and inform them of the entire neutrality of the foreign powers. The Taou-tai of Shanghai had circulated reports throughout the interior, that all the foreign war-steamer were in league with him, and were to be dispatched to Nanking. The *Hermes* returned on the 5th of May, having been absent twelve days. She was four days in reaching Nanking, having twice grounded in the river. She passed the outposts of the rebel army near Chin-Kiang-foo, where she was fired upon, but very slightly damaged. Having reached the anchorage at Nanking, the officers succeeded in communicating with the rebel chiefs, by whom they were well received. The latter stated that they were not hostile to foreigners, and had never intended to attack Shanghai. They professed to be Christians, and declared that their leader, Tae-ping, was a younger brother of Jesus Christ. From various indications, however, it was supposed that their Christianity, such as it was, was founded on the belief that, through its supernatural influ

ence, they would obtain the same divine favor to which they ascribed the success of the English in the late Chinese war.

Mr. Meadows sent to the American Embassy copies of books which were obtained from the rebels. Among them was Gutzlaff's translation of the book of Genesis. They also had the Ten Commandments, which they promulgated as a divine law, changing the seventh so as to read thus: "Thou shalt not commit adultery, nor smoke opium." The latter offence is punished with death. The chief Tae-ping (Universal Peace,) was not seen by Sir George Bonham, nor any of his suite. He professed to be divinely inspired, receiving his communications direct from the Almighty. Nanking was almost wholly deserted by its former inhabitants, and its streets presented a pitiable spectacle. The rebels went about dressed in gorgeous silks, which they had taken from the despoiled shops of the merchants; sycee silver was abundant, and the most extravagant prices were paid for umbrellas, buttons, pistols, old clothes, and other articles on board the *Hermes*. Many of the sailors made large sums in thus disposing of their superfluous garments. A splendid robe of the most costly furs was given in exchange for a worn-out midshipman's uniform. Hundreds of the rebels visited the *Hermes*, while she lay before the city, and some of her officers went ashore, and even passed a night among the people, without the least molestation.

The steamer *Bombay* arrived on the 3d of May, bringing the long-delayed European and American mails, together with the intelligence that the U. S. steam-frigate *Mississippi*, the flag-ship of the Japan Expedition had left Hong Kong for Shanghai. Early on the following morning, we saw from the

house-top, through a glass, her broad pennant at the mouth of the Woosung River. Although drawing more than twenty feet, she succeeded in crossing the bar without delay, and came up to the city, where she dropped anchor beside the Susquehanna. On the 9th of May, Commodore Perry transferred his pennant to the latter vessel, with the usual ceremonies of firing salutes and manning the yards—a spectacle which drew the greater part of Shanghai to the *bund*. The Commodore became a guest at the American Consulate for the remainder of his stay, and his presence and that of the Mississippi's officers, gave a fresh impetus to the social activity of the foreign population. Thenceforth there were balls, dinners, and other entertainments, in great abundance.

Among these festivities, the most notable was a Chinese dinner which Col. Marshall gave at the Consulate. The building was in a blaze of lanterns and flowers. An arched avenue of colored lights led from the gate to the door, where the visitor ascended between a double row of fragrant white and crimson *mau-tans* to the first story. Here, the quaint silk lanterns were redoubled; curious baskets and urns of grass and shells, filled with flowers, were suspended from the ceiling, and the dining-room, handsomely draped with flags, contained a veritable bower or arbor of greenery enshrining the American eagle. The dinner was prepared with great care, not only the Taou-tai's silver cups and chopsticks, but even his cook having been borrowed for the occasion. The dishes were numerous and palatable, but hardly substantial enough for a civilized taste. They were mostly soups, and some of them were distinguished by very peculiar flavors, which I found difficult to analyze. The choicest dishes were bird's-nest soup

shark's fins, and a dark, stringy substance, which the Taou-ta said he had procured from Peking, at great expense. The dinner was followed by a grand ball, and a supper in European style.

There were rumors of trouble at Ningpo, and the French steamer *Cassini* made a trip to that city. Mr. Robert Fortune, author of "Wanderings in China," and "A Journey to the Bohea Mountains," who had arrived in Shanghai a short time previous, also left for Ningpo, whence he proposed making new journeys into the interior. Mr. Fortune is a plain, unassuming man, and an enthusiastic botanist, and by his daring excursions into the tea districts, has added greatly to our knowledge of the interior of China. Mr. Forbes, who went to Ningpo in the *Cassini*, returned about the 10th of May in a Chinese junk, by way of Chapoo.

CHAPTER XXIX

THE U. S. EXPEDITION TO JAPAN

State of Things at Shanghai—The Sloop-of-War *Plymouth*—Preparations for Departure—Entering the Naval Service—Its Regulations—Procuring a Uniform—The Master's-Mates—Establishing a Mess—Departure for Japan—A Gale—Shipwrecks—Standing out to Sea—Arrival at the Great Loo-Choo Island—A Missionary—Beauty of the Harbor of Napa—The Native Authorities—Going Ashore—Jumping over a Coral Reef—Landing—The Town of Napa-Kiang—Spies—Dr. Bettelheim's Residence.

IMMEDIATELY after the transfer of Commodore Perry's broad pennant to the *Susquehanna*, active preparations were made for the departure of the squadron on its mission to Japan. Since the return of the *Hermes* from Nanking, there was very little apprehension of danger, either among the Chinese or the foreign residents. The former had very generally returned to their homes and opened their shops, in accordance with the Taou-tai's commands. The American commercial houses nevertheless, addressed a letter to Col. Marshall, asking that they should not be left entirely defenceless—on account of which application, Commodore Perry detached the sloop-of-war *Plymouth* from the squadron for a few weeks longer. Col. Marshall, who had as yet not been able to find a proper Chinese

official to receive his letters of credence, finally made application to the Court at Peking. He desired to proceed to the mouth of the Pai-ho River, in the Yellow Sea, and there await his answer, but a council of sailing-masters, called together by the Commodore, reported, after a long consultation, that it would be impossible to get within sight of the shore in a vessel drawing so much water as the *Plymouth*. Tuesday, the 17th of May, was appointed for the departure of the *Susquehanna* and *Mississippi*, the sloop-of-war *Saratoga* having already sailed from Macao for an unknown rendezvous.

I had extended my travels to China with a strong hope of being able to accompany the Expedition to Japan. On the arrival of Commodore Perry, I learned that very strict orders had been issued by the Navy Department against the admission on board of any of the vessels, of any person not attached to the service and subject to its regulations. Capt. Buchanan, who had no clerk, and was justly entitled to one, very kindly proposed that I should go in that capacity; but as there were two vacancies in the rank of master's-mate, which the Commodore had power to fill, and as my willingness to enter the service temporarily, removed the only objection he had urged, I decided to take the latter chance. I therefore signed an article of allegiance, and became an officer of very moderate rank, with unlimited respect for my superiors, and the reverse for my inferiors. This enlistment, which I most gladly and readily made, rendered me subject to all the regulations of the Navy Department; especially to that order promulgated for the benefit of the officers of the Expedition, which obliged them to give up to the Department every journal, note, sketch, or observation of any kind made during the cruise. I there

fore closed my old journal, and commenced a new one from the day I entered—which latter is now in possession of the Navy Department, according to agreement. Nearly all the officers, on the contrary, had ceased keeping journals from the day the order was issued. I should have had some hesitation in submitting myself to that almost absolute power, which is the life of the Naval Service, had I not already known so well the officers of the *Susquehanna*. My confidence was not misplaced, for, from the Commodore down, with but a single exception, I received nothing from them but kindness and courtesy, during my connection with the service.

I had some difficulty in procuring the necessary uniforms. There were none but Chinese tailors in Shanghai, who work entirely from ready-made patterns. By foraging among the officers I procured a sufficient number of anchor buttons, and a crest for my cap; in the shop of a French merchant I found some cloth of the proper color; I borrowed one coat for the sleeves, another for the body, and another for the arrangement of buttons; and by keeping a watchful eye upon the tailor, finally succeeded in obtaining both undress and full-dress uniforms, which came within two buttons of being correct. Having assumed the blue, and buttoned my coat up to the throat in order to display the eighteen gilded eagles and anchors which decorated its front, I walked down the bund to try its effect. I endeavored to appear careless and self-possessed, but the first man-of-war'sman who passed betrayed me. I know that I actually blushed when he lifted his tarpaulin, and I doubt to this day whether I returned his salute. A little further, a jolly, red-headed tar, with a large cargo of *samshoo* aboard, came up and shook my hand heartily, promising me an

oyster supper in New York, after our return. I felt more at home in the service after such a characteristic welcome, and was not afterwards embarrassed by my buttons.

The places of acting master's-mates (the rank of warranted master's-mates being now obsolete) had been purposely left vacant, in order that it might be filled by artists and naturalists, who would thus belong to the service and be under the control of its officers. The rank and uniform is that of a passed midshipman, but the pay—twenty-five dollars a month—is considerably less than half of what the latter receives. On the East India station it just about suffices for the payment of the mess-bill. There were three master's-mates on board the *Mississippi*—Mr. Heine, the artist; Mr. Draper, who had charge of the telegraph apparatus; and Mr. Brown, daguerreotypist. As they were specially subject to the Commodore's orders, they were transferred to the *Susquehanna*, and I joined them in forming a separate mess, to which was added Mr. Portman, the Commodore's interpreter and clerk. The vessel was so crowded, that we had some trouble in finding sufficient room for our mess-table and stores, but were finally placed upon the orlop deck, beside the main hatch, and over the powder magazine. My cot was slung in the same place at night, where it was brought by a sturdy main-topman, who had it in his particular charge. A cadaverous Chinaman, A-fok by name, was shipped as our steward, and an incorrigible black deck-hand appropriated to us as cook. We were thus provided with all the requisites of a mess, and although there was some grumbling from time to time, on account of the heat and darkness of the orlop deck, the incompetency of the steward, or the villainy of the cook, I found my situation

quite as comfortable as I anticipated, and never regretted having embraced it.

At last the day of our departure, the 17th of May, arrived. It was a warm, calm, sunny day, and as the black volumes began to rise from the smoke-stacks of the two steam-frigates, the whole foreign population of Shanghai flocked down to the bund. Mr. Forbes and Mr. Cunningham came on board for a pleasure trip to the Saddle Islands, whence they intended returning in a large junk which had been sent down with a final instalment of coal. About three o'clock the cornet was hauled down, the anchor hove, and we slowly threaded our way through the shipping, the band, stationed on the hurricane deck, playing in answer to the cheers and shouts which followed us. It was an exciting moment, for we were now leaving the frontiers of commerce and national intercourse, and our next port would be in one of those strange, exclusive realms which we hoped to open to the world. The cannon and the music ceased; the shouts became faint and died away altogether; the houses of Shanghai gradually passed out of sight, and before sunset we came to anchor in the Yang-tse-Kiang, off Woosung.

The next day we proceeded down the river. There was a gale of mingled wind and rain, and we ascertained that the store-ship *Supply*, which had come from Hong Kong to join the squadron, was aground on the North Shoal. She was in imminent danger for a time, but was finally got off without damage. In the evening, the junk which had been laden with coal ran aground, and soon became a complete wreck. Her crew, consisting of twelve men, were with difficulty saved by the *Mississippi's* boats. The *Susquehanna* had a large boat in tow, belonging to Mr. Cunningham, and by some misman-

agement of the native sailors, one side of it was stove in against the frigate's quarter. The wreck still held by the hawser, dragging after us, the sea breaking over the terrified Chinese, who pounded their foreheads against the piece of deck that remained, and implored to be taken off. This was done as soon as possible, and the drenched Celestials had no sooner touched our deck than they prostrated themselves, and thumped their heads vigorously at the feet of the officer.

On account of the gale, and the dangerous navigation of the Archipelago of Chusan, the squadron remained two days near the Saddle Islands. The weather then became clear, and Messrs. Forbes and Cunningham, with the shipwrecked Chinamen, having found a means of return to Shanghai, left us, and the squadron stood out to sea. Shortly after passing the islands a streak of dazzling emerald appeared on the horizon, heralding our release from the treacherous waters of the Yang-tse-Kiang. The brown, muddy tint gradually passed off the hemisphere of sea, like an eclipse from the face of the sun; the vessels fell into line, the *Susquehanna* in advance, and the *Mississippi*, with the *Supply* in tow, following on our port quarter, and we were at last under way for the unknown rendezvous. The ship's course soon revealed to us what we had suspected—that the squadron would first proceed to the Great Loo-Choo Island.

With calm weather, we sailed three or four days in a south-east direction, and on the morning of the 26th saw some scattered, uninhabitable islands belonging to the Loo-Choo group. The day was clouded, with frequent thunder-showers; but we succeeded in making the Great Loo-Choo early in the afternoon, and with the assistance of Capt. Beechey's chart, felt our

way into the harbor of Napa-Kiang, at its south-western extremity, before dark. As the island first came in sight we descried a vessel off the weather-beam, which soon proved to be the *Saratoga* making her way up, punctual to her appointment. The first landmark we made was Abbey Point, at the southern end of the harbor, by means of which, and a curious bluff called Capstan Rock, we were enabled to find the narrow entrance leading between coral reefs to a safe anchorage within. The rain began to fall in torrents soon after our arrival, and the green, misty hills of the island were soon lost in the gloom of night.

The same evening a native boat came off, bringing Dr. Bettelheim, the sole European resident on the island. He was a missionary, who had been placed there by a society of English naval officers, who, about seven years ago, formed the design of Christianizing those parts, and selected the Dr. as their first instrument. It was eighteen months since any vessel had touched at Napa, and the missionary came on board in a state of great excitement. He was received by the Commodore, and after a stay of an hour, returned to the shore.

When the next morning dawned, bright and clear, I thought I had never seen a more lovely landscape than the island presented. The bay was clasped by an amphitheatre of gently undulating hills, in some places terraced with waving rice-fields, in others covered with the greenest turf, or dotted with picturesque groups of trees. Bowers of the feathery bamboo—next to the palm, the most graceful of trees—almost concealed the dwellings which nestled together in the little dells opening into the bay, and which, with their stone enclosures and roofs of red tiles, hinted of a much higher civilization than we had expected

The spurs of the hills which ran down to the sea terminated in abrupt bluffs, in many places so shattered and irregular as to resemble castles and abbeys in ruins. Beyond and to the right of Capstan Rock, we saw the houses of the town of Napa, with the mouth of a little estuary, wherein some Chinese and Japanese junks were anchored; while on the top of the highest hill three or four miles inland, one of the bastions of the Regent's castle towered above the trees. The exquisite harmony in the forms of the scene, the dazzling green of the foliage, and the sweet, delicious air which came to us off the shore, charmed us like a glimpse of Paradise, after the monotonous levels and polluted atmosphere of China.

There was no intercourse with the shore until after some negotiations had taken place between the Commodore and the high native dignitaries. The latter came off in rude, flat-bottomed boats, propelled with paddles. They were exceedingly grave and dignified men, dressed in loose robes of grass cloth, and with curious yellow caps on their heads. Both their persons and their garments were scrupulously clean; their long, silky beards were carefully combed out, the particular hairs lying parallel to each other, and every thing about them gave evidence of a care and neatness which I have never seen surpassed. They were greatly astonished at the size and strength of the steamer, and when one of the field-pieces was fired three times as a salute, several of the attendants dropped upon the deck from the shock of their surprise.

On the second day after our arrival, when the Commodore had come to a good understanding with the native authorities, he gave the officers of the squadron permission to go ashore. I jumped into the first boat which put off from the Susque

hanná, and which happened to be manned by a dozen Chinese, from a number who had been shipped at Shanghai, as deck hands. The wind was blowing fresh, the sea was running briskly, and the Chinamen, who had probably never had an oar 'n their hands before, did little but catch crabs and confuse each other. We rapidly drifted away from the vessel and away from the shore, until, finally, one of the midshipmen ordered the coolies to cease, and with the assistance of two or three others stepped the mast and set the sheet, to run in on the wind. But he did not know the harbor, and in the twinkling of an eye, the boat, which was running at the rate of seven or eight knots, dashed upon a coral reef. It was too late to wear off, so we bounced across it, the boat striking upon the tops of the growing coral trees, with every wave. Having reached deep water again, we found ourselves in a lake, or pool, completely encircled by the reef. The only means of escape was to jump back again, which we finally accomplished without staving in the boat, and after a wearisome pull, reached the steamer, where we procured a fresh crew, and were finally put ashore at the foot of Capstan Rock.

By this time several boats had landed, and groups of officers and men were strolling towards the town. Behind a hedge of the prickly *pandanus*, there was a cluster of bamboo huts, inhabited mostly by fishermen—lank, tawny, half-naked figures, who looked at us with a sort of listless curiosity. Their families were all concealed within the houses. As we advanced towards the town, I noticed that two or three individuals, in robes of salmon-colored grass-cloth, hovered near each party, and, without seeming to watch closely, took note of every movement that was made. We soon entered the main

street, which was broad and well paved, and as neat as it could well be. It was enclosed by massive walls of coral and porous limestone, about ten feet high, over which hung a variety of flowering shrubs and the branches of glossy tropical trees, growing in the gardens behind them. The dwellings were within these enclosures, and if we saw, by chance, a gate unlocked, and ventured to enter, we invariably found the place vacant and deserted. The salmon-colored gentlemen did their duty well. We succeeded in getting a very accurate idea of the situation of the town, its size, the character of its architecture, and the outward appliances of its social life; but the inhabitants, except a few men and boys who lingered here and there in the streets, had totally disappeared.

On my return to the vessel, I called at the residence of Dr. Bettelheim, which was a very neat cottage furnished him by the authorities of Loo-Choo, on a slope behind Capstan Rock. His family consisted of his wife, a mild, amiable English woman, and two children. The house was plain, but comfortable, and the view from the neighboring rock enchanting, yet I could not but doubt whether any thing can atone for such a complete removal from the world of civilized men. Even the zeal of the Missionary must flag, when it is exercised in vain. After seven years' labor, all the impression which Dr. Bettelheim appears to have produced upon the natives is expressed in their request, touching from its very earnestness: "take this man away from among us!"

CHAPTER XXX.

VISIT TO THE CAPITAL OF LOO CHOO.

Visit of the Regent—The Island of Loo-Choo—An Exploration of the Interior—Setting Out—Entry into the Capital—Reception—The Old Mandarin in for a Journey—His Resignation—Programme of the Exploring Trip—Espionage in Loo-Choo—Endeavors to Escape it—Taking Families by Surprise—The Landscapes of Loo-Choo—The *Cung-quás*—Watches and Counter-Watches—Commodore Perry's Visit to Shui—Disembarkation—The Order of March—Curiosity of the Natives—March to the Capital—Reception at the Gate—A Deception Prevented—The Viceroy's Castle—The Inner Courts—The Commodore's Reception—A Tableau—Salutations and Ceremonies—Visit to the Regent's House—A State Banquet in Loo-Choo—Ediblee and Beverages—Extent of the Dinner—Toasts—The Interpreter, *Ichirazichi*—Departure—Riding a Loo-Choo Pony—Return to the Squadron.

Two days after our arrival at Loo-Choo, the Regent of the Island paid a formal visit to Commodore Perry, on board of the *Susquehanna*; and Monday, the 6th of June, was fixed upon as the day when the Commodore should return his visit at Shui, the capital, which lies some three or four miles to the north-east of Napa.

The kingdom, or vice-royalty of Loo-Choo, which is tributary to the Japanese Prince of Satsuma, though frequently visited by exploring vessels within the past fifty years, had been comparatively little known previous to our arrival. Hall Broughton, Beechey, and the French Admiral Cecile, had sur

veyed portions of the coast, but the interior of the island remained a *terra incognita*. The officers of H. B. M. steamer Sphinx, which visited Napa in February, 1852, were the first who were received in the royal castle of Shui. The heir to the vice-royalty is a boy, who was about eleven years old at the time of our visit, and the Government was therefore intrusted to the hands of a Regent, until he should have attained his majority.

As soon as communication with the shore had been established, Commodore Perry appointed four officers from the Susquehanna and Mississippi, to make an exploring tour through the island. I had the good fortune to be one of the party. We set out on Monday morning, May 30th, with a week's leave of absence, and after having explored rather more than half the island, returned on the afternoon of June 4th. We were allowed to take with us four seamen, and four Chinese coolies to carry our tents and camping utensils. The party was well armed, and furnished with ammunition and ship's rations for the necessary time. This exploration was in many respects one of the most peculiar and interesting episodes of travel I ever enjoyed. In these days of discovery, a piece of virgin earth is comparatively rare. There are few spots on the Earth's surface, so accessible as Loo-Choo, into which the European race has not yet penetrated. I regret that my application to our Government for permission to copy that portion of my journal describing it, should have been denied, and that hence I am unable to give at present a detailed account of the journey.

The island is about sixty miles in length, from north to south, with a varying breadth of from five to ten miles. The north-eastern extremity, beyond Port Melville, which we were

obliged to leave unexplored, for want of time, is wild, mountainous, and but thinly inhabited. In order to avoid the cunning and deception of the authorities, no previous notice of our journey was given to them. We landed and marched directly into the interior, without so much as saying, "by your leave." We had not proceeded more than half a mile, however, before we were overtaken by a native mandarin of the fifth rank, with several subordinate officers, who had been sent in all haste to follow us and watch our movements. Their faces exhibited considerable surprise and alarm, as they beheld eight armed men, with the cool assurance natural to Americans, taking the direct road to Shui, their capital.

We carried with us, as a token of our nationality, a small boat's ensign, and on arriving at the gate of the capital, one of the sailors fastened it to a light bamboo staff, which he stuck into the barrel of his musket, and thus we bore the flag boldly through the centre of the town and around the very walls of the Viceroy's castle. But rapid as we had been in our march from Napa, scouts were in advance of us, and the capital appeared to be entirely deserted. Every house was closed, and scarcely a soul was to be seen in the streets. The few whom we met glided past us with anxious faces, and the cloud on the brows of our attendant spies grew darker as we advanced. We kept on, nevertheless, and after passing through the town, took a course by the compass, and struck across the hills towards the opposite shore of the island. From the summit of a ridge, about a mile and a half to the eastward, we had a glorious view of green valleys, sloping down to a broad bay beyond which extended the blue horizon-line of the open Pacific

As it drew towards evening, the old mandarin who sus

pected that we were merely making a day's excursion into the country, intimated that it was time to return. We replied by signs, that we were going much further, and would not return for several days. This was more than he had bargained for: he had been appointed to watch us and dare not leave us—and now, willing or not, he must make the tour of the whole island. His look of blank perplexity was at first very amusing, but seeing that there was no help for his case, he submitted to it with true Eastern passiveness, and laughed heartily with us at the prospect before him. I must confess that the thirst for exploration made us somewhat unfeeling. In our desire to see as much of the island as possible within the time allotted to us, we led the old mandarin such a dance as he certainly never performed before. Although he made use of his authority over the natives, and frequently obliged them to carry him in the *kago*, or sedan-chair of Japan, he would come into the encampment every evening, slapping his legs to show how fatigued they were, and amusing us, in a good-humored way, with signs of the great exhaustion he felt. Notwithstanding this, he visited us regularly every morning at daybreak, to inquire after our health, and exhibited so much patience and kindly feeling in every way, that in spite of the annoyance which his office caused us, we all felt a cordial friendship towards him.

We encamped for the night on the shore of the bay, to which the name of Matthews' Bay was given by Commodore Perry, in memory of Lieut. John Matthews, of the *Plymouth* who first surveyed it, and who was afterwards lost at the Bonin Islands, in a typhoon. Travelling northward the next day, over the ridges of the beautiful hills, and by foot-paths through forests, we reached at sunset a village on the shore of

Barrow's Bay. On the road we discovered the ruins of an ancient castle, crowning the summit of a high peak. It was 235 paces in length by 70 in breadth, with walls from six to twelve paces in thickness. We afterwards ascertained that it had been the palace of one of the former kings of Loo-Choo, when the island was divided into three sovereignties. On the third day we proceeded around the head of Barrow's Bay, and across the northern promontory, to a village called "Ching," or "Kanafa." Thence we struck northward into the heart of the island, over a range of mountains covered with dense tropical forests, intending to make the head of Port Melville, on the opposite side, but having swerved too much to the left, came down to the shore at a village called Na-Komma. We spent the fourth night at the village of Un-na, the features of whose lovely valley I have attempted to represent in the frontispiece to this volume. The fifth day was a weary march of twenty-eight miles in a burning sun, over mountains, through tangled thickets, deep rice-swamps, and in the glaring sand of the sea-shore. We halted for the night at a place called Chandokosa, and the next day, after travelling about twenty-five miles in a heavy rain, reached the harbor of Napa, having journeyed more than a hundred miles through a territory previously untrodden by white men.

The perfection to which the system of espionage is carried in Loo-Choo—and consequently in Japan, for the system is no doubt the same in both countries—is almost incredible. I have no doubt that before the second day of our trip was over, the fact was known throughout the whole island, and watchers were set around every village, to look out for our approach. We were surrounded with a secret power, the tokens of which

were invisible, yet which we could not move a step without feeling. We tried every means to elude it, but in vain. The lovely villages with which the island is dotted were deserted at our approach, and the inhabitants so well concealed that we rarely succeeded in finding them. Only the laborers who were at work in the fields were allowed to remain, and even they were obliged to keep at a distance from our path. We changed our course repeatedly, in the endeavor to mislead the spies, but they seemed to comprehend our designs by a species of instinct and wherever we went they had been before us. We scattered our forces, each one taking a separate course, but the spies were still more numerous than we. We could perceive, however, from the demeanor of the natives, that they were well disposed towards us, and felt a strong curiosity to become acquainted with us—and that it was not so much fear of ourselves, as dread of the power of their rulers, which kept them aloof. I had a great desire to learn something of their social and domestic life, and made frequent efforts to accomplish my object, by plunging into the woods from time to time, outstripping the spies, and then darting suddenly into some neighboring village. Although I entered many houses, in two or three instances only did I find the inhabitants within. On my appearance, which must have been very unexpected and startling, the women fell upon their knees, uplifting both hands in an attitude of supplication, while the men prostrated themselves and struck their foreheads upon the earth. I could only assure them by signs of my friendly disposition, and found no difficulty in allaying their apprehensions, whenever the spies gave me time enough. On one occasion, where I found two women employed in weaving the coarse cotton cloth of the country, after the

first surprise was over, they quietly resumed their occupation.

In other respects, the journey was as agreeable as it was interesting. The island is one of the most beautiful in the world, and contains a greater variety of scenery than I have ever seen within the same extent of territory. The valleys and hill-sides are cultivated with a care and assiduity, which puts even Chinese agriculture to shame; the hills are crowned with picturesque groves of the Loo-Choo pine, a tree which the artist would prize much more highly than the lumberman; the villages are embowered with arching lanes of bamboo, the tops of which interlace and form avenues of perfect shade; while, from the deep indentations of both shores, the road along the spinal ridge of the island commands the most delightful prospects of bays and green headlands, on either side. In the sheltered valleys, the clusters of sago-palm and banana trees give the landscape the character of the Tropics: on the hills, the forests of pine recall the scenery of the Temperate Zone. The northern part of the island abounds with marshy thickets and hills overgrown with dense woodland, infested with wild boars, but the southern portion is one vast garden.

The villages all charmed us by the great taste and neatness displayed in their construction. In the largest of them there were buildings called *cung-quis*, erected for the accommodation of the agents of the Government, on their official journeys through the island. They were neat wooden dwellings, with tiled roofs, the floors covered with soft matting, and the walls fitted with sliding screens, so that the whole house could be thrown open or divided into rooms at pleasure. They were surrounded with gardens, enclosed by trim hedges and were

always placed in situations where they commanded the view of a pleasant landscape. These buildings were appropriated to our use, and when, after a hard day's tramp, we had hoisted our flag on the roof and stretched ourselves out to rest on the oft matting, we would not have exchanged places with the old Viceroy himself. As a matter of precaution, we kept regular watches through the night, but the natives also kept a counter-watch upon us. The *cung-qu'* was often surrounded with a ring of watch-fires, and as the inhabitants seized this opportunity of gratifying their curiosity, we frequently saw hundreds of dusky heads peering at us through the gloom until the appearance of one of the Government spies scattered them as effectually as if a bomb-shell had exploded among them.

On our return to the squadron, I was gratified to find myself among the number chosen to accompany the Commodore on his visit to the Regent, at Shui, on the Monday morning following. The hour of departure was fixed at nine o'clock, and the boats pushed off from the different vessels at the same time. The *Susquehanna's* launches and cutters, conveying the field-piece, seamen, bandsmen and marines, presented a very lively and animating show, as they rocked over the swelling waves. The morning was cloudy, with a brisk wind; but though a passing shower threw its veil over the hills while on our way to the landing-place, the sky soon came out bright and blue, and the day was as fresh and pleasant as could have been wished. *

The point of disembarcation was the little village of Tu mai, lying north of the sandy flats (covered at high tides) which separate the promontory of Napa from the hills of the island. From this place it is not more than two miles to Shui

On entering the creek which runs up to Tumai we found most of the boats already arrived, and the marines drawn up in line along the road under a grove of trees. Groups of officers, in undress uniform, were gathered in the shade; the boats' crews, in high spirits, were watching the preparations, and some hundreds of natives, among whom were many of the more respectable class, looked on with evident interest. The Commodore's barge having arrived, he, with Commander Adams, Captain of the fleet, Lieut. Contee, Flag Lieutenant, and Commanders Buchanan, Lee and Walker, passed in review the files of marines and artillerymen.

The procession then formed in regular order. First went the two field-pieces, each with the American ensign displayed, under the command of Lieut. Bent, of the Mississippi; the interpreters, Mr. Wells Williams and Dr. Bettelheim, walked in advance, followed by Mr. Bennet, Master of the Susquehanna, who commanded the first field-piece. After the artillery followed the Susquehanna's band, and a company of marines, under Major Zeilin. The Commodore came next, in a sedan-chair, which our carpenter had made for the occasion. It was carried by four Chinese coolies, with a relay of four more. A marine walked on each side as body-guard, with two of the Commodore's personal attendants. Behind the chair were the Captain of the Fleet, the Flag Lieutenant, and the Commodore's Secretary. Six coolies followed, bearing the presents intended for the Prince and Queen Dowager, guarded by a file of marines. Among them I noticed arms of different kinds, and specimens of American manufactured goods. The officers accompanying the Commodore followed in a body, headed by Commanders Buchanan, Lee and Walker. Their servants, the

Mississippi's band, and a second company of marines, under Capt. Slack, of the Mississippi, closed the procession. The entire number of persons composing it, was about 215, of whom 32 were officers, 122 seamen and marines, and 30 musicians.

It was one of the most picturesque processions of its size that I have ever seen. The beauty of the day, the brilliant green of the wooded hills through which our road lay, and the cheerful strains of the bands, gave the occasion a most inspiring character. Numbers of the natives gathered on both sides of the road to see us pass, and a large crowd followed in our rear. There did not appear to be the least alarm on their part, but a pleased excitement, for the procession, notwithstanding its martial character, had a festive and friendly air. In the narrow lanes branching into the road, the foremost ranks of the crowd knelt, the next stooped, and those in the rear stood upright, in order to allow as many as possible to see the display. Very soon, however, we emerged from the village, passed a large temple at the foot of the hill behind it, and came out upon the open, undulating country south of Shui. The rice-fields rolled in heavy waves before the wind, and the dark green foliage of the groves in which Shui is embowered, glittered in the sun. The natives were grouped here and there, in the shade of clumps of the Loo-Choo pine, and numbers of them were seen running along the ridges between the rice-fields in order to get ahead of us and obtain another view.

The march occupied nearly an hour, the bands playing alternately during the whole time. The road was familiar to me, as we had passed through Shui on our tour of exploration, but the other officers were charmed with the scenery, especially as we climbed the hill on which the capital is built, and saw

the rich cultivated landscape spreading away southward and westward. The Loo-Choo official, appointed to meet us at the landing-place, and accompany us to Shui, proved to be Chang-yuen, the same old Pe-ching, or mandarin of the fifth class, who had been our guide and companion during the expedition. At the gate of Shui, we were met by a crowd of native dignitaries, with their attendants, all in brilliantly clean robes of grass-cloth, and red and yellow hatchee-matchees, as the peculiar cap worn in Loo-Choo is called, upon their heads. The old Regent, and his three venerable coadjutors, the Treasurers of the Kingdom, here made their appearance, and after saluting the Commodore, turned about and accompanied the procession, which passed in through the central arch, without halt, and marched up the great street of the city. There was a large train of native servants, in attendance upon the Regent and Chiefs, bearing umbrellas, "chow-chow" or refreshment boxes, cases for caps, and other articles. The inscription over the gate is "The Central Hill," signifying, according to Mr. Williams, "the place of authority." The lower orders of the natives are not permitted to pass through the central arch.

The main street is lined with high walls, with but few alleys branching out of it. It was kept clear of spectators by the native officers who preceded us, except in a street on the left, leading to the house of the Regent, which was filled with a concourse of persons. On reaching this point, the Regent, who was in advance, requested, through his interpreter, that the procession should proceed at once to his house. As this was evidently a scheme to prevent our entering the castle, a determination on the Commodore's part which seemed to give them much anxiety, Mr. Williams paid no attention to the

request, but marched on toward the castle gate. The reception of the officers of the Sphinx within its walls, left the Commodore no alternative but to exact equal respect.

The Regent did not seem to have anticipated that we should carry the point, for the gate of the castle was closed. A messenger was sent forward at full speed to open it, and make preparations for the Commodore's reception. On reaching the entrance, the artillery and marines were drawn up in line, and the Commodore, followed by his staff and suite of officers, walked past into the castle, while the troops presented arms and lowered the ensigns, and the band struck up "Hail Columbia."

Entering the first gateway, we found a second wall and portal above us, still further strengthened by a natural cliff, upon which part of it was built. Along the foot of this wall and the parapet of the one below, grew clusters of the beautiful sago palm, many of which were in flower. A small stream of water, trickling from an aperture above, fell into a subterranean drain. On either side of it were planted two tall stone tablets, with sculptured inscriptions upon them. Two rudely sculptured lions, nearly the size of life, were placed at the second entrance, which ushered us into an outer court of the palace, on the summit of the height. It was irregular in shape, and surrounded by houses which appeared to be designed for servants and others attached to the royal household. On the eastern side was another gateway, resembling the Chinese portals of honor. It consisted of two arches, and the Commodore and his suite were conducted through the right-hand one. This brought us into what appeared to be the central court of the palace. It was not more than eighty feet square, surround-

ed with one-story wooden edifices, remarkable neither for style nor decoration. The court was paved with gravel and large tiles, arranged in alternate lozenges. The hall of reception was on the northern side, the other buildings, or portions of the main edifice, being closed by screens against all view from without. Into this hall, which, like all Loo-Choo houses, had an outer verandah, the Commodore was conducted, and placed at its head on the right hand, followed by the other officers, according to their rank. Chairs of dark wood, varnished, and made exactly upon the principle of our camp-stools, were brought, and all the guests were soon ranged in a single row along the right hand, and a double one across the bottom of the room, while the Regent and Treasurers sat upon the left side, with a double rank of attendants behind them. The Interpreters occupied a position at the head of the room, between the Commodore and Regent. On the wall above them was a large red tablet, with an inscription in gilded characters, which Mr. Williams translated as signifying: "The Elevated Enclosure of Fragrant Festivities."

Neither the Queen Dowager nor the young Prince made their appearance. Among the reasons urged by the Regent why the Commodore should defer his visit to Shui, was the alleged illness of the Queen, caused by the visit of the officers of the Sphinx. The royal lady's nerves, it was said, had been so agitated by that event, that she had been under medical treatment ever since, and another occurrence of the kind might prove dangerous to her. The Commodore politely offered to send one of his surgeons to prescribe for her, but this was declined. It was probably not considered politic to produce the Prince, on account of his youth. After the first salutations had been

made, tables were brought, and cups of very weak tea presented to the guests. Smoking boxes were distributed around the room, and dishes of leathery twists of gingerbread placed upon the tables. But it was evident that our coming had not been expected, and no preparations made to receive us. The sides of the room were separated from the other parts of the building by paper screens, and I fancied that there were listeners and observers (possibly the old Queen herself) behind them. The whole scene, in fact, could hardly have been less interesting to the native spectators than to ourselves. The strong contrast between the American uniforms of blue and gold, and the simple gray and fawn-colored robes of the four dignitaries who confronted them, as well as between the keen eyes and active, energetic faces of the one race, and the venerable gray beards and impassive features of the other, gave it somewhat of a dramatic air, which rather added to, than diminished the impression it made. Those four personages had all the gravity and dignity which might have belonged to Roman Senators, or rather, to members of the Venetian Council of Ten.

After the usual salutations on both sides, the Commodore invited the Regent and his three associates to visit him on board the *Susquehanna*. He stated that he intended leaving Napa in a day or two, but that he should return again after ten days, and would receive them at any time they appointed, either before or after his absence. To this they replied that they would leave the time of the visit to be fixed by the Commodore himself, whereupon he stated that he preferred it should be postponed until after his return. They acceded to this with apparent gratification. Several large red cards, similar to those used on state occasions in China, were then pro-

luced. The Regent taking them in his hand, all four rose came forward a few steps, and bowed profoundly. The Commodore and all the others rose and returned the salutation. The Commodore then stated, that if there were any articles on board any of the vessels which the Regent might need, or desire to possess, he would gladly supply him with them. They again rose, advanced, and bowed as before. The dignitaries did not seem quite at ease, probably on account of our having stolen a march upon them, in entering the castle.

The interview had lasted nearly an hour, when the Regent rose and proposed that the Commodore should pay him a visit at his official residence. The procession was thereupon formed in the same order, and returned to the street, where we had been invited to enter, on our arrival. The Regent's house was in this street, a short distance from the main avenue. The seamen, marines and musicians remained behind, in charge of a few officers. The Commodore and his suite were conducted into the house, which was rather larger than usual, but not distinguished by any appearance of wealth, or insignia of office. It consisted of a central hall with wings, open toward the court-yard, from which it was only separated by a narrow verandah, approached by a flight of stone steps. The building was of wood, and the pillars supporting it, with the beams of the ceilings, were painted of a dark-red color. The floor was covered with thick, fine matting, each mat being rigorously made according to the legal dimensions.

Four tables were set in the central apartment, and three in each of the wings, and already covered with a profuse collation. Immediately on entering we were requested to seat ourselves. The Commodore, with Commanders Buchanan and

Adams, took the highest table on the right hand, and the Regent and his associates the one opposite on the left. At each corner of the tables lay a pair of chop-sticks. In the centre stood an earthen pot filled with sackee, surrounded with four acorn cups, four large cups of coarse china, with clumsy spoons of the same material, and four tea-cups. From this centre radiated a collection of dishes of very different shapes and sizes, and still more different contents. There were nineteen on the table at which I sat, but I can only enumerate a few of them: Eggs, dyed crimson and sliced; fish made into rolls and boiled in fat; cold pieces of baked fish; slices of hog's liver; sugar candy; cucumbers; mustard; salted radish tops; curds made of bean flour; fragments of fried lean pork, and several nondescripts, the composition of which it was impossible to tell.

The repast began with cups of tea, which were handed around, followed by tiny cups of sackee, which was of much superior quality to any we had yet tasted on the island. It was old and mellow, with a sharp, sweet, unctuous flavor, somewhat like French *liqueur*. Small bamboo sticks, sharpened at one end, were then presented to us. We at first imagined them to be tooth-picks, but soon found that they were designed to stick in the balls of meat and dough, which floated in the cups of soup, constituting the first course. Six or eight cups of different kinds of soup followed, and the attendants, meanwhile, assiduously filled up the little cups of sackee. We had a handsome, bright-eyed youth as our Ganymede, and the smile with which he pressed us to eat and drink, was irresistible. The abundance of soup reminded me of a Chinese repast. Of the twelve courses—the number appropriated to a royal dinner—which were served to us, eight were soups, and many of them so similar in

composition as not to be distinguished by a palate unpractised in Loo-Choo delicacies. The other four were—gingerbread; a salad made of bean-sprouts and tender onion-tops; a basket of what appeared to be a dark-red fruit, about the size of a peach, but proved to be balls, composed of a thin rind of unbaked dough, covering a sugary pulp; and a delicious mixture of beaten eggs, and the aromatic, fibrous roots of the ginger-plant. The gingerbread had a true home flavor, and was not to be despised. The officers did their best to do honor to the repast, but owing to the number of dishes could do little more than taste the courses as they were served up. Although we left at the end of the twelfth course, we were told that twelve more were in readiness to follow.

After the eighth or ninth course, the Commodore rose and proposed as a toast, the health of the Queen Mother and the young Viceroy, adding: "Prosperity to the Loo-Chooans, and may they and the Americans always be friends!" This toast, having been translated to the Regent, appeared to gratify him highly, and it was drunk standing, with Loo-Choo honors, which consists in draining the tea-spoonful of sackee at one gulp, and turning the cup bottom upwards. The Commodore afterwards proposed the health of the Regent and his associates, which the latter returned by giving that of the Commodore and the officers of the Squadron. By this time the anxiety and embarrassment of the Chiefs had entirely worn off, and the entertainment wound up with the best possible feeling. How much of the anxiety was assumed, or what was its cause, we had no means of ascertaining; but from what little I have seen of the Loo-Chooans, I am satisfied that there is a strong basis of cunning in their character. The interpreter on the part of the

Regent was a very intelligent young native, name *Ichirazichi*, who had been educated at Peking, where he remained three years. He spoke a little English, and had some knowledge, both of the geographical position of the United States, and their history. He spoke of Washington as a very great Mandarin. He had a more swarthy complexion than is usually found among the educated Loo-Chooans, a keen black eye, and a shrewd, cunning expression of countenance.

The Commodore left the Regent's house about one o'clock, when the procession formed in the same order as before. The subordinate officials accompanied us to the gate, and the old Pe-ching again took his station in advance. On starting down the hill, the four ponies, which had gone up with us without finding riders, were again led to the rear. Several of us profited by this neglect, to mount for a ride down, and try the temper of the Loo-Choo horses. The ponies were very small animals, of a bay color, but rather active and spirited. They were accoutred like the Chinese horses, with saddles of Turkish fashion, and enormous iron stirrups, curved backwards, so as to admit not only the foot but part of the leg. They were led by grooms, and we could not succeed in bringing them into line behind the rear company of marines, on account of their jealousy of each other. The little chargers kicked and plunged several times with great vivacity.

The sun, shining full in the face of the hill, made our descent a sultry one, but as we came upon the wooded slopes a sea-breeze met us, and groups of the boats' crews who had come off to convey us back to the vessels, were seen under the trees, watching our approach. Several hundreds of the natives followed us, and as we drew near the shore, they were

seen scampering over the rice-fields in every direction, to get a final view of our array. Fifteen boats, each flying the American colors, lay in the mouth of the creek. The Commodore and suite immediately embarked, and the wind being fair, the cutters hoisted sail, and dashed away over the bright blue waves, passing the slow white launches, with their loads of marines and artillerymen. All were on board by half-past two, without any untoward incident having occurred to mar the successful issue of the trip.

CHAPTER XXXI.

VOYAGE TO THE BONIN ISLANDS.

Departure—The Bonin, or Arzobispo Isles—Death of a Chinese Opium Smoker—A Peruvian Bark—Approach to the Bonin Islands—Pilots—Entering Por. Lloyd—Going Ashore—A Settler's Hut—Society on the Island—Mode of Life—An Old Inhabitant and his Mate—Productions of the Island—A Coaling Station for Steamers—Buckland Island—A Basaltic Cavern—English Claims to the Islands.

ON the 9th of June, Commodore Perry left the harbor of Napa in the *Susquehanna*, for a visit to the Bonin or Arzobispo Isles, which lie in Lat. 27° N., Long. $140^{\circ} 30'$ E., or between eight and nine hundred miles from Loo-Choo. We took the sloop-of-war *Saratoga* in tow, leaving the *Mississippi* behind, as we did not expect to be absent more than two weeks.

The Bonin Islands have scarcely been heard of in the United States, except through an occasional whaling vessel, some of which are in the habit of touching there, in order to procure fresh provisions. They are about 500 miles in a southerly direction from the Bay of Yedo, and are called by the Japanese *Mo* or *Mou nin sima*, signifying "uninhabited islands," whence the English term, *Bonin*. In Kämpfer's work on Japan, there is an account of their discovery by the Japanese, two and a half centuries ago, and the same, with a more

minute description of their appearance and productions, is to be found in Klaproth's translation of a Japanese work on the three tributary Kingdoms of Corea, Loo-Choo, and Jesso. They were also discovered by a Spanish Admiral, and named the "Islas del Arzobispo," long prior to Capt. Beechey's visit and survey in 1827. To the latter navigator, however, we are indebted for the first accurate account of their location and extent.

We were favored by the south-west monsoon, and had a delightful run of five days, with nothing to interrupt the uniformity of sea life, except frequent calls to "general quarters," and the death of Mr. Williams' Chinese Secretary. The latter fell a victim to the practice of smoking opium. He attempted to give it up, and this, with a spell of sea-sickness on board the *Saratoga*, so enfeebled him that no medicines produced any effect, and he sank into a state of nervelessness and emaciation shocking to witness. His body was reduced to a skeleton, and all his nervous energy so completely destroyed, that for a week before his death every fibre in his frame was in a state of constant agitation. His face was a ghastly yellow, the cheeks sunken upon the bones, and the eyes wild and glassy with a semi-madness which fell upon him. His whole aspect reminded me of one of those frightful heads in wax, in the museum of Florence, representing the effects of the plague. He was a complete wreck, both in mind and body, and nothing that I ever saw of the results of intoxication from spirituous liquors has impressed me with half the horror.

On the morning of the 12th we passed a Peruvian bark, with a cargo of coolies bound for the guano islands. She was

steering nearly the same course as ourselves, under a cloud of canvas, with studding-sails and royals set, but we did not pass within hail. The sight of a leviathan steamer—the first that ever ploughed those seas—towing a large vessel after her, must have greatly astonished the Peruvians.

At sunrise on the 14th, we saw the Bonin Islands before us, with the Bailly Islands about fifteen miles distant, in a south-easterly direction, and Parry's Group barely visible in the north-east. The three islands of the Bonin Group, Peel, Buckland, and Stapleton, lie close together, within an extent, collectively, of ten miles from north to south. We made for the harbor of Port Lloyd, on the western side of Peel Island, where the only inhabitants—a small community of Kanakas, with some runaway English and American sailors—have taken up their abode. On approaching the entrance to the harbor a gun was fired for a pilot, which, it appeared, was the first intimation the residents had of our arrival. In a short time two canoes appeared, and we were boarded by two natives, who attracted considerable attention, as being the vagabond inhabitants of that remote corner of the world. One of them appeared to be a cross between Portuguese and Kanaka. He wore a tattered straw hat, blue cotton jacket and pantaloons, and was bare-footed. The other was a youth about twenty years old, lithe and graceful in his form, and with a quick, bright eye and rather intelligent face. He was the only native of the island, and the son of a Portuguese named John Bravo.

Their sailing directions were of little use, but the entrance to the port was broad and deep, and we moved on slowly and securely to an anchorage in twenty-one fathoms, abreast a

dense grove of trees, bordering a beach on the northern shore. Nearly east of us rose the high twin peaks, named "The Paps" by Capt. Beechey; a little further to the south, beyond a rocky islet named "Castle Rock," was a narrow beach, at the foot of a ravine, down which flowed a stream, the usual watering-place of the whalers. With the exception of three or four similar beaches, the shores were bold and precipitous, and the mountains behind, rising in steep, picturesque outlines, were covered to their very summits with the richest tropical vegetation.

Towards evening I went ashore in the gig. Near the northern beach there is a bank of coral, dropping suddenly into a track of deep water, which forms what is called "Ten Fathom Hole." This extends so far up the bay, that vessels of the largest size may lie within a hundred feet of the shore, in a position completely landlocked, and sheltered from every wind. The trees which lined the beach were entirely new to me. They had heavy, crooked trunks and boughs, and large ovate leaves of a bright-green color. The settlers called them *tamanas*. Two immense turtles, which had been caught the night before, lay sprawling upon their backs in the shade, and a white man, who described himself as an Englishman named Webb, with two Kanakas, were sitting lazily upon an inverted canoe, made of the hollowed trunk of a tree. The shells of other turtles were lying on the sand, and exhaled not the freshest of odors. An opening through the trees showed us a neat cabin behind, surrounded with a low paling.

The Englishman, who was civil and respectful, though silent, rarely speaking unless in answer to our questions, led the way and opened the door. The interior was small, but exceed-

ingly neat and tasteful. The frame of the hut, and the ridge-poles and rafters were all of equal size, and painted a light blue color. The thatch was of leaves of the fan-palm, and impervious to rain. There was an outer room, with a table and a few chairs, and two sleeping apartments in the rear, which were kept carefully closed during the day, on account of the abundance of mosquitos. The walls were covered with Chinese matting, and a row of gaudily-colored French lithographs of female figures hung across the partition. Within the pale enclosure were two other low, rude structures of palm leaves, one of which served as a kitchen, while the other was appropriated to the Kanakas, a well, and three flourishing papaya trees. Behind the house was a narrow and beautiful plain, covered with sweet potatoes, melons, and sugar cane, with the palm forests of the mountains in the background. The line of trees along the beach was narrow, and merely left to protect the garden-land in the rear from the violence of sudden squalls, which sometimes prevail in the summer.

The Englishman stated that he had been seven years on the island. There was a kind of hesitation in his manner of speaking, which I fancied arose from an absence of intercourse with civilized society, as he seemed to be a man of average intelligence. There was, apparently, little association among the settlers. So far as I could learn, there are no rules of government accepted by them; each lives upon his own soil, by virtue of the right of pre-emption, and interferes as little as possible in the affairs of his neighbors. The oldest inhabitant, who probably exercises a sort of authority in cases of dispute, is a native of Massachusetts, named Savory, who has been on the island since 1831, and is considered the richest of the

settlers. His money has been principally made by selling sweet potatoes to whaling ships, at the rate of two dollars a barrel; in addition to which he has a still, and manufactures rum from sugar-cane. At the time of our visit he had two hogsheads of it, which was said to be of excellent quality. The population is continually floating, with the exception of four or five persons who were among the original settlers of the island. Sailors from the whaling vessels frequently desert, and remain a year or two, after which they embark again. The whalers are mostly American, and, according to the settlers, generally conduct themselves peaceably. There was a flagrant exception, however, in the case of one vessel, the crew of which robbed Savory of \$2,000 and carried off the daughter of Bravo, together with a Kanaka woman. The persons implicated were afterwards arrested at Honolulu for the abduction, but by that time the women were satisfied with their captivity, and declared that they left the island of their own accord.

Further up the beach, we found another hut, inhabited by an old Englishman, who had been there for more than twenty years. He was upwards of fifty years old, of small stature, but hale and active, and the sun, which had bleached his brown hair into a tow color, had burned his face, neck, breast and arms of a deep red. He seemed to have wholly forgotten the world from which he came, and declared his intention never to leave the island, but to die, as he had lived, in that Pacific solitude. He had a Kanaka woman, named Bet, a frightfully fat and ugly creature, but very good humored. On our asking for water-melons, he sent her with a bag into the field, and when she had returned with three or four of the ripest, the good woman sat down to take breath, and never ceased chuck

ling with delight at the rapacity with which we sliced and ate them. We saw a number of banana trees, but it was too soon in the season for the fruit to be ripe. The sweet potatoes were a round, mealy variety, and superior in every way to the Chinese. The old man had a rough apparatus for crushing sugar-cane, and a boiler in which he made molasses from the juice. There were a number of fowls and ducks in the vicinity of all the cabins, but so wild, the people informed me, that it was impossible to take them alive. In fact, the settlers seemed to lack nothing which the simple wants of nature required, and probably preferred the easy, quiet life of the island, and its genial climate, to the society of their homes and the ruder toils which would await them there. There have been moments when I have coveted such a lot; but now, nothing could have been more terrible than the prospect of being left among them. While I inhabit the world, let me be borne on its most crowded stream, and feel the pulses of its deepest and most earnest life!

Commodore Perry saw at once the advantages of Port Lloyd as a station for steamers, whenever a line shall be established between China and California. It is not only the most eligible, but perhaps the only spot in the Pacific, west of the Sandwich Islands, which promises to be of real advantage for such a purpose. It is about 3,300 miles from the latter place, and 1,100 from Shanghai, and almost on the direct line between the two points. If the Sandwich Islands are to be included in the proposed route (as is most probable), Peel Island is even preferable to a port in Japan, which, on the other hand, would be most convenient for a direct northern line from Oregon. The Commodore, on the day after our arrival, obtained from Mr

Savory the title to a tract of land, on the northern side of the bay, near its head. It has a front of 1,000 yards on the water and extends across the island to a small bight on the northern side, which he named Pleasant Bay. The location is admirably adapted for a coaling station for steamers, since a pier fifty feet long would strike water deep enough to float the largest vessel. The soil of Peel Island is the richest vegetable mould, and might be made to produce abundant supplies, while its mountain streams furnish a never-failing source of excellent water.

The Commodore also paid a visit to Buckland Island, accompanied by Commanders Buchanan, Adams and Walker, and a number of officers. The cattle which we had brought from Shanghai were put ashore on the eastern side of Peel Island, at a point where there was good water, and, as Savory stated, a tolerably large tract of table-land. The sheep were left on Stapleton Island, where there were already about six thousand wild goats.

On the day before leaving Port Lloyd, I went in a boat to examine a fine marine cave in a bold island rock, at the southern entrance of the Bay, to which Beechey gave the name of "Southern Head." The trap rock, which here takes a basaltic form, exhibits several large apertures, one of which extends through the Head, to the beach on the opposite side. The entrance is about fifteen feet wide and thirty high, with from one to two fathoms of water. Soon, however, the roof expands to a height of forty or fifty feet, in the form of a Gothic arch, with a longitudinal beam, or keystone, inserted in the centre. After rowing along for twenty-five yards, we came to a beach of smooth pebbles, upon which a light shone through from the other side, and passing a low arch, and climbing a mound of

earth and stones, we stood upon the opposite shore. In a large rocky headland, lying opposite to us, there was a cave a hundred yards long, passing entirely through, and traversed by the canoes of the natives. After taking a bath in the clear, shaded waters, where we had moored our boat, we pulled out again through another branch of the cave, with a narrower entrance. Not far from this there was still another cave, with two entrances, separated by a huge pillar of rock. The water was so clear that we distinctly saw bottom at four fathoms. The bed of the cavern was varied with groves of blue and purple corals, and the rocks beneath the water line were studded with patches of the purest emerald green, caused, apparently, by the combination of some of their component parts with the salts of the sea. Through the dark, rugged arch of the entrance, the bright blue surface of the bay, and the sides of the palmy hills beyond, shone with indescribable lustre, like a picture burnt in enamel.

Capt. Beechey took possession of the Bonin Islands in the name of Great Britain, though with what justice I cannot see, since he could not claim the right of discovery. There was some attempt at one time, I believe, to found a colony, but it has long since been relinquished. The only show of English sovereignty at the time of our visit was a ragged flag, left in the charge of a Kanaka, who hoisted it the day after our arrival. Mellichamp, who was sent to Port Lloyd by the English Consul at Honolulu, had left nearly two years previous, for Guam, where he was then remaining, unable, it was said, to leave the place.

.

CHAPTER XXXII.

AN EXPLORING TRIP THROUGH PEEL ISLAND.

Exploring Parties Appointed—My Part—Setting Out—Climbing the Hills—The Soil and Productions—Land-Crabs—Crossing a Ridge—A Tropical Ravine—Signs of Habitation—A Marquesan and his Household—South Sea Pilots—The Valley—The Forest Again—Trees—Shooting a Wild Boar—The Southern Coast—A Precipice—Dangerous Climbing—A Frightful Ravine—Descending the Precipices—South East Bay—The Nom-Camp—Ascent of the Ravine—The Party beginning to Fag—The Valley Again—A Slippery Ascent—A Man Lost—Firing Signals—Return to the Vessel.

ON the day of our arrival at Port Lloyd, Commodore Perry announced his determination to send two exploring parties into the interior of the island on the following day. Dr. Fahs, Assistant Surgeon, was appointed to the command of one, and myself of the other. A number of volunteers at once offered themselves, and we made our selections and arranged our plans without delay. We were supplied with carbines, ammunition, and haversacks, with a day's rations. The island is not more than six miles in length, in a straight line, so that it was thought that two parties might readily explore the whole of it in the course of a day. Dr. Fahs and I accordingly divided it between us, he taking the northern portion, or that

lying immediately around Port Lloyd, while I decided to strike across the central part of the island to its southern extremity touching by the way, if possible, on Fitton Bay, a harbor on the eastern coast.

My party consisted of Mr. Heine, artist; Mr. Boardman, Midshipman; Mr. Lawrence, Assistant Engineer; Mr. Hampton, Purser's Steward; Dennis Terry, a seaman; Smith, a marine, and a Chinese coolie. We left the ship's side before sunrise, and were put ashore at the watering-place at the head of the bay. I divided the rations and ammunition, allotting to each man his share, so that we all carried light loads. There was no one at the watering-place except a Kanaka, whom we could not obtain for a guide. He pointed out, however, a small foot-path, which he said went over the hills to a Kanaka settlement, about three miles distant. We struck into it at once, plunging into a wilderness of dense vegetation, which furnished a faint type of our experience for the rest of the day.

The path was steep and slippery; the plants were wet with a heavy dew, and the wild parasitic vines which hung from tree to tree, continually caught us in their toils. The trees were principally palm, among which I noticed the true sago palm, from which the sago of commerce is made. The soil was a rich, dark red loam, composed of disintegrated trap rock and vegetable mould. The same soil prevails all over the island, so far as my observations extended, except on the northern shore of Port Lloyd, where it is mixed with a grayish sand and pebbles. Trap rock, of a coarse texture, appeared frequently on the steeper declivities of the ridge, and I noticed growing in the crevices a variety of the *hibiscus*, with a large flower of a dull orange color. The ground was in many places covered with

•

a shower of white blossoms, which I afterwards found had dropped from a tree about thirty feet high, with a small glossy leaf, thick foliage, and a stout trunk of a whitish color.

The forest became more dense as we reached the summit of the ridge. The thick, luxuriant crowns of the palms, above our heads, kept out the rays of the sun, and the trunks and creepers combined made such an impervious shade that it was impossible to see more than fifteen or twenty yards in any direction. The path was but little used, and rather difficult to be traced. As we came into the beds of water-courses leading down the opposite side, the multitudes of large brown land-crabs that scampered out of our path was truly amazing. The ground was alive with them in the cool, moist corners of the ravines, and some of them were fully six inches in breadth. The top of the ridge, an undulating region, furrowed with deep gulleys, was about a mile and a half in breadth, after which we came upon a descent at so sharp an angle that we were obliged to swing ourselves down from tree to tree, to prevent tumbling into the bottom of the ravine. An opening through the woods showed us a wild dell, completely shut in by precipitous mountains, every foot of whose sides, except the walls of naked rock on either hand, was covered with the richest foliage. A stream of good water lapsed over the rocky bottom, fringed by rank thickets of palm and other trees, while the bristling *pandanus* thrust its serried, spiky leaves over the tops of the cliffs, and the long, loose tresses of flowering creepers, shaken from some overhanging bough, swung in the air. The scenery was tropical in every feature, and as wild and rugged as nature could make it.

The ravine opened to the southward into a narrow valley

which showed signs of being inhabited. Crossing the stream we came upon a patch of the *taro* plant, the stalks of which were the highest and most luxuriant I ever saw. We here lost the path, and struck directly through the *taro*. It was fully six feet high, and so drenched with the night's dew that we were speedily wet to the skin. Finding the forest beyond impracticable, on account of its steepness and density, we returned to the bed of the stream. The little valley into which it ushered us was covered with patches of sweet potato, *taro*, pumpkins, tobacco, sugar-cane, and the *sida*, or Indian goose berry, growing with a prodigal strength and luxuriance. Two huts thatched with palm-leaves, stood in the centre of the valley. Finding them both deserted, though exhibiting evidences of having been occupied that morning, we fired our guns, the report of which was answered by a hail. Presently a South-Sea Islander, in a coarse cotton shirt and pantaloons, and with one half of his face tattooed a light blue, made his appearance. He said he was a native of Nukaheva, in the Marquesas, and his name was "Judge." He conducted us around the corner of the mountain, where the valley opened westward to the sea. The stream became a creek deep enough for canoes, in one of which the Judge had just arrived, bringing a large turtle with him. He was already half through with the operation of cutting up the flesh, while four dogs looked on wistfully, waiting to pick the shell when he should have finished. The Judge was apparently in good circumstances, having in addition to his hut, his plantation, his turtles and dogs, a pen of black hogs. I asked him to accompany us to the southern extremity of the island, which he said was about three or four miles distant. There was no path, and he did

not seem inclined to go, but he sent his boy after a companion, who, he said, could pilot us over the hills. The latter was a tawny native of Otaheite, and spoke very little English. He confessed that he knew the way, as well as the wild-boar haunts in the woods, but refused to go without the Judge. As it was next to impossible to find our way without a guide, I settled the matter by taking both.

The valley was bounded on the south by high mountains, which appeared to us impassable, on account of the lines of mural rock, rising one above another to their very summits. The main branch, however, was not that into which we had at first descended, but ran away to the eastward, whence the stream came down a long ravine, between two peaks. The natives informed me that the sea was about half a mile distant, from which I should judge the entire length of the valley to be near a mile and a half, with an average breadth of a quarter of a mile. Its bed is the richest loam, and all the vegetables planted by the settlers were unequalled of their kind. The stream of water is sweet and pure, and the supply is constant in all seasons. I saw several lemons in the Judge's hut, which had been raised in the valley. The tobacco was five feet in height, and had the same pale green, velvety leaves, which characterize the famous tobacco of Latakiah.

We proceeded in a south-eastern direction into the ravine, which we ascended, following the water course. Large rounded masses of trap rock lay in its bed, and still further we came upon large perpendicular crags of greenstone, from ten to forty feet in height. In some places beds of a coarse conglomerate, which had frequently an appearance of sandstone, rested upon the trap. The forest was very dense, and from the moist, unc

tuous nature of the soil, our progress was exceedingly toilsome. The further we ascended, the darker and deeper became the wood, and as the Otaheitan informed us we were now in the neighborhood of wild boars, we crept forward silently and cautiously. While we were resting on the top of a cliff, two of the party, who were in the rear, started a boar and shot at him, but unsuccessfully. After leaving the water course we climbed the side of the ravine by clinging to the roots of trees and the tough cordage of parasitic vines. The party became scattered, owing to the absence of any path, and the impossibility of seeing more than ten yards in any direction. Among the palms I noticed a variety with broad fan-leaves, and leaf-stems six to eight feet in length, the jagged edges of which wounded our hands. There was also a variety of the *pandanus*, with a single straight trunk, from near the base of which projected a number of shoots or props, which became roots after they reached the soil. There were frequently twenty or thirty of them, forming a pyramidal basis to the slender column, which rose about fifteen feet, crowned with its leafy capital.

While halting on the top of the ridge for the rest of the party to come up, the dogs commenced barking in a ravine on the other side. Two of the officers started off at once, and in a short time we heard shots at a distance. We made for the sound, and after plunging through a frightful thicket of the horny-leaved *pandanus*, in the midst of which I found a wild boar's lair, reached the bed of a brook, where the hunters were gathered about a young boar. He was about a year old, and of a dark brownish-gray color, with a long snout, resembling the Chinese hog. We took out the liver and kidneys, and suspended the body to a tree, to be left until our return. In

another half hour we had crossed the dividing ridge of the island, and began to descend the southern side. Through an opening in the foliage I caught a glimpse of the sea, and climbed a tree to obtain a look-out. I found that we were on the brow of a very steep ridge, about 1,500 feet in height, looking down upon a small bay, opening to the south-east. Beyond its southern promontory the sea was again visible, with the group of Bailly's Islands in the distance. The mountains descended in precipices to the water, so that access was impossible, except near the head of the bay, where two abrupt ravines, or rather chasms, showed a speck of sandy beach at their meeting.

The Otaheitan professed to know the way, and set out, creeping slowly down the steep, we following, forcing our way on our hands and knees through almost impervious thickets, until a sudden light broke through the wilderness, and we found ourselves on the brink of a precipice, the height of which we could not then estimate, though I afterwards saw that it must be near two hundred feet. From its base the mountain sloped away so steeply to the brink of other precipices below that we seemed to swing in the air, suspended over the great depth which intervened between us and the sea. My head reeled for a moment, as I found myself perched on such a giddy height, and either retreat or descent seemed impossible. The guide, it was evident, had taken us too far to the left, and it was necessary partly to retrace our steps, in order to regain a position which would enable us to avoid the precipice. We clung cautiously to the strong grass which grew on the brink, and thus crept along for about two hundred yards, over a place where the least impetus would have sent us headlong hundreds of feet below. On this part of the mountain I found a shrub

with a dark, glossy leaf, which diffused a powerful balsamic odor. Finally, attaining a point where the precipice ceased, we commenced going downward at the angle of about 60°. The soil was so slippery, and the vines and horny leaves of the palms hung so low, that the best way of descending was to lie flat on one's back, and slide down until brought up by a thicket too dense to get through.

With an infinite deal of labor, and at the risk of our necks, we at last reached the ravine, or chasm, and hoped that the worst of our toils were over. But the worst was yet to come. I can place implicit faith in Herman Melville's account of the precipices of Typee, after our own experience, which, in fact, bore a striking resemblance to his. The ravine descended by a succession of rocky steps from ten to forty and fifty feet in perpendicular height, down which we clambered with hands and feet, often trusting the soundness of our bones, if not our very lives, to the frail branch of a tree, or to the hold of a root dangling from the brink. As from the top of a tower, we looked on the beach, lying at our very feet, and seemingly to be reached by a single leap, though still far below. Down, down we went into the black depths of the chasm, in constant fear of reaching a wall which we could not pass, until at the junction of another ravine, we came upon the hewn stump of a tree, a sign that others before us had penetrated the wilderness, and heard the roar of the surf near at hand. The seaman, Terry who had accompanied me on the exploring trip through Loo-Choo, and myself, were considerably in advance of the rest of the party. Terry was a man after my own heart, for such an expedition. Nothing could daunt him, and no hard ships could tire him out. We sat down on the beach, under an

overhanging rock, and looked back on the steep down which we had clomb. When I saw it from below, and discerned the last of the party standing on the brink of one of the crags, showing us what our own position had been, I could scarcely believe our descent possible.

The guides called the place "South-East Bay." They stated that it was frequently visited by whalers, for wood and water; which accounts for the stump of the tree, and the presence of a patch of tomatoes, which we found growing in a wild state, along the banks of the stream. The fruit was about the size of a cherry, and very fresh and palatable. When all had arrived, we built a fire under the eaves of the rocks, and while the dry drift-wood was burning to embers, took a bath in the sea. The water was deliciously cool, and the long, heavy swells rolled directly in from the Pacific and broke over our heads. We broiled the boar's liver on pieces of coral, and this, with a ship's ration of salt pork and biscuit, and a few handfuls of raw tomatoes, made us a most palatable repast. By the time we had sufficiently rested, and Mr. Heine had made a sketch of the bay, it was two o'clock, and I therefore broke up the camp and started homeward.

The natives said that there was no other way of returning except the road by which we came. We all shrank from the idea of climbing that terrible path, but there was no help for it. Up we must go, and up we went, clinging for life to the roots of trees, or the sharp little corners of the rocks with one hand, while we clutched our carbines with the other. There was not a breath of air: the thermometer must have shown at least 90°, and the toil was so severe that one of the party became ill, and lagged behind. We were obliged to halt every

five minutes, for two others also began to show signs of exhaustion, and were more than once on the point of giving out. But all things must have an end, and at length we reached the summit ridge, whence the descent to the ravine where we had left the wild boar was comparatively easy, after what we had already gone through. The Otaheitan shouldered the boar, and we returned, with but one or two halts to rest the exhausted members of the party, to the native huts in the valley, where we arrived a little before six o'clock. One of the gentlemen was by this time so much spent that he hired the Otaheitan to carry him in a canoe round to the Kanaka settlement at the southern end of Port Lloyd, the rest of us taking a path which led thither by land.

The evening was cloudy and rain began to fall, which hastened our departure. Ascending the same ravine by which we had reached the valley, as far as the taro patch, the Judge turned suddenly to the left and began climbing the slippery side of the mountain at an angle of about 50° . He declared that this was the usual road, but my eyes, although somewhat exercised in wood-craft, could not detect the least trace of a path. Under the thick clusters of sago palms was a dense undergrowth of fern, in which we could gain no foothold, and were continually falling flat on our faces. The Judge himself began to be fagged by this time, and frequently proposed that we should rest. The others were in no wise averse to this, but I felt little fatigue from the labors of the day, and was so anxious to reach the Kanaka settlement before dark that I hurried them onward. After gaining the summit, the way was easier, and we met with occasional faint traces of a path. Passing over an undulating tract for a mile or more, we came upon the

western slope of the island, overlooking Southern Head, and the entrance to Port Lloyd. I now saw that a deep, picturesque bight made in below the Head to the mouth of the valley we had left, and that the shortest and most usual route of the natives between the two settlements, was by sea. The sides of the hills we traversed were covered with a deep, coarse grass, waist-high, and so thick that we fairly waded through it. It was a fortunate circumstance for us that there are no venomous reptiles on the island.

I was in advance, the others being scattered along the side of the hill, when I happened to notice that one of the party was missing. I sent back the coolie, and then the Judge, and finally ordered a halt, while I returned to look for him. After calling and searching for some time without effect, he was at last found lying in the bottom of a glen, asleep, as he stated. He stumbled along with us for a short time, when he tumbled into the grass, declaring that he was utterly exhausted, and would remain there all night. Finding that we could not get him to go forward, we picked him up by main force, and carried him to the summit of the hill, where I left a man in charge of him while we hastened down, in order to gain the flag-staff above the Kanaka settlement, and fire a volley to bring a boat off for us. We plunged through the cane-fields, stumbled up the hill, and found ourselves on a high cliff, overlooking the bay. The big hull of the *Susquehanna* was barely visible in the darkness. We fired half a dozen volleys, when we heard the report of musketry from the base of the Paps, at the head of the bay. It was, as we conjectured, the party of Dr. Fahs, signalizing like ourselves for a boat. At length, fearful lest our signal should not have been heard, I sent the marine in a

canoe to bring a boat. He met the first cutter half way, but the tide being out, she was obliged to anchor off the reef in front of the settlement, and send the canoe to take us in small companies.

We waited half an hour for our missing comrade, and finally reached the ship's side about 10 o'clock weary and famished. Though I suffered less, I believe, than most of the others it was certainly the hardest day's work of my life.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

VOYAGE TO JAPAN AND RECEPTION THERE.

Return to Loo-Choo—Mails—Departure for Japan—The Island of Ohozima—The Japanese Coast—The Headland of Idzu—Precautionary Measures—Cape Sagami—The Bay of Yedo—Approach to Uraga—A Hint—The Squadron Halts—Japanese Boats—A Talk at the Gangway—The Vice Governor of Uraga—His Reception—The Boats Repulsed—Japanese Boatmen—Watch-fires—Yezaimon, Governor of Uraga—Consultations—An Express to Yedo—The Emperor appoints a Commissioner—Permission to Land—Skilful Negotiations—Scenery of the Bay—The Fortifications—The Peak of Fusi-Yamma—Canvas Defences—A Surveying Party—Sounding along Shore—Forts and Soldiers—Threatened Collision—A Second Survey—A Mirage—Warlike Appearances—Lieut. Bent's Encounter with Forty-five Japanese Boats—Result of the Survey.

ON our return to Loo-Choo, where we arrived on the 24th of June, we found the Plymouth in the harbor. She had left Shanghai in comparative quiet, and with no present apprehension of an attack. She was most welcome, on account of having brought the mails for the squadron. After having been seven months without news from home, the delight with which I received a large package of letters can only be comprehended by those who have had similar experiences. As all the vessels composing the squadron at that time were now at the rendezvous, immediate preparations were made for our departure for Japan. Owing to the foresight with which the vessels had been supplied, little was needed except a stock of fresh provi

sions, which the Loo-Choo authorities, after some delay and equivocation, furnished us at double the ordinary price.

The squadron, consisting of the *Susquehanna* (flag-ship), *Mississippi*, *Plymouth* and *Saratoga*—the two sloops of war being taken in tow by the two steamers—sailed from the harbor of Napa-Kiang, on the 2d of July. On the night of the 3d and morning of the 4th, we passed the large island of Oho-sima, part of the Kingdom of Loo-Choo. This island, which has been known to the Dutch, through the Japanese charts, and was seen by the French Admiral Cécille in 1846, is not found on English charts. The U. S. ship *Preble*, in 1849, supposed she had made the first discovery of it, and gave it the name of "Preble Island." It has never been visited by a foreign vessel. It is thirty or forty miles long, mountainous, and thickly inhabited. After passing it we had very sultry weather, until we reached Japan—the thermometer standing at 84° at night, and 88° to 90° at noon, in the coolest place on board.

At daybreak, on the morning of July 8, we first made land, which proved to be Cape Idzu, a lofty headland on the coast of Nippon, not far south of the entrance of the great Bay of Yedo. The Brocken and Vulcan Islands were in sight on our right. After passing Rock Island, we stood in nearer to the shore, which loomed up grandly through the hazy atmosphere. The promontory of Idzu is a group of mountains, rising to the height of five or six thousand feet, their summits scarred with slides, and their sides mostly covered with forests, though here and there we could discern patches of cultivated land. There were a number of fishing junks off the coast, some of which put back again as we approached. The wind was ahead, we had all sails

furled and the yards squared, and the sight of our two immense steamers—the first that ever entered Japanese waters—dashing along at the rate of nine knots an hour, must have struck the natives with the utmost astonishment.

Leaving the mountains of Idzu behind us, we stood across the mouth of the Bay of Kowadzu (as the southern half of the bifurcate Bay of Yedo is called), toward Cape Sagami at the extremity of the promontory which divides the two. The noon observation gave lat. $34^{\circ} 57'$ N. and soon afterwards Cape Sagami came in sight. We lay to while the Captains of the *Mississippi*, *Plymouth* and *Saratoga* came on board, to receive instructions, and then resumed our course. The decks were cleared for action, the guns shotted, the small arms put in complete order, and every precaution taken, in case we should meet with a hostile reception. Near Cape Sagami we descried a large town, and as we came within two miles of the shore, a number of junks, amounting to twelve or fifteen, put off, with the evident intention of visiting us. Each one bore a large banner, upon which characters were inscribed. The rapidity of our progress, against the wind, soon left them behind, no doubt completely nonplussed as to the invisible power which bore us away from them. The Bay now began to be thickly studded with fishing smacks, with here and there a large junk.

The shores of Sagami are exceedingly picturesque and beautiful. They rise in abrupt bluffs, two hundred feet in height, gashed with narrow dells of the brightest verdure, which slope steeply down to the water, while the country behind rises in undulating hills, displaying a charming alternation of groves and cultivated fields. In the distance rose

mountain ranges, receding behind each other until the vapor hid their farthest summits. The eastern coast, belonging to the province of Awa, now came in sight ahead of us, for we were entering the narrowest part of the Bay, leading to the upper Bay of Yedo. The distance from shore to shore here varies from five to eight miles, but afterwards expands to twelve or fifteen.

We kept directly up the Bay, and in half an hour after doubling Cape Sagami saw before us a bold promontory making out from the western coast, at the entrance of the Upper Bay. Within it was the Bight of Urága, and we could plainly see the town of the same name at the head of it. The Plymouth and Saratoga were cast off, and we advanced slowly, sounding as we went, until we had advanced more than a mile beyond the point reached by the Columbus and the Morrison. We were about a mile and a half from the promontory, when two discharges of cannon were heard from a battery at its extremity, and immediately afterwards a light ball of smoke in the air showed that a shell had been thrown up. An order was immediately given to let go the anchor, but as the lead still showed 25 fathoms, the steamer's head was put in toward the shore, and in a few minutes the anchor was dropped.

Another shell was fired after we came to anchor, and four or five boats filled with Japanese approached us. The rowers, who were all tall, athletic men, naked save a cloth around the loins, shouted lustily as they sculled with all their strength toward us. The boats were of unpainted wood, very sharp in the bows, carrying their greatest breadth of beam well aft, and were propelled with great rapidity. The resemblance of their model to that of the yacht *America*, struck every body on

board. In the stern of each was a small flag, with three horizontal stripes, the central one black and the other white. In each were several persons, who, by their dress and the two swords stuck in their belts, appeared to be men of authority.

The first boat came alongside, and one of the two-sworded individuals made signs for the gangway to be let down. This was refused, but Mr. Wells Williams, the Interpreter, and Mr. Portman, the Commodore's clerk (who was a native of Holland), went to the ship's side to state that nobody would be received on board, except the first in rank at Urága. The conversation was carried on principally in Dutch, which the interpreter spoke very well. He asked at once if we were not Americans, and by his manner of asking showed that our coming had been anticipated. He was told that the Commander of the squadron was an officer of very high rank in the United States, and could only communicate with the first in rank on shore. After a long parley, the Vice-Governor of Urága, who was in the boat, was allowed to come on board with the Interpreter and confer with Lieut. Contee, the Flag Lieutenant. The Japanese official, a fiery little fellow, was much exasperated at being kept in waiting, but soon moderated his tone. He was told that we came as friends, upon a peaceable mission; that we should not go to Nangasaki, as he proposed, and that it was insulting to our President and his special minister to propose it. He was told, moreover, that the Japanese must not communicate with any other vessel than the flag-ship, and that no boats must approach us during the night. An attempt to surround us with a cordon of boats, as in the case of the Columbus and Vincennes, would lead to very serious consequences. They had with them an official notice, written in French, Dutch and Eng

lish, and intended as a general warning to all foreign vessels directing them to go no further, to remain out at sea, and send word ashore, why they came and what they wanted. This Lieut. Contee declined to see or acknowledge in any way. The same notice was taken to the Plymouth by another boat, which was at once ordered off.

Commodore Perry had evidently made up his mind from the first not to submit to the surveillance of boats. The dignified and decided stand he took produced an immediate impression upon the Japanese. They were convinced that he was in earnest, and that all the tricks and delays with which they are in the habit of wheedling foreign visitors would be used in vain. Several boats having followed the first one, and begun to collect round us, the Vice-Governor was told that if they did not return at once, they would be fired into. One of them went to the Mississippi; and after being repulsed from the gangway, pulled forward to the bows, where some of the crew tried to climb on board. A company of boarders was immediately called away, and the bristling array of pikes and cutlasses over the vessel's side caused the Japanese to retreat in great haste. Thenceforth, all the Japanese boats gave us a wide berth, and during the whole of our stay, none approached us except those containing the officials who were concerned in the negotiations. I may here remark that our presence did not seem to disturb, in the least, the coasting trade which finds its focus in Yedo. Without counting the hundreds of small boats and fishing smacks, between sixty and seventy large junks daily passed up and down the bay, on their way to and from Yedo. The Japanese boatmen were tall, handsomely formed men, with vigorous and symmetrical bodies, and a hardy, manly expression of coun

tenance. As the air grew fresher towards evening, they put on a sort of loose gown, with wide, hanging sleeves. As the crew of each boat were all attired alike, the dress appeared to be a uniform, denoting that they were in Government service. The most of them had blue gowns, with white stripes on the sleeves, meeting on the shoulder, so as to form a triangular junction, and a crest, or coat-of-arms, upon the back. Others had gowns of red and white stripes, with a black lozenge upon the back. Some wore upon their heads a cap made of bamboo splints, resembling a broad, shallow basin inverted, but the greater part had their heads bare, the top and crown shaved, and the hair from the back and sides brought up and fastened in a small knot, through which a short metal pin was thrust. The officers wore light and beautifully lacquered hats to protect them from the sun, with a gilded coat-of-arms upon the front part. In most of the boats I noticed a tall spear, with a lacquered sheath for the head, resembling a number or character, and apparently referring to the rank of the officer on board.

After dark, watch-fires began to blaze along the shore, both from the beach and from the summits of the hills, chiefly on the western side of the bay. At the same time we heard, at regular intervals, the sound of a deep-toned bell. It had a very sweet, rich tone, and from the distinctness with which its long reverberations reached us, must have been of large size. A double night-watch was established during our stay, and no officers except the Purser and Surgeons were exempt from serving. But the nights were quiet and peaceful, and it never fell to my lot to report a suspicious appearance of any kind.

The next morning, Yezaimon, the Governor of Urága and the highest authority on shore, came off, attended by two

interpreters, who gave their names as Tatsonoske and Tokosh-iuro. He was received by Commanders Buchanan and Adams, and Lieut. Contee. He was a noble of the second rank; his robe was of the richest silken tissue, embroidered with gold and silver in a pattern resembling peacock feathers. The object of his coming, I believe, was to declare his inability to act, not having the requisite authority without instructions from Yedo. At any rate, it was understood that an express would be sent to the Capital immediately, and the Commodore gave him until Tuesday noon to have the answer ready. Sunday passed over without any visit, but on Monday there was an informal one.

From Tuesday until Wednesday noon, Yezaimon came off three times, remaining from two to three hours each time. The result of all these conferences was, that the Emperor had specially appointed one of the Chief Counsellors of the Empire to proceed to Urága, and receive from Commodore Perry the letter of the President of the United States, which the Commodore was allowed to land and deliver on shore. This prompt and unlooked-for concession astonished us all, and I am convinced it was owing entirely to the decided stand the Commodore took during the early negotiations. We had obtained in four days, without subjecting ourselves to a single observance of Japanese law, what the Russian embassy under Resanoff failed to accomplish in six months, after a degrading subservience to ridiculous demands. From what I know of the negotiations, I must say that they were admirably conducted. The Japanese officials were treated in such a polite and friendly manner as to win their good will, while not a single point to which we attached any importance, was yielded. There was a mixture of firmness, dignity and fearlessness on

our side, against which their artful and dissimulating policy was powerless. To this, and to our material strength, I attribute the fact of our reception having been so different from that of other embassies, as almost to make us doubt the truth of the accounts we had read.

From our anchorage off Urága, we enjoyed a charming panorama of the bay. It far surpassed my preconceived ideas of Japanese scenery. The western shore is bold and steep, running here and there into lofty bluffs of light-gray rock, but the greater part of it is covered with turf, copsewood and scattered groves of trees, all of the brightest and freshest green. From Urága to another and shallower bight, which makes in nearly two miles below, the shore is less abrupt, and shows more signs of cultivation. The hills behind, though not above 500 feet in height, are beautifully undulating in their outlines, and dotted with groves of pine and other trees. From Urága to the end of the promontory—a distance of a mile and a quarter—there is an almost unbroken line of villages. The houses are of wood, with sharp roofs, some pointed in the Chinese style, some square and pyramidal. A few were painted white, but the greater number were unpainted and weather-beaten. At least a hundred small craft, with a number of junks, lay in the harbor of Urága, and thence to the headland there were two hundred boats, lying close in-shore.

I examined the fortifications frequently and carefully, through a glass, and found that their strength had been greatly exaggerated. Two of them appeared to have been recently made, and on a bluff, half enclosing the little harbor of Urága on the east, there was another, still in the course of construction. Between this and the headland there were three bat

teries, and at the extremity one, making five in all. The embrasures were so large, that from our position a good marksman might in a short time have dislodged every one of their guns. The chief post was the central battery, near which was a village, and several buildings of large size, apparently arsenals or barracks.

Every morning and evening, when the air was clear, we had a distinct view of the famous volcanic peak of Fusi-Yamma, rising in the western heaven, high above the hills, and sixty miles away. In the evenings its solitary cone, of a pale violet hue, was defined with great distinctness against the rosy flush of sunset, but in the morning, when the light fell full upon it, we could see the scars of old eruptions, and the cold ravines of snow on its northern side. It is the highest mountain in Japan, and estimated to be twelve or thirteen thousand feet above the sea-level.

On the morning after our arrival, the Japanese put up a false battery of black canvas, about a hundred yards in length, on the shore south of Urága. There was no appearance of guns, but with a glass I saw two or three companies of soldiers in scarlet uniform, riding through the groves in the rear. In most of the batteries they also erected canvas screens behind the embrasures—with what object it was difficult to conceive. These diversions they repeated so often during our stay, that at last we ceased to regard them; but it was amusing to hear some of our old quarter-masters now and then gravely report to Captain Buchanan: “Another dungaree fort thrown up, sir!”

On Saturday morning a surveying expedition, consisting of one boat from each ship, under the charge of Lieut. Bent,

of the Mississippi, was sent for the purpose of sounding up the bay. The other officers were Lieut. Guest, of the Susquehanna, Lieut. Balch, of the Plymouth, and Mr. Madigan, Master of the Saratoga. The boats carried, in addition to the usual ensign, a white flag at the bow, and were fully manned with armed seamen. They ran up the bay to a distance of about four miles, and found every where from thirty to forty-three fathoms of water. The recall was then hoisted, and a signal gun fired, to bring them back. In the afternoon they sounded around the bight of Uraga, keeping about a cable's length from the shore. They found five fathoms of water at this distance, though nearer to the beach there were occasional reefs. Mr. Heine, the artist, obtained a panoramic sketch of the shore, with the batteries, villages, and other objects in detail. On approaching the forts, the soldiers at first came out, armed with matchlocks, but as the boats advanced nearer, they retired within the walls. The forts were all of very rude and imperfect construction, and all together only mounted fourteen guns, none of which were larger than nine-pounders. The whole number of soldiers seen was about four hundred, a considerable portion of whom were armed with spears. Their caps and shields were lacquered, and glittered in the sun like polished armor. The carriages of the guns were also lacquered. The embrasures were so wide that the guns were wholly unprotected, while they were so stationed that the forts could be stormed from either side, with very little risk to the assaulting party. The parapets were of earth, and about twelve feet in thickness, and the barracks in the rear were of wood. Indeed, the whole amount of the Japanese defences appeared laughable after all the extravagant stories we had heard

Mr Madigan approached, at one place, to within a hundred yards of the shore. Three official personages were standing upon a bank of earth, when some one in the boat raised a spy-glass to get a nearer view of them. No sooner did they behold the glittering tube pointed at them than they scrambled down as quickly as possible, and concealed themselves. There were three boat-loads of soldiers near the shore, who made signs to him to keep off, but he answered them by pointing out the way he intended to go. Thereupon they put off, and bore down upon him so rapidly, that he at first thought they intended to run into him, and ordered his men to trail their oars and put caps on their carbines. The boats stopped at once, and made no attempt to interfere with the cutter's course.

On Monday morning the same surveying party was again dispatched up the bay, followed by the Mississippi, which was designed to protect them, and tow them back in the evening. Lieut. Bent's boat was in advance, and as he passed the promontory of Urága, three Japanese boats put out to meet him. The officers in them made signs to return, but he kept steadily on his way. We watched the progress of our boats with glasses, but at the distance of four miles, they, with the Mississippi, passed out of sight behind the point.

Several Government boats, fully manned, were seen from time to time, pulling across the bay, in the direction of the surveying fleet, but no prominent movement occurred until noon. At this time the distant shores were so lifted by the effect of a mirage, that we saw land extending entirely around the head of the bay, where previously none had been visible. The eastern shore was remarkably distinct, and for the first time we observed a low, sandy promontory stretching out into

the bay, five or six miles to the north of us. Near the middle of it rose a low mound, on which, by the aid of a glass, we could discern a number of soldiers, clustered around some white objects, which I took to be tents. In a short time several hundred men were marched down to the beach, where they formed a line nearly half a mile in length. At least fifty banners, of various colors and devices, were planted along the line. A number of Government boats, similar to those which had visited us, were drawn up on the beach. The greater part of the soldiers embarked in the boats, which put off, one after another, and made directly across the bay. We saw nothing more until 4 o'clock in the afternoon, when the Mississippi made her appearance, at a distance of ten miles. The head-land of Urága was crowded with soldiers, who came out to see her pass.

From some of the officers who were of the party, I learned the following particulars: In ascending the bay, they were constantly met by Government boats, the officers in which urged them, by signs, to return. They kept on their course, however, until Mr. Bent endeavored to proceed to the head of a deep bay on the western coast. Here he was met by forty-five Japanese boats, which placed themselves in front of him, to intercept his progress. He ordered his men to lay on their oars and fix bayonets to their muskets, but this produced no impression. As the Mississippi was more than two miles astern, he dispatched one of the boats to summon her, and then, ordering half his men to pull directly towards the Japanese boats, while the other half held their arms in readiness, he steadily approached their line. They made signs and threatening gestures, to which he paid no heed, and as this cutter al

most touched their oars, they gave way, overawed by what must have seemed to them an insane determination. The approach of the Mississippi soon dispersed the whole of them.

The boats every where obtained deep soundings, with a bottom of soft mud. The furthest point reached was ten or twelve miles from our anchorage. The shores were bold and steep, with mountains in the background, and the bay (to which Lieut. Bent gave the name of Perry's Bay) offered a secure and commodious anchorage. On her return, the Mississippi came down the centre of the bay, finding every where abundance of water.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

THE FIRST LANDING IN JAPAN

The Day of Landing—Preparations on Shore—The Bight of Gori-hama—Japanese Military Display—Arrival of the Governors—Their Official Dresses—Precautions on Board—The Procession of Boats—An Inspiring Scene—The Landing—Numbers of the Escort—The Japanese Troops—The Commodore's Landing—March to the House of Reception—Japanese Body-Guard—The Hall of Audience—Two Japanese Princes—Delivery of the President's Letter—An Official Conversation—Return to the Squadron.

It was finally arranged with the Japanese officials, that the President's letter should be delivered on Thursday morning, July 14, at the town of Gori-hama, two miles south of Urága.

The morning was heavy and dark before sunrise, but soon afterwards cleared off brilliantly. As soon as the shore could be distinguished, it was seen that the principal battery on the promontory of Urága had been greatly amplified and adorned by screens of cotton canvas, in honor of the occasion. On the hill above, among the trees, there were two small forts, or rather pavilions, of the same material. The canvas was stretched along a row of stakes so as to form a species of panelling, on which the Imperial coat-of-arms was painted, alternating with other devices. Behind the canvas we could see that numerous companies of soldiers were drawn up in different costume from

that which they usually wore. Their arms were bare, and the body covered with a short tunic of a dark-brown, blue or purple color, bound with a girdle at the waist.

About eight o'clock the anchors were lifted, and the *Susquehanna* and *Mississippi* moved slowly down the Bay, leaving the *Plymouth* and *Saratoga*. We soon saw two boats bearing the Government flag pulling abreast of us, but further in shore, and accompanied by four other boats with red banners, probably containing a military escort. As the bight opened behind the promontory, we saw a long line of canvas walls, covered with the Imperial crest, stretching quite around the head of the bight. In front were files of soldiers, standing motionless on the sandy beach. A multitude of banners of various brilliant colors gleamed in the sun. Near the centre of the crescent formed by the troops, were planted nine tall standards—four on one side and five on the other—from which broad scarlet pennons hung to the ground. In the rear of these three new pyramidal roofs showed that a house had been prepared expressly for the Commodore's reception. On the right, upwards of fifty or sixty boats were drawn up in a line parallel to the beach, each having a red flag at its stern. From the head of the bight a narrow valley extended inland between luxuriantly wooded hills. On the left side was a picturesque little town, the name of which the Japanese informed us, was *Gori-hama*. The place was undoubtedly chosen, both on account of its remoteness from *Urāga*, which is a port of customs, and the facility which it afforded to the Japanese for the exhibition of a large military force—a measure dictated alike by their native caution, and the love of display for which they are noted.

The anchor was no sooner down, than the two Government boats sculled alongside, and Yezaimon, with the Interpreters, Tatsonoske and Tokoshiuro, came on board. The second boat contained the Deputy Governor, Saboroske, and an attendant officer. They were accommodated with seats on the quarter-deck until all our preparations for landing were completed. They were dressed, as they had hinted the day previous, in official garments of rich silk brocade, bordered with velvet. The gowns differed little in form from those they ordinarily wore, but were elaborately embroidered, and displayed a greater variety of gay colors than taste in their disposal. Saboroske had a pair of short and very wide pantaloons, resembling a petticoat with a seam up the middle, below which appeared his bare legs, and black woollen socks, with an effect rather comical than otherwise. His shoulders contained lines of ornament in gold thread. All the officers wore their crest, or coat-of-arms, embroidered upon the back, sleeves and breasts of their garments.

The boats of the Mississippi, Plymouth and Saratoga, were alongside in less than half an hour after our anchor dropped, and preparations were made for leaving at once. Both steamers lay with their broadsides to the shore, and the decks were cleared, the guns primed and pointed, ready for action, in case of treachery. Commanders Kelly and Lee remained on board their respective ships, in order to act in case of necessity. The morning was very bright and clear, and the fifteen launches and cutters, containing the officers, seamen, marines, and bandsmen, presented a brilliant appearance, as they clustered around our starboard gangway. Commander Buchanan took the lead, in his barge, with one of the Japanese Government

boats on each side. Merrily as the oars of our men dipped the waves, it required their utmost to keep pace with the athletic scullers of Japan. The other American boats followed nearly in line, and the van of the procession was more than half-way to the shore when the guns of the Susquehanna announced the Commodore's departure. The gleam of arms, the picturesque mingling of blue and white, in the uniforms, and the sparkling of the waves under the steady strokes of the oarsmen, combined to form a splendid picture, set off as it was by the background of rich green hills, and the long line of soldiery and banners on the beach. All were excited by the occasion, and the men seemed to be as much elated in spirits as those who had a more prominent part in the proceedings. We all felt, that as being the first instance since the expulsion of the Portuguese from Japan, when a foreign Ambassador had been officially received on Japanese soil, it was a memorable event in the history of both countries, and that, if not an augury of the future and complete success of the Expedition, it was at least a commencement more auspicious than we had ventured to anticipate.

An impromptu jetty composed of bags of sand, had been thrown up for the occasion near the centre of the crescent-shaped beach at the head of the bight. Capt. Buchanan, who had command of the party, was the first to leap ashore. The remaining boats crowded rapidly in beside the jetty, landed as many of their crews as had been detailed for the escort on shore, and then pulled off about fifty yards. The seamen and marines were formed into a line as soon as they were landed and presented a compact and imposing file along the beach. The officers commanding detachments were Commanders Bu

chanian and Walker, and Lieuts. Gillis and Taylor. The bodies of seamen were in immediate charge of Lieut. Duer, of the *Susquehanna*; Lieut. Morris, of the *Mississippi*; Lieut. Matthews of the *Plymouth*, and Passed Midshipman Scott, of the *Saratoga*. Including the other officers, there were upwards of 320 persons landed, while the Japanese troops amounted, as they themselves informed us, to five thousand. We had 112 marines, about 120 seamen, 50 officers, and 30 or 40 musicians. About a hundred yards from the beach stood the foremost files of the Japanese, in somewhat loose and straggling order. Their front occupied the whole beach, their right flank resting on the village of Gori-hama, and their left against a steep hill which bounded the bight on the northern side. The greater part were stationed behind the canvas screens, and from the numbers, crowded together in the rear, some of the officers estimated their force at nearer ten than five thousand men. Those in the front rank were armed with swords, spears and matchlocks, and their uniform differed little from the usual Japanese costume. There were a number of horses, of a breed larger and much superior to the Chinese, and in the background we saw a body of cavalry. On the slope of the hill near the village, a great number of natives, many of whom were women, had collected, out of curiosity to witness the event.

A salute was fired from the *Susquehanna*, as the Commodore left, accompanied by his staff, Commander Adams, and Lieut. Contee, and the men had scarcely been formed into line before his barge approached the shore. The officers composing the Commodore's escort formed a double line from the jetty, and as he passed between them fell into proper order behind him. He was received with the customary honors, and

the procession immediately started for the place of reception. A stalwart boatswain's mate was selected to bear the broad pennant of the Commodore, supported by two very tall and powerful negro seamen, completely armed. Behind these followed two sailor boys, bearing the letter of the President and the Commodore's letter of credence, in their sumptuous boxes, wrapped in scarlet cloth. Then came the Commodore himself, with his staff and escort of officers. The marine force, a fine, athletic body of men, commanded by Maj. Zeilin, with a detachment from the Mississippi, under Capt. Slack, led the way, and the corps of seamen from all the ships brought up the rear.

The house of reception was directly in front of the landing, but an intervening screen rendered a slight detour necessary in order to reach the entrance; and Maj. Zeilin made the most of this circumstance, in order to display our forces to the Japanese. There certainly was a marked contrast between the regular, compact files of our men, and their vigorous, muscular figures, and the straggling ranks of the mild, effeminate-featured Japanese. In front of the house were two old brass four-pounders, apparently of Spanish manufacture, and on each side stood a company of soldiers, who belonged either to the Imperial forces, or to the body-guard of the Prince. Those on the left wore a uniform somewhat resembling the modern Egyptian dress. It was of a dark gray color, having full trousers, gathered below the knees, a broad sash around the waist, and a white cloth, similar to a turban, bound upon the head. They were armed with the old Tower muskets, which are to be found in every part of the world, with flint locks and bayonets. Those on the right wore a different uniform, ex

hibiting a mixture of dull brown and yellow in its colors, and carried matchlocks of an antique fashion.

Yezaimon and the Interpreters preceded us, in order to show the way. The distance from the jetty to the door of the building was so short, that little opportunity was given me for noticing minutely the appearance of the Japanese, or the order of their array. The building into which the Commodore and suite were ushered was small, and appeared to have been erected in haste. The timbers were of pine wood, and numbered, as if they had been brought from some other place. The first apartment, which was about forty feet square, was of canvas with an awning of the same, of a white ground, with the Imperial arms emblazoned on it in places. The floor was covered with white cotton cloth, with a pathway of red felt, or some similar substance, leading across the room to a raised inner apartment, which was wholly carpeted with it. This apartment, the front of which was entirely open, so that it corresponded precisely to the *diwan* in Turkish houses, was hung with fine cloth, containing the Imperial arms, in white, on a ground of violet. On the right hand was a row of arm-chairs, sufficient in number for the Commodore and his staff, while on the opposite side sat the Prince who had been appointed to receive the President's letter, with another official of similar rank. Their names were given by the Interpreter as "TODA IDZU-NO-KAMI," Toda, Prince of Idzu, and "IDO IWAMI-NO-KAMI," Ido, Prince of Iwami. The Prince of Idzu was a man of about fifty with mild, regular features, an ample brow, and an intelligent, reflective expression. He was dressed with great richness, in heavy robes of silken tissue, wrought into elaborate ornaments with gold and silver thread. The Prince of Iwami was

at least fifteen years older, and dressed with nearly equal splendor. His face was wrinkled with age, and exhibited neither the intelligence nor the benignity of his associate. They both rose and bowed gravely as the Commodore entered, but immediately resumed their seats, and remained as silent and passive as statues during the interview.

At the head of the room was a large scarlet-lacquered box, with brazen feet, beside which Yezaimon and the Interpreter, Tatsonoske, knelt. The latter then asked whether the letters were ready to be delivered, stating that the Prince was ready to receive them. The boxes were brought in, opened, so that the writing and the heavy golden seals were displayed, and placed upon the scarlet chest. The Prince of Iwami then handed to the Interpreter, who gave it to the Commodore, an official receipt, in Japanese, and at the same time the Interpreter added a Dutch translation. The Commodore remarked that he would sail in a few days for Loo-Choo and Canton, and if the Japanese Government wished to send any dispatches to those places he would be happy to take them. Without making any direct reply, the Interpreter asked: "When will you come again?" The Commodore answered, "As I suppose it will take some time to deliberate upon the letter of the President, I shall not wait now, but will return in a few months to receive the answer." He also spoke of the revolution in China, and the Interpreter asked the cause of it, without translating the communication to the Prince. He then inquired when the ships would return again, to which the Commodore replied that they would probably be there in April or May. "All four of them?" he asked. "All of them," answered the Commodore, "and probably more. This is but a

portion of the squadron." No further conversation took place. The letters having been formally delivered and received, the Commodore took his leave, while the two Princes, who had fulfilled to the letter their instructions not to speak, rose and remained standing until he had retired from their presence.

The return to the boats was made in the same order, the bands playing "Hail Columbia" and "Yankee Doodle," with more spirit than ever before, and few of those present, I venture to say, ever heard our national airs with more pride and pleasure. Yezaimon, Saboroske, and the two Interpreters attended the Commodore to the boat, and as the embarkation of the different boats' crews occupied some time, on account of the smallness of the jetty, several of the Japanese soldiers profited by the delay to come down and examine us more closely. Many of our men strayed along the beach, picking up shells and pebbles as mementoes of the visit. In less than twenty minutes, however, all were embarked, and we returned to the ships, accompanied by the two Japanese boats which had piloted us to the shore. Before twelve o'clock the anchors were lifted, and both vessels were under way on a cruise up the bay.

CHAPTER XXXV.

THE UPPER BAY OF YEDO.

The Japanese Officers on Board—Their Manners—Their Dislike to the Chinese—Their Swords—Their Curiosity—Passing up the Bay—Beauty of the Scenery—"Perry's Bay"—Junks bound for Yedo—Another Visit—Further Surveys—The Natives—An Excursion towards Yedo—Extent and Capacity of the Upper Bay—Change of Anchorage—The Surveys Proceed—Interchange of Presents—A Dilemma—Final Satisfaction—Farewell of the Japanese Officials—Commodore Perry's Diplomacy—Departure from Japan—A Multitude of Boats—Oosima—The Islands off the Bay—Discoveries—Formation of the Group—We Sail for Ohosima—A Typhoon—Return to Loo-Choo—The Second Visit to Japan.

YEZAIMON, Saboroske, and the Interpreters accepted an invitation to remain on board until we reached Urága, and have their boats towed at our stern. This gave them a chance of seeing the steam-engine in operation, for which they had expressed a great desire. They were conducted over the ship, and saw the engine from all points of view, betraying a great deal of curiosity in regard to its operation, but no fear. They even obtained a glimmering idea of the manner in which the steam acted, to set the enormous mass in motion. Tatsonoske asked if it was not the same machine in a smaller com

pass which we used on railroads. During their inspection of the ship they saw many things which must have been new and strange to them, but their composure and self-possession were not in the least disturbed. Notwithstanding the decks were crowded with officers and men, whose curiosity to see them was very great, they were to all appearance unconscious of it, and conducted themselves with as much ease and propriety as I ever saw among the most refined people. The complexion of these officers was a dark olive, but not too dark to allow a ruddy tinge on the lips and cheeks. Their eyes were somewhat larger, and not so obliquely set as those of the Chinese, their foreheads broader and more open, with a greater facial angle, and the expression of their faces denoted a lively and active mind. Notwithstanding that spirit of cunning and secrecy which, through the continual teachings of their government has become almost a second nature to them, their faces were agreeable and expressive. Their motions and gestures were characterized by an unstudied grace, and it was the unanimous opinion of all our officers that they were as perfect gentlemen as could be found in any part of the world. A curious illustration of their dislike to the Chinese, who are greatly inferior to them in propriety, and elegance of manner, occurred while they were on board. One of their Interpreters, noticing some of the Chinese deck-hands, who had been shipped at Shanghai, asked with a face expressive of great contempt and disgust, "Is it possible that you have Chinese among your men?" Mr Portman with much readiness, but not entire candor, replied "These men are *the servants of our sailors*," and thereby reinstated us in the good opinion of the Japanese.

While going their rounds their swords were left in the

cabin, and most of the officers made use of the opportunity to examine them. The steel was of admirable quality, and kept in good condition, although the shape of the blade was rather unwieldy, and the handle was without a guard. The scabbards were made of shark-skin very handsomely polished. While in the cabin, a globe was brought, and the position of the United States shown to the Japanese. Tatsonoske immediately pointed out Washington and New York, and seemed tolerably familiar with the geography of our country, as well as that of Europe. He asked whether in America many of the roads were not cut through the mountains—evidently referring to railroads. Yezaimon expressed his desire to examine a revolver, several of which the Japanese had noticed in the officers' belts. Commander Buchanan therefore fired off all the chambers of a genuine "Colt," from the quarter-deck, to his great astonishment. Before we had half gratified their curiosity, (which the steam-whistle raised to the highest pitch,) we were off Urága, and they were obliged to leave.

As we moved out past the promontory of Urága, the western shore opened on the left, showing a broad deep bay, embosomed by hills covered with the greenest and most luxuriant foliage, and with several large villages at their base. We approached within three miles of the eastern shore, which is loftier and wilder than the western, rising into a range of rugged mountains, which showed no signs of habitation or cultivation. But the lower slopes, which undulated gently to the water, charmed me by the rich beauty of their scattered groves, and the green terraces and lawns into which centuries of patient cultivation has formed them. Outside of England there is nothing so green, so garden-like, so full of tranquil beauty. To the north

the hills gradually sank away, and a sandy spur three or four miles in length, stretched into the bay. This proved to be the ground whereon we had seen the parade of Japanese soldiers when the surveying boats ascended the bay. The two mounds which I had noticed through a glass, were surmounted with batteries of about five guns each.

Changing our course we made over toward the other side, steering for a bold projecting headland, about twelve miles beyond that of Urága. In the intervening bight, to which Lieut. Bent, as the first surveyor, gave the name of "Perry's Bay," there are two lovely, green islands. The shores of the bay are as thickly settled and as assiduously cultivated, as about and below Urága. During the voyage up, we had at no time less than seven fathoms, and generally from thirty to forty. After going a short distance, beyond the point reached by the Mississippi, and upwards of ten miles beyond our former anchorage, we dropped anchor a mile and half from the shore, in thirteen fathoms. The inward-bound junks, I noticed, made for a point a little east of north from our position. According to the Japanese charts, and the best descriptions of Yedo, this must have been the direction of the capital. A long, low headland was visible with the glass, with (apparently) another bight beyond it; but to the north-east, for a segment of about 30° , no land could be seen. This also corresponded to the form of the bay, as given in Japanese charts.

Toward evening we had another visit from Yezaimon, who had followed us from Urága, with the intention of finding out what our motives were in proceeding so far up the bay. Whatever objections he may have made, they did not appear to be effectual, for as long as we remained, the survey was prosecuted

with great spirit and activity. On the following day (Friday) Lieuts. Cooper, of the *Susquehanna*, Clitz, of the *Mississippi*, Goldsborough, of the *Saratoga*, and Mathews, of the *Plymouth*, sounded around the islands and up the head of the bight, where they found a deep inlet, into which flowed a beautiful river. The banks were studded with villages, groves, and gardens, and the officers were enraptured with the beauty of the scenery. The natives of both sexes, old and young, came down the banks and saluted them in a friendly manner, bringing them cool spring-water to drink, and ripe peaches from their gardens.

On Friday afternoon, the Commodore went on board the *Mississippi*, transferring his broad pennant to that ship for a few hours, while he made an exploring trip still further up the bay. After going ten miles in the direction of Yedo, the *Mississippi* put about in twenty fathoms water, and returned to her former anchorage, having reached, as was supposed, a point within eight miles of the capital. On the western shore the large towns of Kanagawa and Kowazacki were seen; while on the extremity of a cape in front, not more than four miles distant, stood a tall white tower, resembling a lighthouse. Three or four miles beyond and within this point was a crowd of shipping, which was without doubt the anchorage of Sinagawa, the southern suburb of Yedo. There was every probability that the *Mississippi* could have advanced to a point within cannon-shot of the city. The head of the bay rounded to the eastward, and in that direction the shores became low and flat, and finally disappeared below the horizon. The squadron had, therefore, advanced twenty miles farther up the Bay of Yedo than any previous vessel, and shown con

clusively that, instead of being shallow and unnavigable, as had formerly been supposed, it contains abundance of water and excellent harbors. It is, in fact, one of the largest and finest bays in the world, and second to none in the varied and delightful scenery of its shores.

Early on Saturday morning we moved from our first anchorage to another, five or six miles further down the bay, and much nearer to the shore. There was abundance of water every where, and all around the beautiful little island, a line dropped close to the shore gave five fathoms. The western coast, which was less than a mile distant, appeared wonderfully green and beautiful. It curved inward so as to form a charming sheltered bay, near the head of which the two villages of Otsu and Torigasaki lay embosomed in foliage. There was a small battery, almost masked by trees, on the summit of the island, and another on the point of the cape below us. This part of the bay is completely land-locked, the promontory of Urága projecting so far as to cover one third of the eastern shore. The surveying boats were occupied during the whole of the day, without any interference on the part of the Japanese, who seemed to have made up their minds to submit to these unusual proceedings. Too much credit, however, cannot be awarded to the different officers, and especially to Lieut. Bent, for the coolness and courage with which they prosecuted their work. When we consider that this, one of the greatest bays in the world, had hitherto never been surveyed, the interest and value of their labors will be better understood.

Yezaimon came again on Saturday morning, accompanied by both the Interpreters. This time they brought a number

of presents, as souvenirs of our visit—consisting of lacquered cups, very light and elegant in form, brocade silks, richly wrought with gold and silver thread, tobacco pipes and pouches, and fans covered with hideously distorted and lackadaisical pictures of Japanese ladies. The Commodore was willing to receive them, but insisted on giving something in return. A selection of American manufactures was made, which, with some maps, engravings, arms and other articles, formed a return more than equal in value. They refused to take any thing, affirming that it was forbidden by their laws, and would subject them to the danger of losing their lives: besides, they declared, the presents offered them were too valuable to be accepted. They were each willing to receive some small articles, which could be readily concealed about their persons, but were positively informed that we could accept of nothing unless they took our gifts, with the exception of the arms, which were removed, as they stated that they could in no case give or receive arms. When Yezaimon saw his presents about to be tumbled back into his boat, he yielded at once, choosing what he probably considered the least dangerous horn of the dilemma.

In the afternoon they returned in the best possible humor, their course having apparently been sanctioned by some higher authority on shore. They brought off a quantity of fowls in light wicker coops, and three or four thousand eggs in boxes, taking away in return a large case of American garden-seeds. The interview lasted a considerable time, as they were socially disposed and partook of refreshments, both solid and liquid. Tatsonoske stated, in a half-confidential way, that the letter of the President had been received in Yedo, and that if the translation

which they had already obtained through the Dutch corresponded with the original, the Government would be disposed to regard it very favorably. He also hinted that Yezaimon would shortly be promoted to a much higher rank. The latter was exceedingly jovial, and stated, by an expressive pantomime, that he would shed tears on the departure of the squadron. It was dusk when the boat pulled off, and the shadows of the wooded hills, lengthening over the water, soon hid from sight the last glimpse of our Japanese friends.

On Sunday morning, the 17th we hoisted anchor and started for Loo-Choo, having in the space of ten days accomplished more than any other nation had been able to effect for the last two centuries. The universal feeling on board was one of honest pride and exultation. Knowing the cunning and duplicity of the people with whom we had to deal, it was a satisfaction to find all their arts of diplomacy completely shattered by the simple, straightforward, resolute course adopted by Commodore Perry. Nothing could have been better managed, from first to last; and I have reason to know that the final success of the Expedition was owing to no fortunate combination of circumstances, but wholly to the prudent and sagacious plan pre-arranged by its Commander.

The day of our departure was clear and warm, and the morning light fell softly on the verdurous shores, as we passed the promontory of Urága. The soldiers were all gathered on the terraces, in front of the batteries to see us pass. The *Mississippi* kept such a station on our port quarter, that from the shore she would appear as far behind the *Saratoga*, as that vessel from the *Susquehanna*; and the sight of four great war-ships, with all sails furled and yards squared, keeping

equi-distant from each other to a hair's breadth, yet moving through the water at the rate of eight or nine knots, must have struck the Japanese as something miraculous. The day was so clear that the inhabitants of both shores had an excellent opportunity of seeing the performance of the vessels, and we soon found that the news of our departure had preceded us. As we drew abreast of Cape Sagami, and made down the centre of the bay, keeping much nearer the eastern shore than on our entrance, we found the water covered with boats, which had brought out loads of the Japanese to get a nearer view. The bay was sprinkled with them, far and near, and at a moderate calculation, I should say that there were at least five hundred. Some of them were so curious as to approach within four or five hundred yards, when the men lay on their oars, and remained standing motionless until long after we had passed. I caught a parting glimpse of the cone of Fusi-Yamma through the rifts of a pile of fleecy clouds, high over the head of the Bay of Kowadzu.

We steered for the northern or main entrance of the bay, keeping between three and four miles from the northern shore, which belongs to the province of Awa. Vries Island, or Oosima, lay to the south of us. It has a bold, convex outline, and its summit was lost in the clouds. It is an admirable landmark for mariners, and in connection with Cape Idzu and Rock Island, forms a sure guide for vessels entering the Bay of Yedo from the east or south. Our course was nearly due south for the remainder of the day, and the chain of islands which extends from the mouth of the bay to the penal colony of Fatsisio, gradually rose to view. They seem to have been very imperfectly explored, for on none of our charts were they

laid down correctly. Vulcan Island is conspicuous for its lofty, conical summit, the sides of which are streaked with deposits of lava. It was covered, from the brink of its sea-worn crags, with the most luxuriant vegetation. To the east of it was another island, not given in any chart, and the Commodore accordingly took the explorer's right, and named it "Mississippi Island." A cluster of very peculiar pointed rocks, rising like broken obelisks to the height of a hundred feet, received the Susquehanna's name. The Plymouth and Saratoga were also honored—the first with a large isolated rock, the second with an island—both of which we claim the merit of discovering.

The features of this group are grand and imposing. The shores of these islands are mostly precipitous, presenting few accessible points, and being nearly circular in form, enhance the effect of the lofty summits into which they rise. I counted eight around us at one time; some bold and strongly defined, from their vicinity; others distant, blue, and floating in a vapory atmosphere, like the phantoms of islands. We could not discern any dwellings upon them, but it is probable that they are partly inhabited. We passed through them all before sunset, and still steering southward, hoped to have caught a glimpse of Fatsisio, which could not have been more than twenty-five miles distant; but night set in, and the vessels were put upon their course for Loo-Choo.

For the next two days, we ran in a south-westerly direction, aided by a strong east wind. The Saratoga was cast off in Lat. 30° N., and left to make her way to Shanghai, where she was ordered to winter. The Mississippi also cast off the Plymouth, which was directed to sound and survey along the

western side of Ohosima (the island supposed to have been discovered by the Preble), while the Susquehanna would cruise along the eastern side. Commodore Perry's intention was to spend two or three days in fixing the position and dimensions of the island, and in communicating, if the nature of the coast would allow, with the inhabitants. We looked forward to the visit with interest, as there is no account of any vessel having ever touched there. It is not often that the traveller meets with a large community of semi-civilized people, to whom the European race is unknown.

On Wednesday, July 20th, however, a typhoon came on from the east. Our topmasts and topgallant-masts were sent down, and we scudded along with only the trysails set. The Susquehanna rolled in a most extraordinary manner, and the great pivot-gun on her poop, was so secured with lashings, and bindings of every description, that it resembled an immense cast-iron babe in swaddling-bands. For two days the storm continued to rage with much violence. Both our fore and main trysail-gaffs were carried away, and the Mississippi lost two of her boats. We stood off and on for two days, but the sea continued so rough that the idea of proceeding to Ohosima was finally abandoned, and we made for the harbor of Napa, in Loo-Choo, where we arrived on the 25th. Thus ended the first campaign of the United States Expedition to Japan—concerning which, it will ever be to me a source of pride and satisfaction, to say: *Pars parva fui.*

NOTE.—The result of the Expedition to Japan is now known all over the world. Commodore Perry returned to the Bay of Yedo in February, 1854, his squadron augmented by the steam-frigate *Powhatan*, the sloops-of-war *Macedonian* and *Undania*, and the store-ships *Lex*

ington and Southampton. He anchored before Kanagawa, a remote suburb of Yedo, and after various interviews with a Council of five Princes of the Empire, appointed to confer with him, concluded a treaty of amity and commerce between the United States and Japan, at the village of Yoko-hama, near Kanagawa, in the beginning of April. By this treaty the ports of Simoda, in Nippon (about 120 miles from Yedo), Hakodadi in the island of Jesso, and Napa-Kiang in Lo-Choo, are opened to American vessels for the purposes of trade. The squadron visited both the former ports, and the officers of the Expedition were allowed perfect liberty to go on shore, mingle freely with the inhabitants, and make excursions inland to the distance of twenty miles. The success of the negotiations was as complete, in fact, as the most sanguine friend of the undertaking could have desired, and reflects great honor on the skill and prudence which marked the course of Commodore Perry. As my connection with the Expedition ceased after our return to China, I shall not attempt a history of its second and far more interesting campaign—a complete account of which the public will soon possess in the national work now being published under the supervision of Commodore Perry.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

OPERATIONS IN LOO-CHOO.

Negotiations with the New Regent—Captain Hall's Account of Loo-Choo—Napoleon's Incredulity—Its Correctness—Verification of the Japanese Chronicle—The Three Castles—The Government of Loo-Choo—Provisions for the Squadron—Duplicity of the Officials—The Markets deserted—The Spies—The Telegraph and Daguerreotype in Loo-Choo—Demands of Commodore Perry—The Regent's Reply—The Commodore successful—A Scene in the Market-place—Chase and Capture of a Spy—The Coal Depot—Exhibition of Loo-Choo Industry—National Contrasts—Steamship Line across the Pacific.

DURING our second visit to Napa-Kiang, on our return from Japan, Commodore Perry opened negotiations with the new Regent (the old one having been deposed during our absence), for the purpose of procuring privileges, which would enable him to make the island a permanent rendezvous for the squadron during its stay in the East. In order to grant his requests, it was necessary to depart in some degree from the exclusive principle, which the Loo-Chooans have either borrowed from, or had forced upon them by Japan; and consequently, while—knowing our strength and their weakness—they avoided a candid opposition, they know how to assume an attitude of passive resistance, which was far more perplexing. The ap-

parent insincerity of their declarations, the shifts to which they resorted, and the deception they attempted to practise upon us taught the Commodore, finally, the only effective method of dealing with them, and gave us a better insight into their real character than has fallen to the lot of any explorers who visited the island before us.

I cannot here avoid allusion to the well-known work of Capt. Basil Hall, who has given the most full and detailed account of Loo-Choo which we possess. He was commander of the *Lyra*, which, with the frigate *Alceste*, visited the island thirty-five years ago, and remained about six weeks at Napa-Kiang. He had considerable intercourse with the natives, whom he paints in the most glowing colors, as models of primitive simplicity, innocence and goodness, such as are to be found in no other part of the globe. He announces as facts that they were ignorant of the use of money, that they had no arms, and that wars were unknown in their history. When Capt. Hall afterward mentioned these things to Napoleon, at St. Helena, the Emperor shook his head incredulously, and exclaimed: "*Point d'armes! point de guerres!—impossible!*" He was right; and the Captain, on these and many other points, was thoroughly cajoled by the Loo-Chooans. When we first arrived they told us the same things, yet we soon found that they were familiar with money and arms—especially the former—and Klaproth's translation of the "*Ran To Sets*," a Japanese chronicle, gives an account of their wars. Their wonderful innocence and simplicity prove to be the disguises assumed by a marvellous cunning, and their alleged goodness of heart is illustrated by a Government which makes luxurious drones of a small class, and abject slaves of all others.

During our exploration of the island, we found an interesting verification of its former history, as given in the Japanese chronicle. It is there stated, that there were originally three kingdoms, called the Northern, Central and Southern, the first and last named of which were in the course of time, and after lingering civil wars, absorbed by the third. On our expedition into the interior, in the beginning of June, we discovered, as I have already stated, the ruins of the fortress-palace of the Northern King—a massive edifice, 600 feet in length, on the summit of a mountain. The present Viceroy, descended from the rulers of the Central Kingdom, still inhabits their castle the inscription over the gate of Shui, the capital, is: “The Central Hill,” and it was therefore to be expected that the castle of the third King might be found in the southern part of the island. Accordingly, on our return from Japan, Commodore Perry directed several officers, of whom I was one, to make explorations in that quarter, and we finally discovered the ruins of the castle, about four miles south-east of Napa, on the summit of a precipitous cliff, which commanded a view of an extensive and beautiful landscape. The place is called by the natives “Timagusku,” and has been so despoiled that only two gateways remain entire. The outer walls inclose an area of nearly eight acres.

It was not so easy to obtain correct particulars concerning the structure of the Government, although its character was exhibited in its effects upon the population. The present Viceroy is a minor, and the chief authority is exercised by a Regent, the three Treasurers of the kingdom, and perhaps some additional officers, forming a Council which he consults, and in which, apparently, is vested the right to appoint or de

pose him. There are also various grades of civil rank, as in China and Japan. The soil is considered the property of the State, and all that it yields is divided into ten parts, six of which are appropriated by the Government. There is every evidence that a system of espionage, similar to that of Japan, is practised. The deep-rooted fear and mistrust of the people toward the officers of the Government, can only be accounted for by the existence of such a system. Wherever we went we found ourselves preceded and followed by spies, who drove the populace from our path, forced them in some instances to quit their dwellings or abandon their villages, and prevented them from holding any communication with us. Although, owing to the remonstrances made by Commodore Perry, this annoying surveillance was relaxed toward the close of our stay, it was never wholly abandoned.

After our arrival at Napa-Kiang, in May, the squadron was in want of fresh provisions, and the Commodore requested that supplies might be furnished, promising that full value should be paid for every article. The Loo-Choo authorities at first objected, stating that their island was poor, and that money was of no use to them, but that they would furnish gratuitously what little they could spare from their own needs; yet after some negotiations, they agreed to the demand, and fixed a scale of prices, which, on comparison with those of China, we found to be sufficiently high. The well-stocked markets of Napa, and the rich gardens and harvest-fields which covered the island, contradicted their complaints of poverty. When the day of settlement came, they were always in readiness to receive the money, and took the Spanish

dollars and American eagles with great satisfaction. Thus the way was broken for a closer intercourse with the people.

The next step was to obtain our supplies direct from the markets of Napa. The persons appointed to fill up the lists sent from the different vessels fulfilled their office in a very satisfactory manner. In few instances was more than half the amount supplied, which had been called for, and at last, when a mess needed a dozen fowls and a hundred eggs, it was necessary to demand 50 of the one, and 500 of the other. The object of this was to keep up the appearance of poverty, though at the same time the public markets, open to the natives, abounded in every thing which we stood in need of. Many persons—both officers and men—went ashore repeatedly, and endeavored to make purchases, but they were successful in very few instances. They were dogged by spies, whose appearance sufficed to clear the market in a few minutes. The natives fled precipitately in all directions, leaving their stands of fruit, vegetables, pottery and other articles of sale or barter, entirely unprotected, and the market-square which, when we first caught sight of it, was crowded with hundreds of busy buyers and sellers, was left vacant and desolate. The same course was followed in all parts of the town. Shops were closed, streets deserted, and though we sometimes endeavored to steal a march upon the inhabitants by darting suddenly into a private dwelling, we rarely succeeded in finding any one within. Yet, whenever, by chance, we met with them when no spies were visible, they showed an evident good-will towards us, and a desire to cultivate a familiar intercourse. At such times they thankfully accepted money or presents, which they steadfastly refused, when any agent of the Govern-

ment was near. On our tours of exploration, we generally carried with us a quantity of ship's biscuit, which the inhabitants of the villages took very eagerly, seeming to consider it a great delicacy.

During our first visit, the Commodore applied to the authorities to lease him a house on shore for a short time, that the daguerreotype and telegraphic apparatus might be put up and tested. They designated the little temple near the village of Tumai, two miles north of Napa, which had been given to Capts. Maxwell and Hall, as a hospital for their seamen. There is a correct sketch of it in Hall's work. Messrs. Brown and Draper, the artists, went ashore with their assistants, and remained there three weeks. They were daily visited by numbers of the better class of natives, who watched their operations with the greatest curiosity. They at once comprehended the properties of the daguerreotype, and willingly sat for their portraits. They understood the necessity of remaining perfectly quiet, and were as rigid as statues, not venturing to move an eyelid. When the impression was good, nothing could exceed their wonder and delight. The excessive moisture in the air of Loo-Choo, and the absence of any fitting location for the instruments, operated unfavorably upon the plates, and not more than twenty good pictures were procured. These, however, are of much value, as giving perfect representations of the features and costumes of the Loo-Chooans. The telegraphic apparatus worked admirably, and though the natives could only partially comprehend its character, they regarded it with a kind of superstitious awe.

Considering the advantages which the island of Loo-Choo offered as a temporary naval station, and rendezvous for the

squadron—its proximity to Japan ; its temperate and healthy climate ; its secure harbor, and its remoteness from the jealous watchfulness of rival nations—Commodore Perry made the following demands of the Regent : 1st, that the Government should lease him a building suitable for a coal depot ; 2d, that the markets of Napa should be thrown open to us, and the natives be allowed to deal directly with us, without the tedious and unsatisfactory agency of the official purveyors ; 3d, that the system of espionage to which we had been subjected, should be relinquished in future ; and 4th, that the Government should make a collection of the articles manufactured in the island, in order that we might have an opportunity of purchasing specimens. It was represented, in support of these demands, that two months of intercourse, during which they had no single cause of complaint against any person belonging to the squadron, should be sufficient to convince them of our friendly disposition toward them ; that in allowing us to purchase the commodities which their people offered for sale, we conferred a direct benefit upon them ; that we had explored their island, seen its abundant resources, and knew that they would be enriched, not impoverished, by the supplies which they furnished us ; and lastly, that both as friends to the Loo-Chooans, and as the representatives of a great nation, the employment of spies to watch our motions was an indignity to which we could no longer submit.

The reply of the Regent was a good illustration of the insincere, evasive diplomacy of Eastern nations. It granted nothing and denied nothing. With regard to the coal depot, it was suggested that the people would steal the coal in case it was deposited there ; that typhoons might blow down the

building; that there was no part of the harbor where we could be landed, &c. As for the markets, they had never prevented us from going there to purchase, but the people feared and they fled away because they were afraid. The persons who followed us were not spies, but officers appointed to watch over, protect and assist us. If we did not desire them they would be released from their service. The reply wound up as usual, by a declaration of the smallness and poverty of the island. The Commodore however took a blunt, straight forward course which obliged them to give a decisive answer, and as in the case of the Japanese, he gained his point. His diplomacy, no doubt, seemed somewhat arbitrary in both cases, but where dissimulation and evasion form the web of a policy, as with these nations, there is no course so effective as plain common sense, backed up by a good reserve of physical force.

A number of us went ashore the day after the concessions were made, in order to test their good faith. We entered Napa, and set out for the market-place, keeping a good watch to see whether any spies were lurking about. Most of the shops were shut as usual, but we found the market crowded, and a brisk trade going on in vegetables, cheese, pork, earthenware, paper, plain cotton goods, and the other articles in common use among the natives. At first, our appearance created no disturbance, but we had scarcely reached the middle of the square, when the crowd began to scatter as if a bomb-shell had fallen among them. The superannuated old women who could not get out of the way, crouched behind their umbrellas, and if we approached them, turned their heads aside or stuck them under their arms, that they might not see us. Except by them, and a few men of the lowest class, the place was soon deserted

We looked in all directions for the source of this dispersion, and at last caught a glimpse of the head of a spy, peeping cautiously around a corner. We instantly gave chase, but he escaped us. Wherever we went, we saw them dodging us in the distance, and if we turned on our steps and followed them, they took to their heels. But there was one—an ill-favored, one-eyed gentleman in a robe of yellow grass-cloth—who persisted in keeping close to us. At last a spirited midshipman started in chase of him. Away they raced through the pork market, the people scattering on both sides before them, yet looking on with evident amusement. The one-eyed gentleman spread his robes on the wind, but the midshipman gained on him, and finally grasping him by the back of the neck, gave him a shaking that made his remaining eye quiver in its socket. He did not return, and we had the satisfaction of purchasing some cucumbers in the market—which was at least a beginning of trade.

The site for a coal depot was at once selected, the dimensions given, and before we left, a company of Loo-Choo carpenters were on the ground, hewing the timbers which were to form the frame of the building. It was located in the creek of Tumai, the most convenient place for landing, and near the little temple, which was at that time occupied by an officer and two or three men from the storeship *Supply*. The sloop-of-war *Plymouth* was ordered to remain at Napa, until relieved by the *Vandalia*, so that the entering wedge we drove into Loo-Choo exclusiveness, which had remained intact up to the time of our arrival, will continue to widen the breach, and effect a permanent opening for intercourse with the rest of mankind.

The "Great Exhibition" of Loo-Choo Industry came off on the morning we left Napa for Hong Kong. It took place in the *cung-qua*, a government building of the town, under the auspices of the Mayor and a number of civil officers. As it was probably the first attempt at such a display ever made in the Island, it was got up in creditable style. The articles consisted of Loo-Choo cotton and grass-cloths, in pieces and made into garments; Japanese silks; brass hair-pins; straw sandals, fans; tobacco pipes and pouches, of various kinds; chow chow, or refreshment boxes; paper, of different colors; earthen pots, pans and vases, some of them neatly glazed, and a great variety of black and scarlet lacquered ware. The fair was attended by all of the officers who could be spared from the vessels, and as they were all anxious to procure some souvenir of the Island, the sales were brisk and rapid, and most of the articles went off at a premium. We computed that there were at least a hundred dollars spent on the occasion. The steamers were under sailing orders, and the activity that prevailed on our part seemed to puzzle and bewilder the deliberate and impassive Loo-Chooans. Such avidity to purchase such apparent recklessness of expenditure, were quite beyond their comprehension. They lost "the run" of us, and looked on in helpless amazement, trusting to Fate for the final balance to show a preponderance in their favor.

Thus, in addition to the establishment of friendly intercourse with Japan, Commodore Perry has opened Loo-Choo, its most important dependency. At the same time, by his purchase of the tract of land best adapted for a coal depot, on Port Lloyd, in the Bouin Islands, he has secured to the United States the most available station in the Western Pacific for s

line of steamers between China and California. Honolulu and Port Lloyd are the natural stopping-places on the route between San Francisco and Shanghai. For the first, coal may be transported from Oregon and Vancouver's Island; for the second, from the Japanese island of Kiusiu, less than five hundred miles distant. Loo-Choo lies too far south for the route to Shanghai, but that to Hong Kong passes near it. Its commerce is too trifling to be an object of consideration; but as a naval station or a port for supplies, it has many things to recommend it, and the step which has been made toward bringing it into the list of lands which are open to intercourse with the civilized world, deserves to be recorded

CHAPTER XXXVII.

NAVAL LIFE.

Return to Hong Kong—End of the Cruise—Experience of Naval Life—My Duties on Board—"General Quarters"—Our Crew—Decline of Naval Discipline—False System of Promotion—Delays—What is Needed—Harmony of Government at Sea—The Abolition of Corporeal Punishment—Want of an Efficient Substitute—Government on Sea and Land—Mr. Kennedy's Proposal for Registered Seamen—Effect of Long Cruises—Need of Small Vessels in Chinese Waters.

WE sailed from Loo-Choo on the 1st of August, but were delayed by strong head-winds, until we had doubled the southern end of the island of Formosa, and entered the China Sea. On the second day out from Napa we saw some of the Madjicosima Islands, which lie between Formosa and the Loo-Choo group, and at dusk the same evening met the sloop-of-war *Vandulia*, on her way to join the squadron. Salutes were exchanged, Capt. Pope reported himself to the Commodore, received his orders, and the vessels lost each other again in the darkness. The rest of the voyage was without incident. By taking a more southern course than usual across the China Sea, we missed encountering the steam-frigate *Powhatan*, which sailed from Hong Kong on the 6th, the day previous to

our arrival there. At sunset on the 7th, I saw again the bleak hills and the long semi-European town which I had left in March previous, and when the anchor dropped in the harbor my last cruise on a Government vessel was at an end.

I shall always look back upon my short experience of naval life as one of the most agreeable and interesting episodes of my travels. Apart from the rare opportunity which it afforded me of visiting and exploring remote and unfrequented portions of the earth, it has enabled me to gain some insight into the nature and operations of a service, which, to a commercial nation, like our own, must ever be the most important arm of protection and defence. I cannot avoid making a few remarks upon our naval system before taking a final leave of it—and such observations as I make, may not be inappropriately offered at present, when our Government, after a long and culpable neglect of the Navy, seems to be at last slowly awaking to the necessity of reorganizing it.

Although my rank of acting Master's Mate rendered me liable to be called upon at any time to discharge the duties usually assigned it, it imposed upon me no higher obligation in reality, than that of conforming in all respects to the etiquette of the service. I was attached to the corps of artists, who held the same rank, and were especially subject to the Commodore's orders; and when not employed on explorations—a branch of duty of which I was never weary—occupied myself with making sketches of birds, flowers, fish and landscapes, and with keeping a faithful record of our experiences. The fact that I messed on the orlop deck, went up and down the port ladders, and smoked forward of the main shaft, did not exclude me from the hospitalities of the ward-room and the commanders

cabins. By Commodore Perry and Capt. Buchanan, especially I was treated with unvarying kindness.

The only ship's duty I was called upon to perform, besides taking charge of a boat now and then, and keeping a two-hour watch in Japan, was to appear in my station at "general quarters," which were beaten quite frequently previous to our arrival in the Bay of Yedo. "General quarters," I should state for the information of the landsman, is a combination of a review and a sham fight. Every one of the ship's company has his place assigned to him, and at the well-known *rappel*, and fife-call, officers, seamen, mariners and boys fall into their proper places, the rolls are called, and the formalities of a naval engagement are practised. The guns are run in, loaded, and run out and fired; the seamen, armed with cutlasses and boarding pikes, trot fore and aft, crowding the rail on alternate bows and quarters, to repel imaginary boarders; the marines, behind them, load and discharge noiseless volleys in rapid succession; the bell gives the signal of fire, for the ship has been ignited by an intangible hot shot; the pumps are rigged, and by great exertions the invisible flames are extinguished—and, last of all, the hostile flag strikes, and the band plays "Yankee Doodle" in token of victory. My station was at first on the orlop deck, over the magazine, to superintend the passing up of immaterial powder-cans, but I was afterwards transferred to the quarter-deck, where I spent the hour in watching the performance of our great pivot-gun. There was also target practice, in which the officers usually joined, and I was struck with the large proportion of good shots among the ship's company.

Although I was not often brought into direct contact with the crew, I soon made acquaintance with them, and learned to

understand and appreciate the blunt, hearty, generous sailor character. There is a great variety of elements in every crew, but the good and bad are more readily known than in any society on shore. Dissimulation is soon detected on shipboard, as on the battle-field, no man can purchase a substitute or shift his duty upon other shoulders than his own. Whatever may be the faults of seamen, they are, as a class, honest, open-hearted and courageous—full of firm masculine fibre and a healthy cheerfulness—and I confess to a warm attachment for them.

It is a serious fact, felt even more keenly by those in the service than by the public at large, that the efficiency of our Navy has been of late years greatly impaired, and that it is no longer animated by the same prompt, active, energetic spirit, which drew into its ranks some of the boldest and bravest characters which adorn our history. The nature of the service is such as to stimulate and keep alive the ambition of those enlisted in it; and we must therefore look to the legislation which controls it, for the cause of this change. The two prominent evils under which the Navy now labors are, a relaxation of discipline among the men, and a system which, among the officers, makes promotion dependent entirely upon seniority, and, by rendering null any amount of brilliant service, discourages all manly emulation.

As there has hitherto been no retired list, the officers who are incapacitated by age or disease, or any other cause, from active service, hang as a dead weight upon the chances of all those whose term of service is less than theirs. In time of peace, their ranks are continually accumulating, so that the number allotted to each grade having once been filled up, promotions after that can only take place to fill the vacancies

caused by death. The younger officer, therefore, grows old in an inferior rank, and by the time he is invested with a command having passed the best years of his life in a subordinate position, is naturally timid and distrustful of himself under responsibilities which he would have borne lightly, if bestowed before his youthful energy and ambition were wholly deadened. This very energy and ambition of youth constitutes the stamina of naval and military life, and that service will inevitably decay, which does not extend to it at least a partial encouragement.

Under the system at present pursued by the Government, our Navy is gradually filling up with Passed Midshipmen of thirty, and Lieutenants of forty-five, while an officer whose hair is not entirely gray (if indeed he has any left to show), before attaining the rank of Post Captain, may consider himself especially fortunate. There is a weight of invalided, indolent, or superannuated material above him, which nothing but the slow process of death can remove. No deed of daring, no bold achievement, no amount of hazardous and arduous duty, involving years of absence from all the amenities of civilized life, will advance him one step nearer the post, which terminates the vista of his ambition. No one complained of the efficiency of the Navy when Perry, Decatur and Lawrence were Captains, at an age when no Passed Midshipman is now rash enough to dream of a Lieutenant's commission. Heroes are made early; and the English and French Governments acknowledge the fact by promoting for meritorious conduct, as well as for length of days. In the French Navy, I believe, one third of the promotions are based on this ground.

A retired list, such as has recently been provided for by an

act of Congress, will partly remedy the evil, but it is not sufficient. A man who has rendered special and signal service to his country deserves to be rewarded. This claim, which is partially recognized in our Army, ought to have equal weight in the Navy. Not that I believe that in cases where the honor of the country is at stake, our naval officers would be found wanting in courage and spirit, but the prospect of reward would keep alive an active pride and emulation, which would manifest itself at all times, and on all occasions. Our most promising officers would not then be driven to resign as they are now by the disheartening prospect of twenty or thirty years of subordinate rank, which no exertion of theirs can render more brief.

It is impossible that such a state of things should not tell upon the discipline of the ship, even where there are no more direct influences at work. The relations in which all, officers and men, stand to each other, on board of a man-of-war, are so intricate and so nicely adjusted, that a derangement in any quarter is felt throughout the whole machine. When it operates in perfect harmony, no pyramid could be more symmetrical. But if the Captain, or cap-stone press uncomfortably hard on the layer beneath him, the pressure makes itself felt through all the courses that follow, down to the seamen—the broad base on which all rest. A well-appointed frigate, where discipline is encouraged by duty, and authority tempered by justice, is to me the crowning miracle of social government.

There is at present no effective system of punishment for minor offences on board our men-of-war. Congress, by taking away the only recognized penalty, that of corporeal punish

ment without fixing any legal substitute has thrown upon the officers the responsibility of inventing new forms of punishment, which shall correct the faults of the offender without withdrawing him from active duty, or rendering the officer himself liable to censure, on the ground of inhuman or extraordinary measures. No such punishment has yet been discovered. That which was recommended at the time flogging was abolished—solitary confinement, on bread and water—is no punishment at all to the vicious or refractory seaman, who sees in it an excellent opportunity of skulking from work; while the other plans in force—such as carrying a sixty-eight pound shot, standing lashed fast in one position for a certain number of hours, &c., are looked upon as a kind of slow torture, and in many cases tend to exasperate still further a nature already vicious. Either of these methods punishes the good as well as the bad, by removing the offender from his work, which thus falls upon the honest and faithful seamen. The good men who are never punished, are rewarded for their fidelity by being obliged to perform more than their share of the labor, and are gradually being driven out of the service. I have heard it proposed that the idle and insubordinate shall be mulcted in their wages, and the sums thus deducted divided among the others. I am correct in my estimate of the sailor character, when I say that very few of them would accept such a reward. In fact, where a man really guilty has been punished by the loss of his wages for a number of months the entire crew has united to repay him the loss. Few sailors are destitute of a sense of honor, which would lead them to spurn the taking of a shipmate's wages, no matter how culpable that shipmate might be.

No deductions can be drawn from the experience of society on shore which would be of much advantage in the government of a ship on the open ocean, cut off from the world, and a world in itself, but in many respects of a very different order from that with which landsmen are acquainted. Every member of this world has his appointed station and his regular daily duties. He is subject to inexorable laws, and obedience to those laws must be enforced at every hazard. Without entire and absolute subordination a navy cannot exist. Its character is necessarily despotic, in fact, all sea life is so, and must always be so. Its government demands the exercise of the strictest justice, and of *justice to all*. In its forms of punishment, therefore, that which most effectually preserves discipline, which corrects the guilty without throwing an additional burden on the good, is the most expedient.

Among the seamen who compose the crews of our national vessels, there is every variety of character. Men as brave, manly and generous as any class can afford, there are; in most cases, no doubt, the major part of the crew are reputable in their conduct; but there is always—at least, under the present system—a leaven of depravity and sullen, dogged wickedness, which will bend to nothing but material force. I have seen so frequently the inefficiency of the other methods of punishment employed, and have heard, from the men themselves, such honest desire for the restoration of the old *régime*, that I cannot avoid the conclusion that the entire abolition of corporeal punishment in the Navy, without authorizing some effective substitute, was one of those mistaken acts of philanthropy which are founded on abstract ideas of humanity rather than a practical knowledge of human nature. It has more

than once happened, on board our vessels, that the seamen, in defiance of authority, have seized below decks and soundly flogged the idle and vicious, whom all other punishments had failed to intimidate.

Mr. Kennedy, Ex-Secretary of the Navy, in one of his Annual Reports, recommends a course which will partly remedy the evil by drawing into the service a better class of men, and thereby rendering punishments of all kinds less frequent. I allude to his proposal for creating a class of "registered seamen," who shall be permanently attached to the Navy, and receive an increased rate of pay with every five years of their service. The high wages now paid to sailors in the merchant service will soon render the adoption of some such plan necessary, in order to procure seamen at all—notwithstanding the superior comforts which a man-of-war affords, and that representative national character which is so gratifying to the pride of an American tar. There are many noble fellows among our seamen, and the adoption of a measure like Mr. Kennedy's, which would retain them in the service and identify them with its achievements, would go far toward restoring that energy and *morale* which once made our crews the finest in the world. I am too proud to admit that they are not so still; but every year makes the difference between the slackening discipline of our vessels, and the perfect and thorough subordination witnessed in the English Navy, more painfully perceptible.

While upon this theme I must allude to another circumstance which has an injurious operation—at least upon the vessels attached to the East India station, and I have no doubt the Pacific and African stations as well. I allude to the

length of the cruise. Three years in those climates, hot and unhealthy as they are, is trying to any constitution, while from the absence of all that can excite or amuse, the men gradually become spiritless and depressed. So far removed from home, exposed to gross sensual temptations, where every indulgence is followed by a terrific penalty, the length of the cruise tends inevitably to demoralize the crew. An *active* cruise of two years would accomplish far more than an idle one of three.

What is needed for the East India station is not a leviathan war-steamer like the *Susquehanna*, which cannot go within thirty miles of Ning-po and Foo-chow-foo, and can barely manage to reach Shanghai, but two small steamers, drawing not more than twelve or fourteen feet of water. When Canton was menaced, we could with difficulty get a store-ship within reach of the factories, to watch over the interests of our citizens. If a fleet of piratical junks was hovering about the Ladrone Islands, and one of our big vessels attempted to follow, they were off at once into water too shallow for us. The small English steamers *Hermes* and *Styx* did more in this way for the security of commerce, than all other men-of-war on the coast collectively.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

HONG-KONG—SOCIETY IN CHINA.

Impressions of Hong-Kong—A Man Drowned at Midnight—Hong-Kong from the Water—The town of Victoria—The Island of Hong-Kong—The Hong-Kong Fever—Hospitality of Foreign Residents in China—Their Princely Style of Living—Rigid Social Etiquette—Balls—Tropical Privileges—The Anglo-Saxon Abroad.

My first impressions of Hong-Kong were not very favorable, but I attributed them partly to the gloomy March weather which prevailed during my stay. After the genial quiet of Macao, and the mellow historic light which plays about its decaying palaces, the thoroughly modern air and desolate surroundings of the place became still more distasteful to me, and an unfortunate association which I shall never be able wholly to banish from memory, increased the feeling into absolute dislike.

On the second evening after our arrival I went ashore with some friends, and did not return until ten o'clock. My cot was not yet slung, for my hammock-boy was one of the crew of the Captain's boat which had also gone ashore. He was a strong, dark-eyed, lusty fellow named John Williams—one of the maintopmen, who are generally the picked men of the ship. About eleven o'clock Williams made his appearance,

with my cot, which he slung in its accustomed place; but instead of silently going forward again, as was his wont, he turned suddenly and asked me whether I thought it possible that he could get a release from the service. His mother, he said, had died, and some property had fallen to him which he wished to secure. I advised him to consult with some of the officers, who were better acquainted with the customs of the service. He seemed to labor under a singular depression of spirit, and after lingering for some time in silence, as if reluctant to turn away, he finally said: "Well, sir, it is the last cruise I shall ever make,"—and left me.

My cot was slung in a temporary poop-cabin on deck, which Commodore Perry had ordered to be erected for the use of the artists. I had not slept more than two hours, when my sleep was suddenly broken by a cry—a wild, gurgling, despairing cry which still rings in my ears whenever I think of that night. I sprang from my cot and listened. There was a trampling of feet on the deck outside, a hurried order, "cut the painter!" and again a bubbling cry, but feebler, under the stern. I sprang to one of the windows, looked out, and saw a hand beating the water blindly and convulsively in the eddy of the rudder. I was about to spring out when a coil of rope fell in the water and the hand grasped it. A horrible phosphorescent light shone around the body, struggling beneath the surface. Three men were in the little dingey which lay under the stern, but before they could cut the painter, the hand let go its weak hold, the rope slackened, and the body sank. The men had no oars, but half drifting with the tide, half paddling with their hands, they floated over it. Just beyond—just out of their reach—a head rose an instant to the surface once more, mak

ing a ring of ghastly light. There was one bubble, and it sank forever, the phosphorescent gleam sinking slowly with it, until nothing more was seen.

The drowned man was no other than John Williams. He had the mid-watch, and his station was on the forward guard of the star-board paddle-box. It was conjectured that he had sat down upon a bucket to rest, near the edge of the guard, and had either fallen asleep and reeled over, or lost his balance by the tilting of the bucket. One of the cutters was moored beside the paddle-box, and he probably struck upon it and disabled himself, as he was known to be an excellent swimmer. Some of the men asserted that they had seen a large fish dart past just before he let go his hold of the rope, and supposed that he had been carried under by a shark. His body was found however two or three weeks afterwards un mutilated, and was placed in the cemetery at Hong-Kong, where a tomb-stone was erected over it by his messmates. I have seen death in many shapes, but there was an awful fatality about this which shocked me profoundly. Night and day I heard the terrible drowning cry, until I feared that my ear would never lose the consciousness of it. Nearly a month afterwards, I again visited Hong-Kong, and having been rowed ashore from the steamer, in the dusk of evening, the oars struck a phosphorescent lustre from the water; I grew deathly sick at the image which those gleams recalled.

It is, therefore, if not my fault, at least my misfortune, that I cannot endorse the praises of Hong-Kong, which its residents are accustomed to bestow upon it. Seen from the water, the town, stretching for a mile along the shore, at the foot of Victoria Peak, whose granite cliff towers eighteen hun-

dred feet above, bears considerable resemblance to Gibraltar. The Governor's mansion, the Bishop's Palace, the Church and Barracks occupy conspicuous positions, and the houses of merchants and government officials, scattered along the steep sides of the hill, give the place an opulent and flourishing air. So far from being disappointed in this respect, one is surprised to find that ten years of English occupation have sufficed to civilize so completely a barren Chinese island.

The town is almost entirely made up of the long street called Victoria Road, which runs parallel to the shore. It is broad, well built and well paved, and being the great thoroughfare of the place, lengthening into a military road which makes the circuit of the island, has at all times a busy and animated air. The streets which cross it strike directly up the hill, and are in many places so steep that it has been found necessary to turn them into flights of steps. The gray granite of which the island is composed furnishes excellent material for building purposes, and is extensively employed in the houses, streets and piers. Large quantities of it, dressed in the quarries by Chinese laborers, are shipped to San Francisco—where it is in great demand. Several entire buildings have been sent over and erected in that city. The English Church is a large Gothic building, without any pretensions to architectural beauty. On a natural platform above it, stands the palace of Bishop Smith—a long mansion in the Elizabethan style. The Governor's new residence was in the course of construction, and not sufficiently advanced to hint at its character.

The island of Hong-Kong is about thirty miles in circumference, and consists of a desolate cluster of mountains, which

offer no opportunity of cultivation. Nearly all the fruit and vegetables consumed in the town come from Macao. There is a small village, inhabited by Chinese fishermen, on the southern side, and a Military Hospital on the east, looking upon the Lymoon Passage, which opens into the China Sea; but the English colony is concentrated in and about the town of Victoria, which is built on the northern side, facing the mainland. The harbor is spacious, with a good anchorage, and well sheltered, except in case of an unusually violent typhoon. From the position of the town, it is cut off from the south-west monsoon in summer, while the vapors collected by the mountain contribute to produce an intense moist heat, which occasions violent fever. The "Hong-Kong fever," as it is called, has been described by some facetious traveller as combining the worst symptoms of cholera, yellow and typhus fevers, with other and worse features of its own. The mortality among the troops stationed here was formerly very great, but it has been lessened of late years by the adoption of stringent sanitary measures.

For amusements, besides riding, boating, yacht regattas, &c., there is a club, with a library, reading and billiard rooms, and a bowling-alley, much frequented by Americans. The society is not extensive, but intelligent and agreeable, and the same lordly hospitality, with which I first became acquainted in India, prevails not only here but throughout all the foreign communities in China. This custom originated long ago, in the isolation to which the foreign merchant was condemned, and the infrequency of visitors from the distant world, which he had temporarily renounced. Then all houses were open to the guest, and the luxury which had been created to

soften the gilded exile, was placed at his command. The establishment of steamship lines, the building of hotels and other progressive agencies, have somewhat moderated this liberality, and may in time reduce it to the cautious and guarded hospitality of home; but there is still enough of the old genial spirit left to make a stranger feel satisfied with the welcome he receives.

I doubt if there be another class of men, who live in more luxurious state than the foreign residents in China. Their households are conducted on a princely scale, and whatever can be had in the way of furniture, upholstery or domestic appliances of any sort, to promote ease and comfort, is sure to be found in their dwellings. Their tables are supplied with the choicest which the country can afford, and a retinue of well-drilled servants, whose only business it is to study their habits, anticipate all their wants. All the management of the household is in the hands of native servants. The "comprador" furnishes the necessary supplies—for which he generally obtains a fat commission—the butler regulates the internal economy; and every inmate has one or more personal servants, who have charge of his own private wants. The expense of keeping up such an establishment is of course very large; but so also are the profits of a flourishing commercial house, and this easeful and luxurious mode of life, while it tends to preserve health in a climate hostile to the Northern race, furnishes a solace, sensuous though it be, for the want of those more enlightened recreations which a civilized land affords.

These little communities, nevertheless, are subject to iron laws of etiquette, any infraction whereof, either purposely or through ignorance, makes society tremble to its foundations. A

custom which refers particularly to strangers, has been transplanted thither from India, and is now in full force. The newly arrived, unless he wishes to avoid all society, must go the rounds of the resident families, and make his calls. The calls are returned, an invitation to dinner follows in due course of time, and every thing is *en train* for a footing of familiar intercourse. This custom seems to me to reverse the natural course of social ethics. It obliges the stranger to seek his welcome, instead of having it spontaneously tendered to him. The residents defend the practice, on the ground that it allows a man to choose his own society—an obvious bull, since he cannot know who are congenial to him until he has met them; and on the other hand, the opposite course would allow *them* to choose *his* society or not, as they preferred. In India, among the Company's servants, the rule is rigidly enforced, and nothing creates greater scandal than a violation of it.

There are private balls occasionally—public, rarely, if ever—where quadrilles, and waltzes, and polkas, are danced with as much spirit as at any outside the Tropics; but there is a considerate departure from the etiquette of the North, in allowing the gentlemen to appear, on such occasions, in a white linen jacket, and with a simple ribbon in place of a cravat. Nay, if so minded, he may even throw wide his collar, and enjoy a cool throat. This barbarism—as every young lady of proper taste must consider it—I find highly commendable. But it requires a great struggle in John Bull to throw down those starched barricades which flank his closely-rasped chin and protect his mutton-chop whiskers. In Calcutta, even in the dog-days, nothing less than a collar rigid as plank, and a black cloth dress-coat, is tolerated. Verily, the Saxon clings

to his idols with a pertinacity which we cannot sufficiently admire. Make a certain costume the type of respectability with him, and he carries the idea all over the world. If bearskins and woollen blankets were the evening costume of the West-End or Fifth-Avenue, you would soon find him complacently sporting them on the Equator. In the incessant heat of the Tropics he drinks his heavy sherry, and indulges in his brandy-and-water, with as much freedom as in the airs of England, and if not cut short in his career by fever, finally goes home with a damaged liver and no digestion at all. On the shores of Cathay, he keeps up the hours and habits of the London season; in the cinnamon groves of Ceylon, he breathes the atmosphere of Pall-Mall.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

A PICTURE OF MACAO.

Movements of the Squadron—Cumsingmoon—The Naval Hospital at Macao—Quiet Life—A Chinese Beggar—The Band—The Memories of Macao—Situation of the Town—Its Appearance—Desertion of the Place—Its Tropical Gardens—The Camp—The Temple of Wang Hyà—Anecdote of Cushing—Society in Macao—Chinese All-Souls' Day—Discordant Noises—The Grotto of Camoëns—The Casa Gardens—The Grotto at Daybreak—French Irreverence—Preparations to Return Home—Leaving the Naval Service—Trips to Hong-Kong and Cumsingmoon.

WE remained but two or three days at Hong-Kong: the season of typhoons was at hand, and it was considered advisable to place the squadron in some more sheltered anchorage. The Mississippi proceeded to Blenheim Reach, near Whampoa, where part of the British East India Squadron was already anchored; the Susquehanna, after touching at Macao, to land Commodore Perry, was ordered to Cumsingmoon, about fifteen miles further to the north. This is merely a small Chinese village, on an island of the same name, with the advantages of a sheltered anchorage in front of it, a healthy air and good water. The hills are bare and bleak in aspect, and no place could well be more forlorn, as a sojourn. After four days, however, the artists corps received notice that rooms had been appropriated

to them in a building in Macao, which had been leased as a Naval Hospital. A Portuguese *lorcha* was dispatched to carry us and our baggage to the city, and we took leave of the good old Susquehanna. We had a slow but agreeable run down the coast, anchored in the inner harbor of Macao, and before night were fully installed in our new quarters.

The Naval Hospital stood upon the central ridge of the island, and was consequently in the highest part of the city, overlooking the broad Canton Gulf on one side, and on the other the tiled roofs of the Portuguese houses below, the inner harbor, with its scanty fleet of junks, lorches and *tauka* boats, and the bare, stony hills of the island beyond. In front rose a hill, with a deserted convent on its summit glowing in the broad white glare of the breathless August noons. The lower story of the Hospital was appropriated to the invalids, of whom there were about twenty, and the Commodore's band; the surgeons and artists occupied the rooms above. With A-fok as steward, and the market of Macao at hand, rich in fruit and vegetables, we fared rather better than on ship's rations and tough Japanese fowls, while the enclosed verandah, on account of its airiness, furnished admirable sleeping accommodations during the dog-days. The time passed on quietly and without particular incident, and I found the repose of our life very grateful, after the active experiences and vicissitudes of the past year. There was no serious duty to interfere with the indulgence of that tropical indolence, which is such a luxury after the fatigue of travel.

Our principal annoyance was an old Chinese beggar-woman who sometimes drove us to desperation with her piercing, monotonous wail, from her station in the shade of the house oppo

site, and no amount of "cash" (the cheapest alms in the world, would drive her away. She would then only howl the more pertinaciously for more. Nothing could have been more trying to the nerves than her eternal: "*Chin-chin—a—a—a! poor man—a—a! how kin do—a—a—a!*" But twice a day our fine brass band of twenty instruments rehearsed in the long hall below, usually commencing with the ringing chant of the Portuguese National Hymn. The old beggar then retired from the field in confusion. A few tawny Portuguese, with close-cropped, blue-black hair, would sometimes pause to listen as they passed through the almost deserted streets. The music awoke no chord of patriotism or pride in their breasts; Macao has out-lived even that. The strain ceased, and then the rich, lyrical throb of "Hail Columbia" would rise exultingly into the still blue air, while the stars and stripes hung motionless from the peak of the flag-staff, at the American Consulate below us. Though I heard our country's anthem every day, my heart beat more quick and warm under all that summer languor, and my thoughts would turn for a moment to the dear land on the other side of the world.

I prefer Macao to any other place in China, partly on account of the picturesque beauty of its position, and partly because it is less Chinese. It has a history which attaches it to the history of *our* race; it has human associations with which we can sympathize. The annals of the Ming and the Hang dynasties are no more to me (with the exception of the reign of that splendid invader, Kublai Khan,) than those of the Man in the Moon; but the memories of Camoëns, the Poet, and St. Francis Xavier, the Apostle, embalm Macao for ever in the eyes of the European race. It was the first beacon whence

the light of Christianity and the liberalizing influences of commerce went forth into the dark places of the East. And now useless and worn out as it seems, with its commerce destroyed, its palaces vacant, its grandees beggared, and its importance as a foothold of civilization totally gone, there is a mournful charm in the silence of its grass-grown streets, and the memory of its former power and opulence still clothes it with a shadowy dignity. Here, at least, there are traces of Art and Taste, and all those monstrosities of Chinese *Un-taste*, which would make China a living purgatory to any one with a keen appreciation of the Beautiful, are thrust into the background, and do not spoil the harmony of the picture.

The Portuguese settlement of Macao comprises a ridgy peninsula about four miles long, attached to the southern end of a large Chinese island, by a narrow, sandy neck, across which a wall was thrown in the early days of the colony. The city is built in a dip of the hills, near the extremity of the peninsula, and to the east faces the Roads, the usual anchorage of foreign shipping. It has another face on the west, looking upon the Inner Harbor, a narrow strait shut in by lofty islands. Another channel, called the Typa, between two barren islands about a mile and a half to the southward, is the usual anchorage of vessels during the typhoon season, on account of its sheltered situation. The view of the city from the Roads is very imposing, and with the island-mountains in the background, has been compared by many persons to that of Naples from the bay, but I could see scarcely a single point of resemblance. A crescent-shaped bay, nearly a mile in length, fronts the water, and behind the massive stone pier, or Praya, rises a row of stately buildings of a pale yellow or pink color. The foliage

of tropical gardens peeps out behind them, and the ridge is crowned with the square-towered Cathedral and several churches. At the northern point is an Alameda, or public square, planted with trees, above which rises a fortress. Further to the north, on the top of a lofty hill, is the Fort of Guia or Del Monte, and a larger but somewhat dismantled fortification looms behind, on the middle ridge of the peninsula.

Even before landing, one notes the deserted aspect of the place. There are no crowds on the Praya; the houses have a decaying, mouldy appearance, and you listen in vain for that hum of life which floats about the centres of trade or industry. The solitary sentry at the foot of the Portuguese flag-staff seems to be dozing at his post. Now and then some Chinese porters pass, or four servants carrying a sedan chair with all the blinds down. During the summer, when most of the foreign merchants in Canton send their families there, on account of the temperate sea air, many of the spacious old mansions are inhabited, and servants with impudent faces lounge about the open gateways. Were it not for the scanty revenue which they derive from the lease of their ancestral palaces, many of the old Portuguese families would be entirely destitute. Indeed, it is already a mystery how some of them contrive to exist. Piece by piece the old plate, and diamond by diamond the old jewels are sold, while the parsimony of the household belies the appearance of wealth which still lingers about the massive buildings and the luxuriant gardens.

These fine old gardens are the greatest ornament of the city, hiding its dilapidation, and recalling, in the care and taste which they have not wholly outgrown, those which adorn the cities of Southern Spain. Although the winters are wet and

cold, all the hardier varieties of tropical fruits thrive well, and even the mango, the papaya and the guava are found in the markets. On the garden-terraces, in the upper part of the city, whence you have a charming panorama of the island-studded gulf, the spiry cypress and the orange of Portugal mingle their foliage with the palm, the bamboo and the Indian banyan. In August, the high walls which enclose them are festooned with enormous masses of the night-blooming cereus, whose milky blossoms, a foot in diameter, diffuse a sweet and powerful odor. Around the fountains the sacred lotus opens its sunny cup, tipped with as pure a rose as summer daybreak can show. The *lagistræmia*, with its soft, crape-like racemes of white or crimson, and the burning scarlet of the pomegranate flower, star the deep green masses of foliage. Nature is always luxurious within the Tropics.

Two gates in the northern wall of the city lead to what is called the Campo—an open, cultivated tract of country separated by a bleak ridge from the sandy flat which divides the Portuguese territories from the Chinese. The Campo is traversed by an excellent road, uniting with a new one which has been cut along the face of the bluffs on the eastern side of the island. The two combined form an agreeable drive, and every evening towards sunset, all who possess or are rich enough to hire a horse or equipage, may be seen taking their way along the Praya to the Alameda, and thence striking out on the course of the Campo. This drive of three or four miles, with a gallop over the sands to the Chinese barrier, is a grateful release to the Canton merchant, and in comparison with the confinement of his hongs, the Campo appears as boundless and as free as an Illinois prairie. The fort of Guia, with a steep zigzag path

leading up to its battlements, towers high over it, on the east on the opposite side the Chinese village of Wang-Hyà, lies embedded in bamboo and Indian fig-trees; over a level covered with rice-fields and vegetable gardens, stretches a wide blue arm of the bay, and the mountains of the western island lean away to the south, disclosing other channels and other islands beyond.

I paid a visit to Wang-Hyà (or in the Macao dialect, Mong-ha), which gives its name to the treaty concluded between the United States and China, under the auspices of our great mandarin Cushing (Coo-Shing, a genuine Chinese name), and the Commissioner Keying. The signing of this treaty and the festivities consequent thereupon, took place in the great temple of Wang-Hyà—a large building of gray granite, rather more simple and tasteful in its architecture than Chinese temples usually are. In fact, but for the enormous misshapen gods, glaring all over with vermillion and gilding, those massive courts and heavy, overhanging roofs, shaded by the broad arms of several giant Indian fig-trees, would afford a very pleasing picture. There is a Macao legend to the effect that, when Cushing went out in state to meet Keying, he was attended by the Portuguese band belonging to the Governor, and that the drum-major of the band made such an impression upon the Chinese authorities by his portly size, and the glitter of his full-dress uniform, that they imagined him to be the American mandarin, and wasted several profound salutations upon him before the mistake was discovered.

As for amusements in Macao, there were none except the daily stroll on the Praya and ride in the Campo, with an occasional dinner or dance. The Governor, Senhor Guimaraes, was

an urbane and polished gentleman, and entertained frequently, and there were a few Portuguese families who still kept up something of the old state. The theatre, a reminiscence of the palmy days of Macao, had long been closed, but was again opened for a concert given by our band, who made Macao ring with such music as had not been heard for years. The bugle players belonging to the Portuguese garrison are very fine, but the Governor's band would scarcely be tolerated any where else. By the Commodore's permission, our band performed on the Alameda every Thursday evening, and all Macao went there in the moonlight to look upon the sparkling bay, and drink, with thirsty ears, the sweet strains.

During my stay, the Chinese residents celebrated their great religious festival—a sort of All Soul's Day, or worship paid collectively to all the gods and saints in their mythology, their own ancestors included. It is a convenient way of lumping together a number of minor worships, and wiping out with one grand stroke the delinquencies of the year; and the essence of the Chinese religion not being love of God, but fear of the devil, they manage to propitiate their neglected Satans by a terrific thumping of tom-toms, and a fizzle and splutter of fireworks, which lasts three days. On the occasion, they constructed a large framework on the Praya, which was covered with muslins, silks, and spangled paper, so as to represent the shrine of a temple. It was about 15 feet high, by 30 in length, and hung with lamps of every quality and fashion, from Bohemian crystal to horn and mica. A variety of hideous divinities, with black or copper-colored faces, squatted on shrines or stood stiffly erect in niches; and in a recess at one end, three or four *noisians* made an infernal din with gongs, tom-toms and long hol

low bamboos which emitted shrieks that made your nerves quiver. I doubt if the word "harmony" is to be found in the Chinese language. Not even the sense of a rhythm could be extracted from the dreadful discord, but each instrument of torture raved in its own way, regardless of the others. What must be the nature of those who take delight in such sounds?

The loveliest spot in Macao is the garden and grotto of Camoëns, and thither the stranger first turns his steps. During my first visit there, in March, it was the only thing I saw. The *Susquehanna* was to leave for Shanghai early in the morning, and as there was a chance that I might not return, I succeeded, with much difficulty, in making the swarthy landlord of the "National Hotel" comprehend what it was that I wanted to see. He called me before daybreak, and gave me an old Chinaman as guide to the place. We threaded a number of crooked streets in the dusk, passed the façade of an eminent Jesuit church, which was destroyed by fire, and at length reached a little grassy square on the hill, in the north-western corner of the city. By dint of knocking and calling, my guide aroused a sleepy servant, who opened a gate and admitted me into a trim parterre, redolent of rose and jessamine, and opening into a deep garden, wherein the shadows still lingered thick and dark under the trees. A large and stately mansion now occupies the site of the Franciscan Convent in which Camoëns lived. The property belongs to Count Salvi, who has offered it for sale, for the sum of \$5,000, without finding a purchaser.

I took my way at random through the garden, seeking, in the gray morning twilight, for the grotto whose shelter gave birth to the "*Iusiad*." It was a wilderness of large trees

made still more intricate in some places by a thick undergrowth, and the rank parasitic vines which clung from bough to bough. It followed the slope of the hill, terraced here and there, while the highest part was overhung by immense granite boulders, heaped one upon the other, till the topmost masses towered above the trees. I found an aviary with a dead tree in it, showing that birds had once been there; a fountain, dry and cracking to pieces; and finally, noticing a small chapel reared upon a rock in the thickest part of the wood, was led to the object of my search. The grotto is simply a natural portal formed by three great boulders of grey granite, within whose arch the poet found shade and coolness and privacy. It is not a cavern of Jeremiah, to feed austere thoughts and gloomy prophecies, but a grotto just too stern not to be Arcadian and idyllic. The portal is now closed at each end by an iron grating, and within it stands a bronze bust of the poet, elevated on a lofty pedestal, containing three stanzas from the *Lusiad*, in bronze letters. The dawn gradually brightened, as I stood beside the grating; the darkness under the trees faded into twilight, but the features of the poet were not discernible in the gloom which filled the recess. Fit monument to him, who turned into glory the shame of banishment and the sorrow of exile—who made the power and the injustice of the land that gave him birth alike immortal!

I frequently went there afterwards by daylight, but the *genus loci* was less distinct and impressive than in that silent morning hour. The Chevalier di Rienzi, a Frenchman who styles himself, "poète exilé," has had a tablet cut upon the rock beside the grotto, and a poem of his own in praise of Camœns inscribed upon it. The poem is good, considering that it

is French, and if the Chevalier di Rienzi had a name in literature, we might pardon, and even approve, his desire to couple it with the illustrious Camoëns. To me, who never heard of him before, the deed is presumptuous and profane; though a thousand times less so than some French doggerel upon Camoëns written in the visitor's book. From the terrace on the western side of the garden there are lovely views of the inner harbor, especially towards sunset; and the "Casa Gardens," as they are called, are a frequent resort of the foreign residents at that hour.

My days passed away quietly and indolently enough, through the remainder of August. The thermometer ranged from 80° to 93° in the shade, and the sun, hanging directly in the zenith at noon, poured down a flood of white heat. Macao seemed wholly deserted at such times, notwithstanding its society was larger and more animated than usual. I began to make preparations for returning home, a course which was rendered necessary by my long absence. The fact of my having entered the service bound me for the entire cruise, but Commodore Perry, with his usual kindness, on learning that a prolonged absence would be a serious disadvantage to me, gave me leave to resign. I desired to return by way of San Francisco, but as no vessel was then up for that port, I changed my plans and took passage for New York in the clipper ship *Sea Serpent*, Captain Howland, which was announced to sail from Whampoa on the 9th of September.

I made a trip to Hong-Kong to draw some funds from the Oriental Bank, and had the satisfaction of receiving \$347 for a letter of credit on London for \$500. In returning I took a *sampan*, as the Chinese boats are called, and made the run to

Macao in five hours and a half, at the risk of falling into the hands of the pirates who infest the Lemma and Lin-tin Islands. I also went up to Cumsingmoon, in the fast boat of old Eyök, who supplied the squadron with fresh provisions, and passed another night on board the dear old Susquehanna. I began to love the very timbers of the staunch frigate that had been my home, more or less, for six months. and I felt a keen pang on moving away from her huge black hull and the gallant souls within it. May prosperous breezes attend her and them, wherever they sail!

CHAPTER XL.

SCENES IN AND AROUND CANTON.

Increase of the Squadron—Disposition of the Vessels—Passage to Canton—First Visit of the City—The Foreign Factories—Old and New China Streets—Talking “Pigeon English”—The Great Temple of Honan—Ceremonies of the Priests—Sacred Books and Pigs—The Lotus Blossom—Dwellings of the Priests—A Retired Abbot—Opium Smoking in China—The Opium-Pipe—Flavor and Fascination of the Drug—Its Effects—A Walk around Canton—The Walls—Entering the City—Foreign Devils—A Tea-House—Beyond the Suburbs—A Chinese Panorama—The Feast of Lanterns—Dr. Parker’s Hospital—The Eve of Departure.

By the end of August, all the vessels of the squadron had arrived in China, with the exception of the store-ship *Lexington*. The *Macedonian*, *Vandalia* and *Southampton* were sent to the anchorage at Cumsingmoon, whither the *Powhatan*, which returned to Hong-Kong on the 25th, also proceeded. She was detained eight days at Loo-Choo, in order to remedy a slight defect in one of her engines. The store-ship *Supply*, arrived at Hong-Kong on the 27th, having touched at Amoy on her way from Loo-Choo. Canton was in a very unsettled state, and the foreign merchants anticipated trouble, on account of the spread of the rebellion. All the American firms addressed a letter to Commodore Perry, begging that a national vessel might be sent up to the Macao Passage, within a mile and a half of the factories. The *Supply* was therefore ordered

up the river, as all the other vessels of the squadron drew too much water to pass the bar. Our great steam frigates certainly contributed to our success in Japan, but they are nearly useless for service in the Chinese waters.

I took the anchor from my cap on the 5th of September after four months' service, and in the evening of the same day bade adieu to my messmates and embarked on board the steamer for Canton. Mr. Contee, the Flag-Lieutenant of the Squadron, who had procured leave of absence on account of ill-health and had also taken passage on the *Sea Serpent*, accompanied me. It was after sunset when we left, and my last glimpse of Macao was the dark silhouette of its hills against the fading sky. We had an indistinct night-view of the Bogue Forts, at the Bocca Tigris, or mouth of the Whampoa River, after which I sought a couch on one of the hard benches in the cabin, but failed to extract much repose from it.

The steamer did not reach her destination until daybreak the next morning. Consequently, whatever there may be of the picturesque or striking in the approach to Canton, was lost to me. As the rapid dawn of the South brightened into sunrise, I found that we were anchored in the middle of the stream between the foreign Factories and the famous temple of Honan. The Pearl River, at this place, is not more than a quarter of a mile wide, and thickly studded with junks, flower-boats and those crowded hulks which contain the "floating population"—an important item in the census of the city. What little can be seen of the native part of Canton from this point, is low and mean, unrelieved by a single pagoda. The foreign Factories on the contrary, inclosing a parallelogram of three or four acres, which extends down to the river, are substantial blocks

of buildings, four stories in height. The open space has been turned into a Botanical Garden, which is kept in excellent order, as it affords the residents their only chance for agreeable exercise, except that of boating on the river. In this garden four lofty flag-staffs, planted at regular intervals, display the colors of America, France, England and Denmark, and in the centre a neat Gothic Chapel stands on the site of the old Hog-Lane, renowned during the troubles of 1841. The factories are divided into different "hongs"—English, American, Danish, &c.—but the foreign community is crowded into narrow bounds, hemmed in on all sides by the jealousy of the native authorities, and a five minutes' walk will embrace its utmost limits.

Adjacent to the factories are the streets occupied by the Chinese "hong merchants," whose dealings are almost wholly with foreigners, and the markets and shops of mechanics, which depend on foreign custom. The most noted thoroughfares are Old and New China-streets, and Looking-Glass and Spectacle-streets, which in their quaint forms and brilliant coloring, their gay, bustling and lively aspect, resemble the bazaars of Oriental cities. They are narrow, the houses two stories in height, with projecting roofs, the fronts of a dark blue or green color, with a mixture of bright red, and still further relieved by the gilded hieroglyphics which cover the vertical swinging signs. In Old and New China-streets there are also English signs which inform you that A-Kow or Hu-ping deals in silks, or porcelain, or lacquered ware, or ivory, or mother-of-pearl, or sandal-wood, or silver. The predominant talent of the Chinese is their faculty of imitation, and since their intercourse with foreigners has become less restricted, they have been obliged to

abandon many of their former grotesque models and accept others more consonant with a civilized taste. This is shown in the patterns of their silks, the form and style of their articles in silver and ivory, and their furniture. The display in their shops is tempting to a stranger, but purchases were ruinous at a crisis, when money commanded fifty per cent. premium at Canton, and seventy-five per cent. at Shanghai.

Whoever first invented the "pigeon English," as it is called—the jargon used by foreigners in their intercourse with Chinese—deserves an immortality of ridicule. The jargon has now become so fixed, that it will take several generations to eradicate it. The Chinaman requires as much practice to learn it as he would to learn correct English, while the Englishman, in his turn, must pick it up as he would a new language. Fancy, for instance, a man going into one of the silverware shops in New China-street, and saying, "My wantye two piece snuff-box: can secure?" when his meaning is simply—"I want two snuff-boxes: can you get them?" To which A-Wing gravely answers: "Can secure." Or, another declaring: "My no savey that pigeon"—which signifies in English: "I don't understand the business." If you make inquiries at a hotel, you must ask: "What man have got top-side?" (who are up stairs?) and the Chinese servant will make answer: "Two piece captain, one piece joss-man, have got." (There are two captains and a clergyman.) It was some time before I could bring myself to make use of this absurd and barbarous lingo, and it was always very unpleasant to hear it spoken by a lady.

As far as sight-seeing is concerned, Canton has very little to offer the traveller, and I was so thoroughly surfeited with China that I made no effort to see more than the most promi-

nent objects. Mr. Wells Williams and the Rev. Mr. Bonney were kind enough to accompany me through the Temple of Honan, on the opposite side of the river. This is a place of great sanctity, embracing within its bounds a well-endowed college of Boodhist priests. There are a number of temples or rather shrines of the gods, standing within enclosed courts, which are shaded by large and venerable trees. We first passed through a portal, placed in advance, like the pylon of an Egyptian temple, with a colossal figure on each side, of the watchers or guardians of the edifice. With their distended abdomens, copper faces and fierce black eyeballs, they might very well have passed for Gog and Magog. The temples were massive square structures, with peaked roofs, containing colossal gilded statues of various divinities, most of whom were seated cross-legged, with their hands on their stomachs and a grin of ineffable good-humor on their faces. They were no doubt represented as having dined well, and therefore the more easily to be propitiated. We reached the main temple in time to witness the rites of the Boodhist priests. Numerous candles and "joss-sticks" of sandal-wood were burning at the feet of the vast statues, and the shaven-headed priests, thirty or forty in number, walked solemnly in a circle around the open space before them, chanting their hymns. The character of the chants was very similar to some of those used in the Roman Catholic service, and there were other features in the ceremonies of the priests which showed the same resemblance. I believe this fact has been noticed by other travellers.

After the chanting was concluded, the priests came out in single file and passed into the large building which they inhabited in common. Some of them paused to speak with Mr

Bonney, who was known to them, and whom they seemed to regard without the least animosity, notwithstanding his missionary character. We then entered a labyrinth of smaller buildings, in one of which was a printing establishment, where the legends of Boodhism were multiplied in great quantities. Many of the books were illustrated with curious wood-cuts. A little further, we came upon the stable of the sacred hogs, and were allowed a look at the venerated animals. Alas! like many humans, their swinish nature was only increased and intensified by their exalted station. Very slothful and greedy were they.

The temple, without its various attendant edifices, courts and gardens, covers an area of forty-two acres. The garden, however, is a mere vegetable patch, with a pond of the sacred lotus in the midst. Several of these superb plants were in bloom, and we bribed a laborer to wade out into the slimy pool and procure us a few blossoms. The slender stem, five feet in length, upholds a broad cup, as elegant in form as the Warwick Vase, and about eight inches in diameter, when fully expanded. The leaves have the velvety whiteness of alabaster, veined with delicate pencillings of the purest rose-color, and in the centre lies the fruit, an inverted cone of pale green, surrounded with a fringe of golden anthers. The perfume has that fresh and healthy sweetness which never cloy the sense. The Rose may be a queen among flowers, but the Lotus, sublime in its purity, grace and exquisite beauty, is a goddess. How gorgeous a show must its blossoms make, on the White Nile, where, at the first ray of sunrise, tens of thousands flash open all at once, along leagues of shore!

Beyond the pool was a little copse, in which stood a small

building, used in the incrimation of the dead priests. It was a simple chamber, with a small entrance, and vents for the escape of the smoke. The body is placed on a funeral pile, which is replenished until the flesh is roasted into cinders and the bones calcined into dust. On our way back to the river, we passed through the habitation of the priests, taking a look at their kitchens and refectories. A number of the younger brethren gathered around us, lusting strongly after the carnal gratification of cigars, and my whole stock was soon divided among them. Mr. Bonney took me to visit a former abbot, a man of much learning, who was then living in a quiet way, on a pension. He received us with much cordiality, and showed us his bachelor establishment of three rooms and a little garden, which were kept in great neatness and order. He was about sixty years of age, and his pale face, calm eye and high, retreating brow, spoke of a serene and studious life. In an inner chamber, however, I noticed one of those couches which are used by the opium-smokers, and the faint, subtle odor of the drug still hung about the furniture and the walls.

In spite of the penalties attached to it by Chinese law, the smoking of opium is scarcely a concealed practice at present. I have seen it carried on in open shops in Shanghai, where there are some streets which are never free from the sickening smell. It had always been my intention to make a trial of the practice, in order to learn its effects by personal experience, and being now on the eve of leaving China, I applied to a gentleman residing in Canton, to put me in the way of enjoying a pipe or two. He was well acquainted with a Chinaman who was addicted to the practice, and by an agreement with him, took me to his house one evening. We were ushered into a

long room, with a divan, or platform about three feet high, at the further end. Several Chinamen were in the room, and one, stretched out on the platform, was preparing his pipe at a lamp. The host invited me to stretch myself opposite to him, and place my head upon one of those cane head-stools which serve the Chinese in lieu of pillows.

The opium-pipe is a bamboo stick, about two feet long, having a small drum inserted near the end, with an aperture in its centre. A piece of opium, about twice the size of a pin's head, is taken up on a slender wire and held in the flame of the lamp until it boils or bubbles up, when it is rolled into a cylindrical shape on the drum, by the aid of the wire. It loses its dark color by the heating and becomes pale and soft. Having been sufficiently rolled, it is placed over the aperture, and the wire, after being thrust through its centre, to allow the air to pass into the pipe, is withdrawn. The pipe is then held to the flame, and as the opium burns, its fumes are drawn into the lungs by a strong and long-continued inspiration. In about half a minute the portion is exhausted, and the smoker is ready for a second pipe.

To my surprise I found the taste of the drug as delicious as its smell is disagreeable. It leaves a sweet, rich flavor, like the finest liquorice, upon the palate, and the gentle stimulus it communicates to the blood in the lungs, fills the whole body with a sensation of warmth and strength. The fumes of the opium are no more irritating to the windpipe or bronchial tubes, than common air, while they seem imbued with a richness of vitality far beyond our diluted oxygen. I had supposed that opium was smoked entirely for the purpose of mental exaltation, and that to the smokers, as to many who intoxicate

themselves with ardent spirits, there was no sensual gratification in the mere taste of the article. The reverse is undoubtedly the truth, and the practice, therefore, is doubly dangerous. Its victim becomes hopelessly involved in its fascinating illusions, and an awful death, such as I had witnessed not long before, is sure, sooner or later, to overtake him who indulges to excess. I have a pretty strong confidence in my own powers of resistance, but do not desire to make the experiment a second time.

Beyond the feeling of warmth, vigor and increased vitality, softened by a happy consciousness of repose, there was no effect, until after finishing the sixth pipe. My spirits then became joyously excited, with a constant disposition to laugh; brilliant colors floated before my eyes, but in a confused and cloudy way, sometimes converging into spots like the eyes in a peacock's tail, but oftenest melting into and through each other, like the hues of changeable silk. Had the physical excitement been greater, they would have taken form and substance, but after smoking *nine* pipes I desisted, through fear of subjecting myself to some unpleasant after-effect. Our Chinese host informed me that he was obliged to take twenty pipes, in order to elevate his mind to the pitch of perfect happiness. I went home feeling rather giddy, and became so drowsy, with slight qualms at the stomach, that I went to bed at an early hour. I had made an arrangement to walk around the walls of Canton the next morning, with Mr. Bonney, and felt some doubt as to whether I should be able to undertake it; but, after a deep and refreshing sleep, I arose at sunrise, feeling stronger and brighter than I had done for weeks past.

The walls of Canton are about eight miles in circuit

This is but a limited extent for a city, which contains upwards of a million of inhabitants, and more than half the population probably live without the walls, on the side next the river. In those dark, narrow, and crooked streets which lie behind the factories, the swarm of human beings is uninterrupted from the earliest dawn until late in the night. We set out at an hour when few of the Europeans were stirring, and the streets were already so crowded that it was difficult to avoid contact with the porters and water-carriers—a contact to be shunned at all hazards. Though there was less noisome filth than in the streets of Shanghai, more senses than one were offended, and I felt much relieved when, after a walk of more than two miles, we came into a less thickly settled quarter. A Chinese city is the greatest of all abominations, and one ceases to wonder at the physical deformity, or the monstrous forms of licentiousness, which are to be found among the lower classes of the natives, when he has seen the manner in which they live.

Our road in many places skirted the wall, which is of brick, about twenty-five feet high, and with a machicolated parapet. At the angles there is sometimes a rude square bastion, surmounted by an ornamental edifice—probably a pleasure-house belonging to gardens within. We passed several gates, into all of which I looked, but could not see that the streets within differed in the least from those without. Near the south-eastern corner Mr. Bonney entered suddenly, I following, and we passed across the angle and out at another gate, without any one attempting to hinder us. While we were in the neighborhood of the factories, we were allowed to pursue our way unnoticed, but in the straggling suburbs on the eastern side, we were frequently hailed with the insulting cry of "*Fan*

kwei!" (Foreign Devil!) One old man, who was at work in his shop, made an exclamation as we passed, which Mr. Bonney translated thus: "I lifted up my eyes, and behold! two devils suddenly appeared before me!" One of these devils however belied the character given him, by carrying with him

bundle of Christian tracts, which he distributed with a liberal hand, every one, old or young, male or female, accepting them with great willingness. They are *too* willing in fact. The carelessness with which they take every thing that is offered them shows a lack of respect for their own faith, an absence of that inherent devotional spirit, which alone can serve as the groundwork of their Christianization.

At a gate near the north-eastern corner, we stopped at a tea-house to take some refreshment. A company of Chinese of the middle class in the white garb of mourning, were waiting there to attend the funeral of some friend. The host brought us steaming cups of tea or rather tea-stew, very strong and invigorating, and a crisp sort of cake seasoned with pork and sugar. Some of the Chinese entered into conversation with Mr. Bonney, in a good-humored friendly way, but one young dandy stretched himself upon the bench beside our table, and indulged in some contemptuous remarks on foreigners. I was well satisfied to be ignorant of the language, for his manner was so insolent, that I could not have replied with the same mildness and prudence as my companion.

The suburbs now ceased, and the open cultivated country reached to the foot of the city wall. To the east extended a fertile plain, dotted with villages, as far as the White Cloud Hills, whose barren summits arose in the distance. We kept on, up a little valley to some springs under a hill on the north

ern side of the city, which supply the only good water to be had. They gush up, strong and abundant, from the bottom of the dell, which was crowded with water-carriers, going to and from the gates. The hill is crowned with a fort which completely commands the city. It was taken without difficulty by Lord Gough, during the English war, and every preparation was made to open a bombardment, when the ransom of \$5,000,000, tendered by the Chinese merchants, was offered and accepted. There is now a small garrison within it, but the sentinel who stood at the entrance, hastily retreated within the walls as we approached, and did not make his appearance again until after we had left.

The view from the fort is very fine, taking in all of Canton, the course of the Pearl River from Whampoa to the mountainous region in the west, the White Cloud Hills, and the rich delta of the river, stretching away to the Bocca Tigris. The mountains which surround this wide landscape are bleak and barren, and contrast strongly with the garden-like beauty of the plain. The broad arms of the river, dotted with boats and junks; the many villages, half-hidden among groves of fruit trees; the lofty pagodas that rise here and there from the banks; and the crowded city itself directly under the eye—the central point which unites the interest of all these scattered objects—combine to form a panorama unique but thoroughly Chinese in its character, and affording as good a type of Chinese scenery as is readily accessible to foreigners. The northern part of Canton rests upon the side of a hill, whose summit is crowned by a great square red temple four stories in height. A slender pagoda, toward the river, is the only other prominent architectural object. About one third of the space with the

walls is taken up with gardens. We did not remain long upon the hill, which is in bad repute, on account of the robberies committed in its vicinity. After descending to a little village, and passing several wet fields of lotus and the taro plant, we came again to the filth and crowds of the outer city, and finally reached our starting-point, after an absence of three hours.

The Feast of Lanterns (as it is called, though incorrectly by foreigners) was celebrated during my visit, but with much less splendor than usual, on account of the disturbed state of society. The flower-boats on the river were all ablaze with lamps, and the shops in the principal streets were gaily illuminated. There were also "sing-songs" (theatrical performances), discordant instruments of noise, and other sources of Chinese pleasure, but the whole display was irregular, barbaric, and utterly devoid of grand effect. When I called to mind the fiery mosques of Constantinople, and the cannon thunders of the Night of Predestination, the Feast of Lanterns seemed a farce in comparison.

I was much interested in a visit to Dr. Parker's Chinese Hospital. Some idea of the good accomplished by this institution may be gathered from the fact, that since its establishment more than forty-nine thousand persons have been admitted. Dr. Parker himself is a very accomplished surgeon; his gallery of portraits exhibiting the tumors which he has removed, and the collection of stones which illustrates his skill in lithotomy, would be treasures to the Museum of a Medical College. His operations in lithotomy, especially, have been remarkably successful, as he has lost but *four* out of, I believe, thirty-two patients.

While in Canton I enjoyed the hospitality of Mr. Gideon

Nye, Jr., one of the prominent American merchants, who is well known at home through his taste for Art. My stay was very pleasant and interesting, and I could have agreeably prolonged it; but I was not sorry when my last night on Chinese soil arrived. The reader may have rightly conjectured that I am not partial to China, but this much I must admit: it is the very best country in the world—to leave.

CHAPTER XLI

THE INDIAN ISLES.

Farewell to China—Whampoa—A Musical Good-Bye—The Bogue Forts—The Last Link—The China Sea—Life on the Sea Serpent—The Straits of Mindoro—Picturesque Islands—Calm Sailing—Moonlight in the Tropics—"Summer Isles of Eden"—The Sooloo Sea—The Cagayanes Islands—Straits of Basilan—Mindanao—A Native Proa—The Sea of Celebes—Entering the Straits of Macassar—Crossing the Equator—Off Celebes—Lazy Life—The Java Sea—Passing the Thousand Islands—Approach to the Straits of Sunda.

On the morning of the 9th of September we left Canton in the Macao steamer, which had been chartered to tow the Sea Serpent out to sea. We went swiftly down the crowded stream, passing the Factories, the temple of Ho-nan, and the floating houses of the aquatic Cantonese, and soon reached the long stretch of green paddy-fields extending to Whampoa. The day was shady, but with a soft, cool, clear atmosphere, which mellowed and deepened the rich colors of the landscape. The White Cloud Hills rose high over the undulating region between, which, with its groves, villages and tall pagodas, refreshed the eye, but took not the least hold on the heart. I found myself admiring its beauty with a cold, passionless appreciation, unconnected with the slightest regret at leaving it, or the least

wish to behold it again. There may be scenes in China fair to look upon, but they are ennobled by no lofty human interest, lighted by no gleam of poetry or art.

Near the mouth of Lob Creek we passed a tall pagoda, and another within a mile or two of Whampoa, crowning the top of a verdant knoll. The latter was built of dark-red stone, and with the ivy and wild shrubs waving from the horned roofs of its nine stories, was really a picturesque object. The shipping of Whampoa was now visible, and in less than half an hour we lay alongside of the good clipper which was thenceforth to be our ocean home. Whampoa is a long, scattering Chinese town, on the southern bank of the river. The foreign vessels anchored in the reach, for a distance of more than a mile, give the place a lively air, and the low, conical hills which rise from the shore, crowned here and there with Chinese buildings, relieve the tameness of the swampy soil on which the town is built. We were obliged to wait for the flood-tide, which detained us two hours.

The anchor was cheerily lifted at last, and we got under way for New York. In going down the river we had a fair view of all the vessels of war anchored in Blenheim Reach, which was only half a mile distant, on our right. The Mississippi lay nearest to us, and as we drew near the opening of the reach one of her boats appeared, with the band on board, floating side by side with us, while they played our stirring national airs. It was a parting compliment from Capt. Lee to Lieut. Contee. The Sea Serpent's crew gathered on the forecastle, gave three hearty cheers, which the Mississippi's men answered with a will, standing up in the boat. This was our last glimpse of naval life, and a fitting farewell to the service. I looked ir

vain for the *Susquehanna*, which was expected from Cumsing moun, but she had not arrived. I would have given much for another sight of her big hull and familiar spars; and, better still, for a hail from some of her jolly men.

The river now became broader and frequently expanded on either side into great arms, some of which extended for many miles into the country. We passed the first bar, which was created by the Chinese sinking junks to prevent the English from reaching Canton. A high hill on the southern shore, near the second bar, which we reached about 5 p. m., is crowned with a pagoda 150 feet high, which is visible at a great distance. Beyond this, the river again expands, to be finally contracted into a narrow pass, at the *Bocca Tigris*, which we fortunately reached before dusk. It is a fine, bold gateway formed by two mountainous islands, which leave a passage of about half a mile between them. There are several Chinese batteries on either hand, but they are more formidable in appearance than in reality.

By the time we had passed the *Bogue*, it was dark. The tide was now in our favor, and we stood away towards *Lintin*. We had a large number of friends, including Messrs. Nye and Tuckerman of Canton, at dinner in the cabin, but about 10 p. m. they all bade us good-bye and returned aboard the steamer. We were cast off a little after midnight, and taking a north-east wind ran down past the *Ladrones* at the rate of ten knots an hour. When I went on deck in the morning, China was no longer visible. The weather was dull and rainy, but we continued to make good progress. On the afternoon of the 12th, by which time we had made 300 miles, a violent squall came on, tearing our maintop-gallant sail and jib into ribbons. Heavy

showers of rain succeeded, and during the night the wind gradually settled into the regular south-west monsoon. By noon the following day, we were in Lat. $14^{\circ} 54'$ N.—consequently south of the Paracel Reefs, and beyond the latitude of violent typhoons. As the wind still blew steadily from the south-west, Captain Howland determined to change his course and make for the Straits of Mindoro, Basilan and Macassar, hoping to get the south-east trade wind in the Java Sea, and thus make a better run to Angier than by slowly beating down the China Sea.

I found the Sea Serpent an excellent sea-boat, in every respect. She behaved admirably on a wind, slipping through the water so softly that we would not have suspected the speed she made. Although so sharp in the bows, she was very dry, scarcely a spray flying over the forecastle. In addition to Lieut. Contee and myself, there was but one other passenger, Mr. Parkman of Boston. Capt. Howland was accompanied by his wife and child. The officers were intelligent and obliging, and our party, though small, was large enough to be agreeable. We were all well satisfied with the prospect of a cruise among the Indian Isles, and therefore welcomed the Captain's decision.

At sunset, on the 14th, we made land ahead, at a considerable distance. As the passage required careful navigation, on account of its abundant reefs, we stood off and on until the next morning. Passing the North and North-west Rocks, the mountainous island of Busvagon, or Camelianes, opened to the south and east, its lofty hills, and deep, picturesque valleys clothed in eternal green. The rocky islets which bristled between us and its shores exhibited the most striking peculiarities of form and structure. Some shot upwards like needles or obelisks from

the dark-blue sea; others rose in heavy masses, like the turrets or bastions of a fortress, crowned with tufts of shrubbery. The rock of which they were formed was of a dark slate color, in vertical strata, which appeared to have been violently broken off at the top, bearing a strong resemblance to columnar basalt.

Busvagon stretched along, point beyond point, for a distance of forty or fifty miles. The land rose with a long, gentle slope from the beaches of white sand, and in the distance stood the vapory peaks of high mountains. We sailed slowly along the outer edge of the islets, to which the larger island made a warm, rich background. The air was deliciously mild and pure, the sea smooth as glass, and the sky as fair as if it had never been darkened by a storm. Except the occasional gambols of the bonitas, or the sparkle of a flying-fish as he leaped into the sun, there was no sign of life on these beautiful waters.

Towards noon the gentle south-east breeze died away; and we lay with motionless sails upon the gleaming sea. The sun hung over the mast-head and poured down a warm tropical languor, which seemed to melt the very marrow in one's bones. For four hours we lay becalmed, when a light ripple stole along from the horizon, and we saw the footsteps of the welcome breeze long before we felt it. Gradually increasing, it bore us smoothly and noiselessly away from Busvagon and the rocky towers and obelisks, and at sunset we saw the phantomlike hills of the southern point of the island of Mindoro, forty miles distant. The night was filled with the glory of the full moon—a golden tropical radiance, nearly as lustrous, and far more soft and balmy, than the light of day—a mystic, enamored bridal of the sea and sky. The breeze was so gentle as to be felt, and no more; the ship slid as silently through the water

as if her keel were muffled in silk; and the sense of repose in motion was so sweet, so grateful to my travel-wearied senses, that I remained on deck until midnight, steeped in a bath of pure indolent happiness.

Our voyage the next day was still more delightful. From dawn until dark we went slowly loitering past the lovely islands that gem those remote seas, until the last of them sank astern in the flush of sunset. Nothing can be more beautiful than their cones of never-fading verdure, draped to the very edge of the waves, except where some retreating cove shows its beach of snow-white sand. On the larger ones are woody valleys, folded between the hills, and opening upon long slopes, overgrown with the cocoa-palm, the mango, and many a strange and beautiful tree of the tropics. The light, lazy clouds, suffused with a crimson flush of heat, that floated slowly through the upper heavens, cast shifting shadows upon the masses of foliage, and deepened, here and there, the dark-purple hue of the sea. Retreating behind one another until they grew dim and soft as clouds on the horizon, and girdled by the most tranquil of oceans, these islands were real embodiments of the joyous fancy of Tennyson, in his dream of the Indies, in "Locksley Hall." Here, although the trader comes, and the flags of the nations of far continents sometimes droop in the motionless air—here are still the heavy-blossomed bowers and the heavy-fruited trees, the summer isles of Eden in their purple spheres of sea. The breeze fell nearly to a calm at noon-day, but our vessel still moved noiselessly southward, and island after island faded from green to violet, and from violet to the dim, pale blue that finally blends with the air.

The next day was most taken up with calms. The captain

and mates spent much of their time in shifting the sails so as to get the most of the faint wind-flaws that reached us, watching for distant ripple-lines on the ocean, or whistling over the rail. In the afternoon land was descried ahead—the Cagayanes Islands, a little group in the middle of the Sooloo Sea. We passed between them about four o'clock, and had a fair view on either hand. The shores are smooth walls of perpendicular rock, about a hundred feet in height, and almost completely hidden under a curtain of rich vegetation. Here and there the rock falls away, leaving little beaches of sand, behind which rise thick forests of cocoa or palm. I could distinguish with the glass half a dozen bamboo huts on the shore. A few boats were drawn up on the beach. The islands looked so lovely as we passed them, in the soft lustre of sunset, that I longed for a day of calm, to go ashore where so few Europeans have ever set foot, and have a glance at the primitive barbarism of the natives. The sea still remained as smooth as a mountain lake. We saw great quantities of drift-wood, upon which boobies and cormorants perched in companies of two and three, and watched for fish as they drifted lazily along. In the neighborhood of the islands we frequently saw striped snakes, four or five feet in length.

The lofty coast of Mindanao, one of the largest of the Philippine Islands, was visible at sunrise, on the 19th. Before long Basilan appeared in the south-east, and by noon we were in the mouth of the strait. The observation gave Lat. $7^{\circ} 3' N.$, Long. $121^{\circ} E.$ Two vessels were descried ahead, a ship and a brig, both lying close in to Mindanao, and apparently becalmed. In fact, we could easily trace a belt of calm water near the

more, caused by the high hills of the island, which prevented the southern breeze from "blowing home."

Four or five small islands—the commencement of the Sooloo Archipelago—lie to the westward of Basilan. The strait is from six to eight miles wide at its narrowest part, and tolerably free from dangerous points. To the north, the hills of Mindanao, completely mantled with forests, rise grandly to the height of near two thousand feet. The shore presents an almost impenetrable array of cocoa palms. There were two or three cleared spaces on the hills, and as we entered further into the strait, we could see with the glass not only some native huts, but the houses of Spanish residents on the shore. Still further, at the head of a little bight, and protected by a level island of palms, we saw the Spanish settlement of Samboongan. There were several large two-story houses, and a white chapel, before which lay half a dozen small craft at anchor. A native proa put out from the shore, some distance ahead of us, and we at first thought she was making for us with a load of fruit. As she came nearer she hoisted a huge yellow flag, with a red ornamental border, and some large red characters in Chinese. There were six persons on board, and he who appeared to be the leader wore a yellow robe. The boat had an outrigger on each side, and was propelled by paddles and a light canvas sail. She came near us, but to our disappointment dropped astern and passed over to Basilan.

The latter island is remarkably picturesque in its appearance, its long, wavy slopes of foliage shooting into tall conical peaks. In passing through the strait, these piles of eternal vegetation on either hand have an enchanting effect. I took sketches of both islands, which preserved their outlines, but

could not give the least idea of their richness and beauty. We had a light westerly wind, with the tide in our favor, and just as the moon arose like a globe of gold, passed the eastern mouth of the strait and entered the Sea of Celebes.

We now experienced a succession of calms and baffling winds for five days, as we stood south by west across the Sea of Celebes, making for the Straits of Macassar. There was an occasional squall of an hour or two, which gave us a "slant" in the right direction. The wind at last shifted, so that we were able to run upon our course close-hauled, and on the afternoon of the 25th we caught a distant and misty view of the Haring Islands. The next morning at sunrise, we saw the lofty headland of Point Kaneoongan, in Borneo, at the western entrance of the straits. Cape Donda, in Celebes, thirty miles distant, appeared for a short time, but was soon hidden by showers. On the 27th, at noon, we were in $0^{\circ} 5' S.$, having crossed the Equator about 11 A. M., and thenceforth, for four days, we slowly loitered along through the Straits of Macassar, with light, variable winds, and seasons of dead, sultry calm. The mercury stood at 88° in the coolest part of the ship. The sea was as smooth as a mirror, and as glossy and oily in its dark-blue gleam, as if the neighboring shores of Macassar had poured upon it libations of their far-famed unguent. Occasionally we saw the shores of Celebes, but so distant and dim that it was rather like a dream of land than land itself. We walked the deck languidly, morning and evening, sat under the awning by day, alternately dozing and smoking and reading, watched the drift-wood floating by—mangrove logs, with companies of sea-fowl making their fishing excursions—at

our occupation and slept with difficulty: and thus the days passed.

On the 2d of October a light south wind reached us, and we left the dim, far-off headlands of Celebes—the land of sandal-wood groves and birds of Paradise. We made the twin rocks called “The Brothers,” off the southern point of Borneo, and about noon passed between the islands of Moresses and Little Pulo Laut. The latter are noble piles of verdure, rising a thousand feet from the water, in long undulating outlines. The Java Sea is a beautiful piece of water, comparatively free from reefs and shoals, and rarely exceeding forty fathoms in depth, so that vessels may anchor in any part of it. Its surface is as smooth as a lake, and even when making eight or nine knots, there was scarcely any perceptible motion in the vessel. The temperature was delicious, and the south wind so bland, sweet and elastic, after the sultry, surcharged atmosphere of Macassar Straits, that the change was perceptible in the temper and spirits of all on board.

We had light but favorable winds, and for four days more stood across the Java Sea, averaging about 100 miles a day. The water was alive with snakes and flying-fish. Passing the Lubeck Islands and Carimon Java, we approached so near the Javanese shores that on the evening of the 6th the delicious land-breeze came off to us, bringing an odor of moist earth and vegetable exhalations. We expected to have a glimpse of Batavia, but made considerable nothing, so that we lost sight of the low Java coast before morning. At noon we made the Thousand Islands, and as they have been but very imperfectly explored, we were obliged to go completely to the northward of them, instead of taking one of the numerous channels be

tween. They are small and low, but thickly covered with trees, among which the cocoa-palm predominates. I counted thirty-three islands within a sweep of a hundred degrees. The wind being dead ahead, we stood on the northern tack until we made the North Watcher, and then fetched a S. by E. course, the current setting us to windward. The same evening, however, the wind changed, and before I turned into my berth, we were thirty miles off Angier Point, the last gateway intervening between us and the Indian Ocean. We had been twenty-eight days in making the voyage from Whampoa—a distance as we sailed, of 2,613 miles.

CHAPTER XLII.

AROUND THE CAPE.

Entering the Straits of Sunda—Malay Boats—The Mangosteen—Bargaining with the Natives—Scenery of the Straits—Angier—Passing the Straits—Death on Board—The Indian Ocean—A Submarine Earthquake—A Tropical Sunset—A Fatal Escape—The Trade Wind—Mozambique Channel—The Coast of Africa—Doubling the Cape—Southern Constellations—Distant View of Table Mountain—On the Atlantic—The Trades again—Restoration—A Slaver.

I AROSE at sunrise on the morning of the 8th of October, in time to see the Sea Serpent enter the Straits of Sunda. On our left, five or six miles distant, arose the lofty headland of Point St. Nicholas; in front was the rock called "The Cap," and the island of "Thwart-the-Way," while the mountains of Sumatra were barely visible far to the west. We were scarcely abreast of the headland when two native *prahus*, or boats, were seen coming off to us, the boatmen laboring at their sweeps with a sharp, quick cry, peculiar to semi-barbarous people. One of the boats was soon alongside, with a cargo of yams, plantains and fowls, with such fancy articles as shells, monkeys, parroquets and Java sparrows. The captain and crew were Malays, and nearly all spoke English more or less fluently. The former had an account-book, showing his deal

ings with ships, and a printed register from the Dutch Government, containing notices of the vessels called upon in the straits. We were gratified to find that we had not been beaten, the shortest passage from Whampoa, previous to our own, being thirty days.

The second boat soon arrived, and between the two Capt. Howland managed to procure about fifteen cwt. of yams, with abundant supplies of potatoes, fowls, and paddy. The fruits they brought off were plantains, cocoa-nuts, ripe and green, and a few *mangosteens*, which were then going out of season. The latter were mostly rotten, but the few fresh ones which we picked out were enough to convince me that its fame as the most exquisite of all fruits had not been overrated. The very look of the snow-white pulp, softly imbedded in its thick, juicy, crimson husk, is refreshing; and its melting coolness and sweetness, relieved by the faintest mixture of a delicious acid flavor, makes it the very nectar and ambrosia of the vegetable world. Certainly no other fruit is comparable to it in flavor and lusciousness.

While the boat went back to Angier for fresh supplies of paddy and other necessities—an arrangement which deprived us of all chance of landing there—we slowly drifted down the straits with the tide, past Cap Rock and towards 'Thwart-the-Way. I was charmed with the beauty of the Javanese shore. Low hills, completely covered with foliage, rose from the water, with ascending upland slopes beyond, and groups of lofty mountains in the background. In the almost interminable wealth of tropical vegetation which covered the land, the feathery cocoa-palm and the massive foliage of the banyan could be plainly recognized. Passing the picturesque headlands and

leafy wildernesses of "Thwart-the-Way," we lay to off Angier, waiting for the boat. We were nearly two miles from shore, but the scattered Malay village, the big banyan-tree, the Dutch fort, and the light-house, with its tiled roof, were all distinctly visible. The lofty promontory of Rajah Bassa, on the Sumatra side, loomed in the distance. The wind was blowing fresh from the south, and favorable for us, but we were obliged to lay to nearly an hour for our supplies, surrounded in the mean time with small boats, from which we purchased fish, shells, parroquets and Java sparrows. At last, all the fresh stores were shipped, and we ran off before a spanking breeze. Point St. Nicholas, Button Rock, Angier and 'Thwart-the-Way soon disappeared, and the superb conical peak of the island of Crockatoa rose on our lee bow. We saw Prince's island at dusk, on the weather bow, and entered the Indian Ocean before the twilight had wholly faded—having made the passage through the straits under unusually favorable auspices.

At midnight a man who had been shipped by the Consul at Canton, died on board. He was an old sailor, who had fallen ill at Manilla, whence he had been sent to China, and there, by a blind course of drunkenness and harlotry, sealed his own doom. There was no hope of his recovery, for he had himself cut it off. It was a case of deliberate suicide. But he had probably survived all friends, all associations of home, all manly energy and virtue, all pleasure in even mere animal enjoyment, all hope of any thing better in life, and accepted death with a reckless insensibility which disarmed it of fear. He was buried at noon the next day, Capt. Howland reading the funeral service.

The next morning the change from the island seas of the

Indies, to the open ocean, was at once manifest in the dark-blue of the water, the paleness of the sky, the clearness and bracing freshness of the air, the wider stretch of the horizon, and the long, deliberate undulations of the sea, which gave our vessel a motion we had not felt for weeks before. Towards noon the wind abated, leaving us swaying uneasily to and fro, with the sails flapping heavily against the masts.

On Monday evening, the 10th of October, an unusual incident happened to us. The night was clear, and cooler than usual, with a light breeze, not more than three knots at most, and the same heavy swell which we had had for two days previous. I was walking the quarter-deck with Mr. Cornell, the second mate, about a quarter past eleven o'clock, when the ship suddenly stopped, and shook so violently from stem to stern that every timber vibrated. This motion was accompanied by a dull rumbling, or rather humming noise, which seemed to come from under the stern. We were at first completely puzzled and bewildered by this unexpected circumstance, but a moment's reflection convinced us that it proceeded from an earthquake. Capt. Howland and Mr. Contee came on deck just in time to feel a second shock, nearly as violent as the first. Those who were below heard a strong hissing noise at the vessel's side. There did not appear to be any unusual agitation of the water, notwithstanding the vessel was so violently shaken. The length of time which elapsed, from first to last, was about a minute and a half. The breeze fell immediately afterwards, and we had barely steerage way until morning.

The sunset on the following day was one of the most superb I ever saw. The sky was divided into alternate bands of pure blue and brilliant rose-color, streaming upwards and outwards

from the sun, without any interfusion or blending of their hues. At the horizon the blue became amber-green, and then gold, and the rose-tint a burning crimson. A mountainous line of heavy purple clouds formed a foreground along the horizon, behind which the rayed sky shone with indescribable splendor, doubling its gorgeous hues on the glassy surface of the sea. There was a dead calm all night, and at noon the reckoning showed a progress of twenty-eight miles in twenty-four hours. The swell was worse than ever, and the sails seemed to be slowly beating themselves to pieces against the masts.

On the morning of the 14th I lost a pretty little parrot which I had bought at Angier. He had become so tame that I took him out of the cage to feed, and while to all appearance contentedly eating rice in my hand, he shot off suddenly, darted through the cabin like a flash, and out of one of the stern-ports. He was gone in an instant, and lost to me for ever—an instance that even freedom may be fatal. The afternoon was cloudy, with frequent squalls, but about midnight the wind came up out of the south and increased at such a rate, that by daylight we were making twelve knots an hour. The swell was still heavy, the sea covered with sparkling foam-caps, and the sky streaked with flying masses of cloud. The air had a bracing, exhilarating freshness and steadiness, which led us to hope that we had at last caught the long-desired “trades.”

Our hopes were entirely fulfilled. My log of the voyage showed the consecutive days' runs of 269, 235, 227, 261, and 247 miles, during which time the ship kept on her course, scarce shifting a sail. The weather was gloriously clear and brilliant, with an elastic and bracing air, and a temperature ranging from 70° to 77°. The sunsets were magnificent; and at night the

new Southern constellations united themselves to the superb array of Northern stars, reaching from Taurus to Gemini, and formed one sublime and glittering band across the heavens. On the 21st, the wind abated, and we made but 148 miles, but it freshened the next day, and so held until the 29th, when we achieved 268 miles, passed the latitude of Madagascar, and entered the Mozambique Channel. Here we encountered a heavy cross-sea and head current, but were cheered by the sight of the Cape pigeon and albatross, which wheeled and swooped across our wake, in lines as perfectly rhythmical and harmonious as strains of music.

On the 1st of November, the wind shifted to the south-west, obliging us to run close-hauled. In the evening the sea became very rough, rolling in long, heavy swells, which indicated that we had entered the ocean current setting westward around the Cape. The ship plunged so violently that we came down to double-reefed topsails, and logged less than five knots. About four o'clock the next morning, while it was yet perfectly dark, the air was so pervaded with a fresh earthy smell, that the Captain tacked and stood off on a south-east course. Daylight showed us the bold, bleak coast of Africa, about five miles distant. We had made the land about fifty miles south of Port Natal. At nine o'clock, however, we tacked again, the wind having shifted sufficiently to enable us to clear the land, although we ran within eight or ten miles of it during the whole day. The coast rose in long ridges of bleak hills, which, near the sea, were streaked with fields of barren sand, but further inland were green, and covered with thickets. There was not the slightest sign of cultivation, and I should have considered

it uninhabited, but for several large fires which were burning on the hills.

The next morning, November 3d, found us becalmed off the Eastern headland of Algoa Bay. It was a warm, cloudless third of May in the lower hemisphere. We sounded, and finding fifty-five fathoms, endeavored to turn the calm to account by fishing for cod; but after sending down the line four times and having two hooks bitten off, a breeze came out of the east and began moving us forward too fast for the sport. The east wind nobly befriended us. At noon on the 4th we reached our Southern Ultima Thule (Lat. $35^{\circ} 17' S.$), and headed westward for the Atlantic, fifty miles from the African coast. Cape Lagulhas, the southern extremity of the Continent, was 97 miles distant. The sky was cloudless, the sun warm, the air deliciously pure, and just cool enough to make walking on the quarter-deck enjoyable. The sea was smooth, and no sign in air or ocean betokened that we were in the vicinity of the dreaded Cape of Storms.

At night the young moon, Jupiter and Venus, if not exactly in conjunction, were so near it as to shine as with the light of a single planet. But two or three degrees distant from each other, they formed a splendid triangle, the effect of which, on the roseate field of the austral sunset, was indescribably magnificent. The sky was intensely clear, and towards midnight Taurus, Orion, Sirius, Canopus, the Southern Cross and the Magellan Clouds were all visible at once, bewildering the eye with their lustre. The next morning we could plainly distinguish, though at a great distance, the vapors hanging over the Cape and the headlands which bound False, or St. Simon's Bay, on the east. Towards noon they were lifted by the sun,

and the far, faint, blue outline of Table Mountain, with that of the four or five broken peaks forming the Cape, was distinctly visible. They were so precisely similar to the pictures I had seen, and to that in my imagination, that I recognized them at once, with a feeling of familiar acquaintance. They slowly passed astern, and at four o'clock faded out of sight behind us. And so farewell, savage old Africa! Shall I ever see your shores again?

Now, at last, I felt that our prow was turned homewards—that our keel ploughed the Atlantic, and the old far-off Asian world lay behind me. We were again sailing for the North Star, for the hemisphere where the strong heart of the world beats, and will beat for ever! We were on our own side of the globe, and I felt—what I had not before felt, since leaving China—that every day was bringing me nearer home. The very sky was changed; the sea was of a deeper blue; the waves danced and sparkled with a merrier life; the clouds gathered into larger masses and grouped themselves together with a sense of power, no longer like the slumberous vapors of the East, smouldering languidly away, in the fires of the sun. There was a prophecy of America in the very air, and I invoked a threefold benediction on the cold south-wind, which filled every inch of our towering piles of canvas, and carried us through the night at twelve knots an hour, dashing the ocean into phosphoric foam.

After making 532 miles in two days, the wind abated, and we dragged along slowly for three days more, through the variable latitudes, before taking the trade-winds again. The albatross and Cape pigeon followed us, past their usual latitudes, until the increase of temperature, in the neighborhood of the

Tropics, warned them to return. The trade-wind, which we took on the 10th of November, was rather sluggish, and even with the addition of sky-sails and royal studding-sails, our pace was languid. The sea was unusually calm, and the swells over which we expected to be "rolling down to St. Helena," according to the sailor's ditty, did not make their appearance. No voyaging could be calmer and more agreeable, and our routine of life had come to be so settled and unvarying, that the day slipped by unawares. I employed this period of quiet and isolation in recalling and rewriting a large package of letters, descriptive of things in India and China, which had gone down in the steamer *Lewiston*, in the China Sea. Floating over that sleepy, deserted sea—for we saw but a single vessel—I was enabled to reproduce the Past so vividly that not a feature was wanting, and, almost word for word, the lost letters were restored.

On the morning of the 11th we passed the meridian of Greenwich, and began to count western longitude. The only other incident was the sight of a rakish-looking brig, which passed several miles astern. Mr. Contee, who had made a cruise in the African Squadron, at once pronounced her to be a slaver. Her movements betrayed an evident anxiety to avoid us.

CHAPTER XLIII.

A DAY AT ST. HELENA.

Proposed Call at St. Helena—First View of the Island—Its Cliffs—Approach to Jamestown—View from the Anchorage—Landing—The Town and Ravine—Ascending the Gorge—Looking Down—"The Briars"—Summit of the Island—Pastoral Landscape—Sea-View—Approach to Longwood—Reception—The Billiard-Room—Scene of Napoleon's Death—His Bedroom—Desecration of Longwood—The New Residence—The Longwood Farm—The "Crown and Rose"—National Peculiarities—The Grave of Napoleon—The Old Woman's Welcome—Condition of the Grave—St. Helena Literature—The Old Woman's Admirable Story—Napoleon's Spring—Return to Jamestown—Departure from the Island.

THE three passengers on board the *Sea Serpent* were greatly delighted to learn from Capt. Howland, on the day when we crossed the Tropic of Capricorn, that the water was getting short, and he had therefore decided to touch at St. Helena for a fresh supply. We had already been more than sixty days on board, and the sea, with all its wonderful fascination, was growing monotonous. Here was an event which, in addition to its positive interest, would give us at least five days of anticipation and a week of active remembrance, virtually shortening our voyage to that extent; for at sea we measure time less by the calendar than by our individual sense of its duration.

I have spent several months on shipboard, when, according to the almanac, barely a fortnight had elapsed.

The trade-wind bore us slowly northward, and when I went on deck at sunrise, on the 14th of November, St. Helena was in sight, about twenty-five miles distant. It was a dark-blue mass, filling about twenty degrees of the horizon, and of nearly uniform elevation above the sea, but gradually resolved itself into sharper and more broken outlines as we approached. Except upon a lofty terrace on the southern side, where there was a tinge of green and some traces of fields, the coast presented a frightfully rocky and inhospitable appearance. Nevertheless it displayed some grand effects of coloring. The walls of naked rock, several hundred feet high, which rose boldly from the sea, in some places overhanging their base, were tinted as by

“ the deep-blue gloom
Of thunder-shower,”

the hollow chasms between them being filled with gorgeous masses of purple-black shadow, under the sultry clouds which hung over the island. At the south-eastern extremity were two pointed, isolated rocks, probably a hundred feet high. We stood around the opposite extremity of the island, making for the port of Jamestown, which faces the north-west. The coast on this side rises into two bold heads, one of which projects outward like a gigantic sapstan, while the other runs slantingly up to a pointed top, which is crowned with a signal station. The rock has a dark, bluish-slate color, with streaks of a warm reddish-brown, and the strata, burst apart in the centre, yet slanting upward toward each other like the sides of

a volcano, tell of upheaval by some tremendous subterranean agency. The structure of the island is purely volcanic, and except the rock of Aden, on the coast of Arabia, I never saw a more forbidding spot.

The breeze increased as we drew near the island, but when we ran under the lee of the great cliffs, fell away almost entirely, so that we drifted lazily along within half a mile of them. At length a battery hove in sight, hewn in the face of the precipice, and anchored vessels, one by one, came out behind the point. We stood off a little, urged along by occasional flaws of wind, and in a short time the shallow bight which forms the roadstead of St. Helena lay before us. There was another battery near at hand, at the foot of a deep, barren glen, called Rupert's Valley, from which a road, notched in the rock, leads around the intervening cliffs to the gorge, at the bottom of which Jamestown is built. A sea-wall across the mouth of this gorge, a row of ragged trees, weather-beaten by the gales of the Atlantic, and the spire of a church, were all that appeared of the town. The walls of the fort crowned the lofty cliff above, and high behind them towered the signal station, on the top of a conical peak, the loftiest in the island. The stone ladder which leads from the tower to the fort was marked on the face of the cliff like a white ribbon unrolled from its top. Inland, a summit covered with dark pine-trees, from the midst of which glimmered the white front of a country mansion, rose above the naked heights of the shore. This was the only gleam of fertility which enlivened the terrible sterility of the view.

Further in-shore a few gun-boats and water-boats lay at anchor, and some fishing-skiffs were pulling about. As we

forged slowly along to a good anchoring ground, the American consul came off, followed by a boarding-officer, and we at once received permission to go ashore and make the most of our short stay. The consul's boat speedily conveyed us to the landing-place, at the eastern extremity of the town. Every thing had a dreary and deserted air. There were half-a-dozen men and boys, with Portuguese features and uncertain complexions, about the steps, a red-coated soldier at a sentry-box, and two or three lonely-looking individuals under the weather-beaten trees. Passing a row of mean houses, built against the overhanging rock, a drawbridge over a narrow moat admitted us within the walls. A second wall and gate, a short distance further, ushered us into the public square of Jamestown. Even at its outlet, the valley is not more than a hundred and fifty yards wide, and the little town is crowded, or rather jammed, deep in its bottom, between nearly perpendicular cliffs, seven or eight hundred feet in height. At the top of the square is the church, a plain yellowish structure, with a tall, square, pointed spire; and beyond it Market street, the main thoroughfare of the little place, opens up the valley.

A carriage—almost the only one in Jamestown—was procured for Mrs. Howland; my fellow-passenger, Parkman, provided himself with a saddle-horse, and we set out for Longwood. We had a mounted Portuguese postillion, and rattled up the steep and stony main street in a style which drew upon us the eyes of all Jamestown. The road soon left the town, ascending the right side of the ravine by a very long and steep grade. Behind the town are the barracks of the soldiery and their parade-ground—all on a cramped and contracted scale; then some dreary burial-grounds, the graves in which resembled

heaps of cinders; then a few private mansions, and green garden-patches, winding upwards for a mile or more. The depth and narrowness of the gorge completely shut out the air; the heat was radiated powerfully from its walls of black volcanic rock, and the bristling cacti and yuccas by the roadside, with full-crowned cocoa-palms below, gave it a fiery, savage, tropical character. The peak of the signal-station loomed high above us from the opposite side, and now the head of the ravine—a precipice several hundred feet high, over which fell a silver thread of water—came into sight. This water supplies the town and shipping, beside fertilizing the gardens in the bed of the ravine. It is clear as crystal, and of the sweetest and freshest quality. Looking backward, we saw the spire of the little church at the bottom projected against the blue plain of ocean, the pigmy hulls of the vessels in the roads, and a great triangular slice of sea, which grew wider and longer as we ascended, until the horizon was full fifty miles distant.

Near the top of the ravine there is a natural terrace about a quarter of a mile in length, lying opposite to the cascade. It contains a few small fields, divided by scrubby hedges, and, near the further end, two pleasant dwelling-houses, surrounded by a garden in which I saw some fine orange-trees. This is "The Briars," memorable for having been Napoleon's first residence on the island. The Balcombe family occupied the larger of the two dwellings, which is flanked by tall Italian cypresses, while the other building, which was then a summer pavilion, but was afterwards enlarged to accommodate the Emperor and his suite, received him on the very night of his landing from the Bellerophon. It stands on a little knoll, overlooking a deep glen, which debouches into the main valley just

below. The place is cheerful though solitary; it has a sheltered, sunny aspect, compared with the bleak heights of Longwood, and I do not wonder that the great exile left it with regret. Miss Balcombe's account of Napoleon's sojourn at "The Briars," is among the most striking reminiscences of his life on the island.

Just above the terrace the road turned, and, after a short ascent, gained the crest of the ridge, where the grade became easier, and the cool south-east trade-wind, blowing over the height, refreshed us after the breathless heat of the ravine. The road was bordered with pine-trees, and patches of soft green turf took the place of the volcanic dust and cinders. The flower-stems of the aloe-plants, ten feet in height, had already begun to wither, but the purple buds of the cactus were opening, and thick clusters of a watery, succulent plant were starred with white, pink, and golden blossoms. We had now attained the central upland of the island, which slopes downward in all directions to the summit of the sea-wall of cliffs. On emerging again from the wood, a landscape of a very different character met our view. Over a deep valley, the sides of which were alternately green with turf and golden with patches of blossoming broom, we looked upon a ridge of table-land three or four miles long, near the extremity of which, surrounded by a few straggling trees, we saw the houses of Longwood. In order to reach them, it was necessary to pass around the head of the intervening valley. In this direction the landscape was green and fresh, dotted with groves of pine and white country-houses. Flocks of sheep grazed on the turfy hill-sides, and a few cows and horses ruminated among the clumps of broom. Down in the bottom of the valley, I noticed a small

enclosure, planted with Italian cypresses, and with a square white object in the centre. It did not need the postillion's words to assure me that I looked upon the Grave of Napoleon.

Looking eastward towards the sea, the hills became bare and red, gashed with chasms and falling off in tremendous precipices, the height of which we would only guess from the dim blue of the great sphere of sea, whose far-off horizon was drawn above their summits, so that we seemed to stand in the centre of a vast concavity. In color, form, and magnificent desolation, these hills called to my mind the mountain region surrounding the Dead Sea. Clouds rested upon the high, pine-wooded summits to the west of us, and the broad, sloping valley, on the other side of the ridge of Longwood, was as green as a dell of Switzerland. The view of those fresh pasture slopes, with their flocks of sheep, their groves and cottages, was all the more delightful from its being wholly unexpected. Where the ridge joins the hills, and one can look into both valleys at the same time, there is a small tavern, with the familiar English sign of the "Crown and Rose." Our road now led eastward along the top of the ridge, over a waste tract covered with clumps of broom, for another mile and a half, when we reached the gate of the Longwood Farm. A broad avenue of trees, which all lean inland from the stress of the trade-wind, conducts to the group of buildings, on a bleak spot, overlooking the sea, and exposed to the full force of the wind. Our wheels rolled over a thick, green turf, the freshness of which showed how unfrequent must be the visits of strangers.

On reaching the gate, a small and very dirty boy, with a milk-and-molasses complexion, brought out to us a notice pasted on a board, intimating that those who wished to see the

residence of the Emperor Napoleon must pay two shillings a-piece *in advance*; children half-price. A neat little English woman of that uncertain age which made me hesitate to ask her whether she had ever seen the Emperor, was in attendance, to receive the fees and act as cicerone. We alighted at a small green verandah, facing a wooden wing which projects from the eastern front of the building. The first room we entered was whitewashed, and covered all over with the names of visitors, in charcoal, pencil, and red chalk. The greater part of them were French. "This," said the little woman, "was the Emperor's billiard-room, built after he came to live at Longwood. The walls have three or four times been covered with names, and whitewashed over." A door at the further end admitted us into the drawing-room, in which Napoleon died. The ceiling was broken away, and dust and cobwebs covered the bare rafters. The floor was half-decayed, almost invisible through the dirt which covered it, and the plastering, falling off, disclosed in many places the rough stone walls. A winnowing-mill and two or three other farming utensils, stood in the corners. The window looked into a barn-yard filled with mud and dung. Stretched on a sofa, with his head beside this window, the great conqueror, the "modern Sesostris," breathed his last, amid the delirium of fancied battle and the howlings of a storm which shook the island. The corner-stone of the jamb, nearest which his head lay, has been quarried out of the wall, and taken to France.

Beyond this was the dining-room, now a dark, dirty barn floor, filled to the rafters with straw and refuse timbers. We passed out into a cattle-yard, and entered the Emperor's bedroom. A horse and three cows were comfortably stalled there

in, and the floor of mud and loose stones was covered with dung and litter. "Here," said the guide, pointing to an unusually filthy stall in one corner, "was the Emperor's bath-room. Mr. Solomon (a Jew in Jamestown) has the marble bathing-tub he used. Yonder was his dressing room"—a big brindled calf was munching some grass in the very spot—"and here" (pointing to an old cow in the nearest corner) "his attendant slept." So miserable, so mournfully wretched was the condition of the place, that I regretted not having been content with an outside view of Longwood. On the other side of the cattle-yard stands the houses which were inhabited by Count Montholon, Las Casas, and Dr. O'Meara; but at present they are shabby, tumble-down sheds, whose stone walls alone have preserved their existence to this day. On the side facing the sea, there are a few pine-trees, under which is a small crescent-shaped fish-pond, dry and nearly filled with earth and weeds. Here the Emperor used to sit and feed his tame fish. The sky, overcast with clouds, and the cold wind which blew steadily from the sea, added to the desolation of the place.

Passing through the garden, which is neglected, like the house, and running to waste, we walked to the new building erected by the Government for Napoleon's use, but which he never inhabited. It is a large quadrangle, one story high, plain but commodious, and with some elegance in its arrangement. It has been once or twice occupied as a residence, but is now decaying from very neglect. Standing under the brow of the hill, it is sheltered from the wind, and much more cheerful in every respect than the old mansion. We were conducted through the empty chambers, intended for billiard, dining, drawing, and bed-rooms. In the bath-room, where yet stands

the wooden case which enclosed the marble tub, a flock of geese were luxuriating. The curtains which hung at the windows were dropping to pieces from rot, and in many of the rooms the plastering was cracked and mildewed by the leakage of rains through the roof. Near the building is a neat cottage, in which General Bertrand and his family formerly resided. It is now occupied by the gentleman who leases the farm of Longwood from the Government. The farm is the largest on the island, containing one thousand acres, and is rented at £315 a year. The uplands around the house are devoted to the raising of oats and barley, but grazing is the principal source of profit.

I plucked some branches of geranium and fragrant heliotrope from the garden, and we set out on our return. I prevailed upon Mr. Parkman to take my place in the carriage, and give me his horse as far as the "Crown and Rose," thereby securing an inspiring gallop of nearly two miles. Two Englishmen, of the lower order, had charge of the tavern, and while I was taking a glass of ale, one of them touched his hat very respectfully, and said: "Axin' your pardon, sir, are you from the States?" I answered in the affirmative. "There!" said he, turning to the other and clapping his hands, "I knew it; I've won the bet." "What were your reasons for thinking me an American?" I asked. "Why," said he, "the gentlemen from the States are always *so mild*! I knowed you was one before you got off the horse."

We sent the carriage on by the road, to await us on the other side of the glen, and proceeded on foot to the Grave. The path led down through a garden filled with roses and heliotropes. The peach-trees were in blossom, and the tropical *loguât*, which

I had seen growing in India and China, hung full of ripe yellow fruit. As we approached the little enclosure at the bottom of the glen, I, who was in advance, was hailed by a voice crying out, "This way, sir, this way!" and, looking down, saw at the gate a diminutive, wrinkled, old, grizzly-headed, semi-negro semi-Portuguese woman, whom I at once recognized as the *custodienne* of the tomb, from descriptions which the officers of the Mississippi had given me. "Ah! there you are!" said I; "I knew it must be you." "Why, Captain!" she exclaimed. "is that you? How you been this long while? I didn't know you was a-comin', or I would ha' put on a better dress, for, you see, I was a-washin' to-day. "Dickey!"—addressing a great, fat, white youth of twenty-two or twenty-three, with a particularly stupid and vacant face—"run up to the garden, and git two or three of the finest *bokys* as ever you can, for the Captain and the ladies!"

At the gate of the enclosure hung a placard, calling upon all visitors to pay, in advance, the sum of one shilling and sixpence each, before approaching the tomb. This touching testimony of respect having been complied with, we were allowed to draw near to the empty vault, which, for twenty years, enshrined the corpse of Napoleon. It is merely an oblong shaft of masonry, about twelve feet deep, and with a rude roof thrown over the mouth, to prevent it being filled by the rains. A little railing surrounds it, and the space between is planted with geraniums and scarlet salvias. Two willows—one of which has been so stript by travellers, that nothing but the trunk is left—shade the spot, and half-a-dozen monumental cypresses lift their tall obelisks around. A flight of steps leads to the bottom of the vault, where the bed of masonry which

enclosed the coffin still remains. I descended to the lowest step, and there found, hanging against the damp wall, a written tablet stating that the old woman, then waiting for me at the top, told an admirable and excellent story about the burial of Napoleon, which travellers would do well to extract from her and that one shilling was but a fair compensation for the pleasure she would afford them. Appended to the announcement were the following lines, which I transcribed on the spot :

“FIRMLY strike my bounding lyre,
 Poet's muse can never tire,
 Nosegays gay and flowers so wild,
 Climate good and breezes mild,
 Humbly ask a shilling, please,
 Before the stranger sails the seas.

NAPOLEON was in love with a lady so true,
 He gave her a gold ring set with diamonds and pearls,
 Which was worthy the honors of many brave earls.
 But she died, it is said, in her bloom and her beauty,
 So his love broken-hearted
 For ever was parted.

He drank of the spring and its water so clear,
 Which was reserved for his use, and he held it most dear.
 So he died, so he died,
 In the bloom of his pride.

In his life he sat under yon lone willow-tree,
 And studied the air, the earth, and the sea;
 His arms were akimbo, his thoughts far away.
 He lived six months at the house on the hill, at his
 friend's, the brave GENERAL BERTRAND by name, and
 from thence he would come

To visit the spot,
 And stand in deep thought,
 Forgotten or not ”

If I had been saddened by the neglect of Longwood, I was disgusted by the profanation of the tomb. Is there not enough reverence in St. Helena, to prevent the grave which a great name has hallowed, from being defiled with such abominable doggerel? And there was the old woman, who, having seen me read the notice, immediately commenced her admirable and interesting story in this wise: "Six years he lived upon the island. He came here in 1815, and he died in 1821. Six years he lived upon the island. He was buried with his head to the east. This is the east. His feet was to the west. This is the west. Where you see that brown dirt, there was his head. He wanted to be buried beside his wife Josephine; but, as that couldn't be done, he was put here. They put him here because he used to come down here with a silver mug in his pocket, and take a drink out of that spring. That's the reason he was buried here. There was a guard of a sergeant and six men up there on the hill all the time he was down here a-drinkin' out of the spring with his silver mug. This was the way he walked." Here the old woman folded her arms, tossed back her grizzly head, and strode to and fro with so ludicrous an attempt at dignity, that, in spite of myself, I was forced into laughter. "Did you ever see him?" I asked. "Yes, Captain," said she. "I seed him a many a time, and I always said, 'Good mornin', Sir,' but he never had no conversation with me." A draught of the cool and delicious lymph of Napoleon's Spring completed the farce. I broke a sprig from one of the cypresses, wrote my name in the visitor's book, took the "boky" of gillyflowers and marigolds, which Dickey had collected, and slowly remounted the opposite side of the glen. My thoughts involuntarily turned from the desecrated grave to

that fitting sepulchre where he now rests under the banners of a hundred victorious battle-fields, and guarded by the timeworn remnant of his faithful Old Guard. Let Longwood be levelled to the earth, and the empty grave be filled up and turfed over ! Better that these memorials of England's treachery should be seen no more !

We hastened back to Jamestown, as it was near sunset. The long shadows already filled the ravine, and the miniature gardens and streets below were more animated than during the still heat of the afternoon. Capt. Howland was waiting for us, as the ship was ready to sail. Before it was quite dark, we had weighed anchor, and were slowly drifting away from the desolate crags of the island. The next morning we saw again the old unbroken ring of the sea.

CHAPTER XLIV.

HOMeward.

Trade Weather--Phosphorescence of the Sea--Ocean Nymphs--Butterflies in Mid-Ocean--The North-East Trades--A Gale off the Bermudas--Nautical Alms-Giving--The Gulf Stream--Escape from Cape Hatteras--Fair Wind--Winter Weather--The Last Day of the Voyage--Landing in New York--Retrospect.

For three days after leaving St. Helena we had calm, sluggish weather, but on the 17th took the trade-wind again, and for five days thereafter averaged 200 miles a day. The wind was steady, dead astern, and the sea calm, with very little swell. The sky was overcast, and the atmosphere sultry, with a temperature ranging from 80° to 85° . Flying-fish appeared in greater quantities than I ever noticed before. The phosphorescence of the sea was wonderful. The first half of the night was dark, as the moon was entering her last quarter, and the ship's wake was a dazzling trail of silver fire. The rudder dashed out of the darkness clusters of luminous globes about six inches in diameter, which scattered and spread, growing brighter as they approached the surface. The light rippling of the waves, far and wide, kindled brilliant sparkles, which stud

ded the watery firmament like stars, to which the long, wavy, shining wake of our vessel formed the Milky Way. One who leaned over the stern asked me whether those fiery globes were not the astral lamps with which the Undines lighted their sub-oceanic caverns; but I refused to accept the fancy. The imagination positively forbids any such poetical creatures to inhabit the vast desert spaces of ocean. The Undines are the nymphs of rivers and fountains; the mermaid only haunts the shore. The mid-sea is too vast, too cold in its barren sublimity, to be peopled by human dreams.

At midnight, on the 24th of December, we crossed the Equator in Long. 30° W., having been fifty-nine days in the Southern Hemisphere. We hoped to have taken the north-east trades soon afterwards, but were tantalized for a week with calms, and light, variable winds, during which we did not average more than 125 miles a day. On the 1st of December, in Lat. 12° N. a large butterfly and two dragon-flies came on board. The nearest land, the coast of Guiana, was more than 900 miles distant. I have never seen it stated that these insects are capable of such long flights.

We had been on board the Sea Serpent eighty-one days, and our hopes of spending Christmas at home were rapidly diminishing, when the long-desired trade-wind struck us. On the 2d of December we made 216 miles; on the 3d, 265 miles; and on the 4th, *three hundred* miles, which was our best day's run during the voyage. Our good ship fairly whistled through the water, cutting her way so smoothly that there was scarcely foam enough before her bows to throw a scud over the fore-castle, or wake enough behind her stern to tell that she had passed. The beautiful wave-lines of her counter allowed the

dead water to close as passively as if the ocean had not been disturbed.

On the morning of December the 11th, in Lat 32° N. and off the lee of the Bermudas, the wind hauled round to the north-west and blew half a gale for the two following days, during which we ran westward under close-reefed topsails. So it came to pass that on the 14th we were two degrees *west* of New York, and somewhere off Darien, in Georgia. The wind then shifted more to the westward, and by noon on the 16th, we were in the edge of the Gulf Stream, about 75 miles to the south-east of Cape Fear. Three or four vessels bound north, were in sight, apparently driven under the lee of Cape Hatteras, like ourselves, by the violence of the northern gale. In the afternoon, an hermaphrodite brig, which had risen on the weather bow, stood down towards us and we saw a boat put off from her. We suspected at first that the brig might be a relief vessel, but were soon undeceived by the boat coming alongside. A raw, rough fellow, in a flannel shirt and red cap, came over the side, and stated that the brig was a Nova Scotian, bound from Magua to Cape Breton, had been out twenty days, and had but four days' provisions on board. He was on a begging errand, and was successful enough to get a barrel each of flour, bread, pork and beef. The brig had encountered strong northerly and north-easterly winds for the previous eight days. The boat's crew were hale, athletic Nova-Scotians and it was refreshing to see such well-knit, sinewy frames, such bold, hearty features, and such ruddiness of warm and healthy blood. As the Bermudas had not suffered us to pass, I hoped that the sailor's couplet would apply both ways, and that Cape Hatteras would let us off easily. On Saturday morning, the 17th, a

breeze sprang up from the south-east. Gradually increasing, it hauled to the northward and westward, and by noon we were dashing on our course at the rate of ten knots. The sky was too overcast to obtain an observation, but according to the reckoning we were in Lat. $35^{\circ} 16'$ N. and Long. $75^{\circ} 17'$ W. At 2 P. M. we ran across the inner edge of the Gulf Stream, and came at once upon soundings. The line of junction between the dark-blue water of the Gulf, and the pale-green of the shoals was marked with wonderful distinctness. The stern of our vessel was in the former, while the latter reached to her waist. Within the distance of a ship's length, the temperature of the sea changed from 72° to 62° . The water immediately became of a paler green, and we felt an ugly ground swell. At the same instant Mr. Cornell discerned land off the port beam, and a single glance sufficed to show that it was Cape Hatteras, which, according to our reckoning, should have been weathered two hours before. The current of the Gulf Stream had evidently been much retarded by the strong north-eastern gales.

It blew hard during the night, and there was a very heavy sea in the stream, but on soundings the water was smoother. We ran the whole night with no other sail than close-reefed fore and main topsails, and reefed foresail. In the morning the sky was clear and cold, and the air for the first time biting and wintry, rendering our heaviest clothing necessary to support the sudden change from the Tropics. The wind gradually veered to W. N. W., but by noon we were off Cape Henlopen. We ran close-hauled all day, striving to get to windward in order to make Sandy Hook the next morning, but found ourselves at sunrise about 40 miles to the eastward of it. The transition

to a winter climate was like a cold-plunge bath. The thermometer sank to 25°, and water froze on deck. At noon a pilot-boat hove in sight, running down towards us. The ship was put about, in order to meet her, but this movement gradually brought a bark, which was to windward of us, between us and the boat, and as the latter hoisted signal, the boat was obliged to give her the only pilot aboard.

We had a tedious night, of alternate calms and snow-squalls, and I slept very little, out of anxiety lest a stiff nor'wester should spring up and blow us out to sea again. But by morning we had a pilot aboard, and taking advantage of a shift of the wind, made a tack which brought us in sight of Sandy Hook and of two steam-tugs. At ten o'clock the *Leviathan* had grappled us; the useless sails were furled, and we sped surely and swiftly, in the clear winter sunshine, up the outer bay, through the Narrows and into the noble harbor of New York. The hills of Staten Island glittered with snow; the trees had long been bare and the grass dead; and for the first time in nearly three years, I looked upon a winter landscape. It was the 20th of December, and 101 days since our departure from Whampoa. We rapidly approached the familiar and beloved city, and at 2 P. M. I landed on one of the East River piers.

I had left New York on the 28th of August, 1851, and had thus been absent two years and four months. During this time I had visited most of the countries of Europe, ascended the Nile to the Negro kingdoms of Central Africa, journeyed in Palestine, Asia Minor, and India, visited China twice, and taken part in the American expedition to Japan. I had travelled altogether about fifty thousand miles, and in all my

wanderings, in all my intercourse with men of whatever race or clime, had been received with kindness and attended by uniform good fortune. Let me hope that the reader, who has had the patience to accompany me through the narrative of this long and adventurous journey, will arrive at its close with the same faith in those innate virtues of human nature which no degradation can obscure, and the same dependence on that merciful Providence whose protection extends over all lands and seas.

STUDIES IN
GERMAN LITERATURE

BY

BAYARD TAYLOR

WITH AN INTRODUCTION BY

GEORGE H. BOKER

AUTHOR'S REVISED EDITION

COPYRIGHT BY
G. P. PUTNAM'S SONS

1879

The Knickerbocker Press, New York
Electrotyped, Printed, and Bound by
G. P. Putnam's Sons

INTRODUCTION.

IT was the known intention of Bayard Taylor to prepare the material which composes the following work for publication. A partial arrangement for that purpose had been made between him and the present publishers. Had he lived to complete his plan, doubtless the form of the matter would have been changed, by adapting it to the reader rather than the hearer, and the scope of the whole work would have been enlarged and, here and there, elaborated, so as to complete a design which was necessarily restricted by the brief limits of time prescribed to a course of lectures.

However much additional interest might have been given to the work, had Taylor lived to carry out his purpose, the editors felt themselves to be unauthorized to attempt changes so serious, which might have left upon the volume the impress of their literary style and opinions rather than those of the actual author. Nothing beyond the corrections of verbal errors and of over-

sights has therefore been attempted. The original manuscripts of the author have been closely followed, even to the preservation of the lecture form, which, now and then, may seem to be better adapted to oral delivery, and to the sympathetic appreciation of a crowded lecture-room, than to critical examination under the dry light of the study.

The object at which Taylor aimed, in preparing his course of lectures for delivery before the students of Cornell University, in which institution he held an honorary professorship, was that the lectures should serve as an introduction to the literature of Germany. He claimed nothing more for them. Completely as he may have treated of some subjects—as in the lecture devoted to the dissection and the elucidation of the underlying moral purpose of “Faust,” or in that one in which he makes clear and gives relative position to the strange and abnormal genius of Richter—in the main his object was rather to introduce, to interest and to invite the student to a further pursuit of the subject for himself, than to provide him with accurate and thorough knowledge of a field so wide as that of the literature of the most cultivated nation of Europe. Not one course of lectures nor many courses, not one volume nor many volumes, could have accomplished a task so

vast as a full critical history of German literature, from its remote Gothic sources to its gigantic product in Goethe and his famous contemporaries. The reader will therefore take these lectures for what they profess to be, at that value which the author himself set upon them, as a guide to intending students of German literature, and not as a profound commentary, addressed to those who are already well versed in the subject.

However modest may have been Taylor's aim in making his lectures elementary and popular, rather than profound and exclusive, such was the native power of his intellect and the depth of his knowledge of German literature, that, whenever he touches an author critically, he rises to a style of treatment that may win the admiration of the most scholarly, and furnish food for reflection to the most thoughtful. The lectures on Goethe and that greatest of modern poems, "Faust," and on that literary curiosity, half god and half mountebank, Jean Paul, are filled with the light of discovery, and abound with the most subtle and suggestive critical analysis. The marks of the same powerful hand may be discerned throughout the other lectures. Taylor touched nothing that he did not beautify; nothing came beneath his eye that did not glow with

an infectious light; fresh truth was born of every old truth which he disclosed; and so great was his reverence for intellectual superiority, that the heroes of his theme rose into demi-gods through his mere companionship.

The difference between a lecture and a treatise is as great as that between an oration and an essay. The former addresses itself to the mind, through the fleeting perceptions of the ear, and gives no time to the understanding for the revising process of thought. The style of the lecture should be simple, direct and forcible. It should not be so elaborate and complex, in its manner of announcing truth, as to call upon the logical powers of the hearer, lest the thread of the discourse be lost from the moment the effort at reasoning begins. An argument is out of place in a lecture. It should give us the fruits of the intellect rather than the process by which they matured. It should treat its subject dogmatically. It should pour itself, in an entire and unbroken stream, into the ear of the hearer, with a current that should bear him along, without the chance or the wish for a pause of reflection, satisfied with the present idea and eager for the next, both will and reason enchained, passive and compliant under the spell of the speaker's voice, postponing to another

occasion all intellectual differences and all doubts of the seeming truths which are uttered. These qualities will be found, as they should be found, in the lectures before us. The style is so pure and simple that no one can mistake the meaning of a sentence of the text, while it often attains to passages of unconscious eloquence, that must indeed have been striking when heightened by the noble presence, the skilful elocution and the earnest mien of the author.

Keeping in mind the wide difference of treatment that should be found in subjects addressed to the ear from those addressed to the eye, we know that we do Taylor scant justice in thus literally reproducing his lectures from the original manuscripts, rather than in the more elaborated form of the essay, into which he would have cast them for publication. We deprive them of his vitalizing presence, without instilling into them the new life which he might have given them with the after-touches of his fruitful pen, and we perpetuate in them qualities which, although both proper and admirable in oral delivery, may awaken cavil or antagonism when reproduced in hard print. This dilemma was, however, unavoidable. The editors feel themselves to be simply the intermediaries between the author and the public. However much these lectures might have

been improved by toning them down to the strict decorum of matter intended for publication, by excluding from them the forms in which audiences are addressed or appealed to, as well as certain familiarities and playfulnesses of phraseology—all quite fitting in a lecture, and enjoyable by the hearers ;—yet we felt a reluctance to touch the text of Taylor with irreverent hands, or to tear to pieces even that which we meant to reconstruct, or to assume a responsibility in the act which the public might not be disposed to tolerate. Taylor was too high a character, and he filled too large a place in our literature, to be subjected, in the helplessness of death, to the wrong of having his work tampered with, even by tender hands, devoted to fulfilling a purpose of his own. The master's hand is as stiff as the pencil which he held, his blood is as dry as the colors upon his palette : let the pupils stand before his unfinished work in the stillness of reverence ; but let no one impose a tone or a tint upon the canvas, lest the world of to-day and the world of to-morrow should say that the picture is not his.

G. H. B.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION.....	iii
I. EARLIEST GERMAN LITERATURE	1
II. THE MINNESINGERS.....	29
III. THE MEDIÆVAL EPICS.....	61
IV. THE NIBELUNGENLIED.....	101
V. THE LITERATURE OF THE REFORMATION....	135
VI. THE LITERATURE OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY....	167
VII. LESSING.....	200
VIII. KLOPSTOCK, WIELAND AND HERDER.....	234
IX. SCHILLER.....	266
X. GOETHE.....	304
XI. GOETHE'S "FAUST".....	337
XII. RICHTER.....	388

I.

EARLIEST GERMAN LITERATURE.

EVERY one knows how much is added to our understanding of an author's works when we become acquainted with his biography. We thus discover what qualities he has inherited, what others have been developed through the vicissitudes of his life, and what have been attained by labor and aspiration. This is equally true of the literature of a race. It has its pedigree, its birth and childhood, its uncertain youth, and its varying fortunes through the ages, before it reaches a mature and permanent character. Although it grows in grace and variety of expression, and charms us most when it gives large and lofty utterance to the thought and feeling of our own times, we none the less need to turn back and listen to the prattle of its infancy.

I therefore propose to go back to the earliest known foundation from which German Literature grew, and to trace, in outlines which I shall try to make both simple and clear, the chief phenomena of its early life. The task is not easy; for the development of the literature of a people must inevitably take hold of History with one hand, and of Philology with the other,—both sciences essential to the intimate knowledge of all important

literary works, yet forbidden to me within the limits which I have chosen. But, even after avoiding, as far as may be possible, historical and philological digressions, I find myself embarrassed by the abundance of the purely literary material; for the annals of Germany not only extend much further into the past than those of England, but the research of her scholars has been longer and more laboriously employed in illuminating the dark corners of her history. The dullest chronicler, the most mechanical rhymester who ever turned the hand-organ of doggerel, if he has left but a paragraph or couplet behind him, is labelled and placed on his pedestal in the pantheon of early Teutonic letters; but, fortunately, no disguise of language, no magic of distance or the romance of circumstances, can wholly bewilder us. When we begin honestly and earnestly to study the records which have been preserved, we soon perceive the relative value of names and achievements, and it is not difficult to separate the few original, really creative minds from the crowd of imitators and secondary intelligences.

I shall, therefore, confine myself to those names and works which belong, by undoubted right, to the literary history of Germany,—the landmarks, sometimes wide apart, which indicate change and progress,—and shall simplify my task by the omission of many names which would furnish, at best, only a dry catalogue, difficult to remember, and of little value when remembered.

The aborigines of Germany had their bards, their battle-songs, and their sacrificial hymns, when they first became known to the Romans. From the little which Tacitus tells us, we are justified in inferring a more advanced stage of civilization among the Germans than is now implied in the term "barbarian." The Romans, like the Greeks, looked down upon all other races with a certain degree of contempt, and generally misrepresented both their condition and their capacities. When the emperor Julian the Apostate declares that the songs of the people on the Rhine sounded to him like the cries of birds of prey, his opinion is worth no more to us than that of any man now-a-days who thinks the German language harsh and disagreeable because his ear is not accustomed to the sound of it. About the time of Julian's short reign, a work was written, which has escaped to refute the inference which might be drawn from his statement,—or, at least, to render it very improbable. This work has only a philological relation to German literature, but the interest which it possesses in this respect is so remarkable,—it stands so entirely alone, with nothing before it, and nothing for nearly four hundred years after it,—that one must here pause, having found the starting-point of our investigations.

When the Goths commenced their migration westward from the plains north of the Black Sea, in the fourth century after Christ, they gradually became

Christianized on the way. One of the first converts, by name Ulfilas, born in the year 318, became a bishop of great sanctity, who was highly honored by the emperors of the East. He died in 388, immediately after attending the œcumenical council of Constantinople, where he defended the Arian doctrine. The Goths, I may here remark, remained Arians for three hundred years longer, and their priests read the services in their own language until the ninth century. Ulfilas translated the Bible, except the Books of Kings and Chronicles, into Gothic; and tradition says that he was obliged to invent an alphabet, as the Goths had no written language at that time. Copies of his translation were known to be in existence about the year 900; then they disappeared, and the work was lost to the world for more than six hundred years. The fact that Ulfilas was an Arian undoubtedly caused his translation to be regarded as heretical, and led to its suppression.

Toward the close of the sixteenth century, Mercator, who has given his name to his projection of the globe, discovered the four Gospels of Ulfilas in the Abbey of Werder, in Northern Germany. The ancient manuscript was carried to Prague, where, at the close of the Thirty Years' War, it fell into the hands of the Swedish Count Königsmark, who presented it to the University of Upsala. It is called the "*Codex Argenteus*," or silver codex, from its being illuminated in silver letters on purple parchment. In the year 1818, the

Epistles of St. Paul, in the translation of Ulfilas, were discovered in the monastery of Bobbio, in Lombardy. Thus we have recovered nearly the whole of the New Testament in Gothic, written within twenty or thirty years of the same time when the celebrated Greek manuscripts of Mount Sinai and the Vatican are believed to have been written.

The value of this work requires no explanation. The German scholars seem to be entirely agreed that the language of the Goths in the fourth century, thus risen to new life after centuries of death, is very superior to the German language, to which it gave birth, in harmony and purity of tone, in grammatical construction, in richness and precision of expression, and especially in dignity and power. They find it familiar and foreign at the same time, hinting its old relationship of blood and feeling, yet breathing of much that has been lost in the mixing of the races and washed away by time.

If the Gothic language be the legitimate mother of the Old German, it must also be, through the Saxon, the grandmother of English, and of the Swedish and Danish. A single passage from the Gospels of Ulfilas will make this evident, even to those who are not far advanced in German studies. I take the Lord's Prayer, which, phrase by phrase, can easily be compared with either the English or German words :

Atta unsar, thu in himinam, veihtnai namo thein ; qvimai thiudnassus theins ; vairthai vilja theins, sve in himina, jah ana airthai ;

hlaif unsarana thana sinteinan gif uns himma daga ; jah aflet uns
thatei skulanssijaima svasve jah veis afletam thaim skulam unsaraim ;
jah ni briggais uns in fraistubnjai, ak lausei uns af thamma ubilin ;
unte theina ist thiudangardi, jah mahts, jah vulthus in aivins. Amen.

Here we see one of the lost stages of travel, whereby many of the words of our daily usage were carried from their far home in India, through Tartary, over the Caucasus, around the Black Sea, and so westward until they reach history. It is a curious circumstance that the two sounds of *th*, in English, are derived from the Gothic. The German race must once have used these sounds, and then have lost them. But they were carried by the Visigoths to Spain, and still belong to Icelandic, after having been dropped out of Swedish and Danish. We might almost say that the Gothic of Ulfilas is the point whence the elements which have become separated in English and German began to diverge ; but there are one or two later fragments wherein they are still blended.

A language so finely developed as the Gothic must have had its literature. We may assume this as certain, even without evidence. Nevertheless, as in those buildings of the Middle Ages which are constructed out of the ruins of Roman and Grecian cities, we still see the ancient chisel-marks and fragments of carvings and inscriptions, so in the literature of the German language, after it took its distinct form, we constantly detect the earlier Gothic material. But we are unable to reconstruct the fragments. We only know that the

sixth and seventh centuries must have been rich in songs and warlike ballads, which kept alive the deeds of Theodoric and Odoaker, kings of Italy, and Attila, the Hun, and the heroes of Burgundy and Flanders who still survive in the "*Nibelungenlied*." As Christianity extended its dominion, the influence of the priests was exerted to substitute sacred for secular literature. The Greek and Roman authors, moreover, constituted an aristocracy, beside which any productions of a language counted barbaric, must sink to the lowest plebeian level. What learning there was in those days, we may easily imagine, turned up its nose at the strains of the native minstrels.

The man who converted the pagan Saxons by the sword, who laid the first broad foundations of German nationality and German civilization, was the first to value these half-suppressed elements of a new literature. He is called Karl the Great in the history of his own race, but we know him better as Charlemagne. While in the interest of Christianity, he put down the old Teutonic religion with one hand and pushed back the Saracens with the other, he was far wiser than the Christian spirit of his day. He did not attempt to transfer the already crumbled culture of pagan Rome to the banks of the Rhine, but used it as a guide to a new, an independent German culture. His one mistake was that he confided the execution of his plans exclusively to the clergy, as the only educated class, instead

of creating a class of learned men outside the pale of the Church.

Charlemagne loved the German language, and was acquainted with its songs and ballads. He caused a complete collection of the latter to be made, and had them sung or recited at his court, rightly seeing in them the basis of a new literature. We are perhaps indebted to this circumstance for the reappearance of the ancient themes in the later epics ; but the original collection is irrevocably lost. Ludwig the Pious undid, as far as it was possible, the great national work of his father. In his bigoted old age, he refused to hear the German songs which he was accustomed to recite in his youth, —and we can understand how immediately the clergy would take advantage of his prejudices, to suppress the growing national taste, and keep literature as well as religion in their own hands. The long strife between Germany and Rome, which has broken out afresh in our time, secretly existed then. Although some of the early German emperors virtually selected the popes, the Church was patient, and probably then anticipated the day when, at Canossa, two hundred and fifty years later, Gregory VII. would set his foot on a German emperor's neck.

The treaty of Verdun, in 843, between the grandsons of Charlemagne, was a fortunate event for Germany, if it could have been perpetual, for it dissolved the political connection with Italy. But death and life were tied

together by Otto I., a hundred years later, and the evil that followed has not been worked out of the race to this day. We have no record of any particular edict concerning the suppression of the collection of ballads made by order of Charlemagne; but the multiplication of copies must have ceased during the reign of his son, and those already in existence could hardly survive theological prejudice for three hundred years, until the Hohenstaufen emperors protected a new era of literature.

From the few fragments of the language which have been preserved, I shall quote a part of the oath of Charles the Bald, the grandson of Charlemagne, in 842, very nearly five hundred years later than the Gothic of Ulfilas. You will notice that both the German and Scandinavian elements have become more marked, while the English, or rather Anglo-Saxon character, has been diminished by separation:

In godes minna ind in thes christiânes folches ind unser bêdherô gehaltmissi, fon thesemo dage frammordes, sô fram sô mir got gewiezi indi mahd furgibit, sô haldih tesan minan brudher sôsô man mit rehtû sinan brudher scal, in thiû thaz er mig sô sama duo, indi mit Ludheren in nohheiniu thing ne gegangu thê minan willon, imo se scaden werdhên.

At this time there were several distinctly marked dialects, the chief of which, in Germany, were the High-German, which was again divided into Frankish and Suabian, and the Low-German, or Saxon, from which

the *Plattdeutsch* of to-day is descended. The separation of both the Anglo-Saxon and the Scandinavian branches had commenced before the time of Charlemagne, and the remains of their early literature are not generally included in that of Germany. The fragment of the poem of Beowulf, for instance, is given to our race by the German scholars, partly for philological reasons, and partly because it belongs to a different *Sagenkreis*, or legendary cycle. Had the heroic ballads of the sixth and seventh centuries been preserved, we might perhaps have been able to mark the exact point from which each of the two great modern languages moved in different directions; but we can only say that the earliest literary remains, which are specially and distinctly German, date from after the separation.

The earliest of these is known as the "*Hildebrandslied*"—the Song, or Lay of Hildebrand. Only a small part of it survives, and we owe its existence to a fortunate chance. It appears that two monks of the monastery of Fulda, who had perhaps originally been soldiers, filled up two or three blank pages of a theological manuscript by writing upon them what they remembered of a popular heroic poem. The manuscript is as old as the middle of the ninth century, and the poem was probably composed between 750 and 800, or nearly at the same time as the oldest Scandinavian Edda. The fragment is still preserved in the library at Cassel. It is written in the Low-German dialect, but

with High-German forms of construction, and is, therefore, much more difficult to read than the Oath of Charles the Bald. The story has a remarkable resemblance to that of Sohrab and Rustum, told by the Persian poet Firdusi in his "*Shah Nameh*," and retold in admirable English verse by Matthew Arnold. Hildebrand, one of the warriors of Theodoric the Goth, has been thirty years absent with his master, among the Huns, and now returns with him to his own kingdom. Hildebrand had there left behind him a wife and a young son. This son, by name Hadubrand, now a strong warrior, comes forth with his men to meet the strangers, and challenges his father to combat. Hildebrand recognizes his son, tells him his story, and offers him his golden bracelets. But Hadubrand answers that his father is dead, that sea-faring men brought the news of his death, that he believes Hildebrand to be a crafty Hun, and he will only accept the bracelets with the lance, sword against sword. Hildebrand finds it impossible to decline the defiance; lances are cast, swords are drawn, and the shields of both are hacked in pieces. Here the fragment breaks off; but the Song of Hildebrand, although not written, seems to have lived orally among the people, and seven hundred years later it was sung again by Kaspar von der Roen. The end is that Hadubrand is overcome, but not slain, by his father, and both return together to the wife and mother.

The "*Hildebrandslied*" is written in a rude alliterative

saga-measure,—that original form of verse from which our rhymed poetry is derived. This, in its turn, is undoubtedly the later modification of some much older form. The fact that classic poetry was read according to quantity, and the saga-measure according to accent, shows the complete independence of the early Gothic and German poetry of the influence of the Greek and the Roman. It is impossible to guess when either alliteration or rhyme originated; both are probably as old as well-developed human language; for children and savages always discover them and play with them. But the fact that alliteration appears equally in the oldest German, Anglo-Saxon and Scandinavian, indicates that it must have been inherited by each equally from the Gothic; and thus it is perhaps as old a form of poetry as the Homeric hexameter. The ancient rule required that the accent not only fell on the important words, but two words in the first line, and one in the second, must commence with the same letter. The effect is that of a half-rhyme at the commencement and middle of a line, instead of a whole rhyme at the end. In fact, the early Norsemen and Germans called this measure the *Stabreim*, and the three alliterative words *Liedstübe* (song-sticks), or bars, upon which the lines rested, very much as a melody is supported by bars, in music. This is the derivation of our word *stave*, which we still use to designate the verse of a song. To make the explanation clearer, I will quote two stanzas in the saga-

measure, from Lowell's poem of "The Voyage to Vinland":

"Weak was the Old World,
Wearily war-fenced;
Out of its ashes,
Strong as the morning,
Springeth the new.
Beauty of promise,
Promise of Beauty,
Safe in the silence
Sleep thou, till cometh
Light to thy lids!"

As we find the first written basis of the language in the Gothic Gospels of Ulfilas, so we find the first surviving relic of a native, autochthonous German literature in the Song of Hildebrand. Let us now examine what is left of it. I will first select the passage where Hadubrand, the son, speaks to Hildebrand, the father:

Hadubraht gimahalta
Hiltibrantes sunu :
"Dat sagêtun mî
ûserê liutî :
altê anti frôtê,
deâ êr hina wârûn,
dat Hiltibrant hætti mîn fater ;

ih heittu Hadubrant.
Forn her ôftar giweît,
flôh her Otachres nid,
hina miti Theotrihhe
enti sinerô deganô filu.
Her furlaet in lante
luttilla sitten
prût in bûre,
barn unwahsan,
arbeolaosa."

So spake Hadubrand,
Son of Hildebrand :
"Said unto me
Some of our people,
Shrewd and old,
Gone hence already,
That Hildebrand was my father
called,—
I am called Hadubrand.
Erewhile he eastward went,
Escaping from Odoaker,
Thither with Theodoric
And his many men of battle.
Here he left in the land, .
Lorn and lonely,
Bride in bower,
Bairn ungrown,
Having no heritage."

I think we cannot help feeling both the simplicity, and the natural dignity, of these lines. The language is the plainest possible ; there is not here, nor anywhere in the poem, an approach to metaphor ; the situation is so thoroughly epic, that it requires no poetical adornment. After Hildebrand throws down his golden bracelets, and Hadubrand charges him with being a tricky old Hun, the latter says :

“ Dat sagê tun mî
sêolidantê
westar ubar wentilsæo,
dat man wïc furnam :
Tôt ist Hiltibrant,
Heribrantes suno ! ”

“ This said unto me
Sea-faring men,
From over Midland-sea,
That battle took him :
Dead is Hildebrand,
Son of Heribrand ! ”

Notice, now, how the poem continues :

Hiltibraht gimahalta,
Heribrantes suno :
“ Wela gisi hu ih
in dinê m hrustim
dat du habês hê me
hêrron gôten,
dat du noh bî desemo rîche
reccheo ni wurti. ”

Spake then Hildebrand,
Son of Heribrand :
“ Surely see I
From thine armor,
Hast at home here
King that is kindly,
Wast not yet in his ranks
Ranged as a war-man. ”

Then he continues, in a strain all the more tragic from its bareness :

“ Welaga nu, waltant got !
wêwurt skihit !
ih wallôta sumarô
enti wintrô sehstic,
dâr man mih eô scerita

“ Well - a - day now, governing
God !
Woe-worth shall happen !
Summers full sixty,
And winters, I wander,
Ever called with the crowd

in folc sceotanterô,
 sô man mir at bure ænigeru
 banun ni gifasta.
 Nu scal mih suâsat
 chind suertû hauwan,
 bretôn mit sinû billjû
 eddo ih imo ti banin werdan."

Of shooters of spears ;
 Nor in mine own stronghold
 Delayed, as the dead.
 Now shall the child of me
 Smite me with sword,
 Bite me with broad steel,
 Or I be his slayer."

There is nothing more nobly simple and natural in Homer than this last passage. Without the least effort, by the commonest means, the poem here rises to the highest epic and tragic grandeur. The last lines of the fragment, where the fight commences, are not less fine:

Do lættun se cærist
 askim scritan,
 scarpên scûrim,
 dat in dêm sciltim stônt.

(Then let they first the ash stride forth, with a sharp storming, so that it stood in the shields.)

The passages I have given amount to about one-third of what remains of the original poem.

Some scholars consider that the song of Hildebrand formed part of the collection made by order of Charlemagne. This is merely conjecture ; but it is very possible that the lines I have quoted may have been recited at the court of that emperor.

The next work which has been preserved dates from near the middle of the ninth century. It is sometimes called the "*Old-Saxon Gospel Harmony*," and sometimes the "*Heliand*," an ancient form of the modern German

word *Heiland*, the Saviour. There seem to be some grounds for the tradition that it was written by a Saxon peasant, who was looked upon by the people as specially inspired for the purpose, during the reign of Ludwig the Pious, the son of Charlemagne. The object of the writer was undoubtedly to make the life and works of Christ, as related in the Gospels, known to the common people through the medium of their own language, and the alliterative poetic measure in which they had chanted to their own not yet forgotten deities. The priests, therefore, must have taken pains to substitute this Christian poem for the songs and ballads of the heroes, as a means of securing the faith of those tribes who, like the Saxons, had been converted by force. The poem is a remodelling of the Gospel narrative, rather than a translation; in style, manner and language it has an original character, and the figures of Christ and His disciples receive a new and warm and impressive life in its lines. Vilmar even goes so far as to say: "It is by far the most excellent, complete and lofty work which the Christian poetry of all races and all times has produced. Apart from its religious substance, it is one of the noblest poems ever created by the imaginative human mind, and in some passages and descriptions may be placed beside the strains of Homer. It is the only really Christian epic." Without accepting such an extravagant estimate, I am at least quite ready to admit that it contains a purer and more at-

tractive poetic element than the "Messiah" of Klopstock, or the religious poetry of the English language.

It is often noticed, by readers as well as critics, that what is called *religious* poetry rarely possesses any striking literary value; and the same may be said of *political* poetry. There is here, I think, simply a confusion of terms. If we substitute the adjectives *doctrinal* and *partisan* for "religious" and "political," the cause of the failure is evident. Literature lives and flourishes in the freest atmosphere of spiritual and political aspiration, but it begins to perish when the attempt is made to narrowly define and limit and circumscribe those passions of the human soul. The old Saxon "*Heliand*" only tells the story of Christ's life. Its writer knew the people he was addressing, and he chose the simplest way to reach their imagination and emotions. The Hebrew air which seems to blow from the Old Testament over the New, is not felt in his poem: the characters and situations, no less than the speech, are Saxon. We might almost fancy that Christ is the beautiful god of the Scandinavians, the white Balder, in a more perfect form. I shall quote a passage where the disciples questioned him concerning the last day, the end of the world: you will notice that it is a paraphrase of the 24th chapter of Matthew:

Tho gengun imo is iungaron to,
fragodon ina so stillo ·

Then went His disciples Him
unto,
And questioned Him secretly:

- "Hus lango seal standen noh," "How long shall stand yet,"
 quandun sie, quoth they,
 "thius werold an wunniun, "This world so winsome,
 er than that giwand kume, Ere then the end come,
 that the lasto dag And the last day's light
 liohtes skine Shine through the closing
 thurh wolkanskion? Clouds of the firmament?
 eftho hvan is eft thin wan ku- When meanest thou to come
 man
 an thenne middilgard, To this middle mansion,
 mankunni Unto mankind,
 te adomienne To judge and doom
 dodun endi quikun? The quick and dead?
 Fro min, the godo, Lord mine, the loving,
 us is thes firwit mikil Deep our desire is,
 waldandeo Krist, All-governing Christ,
 hvan that giwerden sculi!" To know when it cometh!"
 Tho im andwordi Answered them thereupon
 alowaldo Krist All-governing Christ,
 godlic fargaf, Godlike gave to them,
 them gumun selbo. Even themselves, the men.
 'That habad so bidernid," quad "So hath He hidden it," quoth
 he, he,
 'himilrikies fader, 'Heaven's high Father,
 waldand thesaro weroldes, Ruling the earth-realm,
 so that witen ni mag So that know it may none
 enig mannisc barn, Of the children of men
 hvan thiu marie tid When that wonderful day
 giwirdid an thesaru weroldi. Dawns on the world.
 Ne il ok te waran ni kunnun Nor also verily know it
 godes engilos, God's very angels,
 thie for imo geginwarde Who present before Him
 simlun sindun. Perpetually wait.
 Sie it ok giseggian ni mugun Neither dare they declare it,
 te waran mid iro wordun, With truth of willing word-
 speech,
 hvan that giwerden sculi, When it shall come,
 that he willie an thesan middil- That He, in this middle man-
 gard, sion,
 mahtig drohtin, Living Lord,

firino fandon.
 Fader wet it eno,
 helag fan himile ;
 elcur is il biholen allun,
 quikun endi dodun,
 hvan il kumi werdad.
 Ik mag in thoh gitellien,
 hvilic er tecan bivoran
 giwerdad wunderlic,
 er he an these werold kume
 an themu mareon daga.
 That wirdid er an the no manon
 skin,
 jac an theru sunnun so same :
 gisverkad siu bethiu,

 mit finistre werdad bifangan ;

 fallad sterron,
 hvit hebentungal,
 endi hrisid erde,
 bivod thins brede werold.
 Wirdid sulikaro bokno filu :
 grimmid the groto seo,
 wirkid thie gebenes strom
 egison mit is udhiun
 erdbuandiun.
 than thorrot thiu thiod
 thurh that gethving mikil,
 folc thurh thea forhta :
 than nis fridu hvergin ;
 ac wirdid wig so maneg
 obar these werold alla
 hetili afhaben ;
 endi heri ledid
 kunni obar odar."

Sin shall sentence.
 Knoweth it the Father only,
 Holy One from heaven ;
 Else is it darkened from all,
 Both the quick and the dead.

Yet will I truly tell you,
 Signs to be seen beforehand,
 Wondrous to witness,
 Or ever He weighs the world
 On the famous day of doom.
 The moon shall make it mani-
 fest,
 Yea, and the sun the same :
 Clearness of them shall be
 clouded
 Deeply, and drenched in dark-
 ness :
 Fall shall the star-fires,
 White tongues of heaven,
 Earth wofully tremble,
 The wide world shiver.
 Many shall be such marvels :
 Grimly shall the great sea
 Roar with his waves in wrath,
 And the deep become a dread
 To the Earth-dwellers.
 Pine then shall the people,
 Torn by the tribulation,
 Multitudes fall in their fear ;
 For peace shall perish,
 And wars so murderous,
 Many and mighty,
 Waste the world."

I would especially call attention, in this passage, to
 the greater brevity and strength of expression, the sim-

pler construction of the language, as compared with modern German. Gervinus, however, very correctly remarks that the external form of a language is no sure indication of the genius of the people who speak it: we must measure the importance of the thoughts expressed. The greatest richness, power and flexibility avail but little, if the race is intellectually impoverished, or if its intellectual growth is forcibly suppressed. While we admire this wonderful work of a Saxon peasant—the literary brother of Cædmon, our earliest Anglo-Saxon singer, after Beowulf—we must remember that his subject, alone, has saved his poem. Had he written of Theodoric or Siegfried, he would have been frowned upon, if not silenced, by the emperor and the clergy. Indeed, the success of the “*Heliand*” led to the production of a rival poem, by Otfried, a Benedictine monk, who possessed the learning of the monasteries of Fulda and St. Gall, and made the classic authors his models, although he wrote in German. In the dearth of literary remains from that age, his work is interesting and valuable. It shows the accomplished scholar, as the “*Heliand*” shows the unlettered, but genuine poet. Otfried’s poem is written in High-German, and in regular, rhymed stanzas, so that it marks the transition from the ancient to the modern form of poetry. Rhyme already existed, and it is also nearly certain that the songs of the people were occasionally divided into verses of equal length, so that Otfried is entitled to no merit for the mere form

of his work. He manifests both skill and scholarship, but he is cold, mechanical and studied. I find that his lines, although nearer German, are more difficult to read than those of the "*Heliand*." I will quote the corresponding passage, where the disciples question Christ concerning the end of the world, to show the difference between the two. Otfried's poem was finished in the year 868, about thirty years after the other.

Er sáz sid thémo gánge
in themo óliberge ;
frágetun sie nan súntar—
sie wás es filu wúntar :

"Ságe uns, meistar, thánne
wío thiú zít gigange,

zéichan wio thu quéman scalt,

ioh wio thiú wórolt ouh zigát?"

"Góumet," quad ér, "thero
dáto,

ioh weset gláwe, thrato,
thaz iu ni dáron in fára
thie mánagon lúginara.

"Yrwéhsit íamarlichaz thing
úbar thesan wórolt ring,
in hungere int in súhti
in wénegeru flúhti!"

After this walk, He set
Himself on Olivet ;
Him closely did they question,
Great marvel then possessed
them.

"Declare us, Master, now,
When comes the time, and
how,

What signs shalt thou, ere
coming, send,

And how the world shall find
its end?"

"These things consider," said
He ;

"Be prudent, wise, and ready
And 'gainst the danger 'ware ye
Of liars that would ensnare ye.

"Great misery shall be hurled
Over all the ring of the world,
In plague and hunger breaking,
In flying and forsaking!"

Here I omit several stanzas, where the versions do not agree, and give three more which nearly correspond in language with the "*Heliand*":

"Duit máno ioh thiú sunna
mit fínstere únwunna,

"The sun and moon shall frown
In woe of darkness down,

ioh fállent ouh thie stérron
in érda filu férron.

“ Sih, weinot thanne thuruh thia
quíst

al thaz hiar in érdu ist,
thúruh thio selbum grúnni
al thiz wórolt kunni.

“ So séhent se mit githuínge
quéman thara zi thínge
fon wólkonon hérasun

then selbon ménnisgen sun !”

And fall shall every star
On earth, both near and far.

“ Behold this trouble deep

Shall make all earth to weep ;
For these same troubles sent,
All sons of men lament.

“ They with amaze unending,
To judgment then descending
Shall see, through the cloudy
span,

The self-same Son of Man !”

This will suffice to show the difference in dialect and character between the two poems. It is a curious circumstance that both the Saxon peasant and the monk Otfried, in their rival Gospel Harmonies, studiously avoid every reference to Jewish history or customs: they even omit the name of Jerusalem. We have no means of ascertaining the relative popularity of the two poems; but this must have partly depended on the dialect in which they were written. Toward the end of the ninth century, short hymns and religious poems of a narrative character became frequent. Only four or five, which are rather doggrel than poetry, have come down to us.

One more relic of the earliest German literature, and only one, remains to be mentioned. This is the “*Ludwigslied*,” which celebrates the victory of Ludwig III. over the Normans, at Saulcourt, in the year 881. It was written by Hucbald, a learned monk, soon after the battle, and the original manuscript, in Hucbald’s own

hand, is still in existence. It was discovered at Valenciennes in France. There are two peculiarities about this song: it is the first secular work in German, by a clerical author; and, secondly, it is not a *Lied*, or song wherein the chief interest belongs to the words, the musical accompaniment being of secondary importance, but a *Leich*, or song written especially for music, wherein the melody partly determines beforehand what words shall be used. Thus it resembles the text of an opera melody, as contrasted with the *Lieder*, or with the songs of Burns. In such airs as *casta diva*, or *suoni la tromba*, the words are simply a carpet thrown down, over which the music walks triumphant; but when the true *Volkslied*, or song of the people, appears, the melody comes to it, and lives with it as a loving and faithful handmaid.

The language of the "*Hildebrandslied*" and the "*Ludwigslied*" shows the contrast between the natural poetic speech, and that which springs only from culture. The former is as simple as the speech of a child; the characters are placed before us without explanation, we hear them speak and see them act, and the story is told; but the monk Hucbald's song of victory begins with a description of Ludwig as a servant of God, and especially recommended to His favor. Trial and probation are sent to him; malice, falsehood, and treachery surround him. Then, when the trouble of his people from the invasion of the Normans becomes great, God

speaks to him in person, commissioning him to promise help and comfort, and assuring him of victory in advance. The honest old monk does not see that Ludwig ceases to be heroic in proportion as he becomes sanctified: any general will lead his troops into battle when he foreknows his own success.

I will quote only the description of the battle, of which we have but twenty lines, part of the manuscript being lost. This is the most spirited and picturesque portion of the poem:

Thô nam her skild indi sper,

ellianlêcho reit her,
wold er wâr errahchôn
sina widarsahchon.

Thô ni was iz buro lang,
fand her thia Northman;
Gode lob sagêda:
her sîhit, thes her gerêda.

Ther kuning reit kuono,
sang lioth frônô,
joh allê saman sungun:
"Kyrrie leison!"

Sang was gisungan,
wig was bigunnan;
bluot skein in wangôn,
spilôdun ther Vrankôn.

Thar vaht thegenô gelîh,
nichein sô sô Hludgwig;
snel indi kuoni,

thaz was imo gekunni.

Suman thuruh skluog her,
suman thuruh stah her;

.

Then took he spear and
shield,

Mightily rode to the field;
Ready he was, and merry,
To test his adversary.

Little time went round
Ere he the Normans found:
"God be praised!" he panted:
He saw what he wanted.

The king rode knightly:
He sang a song lightly,
And all sang together:
"*Kyrie eleison!*"

Ceased the song's delighting,
Begun was the fighting:
Blood in cheeks shone clearly,
Fought the Franks so cheerly.

Ludwig, hero-like,
Struck as none could strike,
With speed, and force, and
spirit:

Such did he inherit.

One he battered dead,
Another stabbed and sped,

.

Here the description breaks off suddenly, and the remainder of the manuscript is a thanksgiving of Ludwig and his Franks after the battle.

This earliest period of German literature, commencing with the first traces of the written language, covers a space of about eight hundred years. The scholars are agreed in fixing, as the period of its termination, the accession of the Hohenstaufens to the German imperial throne, in 1138. But from the production of the "*Ludwigslied*" to this latter date, two centuries and a half intervene. It is surprising that all the records which remain to us from that long period possess scarcely any literary importance. An apparent desert separates the old from the mediæval realm. Yet the whole country, during this time — especially under the reign of the Ottos — was growing in industry, in civil order, in wealth, security and intelligence. We shall find, indeed, if we carefully study history, that there was a literature, but of an imitative, artificial character, written in Latin, and not in German. Otto I., who began to reign in 936, added Italy again to the Empire, after a separation of nearly a hundred years, and the power of the Church began to increase. He studied the classics, his son, Otto II., married a Grecian princess, with whom Byzantine art and architecture came to Germany, and Otto III. spoke Greek almost as well as German. Besides, Arianism had been suppressed, the last vestiges of the old Teutonic faith had disappeared, and the

priests, released from the labor of conversion, could devote much of their time to other than theological studies. Europe was covered with stately and wealthy monasteries, and some of them—as St. Gaul, Fulda, Corvey, and Hildesheim—became famous seats of learning. In addition to the legends of saints, and the chronicles of the Church, which were now written in great numbers, the picturesque episodes of early German history were taken up, and made the subject of Latin epics, some of which still exist, either complete or in fragments. I do not consider, however, that these works properly belong to German literature; their interest is simply historical.

It is reasonable to suppose, nevertheless, that the taste of the people for those earlier stores of poetry from which the “*Nibelungenlied*” and “*Reynard the Fox*” were afterwards created, was not suppressed, although their continued production was discouraged in every way. But, during these two hundred and fifty years, the people were passing through that change of habits and relations to one another which followed their change of faith. It was a period of ferment and transition, but of a material rather than an intellectual character, until the close of the eleventh century when the Crusades commenced. The native German element of poetry lay dormant, but it was not dead. Vilmar very justly says: “Even as the strength and activity of the soul is not extinguished in sleep, so we dare not affirm this of the

German people during the almost dumb and barren tenth, eleventh, and first half of the twelfth, centuries. As in dreams were preserved, as in the faltering, half-conscious speech of dreams were sung, the old heroic ballads of Siegfried and Theodoric, of Chrimhild and Hagen, of Walther and Attila."

I have given no specimens of the prose literature of Germany during the eight centuries which I have briefly reviewed, for the simple reason that there is none. Nearly all chronicles or documents were written in Latin, and the German author, of course, preferred to use a language which his fellow-authors throughout Europe could read without translation. Besides, in the civilization of the races, poetry is the first form of literature, as sculpture is the first form of art. Men demand in the beginning, not ideas nor illusive copies of realities, but a shape, palpable to the eye or the ear, and thus the most perfect art is the earliest born. Indeed, we might say, that the primitive poetry of Germany, with its rude, short, strong lines, falling like the blows of a hammer, and dinting the memory with their alliterative words, helped to make the popular mind ductile and softer for the reception of ideas. The literature of Greece, France, Scandinavia and England was equally built on a basis of poetry.

As I said in the commencement, it is difficult to describe the intellectual growth of a race during those remote ages, without the illustration of its history.

Yet we have the relationship of blood and character to assist us, and I rely somewhat on those intellectual instincts which have come down to us from the Goths and Saxons, to fill up some of my own omissions. To me, the lines of the "*Heliand*" and "*Hildebrandslied*"—even the Gothic words of Ulfilas—have something familiar and home-like about them. Without making any special study of the language, the meaning gradually comes of itself, like something which has been once learned and then forgotten. In the age of the Minnesingers and the courtly epics, to which we now turn, we shall find fancy and feeling and elegant versification, but nothing more artlessly simple, more vigorous or noble, than the songs of the earliest days.

II

THE MINNESINGERS.

IN spite of Buckle and the other writers of his school, all the phenomena of human civilization cannot yet be so arranged and classified that we are able to find their inevitable causes. Wealth may follow commerce, industry and order may follow peace and just government; but the literature and the art of a people arise through a combination of influences, which we cannot always trace to their sources. But we may at least discover the circumstances and conditions which encourage or depress their growth. When a period of creative activity has commenced, we can then partly account for its character. In other words, no one can explain how that mysterious quality which we call genius is planted in the spirit of man; but, after it has been so planted, and begins to select the material for its work, its operation is modified according to general intellectual laws, the effect of which upon it may be studied.

There are three circumstances in the history of Germany, which did not produce the famous company of authors in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, but which greatly favored their productiveness, and wonder-

fully helped the literary development of the entire German people. These circumstances are in chronological order—first, the Crusades; second, the accession of the Hohenstaufens to the imperial throne; and third, the rise of Provençal literature, the first native growth from any of the Romanic languages. These were contemporary events; for, although the first crusaders captured Jerusalem in 1099, the Emperor Conrad III., the first Hohenstaufen, was crowned in 1138, and took part in the second crusade in 1147. After the recapture of Jerusalem by Saladin in 1187, Barbarossa led the third crusade in 1189—the same in which Philip Augustus of France and Richard the Lion-heart were commanders. Finally, Frederick II., the Hohenstaufen, and the greatest German emperor since Charlemagne, undertook the fifth crusade in 1228. The Hohenstaufen line ceased with the death of Conrad II. in 1254.

Now, if we turn to Provençal history, we shall find that the poetry of the Troubadours was developed from the rude popular song and ballad into that elegance and melodious form which made it the courtly minstrelsy of France and Italy, between the years 1090 and 1140, and that its period of achievement lasted until the year 1250, so that the golden era of Provençal literature exactly corresponded with the reign of the Hohenstaufen line. Rudel, whose romantic love for the Princess of Tripoli has inspired so many later ballads, was a contemporary of Diethmar von Aist, one of the

first Minnesingers; and Bertrand de Born, in whose lines we hear the blast of the trumpet and the clash of swords, was a contemporary of Walther von der Vogelweide, who sang of birds and the blossoms of May. Some of the German scholars deny that the troubadours contributed toward the revival of poetry by the Minnesingers, for the reason that the former sang of battles and heroic deeds, while the latter sang of love and sorrow and the influence of Nature. This distinction is correctly drawn: the Minnesingers were not imitators, but nevertheless they did owe their immediate popularity in Germany, and the encouragement accorded to them by the ruling princes, to the fashion which was first set by the Courts of Aix, Toulouse and Arragon. In fact, William, Count of Poitiers, was one of the earliest troubadours, and three kings of Arragon are named in the list of minstrels. Then, as in Schiller's poem, "The Might of Song," the poet sat beside the monarch, if he did not happen to be a monarch himself.

Turning to the history of the house of Hohenstaufen, we find that although six emperors of that house reigned from 1138 to 1254, a period of one hundred and sixteen years, the character and importance of the Hohenstaufen rule is due to two men, Frederick Barbarossa, who reigned thirty-eight years, and his grandson, Frederick II., who reigned thirty-six years. Both of them were men of culture and refined literary taste, and Frederick II. himself wrote poems in the Arabic

and Provençal languages. Even the boy Conradin, the last of the line, who was executed by Charles of Anjou in 1268, left two German poems behind him. Both Barbarossa and Frederick II. distinguished themselves by a bold and determined resistance to the growing power of the Popes. They were both called "heretics" by the clergy; Frederick II. was excommunicated, his sudden death was attributed to poison, and it was the influence of Rome which exterminated his race within twenty years after his death; yet, during the century of the Hohenstaufens, Germany was comparatively free from the nightmare of priestly rule. Barbarossa became the symbol of national sentiment and national unity among the people: Frederick II. laid the foundation for that middle class, between the nobles and the peasants, which is the present strength of every nation of Europe; and he began unconsciously to prepare the way for Luther, three hundred years before the Reformer's birth. They were great political architects, who builded broader and stronger than they knew. From the Rhone to Mount Tabor and the Sea of Galilee, from the Baltic to the gardens of Sicily, their lives were battles and marches; they sat on portable thrones, and their palaces were tents.

Although Europe paid five million lives for a ninety years' occupation of Jerusalem, and a two hundred years' possession of the coast of Palestine, her real gain was worth the sacrifice. The nations drew new

virtues and new graces of character from the Crusades. Their people came out of seclusion into a grand continental society; all minor interests were lost in the two great inspirations—war and religion; narrow prejudices were swept away, ignorance corrected, knowledge exchanged, and Christian courtesy began to take the place of barbaric manners. When, in some Phrygian forest, or some valley of Taurus or Lebanon, the Provençal sat beside the Saxon, the Norman beside the Suabian, and the lively strains of the *jongleur* alternated with some grave old Teutonic ballad in the saga-measure, there was already that stimulus of emulation which is the first condition of literary growth. The three influences which I have mentioned were blended together in their operation on the German people—the education of the Crusades, the courtly fashion of song, with the elegant Provençal models, and finally the intelligence and taste of the rulers, combined with their defiance of the authority of Rome.

In regard to this latter point, I must add a word of explanation. I should not venture to say that the intellectual development of an individual or a race is very seriously affected by the character of his or its religious faith. Barbarossa, Frederick II., Walther von der Vogelweide, Wolfram von Eschenbach, were Catholics, as were Dante and Tasso. But I do assert, with the positiveness of profoundest belief, that no other agency in the history of man has so injuriously

interfered with his growth in knowledge as the ecclesiastical power of any faith which seeks to bring under its exclusive control and government all forms of intellectual growth. In this country, where we have never had, and never can have, a union of Church and State, it is difficult for us to understand the spiritual tyranny which any form of religious belief will always assume when it has the power. The Church of Rome, in the Middle Ages, was despotic, because all civilized Christendom belonged to it; but any earlier or later variety of faith would, under the same circumstances, have assumed the same character. Tolerance is always an acquired, not a natural virtue. In the development of German Literature, the religious element every now and then asserts itself, and must be mentioned. I wish, therefore, to treat it simply as an inevitable fact, without prejudice or partisan views.

For two hundred and fifty years, as we have seen, the creative spirit of literature in Germany had been sunk in a sleep like death; but it now began to revive. It meets us, at the start, in a new character, and is the expression of a new spirit. The stages of transition between the "*Hildebrandslied*," the "*Heliand*," the rhymed couplets of Otfried and Hucbald and the smooth, elaborate stanzas of the Minnesingers, have been lost. The new race of minstrels began by borrowing form and melody from the troubadours; but this was all they borrowed. They belonged to an im-

pressible, emotional race, in whom the elements of song always existed, and in whom the joy of expressing and communicating fancy and feeling to others was always strong. Their language had so changed in the meantime that it is now called the Mediæval High-German by scholars, to distinguish it from the Old High-German of Charlemagne's time. The first attempts at lyrical poetry, in the twelfth century, show the stiff joints of a speech which is not accustomed to trip in musical measures; but it very soon became flexible and warm, and learned to follow the moods of its masters.

The age that now commences was especially one of epic poetry, and quite as remarkable in this respect as was the age of Elizabeth for English dramatic poetry. The Minnesingers did not precede the epic poets, but were contemporaneous with them, and both of the titles may be applied with equal justice to several famous authors. I take the lighter strains first, because they spring more directly from the character of the age, and are a part of that minstrelsy which you will meet in English history, in the persons of Taillefer and Blondel and Richard of the Lion-Heart. In fact, the song of love or sorrow was as common throughout Europe as the red-cross on the left shoulder of the Crusader. These songs were remembered and sung by thousands who were unable to hear or recite the epic poems, and thus the people were taught to enjoy brief lyrics of action or feeling. The lyrical poetry of every modern language

grew from this basis, and our chief wonder, in contrasting the lays of the troubadours with those of this day, must be that the improvement, so far as concerns the graces of rhythmical form, has been so slight between that time and this.

We have the names and many of the poems of a large number of the Minnesingers—quite as many, indeed, as is necessary; but our knowledge of the authors is generally defective, and an exact chronological arrangement of them cannot be made. One of the earliest is Diethmar von Aist, and I quote his little song of the “Falcon,” because its subject is simple and unaffected, while the language shows that rhyme is still an unaccustomed restraint.

Ez stuont ein vrouwe aleine
unt warte uber heide,
unt warte ihr liebes,
sô gesach sie valken vliegen.
“Sô wol dir, valke, daz du bist!
Dû vliugest, swar dir lieb ist;
dû erkiusest dir in dem walde
einen boum, der dir gevalle.
Alsô hân onch ih getân:
ih erkôs mir selben einen man
den erwehlten mîniu ougen;
daz nident schône vrouwen.
O wê, wan lânt si mir mîn liep?
jo engerte ich ir dekeines trûtes
niet!”
Sô wol dir, sumerwunne!
Daz gevogel sanc ist gesunde,
alse ist der linden ir loup.

There stood alone a lady
And waited on the moorland,
And waited for her lover,
And saw the falcon flying.
“Ah, happy falcon that thou art!
Thou fliest where thou pleasest;
Thou choosest from the forest
The tree which best thou lovest,
And thus have I done also:
I chose a man to be mine own,
In mine eyes the one elected,
And envied am by fairest dames.
Alas, why will they not leave
my love?
For none of theirs I ever han-
kered.”
Fair art thou, joy of summer!
The song of birds is wholesome
As are its leaves unto the linden.

I must pass over many names—Friedrich von Hausen, the brave knight who fell in Asia Minor, Heinrich von Veldeck, Hartmann von Aue, and other noble minstrels—only pausing to quote this one verse of Heinrich von Morungen :

Ez ist site der nahtegal,	'Tis the way of the nightin- gale,
swan si ir liet volendet, sô ge- swîget sie ;	That when her song is finished she sings no more ;
Dur daz volge ab ich der swal,	But the swallow as mate I hail,
diu durch liebe, noch durch leide ir singen nie verlie.	Who neither for love nor woe, ceases her strain to pour.

Reimar the Old is another who tempts me with the increasing sweetness of his lines ; but I must also pass him by to reach the fairest and most attractive name among the Minnesingers—Walther von der Vogelweide. Where or when he was born, we do not know : his youth was spent in Austria, at the court of Duke Frederick. At the close of the twelfth century we find him with Philip of Hohenstaufen, then with Otto of Wittelsbach, defying Pope Innocent III. in bold verses, when the Pope excommunicated the Emperor ; and, finally, following Frederick II. to Palestine, scourging priests and monks with his satire, openly scoffing at the claims of the Papal power, and, as a writer of his time charges, “turning thousands from their duty to Rome.” He was ennobled by Frederick II. and presented with an estate near Würzburg. He was buried in the cathedral of that city, leaving a sum of money to the monastery to buy corn

for the birds which were fed out of four hollow spaces cut in the top-slab of his tombstone. His will was carried out for several hundred years, and the tombstone, with the hollows for the *Vogelweide*, still exists.

In his youth, Walther von der Vogelweide was poor. He began life as a *jongleur*, a traveling minstrel, riding from castle to castle, and singing his songs to lords and ladies, to the accompaniment of his violin. Even after he reached the life of courts and became the minstrel of emperors, his circumstances do not seem to have improved. Some touching verses still exist, wherein he begs Frederick II. to grant him a home which he may call his own. "Have pity," he says, "that I am left so poor, with all my rich art. If I could once warm myself at my own hearth, how would I then sing of the birds and of flowers and of love!" He adds that he is tired of the title of "guest"—if he can only be "host," instead of "guest," he will ask no more. It is pleasant to know that Frederick was moved by this appeal, and gave the weary old poet a home.

In Walther's songs, we find the nature of the born poet enforcing its own expression. The imperfect German of his day becomes fluent and musical in his verses; but the truer test of his quality is that we soon cease to think of the language, quaint and strange as it appears, and are brought face to face, and heart to heart, with the minstrel himself. More than any other poet of the Middle Ages, he seems to us modern in feeling and in

style. He was one of the very first, not merely to describe Nature and rural life, but to express a sweet and artless delight in her manifold aspects. After him, Chaucer, then Shakespeare, with a long interval between, Cowper and Wordsworth, and, among us, Longfellow, Bryant and Whittier, have chanted the beauty of the external world; but, with all their higher graces of art, none of them can so immediately set us in the midst of May-time, blossoms and bird-songs, by a simple, child-like line, as Walther von der Vogelweide.

Here is a little song of his, called "*Maienwonne*" (the Bliss of May):

Muget ir schouwen, waz dem
meien
wunders ist beschert?
Seht an, pfaffen, seht an, leien,
wie daz allez vert!
Grôz ist sîn gewalt;
ine weiz, ob er zouber künne:
swar er vert mit sîner wünne,
dân îs niemen alt.

Wol dir, meie, wie dû scheidest
allez âne haz!
Wie wol dû die boume kleidest
und die heide baz!
Diu hât varwe mê.
"Dû bist kurzer, ich bin langer!"
alsô stritents ûf dem anger
bluomen unde klê.

Would you see how May to
May-men
Bringeth marvels new;
Priests, behold!—behold it lay-
men,
What his might can do!
He is uncontrolled:
I know not if magic is it;
When his joys the world re-
visit,
Then is no one old.

Happy May, thy spell divideth
All, but not in hate!
Every tree in leafage hideth,
Nor the moorlands wait.
Colors fall in showers:
"I am long and thou art short,"
Thus in fields they strive and
sport,
Clover, grass and flowers.

Rôter mund, wie dû dich swa- chest !	Rosy mouth, why thus degrade thee,
Lâ din lachen sîn !	Let thy laughter be !
Sham dich, daz dû mich an la- chest	Shame of scorn shall not evade thee,
nâch dem schaden mîn.	After wounding me.
Ist daz wol getân ?	Doest thou kindly so ?
Owê sô verlornere stunde !	Ah, lost hours that we are prov- ing,
Sol von minneclîchem munde	When from lips that seem so loving
solch unminne ergân ?	Such unlove should flow !

Although this song has the character of a *Leich*, in suggesting music, the language is nowhere bent to adapt itself to the rhythm. Form and substance melodiously embrace each other : the stanza shows that the author has carefully studied rhythmical effect, yet his feeling fills it so evenly that the measure seems as un-studied as the song of a bird. The alliteration of the saga is also retained, but so skillfully, so delicately subordinate to the expression of joy in the May-time, that we do not immediately perceive it.

Here is another *minne*-song, remarkable for being written in the dactylic measure :

Wól mich der stûnde, daz ich sie erkande,	Happy the moment when first I beheld her,
diu mir den lip und den muot hât betwungen,	Conquering body and soul with her beauty ;
sît deich die sinne sô gar an sie wande,	Since when my service the more hath compelled her
der si mich hât mit ir güete verdrungen !	Still with her kindness to fet- ter my duty,

daz ich gescheiden von ir niht
enkan,
daz hât ir schoene und ir güette
gemachet
und ir rôter mûnd, der sô liep-
lichen lachet.

So that from her I can never
more part.
This from her goodness and
grace, and thereafter
Her roseate mouth, with the
charm of its laughter.

Ich hân den mûot und die
sînne gewendet
an die vil reinen, die lieben, die
guoten :
dâz müez' uns béiden wol wer-
den volendet
swes ich getar an ir hulde ge-
muoten.
swaz ich ie freuden zer werlde
gewan,
daz hât ir schoene und ir güete
gemachet
und ir rôter mûnt, der sô liep-
lichen lachet.

Spirit and senses and thought
I have given
Unto the best and the purest
and dearest ;
Now must the bliss be complete,
as in heaven,
Since I have dared to desire
to be nearest.
If the world's blisses were
dear to my heart,
'Twas from her goodness and
grace, and thereafter
Her roseate mouth, with the
charm of its laughter.

I find in these little madrigals of Walther von der Vogelweide, the same grace and sweetness and willful play of fancy, as in those of Herrick and Carew. His sentiment for women is of the most refined and knightly character ; and it is remarkable how the fine enthusiasm of his nature breaks out as fresh and ardent as ever, whenever he mentions love or the spring-time. Before turning to his didactic and satirical strains, I must quote three more stanzas, in illustration of this delightful quality. The first is from his poem of "The Glorious Dame"—"*Die Herrliche Frau.*"

Got hâte ir wengel hôhen fliz :	God was so careful of her cheeks;
er streich sô tiure varwe dar,	He spread such precious colors there,
sô reine rôht, sô reine wîz,	That pure and perfect, either speaks,
hie roeseloht, dort liljenvar.	Here rosy-red, there lily-fair.
Ob ich'z vor sünden tar gesa-	Not meaning sin, will I declare
gen,	
sô saehe ich s'iemer gerner an	That I more fain on her would gaze
dan himel oder himelwagen.	Than on the sky or Starry Bear.
Owê waz lobe ich tumber man ?	Ah, foolish me, what is't I praise ?
mach' ich sie mir ze hêr,	If I, too fond, exalt her so,
vil lihte wirt mîns mundes lop	How soon the lip's delight be-
mîns herzen sêr.	comes the bosom's woe.

Now take the opening stanzas of his song—"Spring and Women," which I quote on account of its bright, sunny character :

Sô die bluomen ûz dem grase	When the blossoms from the
dringent,	grass are springing,
same si lachen gegen der spile-	As they laughed to meet the
den sunnen,	sparkling sun,
in einem meien an dem morgen	Early on some lovely morn of
fruo,	May,
und die kleinen vogellin wol	And all the small birds on the
singent	boughs are singing
in ir besten wise die sie kunnen,	Best of music, finished and
	again begun,
waz wünne mac sich dâ genôzen	What other equal rapture can
zuo ?	we pray ?
ez ist wol halb ein himelriche.	It is already half of heaven.
Suln wir sprechen, waz sich deme	But should we guess what other
geliche,	might be given,
sô sâge ich, waz mir dicke baz	So I declare, that, which in my
	sight,
in mînen ougen hât getân und	Still better seems, and still would
taete ouch noch, gesaehe ich	seem, had I the same de-
daz.	light.

Swâ ein edeliu schoene frouwe
 reine
 wol gekleidet unde wol gebun-
 den
 durch kurzewile zuo vil liuten
 gât,
 hovelichen hôchgemuot, niht
 eine,
 umbe sehende ein wênic under
 stunden :
 alsam der sunne gegen den ster-
 nen stât :
 der meie bringe uns al sîn
 wunder,
 waz ist dâ sô wûnnecliches un-
 der
 als ir vil minneclicher lip ?
 wir lâzen alle bluomen stân und
 kapfen an daz werde wip.

When a noble dame of purest
 beauty
 Well attired, with even gar-
 nished tresses,
 Unto all, in social habit, goes,
 Finely gracious, yet subdued to
 duty,
 Whose impartial glance her
 state expresses,
 As on stars the sun his radiance
 throws !
 Then let May his bliss renew
 us :
 What is there so blissful to us
 As her lips of love to see ?
 We gaze upon the noble dame,
 and let the blossoms be.

We possess nearly two hundred of the poems and songs of Walther von der Vogelweide. Some of them are brief single verses, which chronicle some event of his life, or his individual relation to the times in which he lived ; yet, slight as they are, they are characterized by a roundness, a completeness, an elegance, which show the master's hand. I should like to quote some stanzas of his poem "In the Promised Land," apparently written in Palestine ; but my space is so brief that I prefer selecting, as more characteristic of the Hohenstaufen period, his defiance of Pope Innocent III., written after the latter had excommunicated the Emperor Otto. He commenced by comparing him to Pope Syl-

vester II., whose former name was Gerbert, who had the common reputation of being a magician, and was believed by the people to have been carried off by the Devil. Walther says :

Der stuol ze Rôme ist allerêrst berihtet rehte
 als hie vor bî einem zouberaere Gêbrêchte.
 Der gap ze valle niwet wan sîn eines leben :
 sô wil sich dirre und al die kristenheit ze valle geben.
 Wan rüefent alle zungen hin ze himele wâfen
 und frâgent got, wie lange er welle slâfen ?
 Sie widerwûrkent sîniu were und velschent sîniu wort :
 sîn kameraere stilt im sînen himelhort,
 sîn süener roubet hie und mordet dort,
 sîn hirte ist z'einem wolve in worden under sînen schâfen.

The chair at Rome is now properly filled, as it was formerly by the magician Gerbert. He plunged into ruin only his own one soul : the present one will ruin himself and all Christendom. Why do not all tongues cry to heaven, and ask God how long He will quietly look on ? They oppose His works, and counterfeit His words : the Pope's treasurers steal from God's heavenly hoard : his judges rob here, and murder there, and God's shepherd has become a wolf among His sheep.

Here is another, even stronger, provoked by the simony, which was then prevalent in the Church, and the sale of absolutions which, three hundred years later, gave Luther such a weapon against Rome :

Ir bischov' unde ir edelen pfaffen, ir sît verleitet.
 Séht wie iuch der bâbest mit des tievels stricken seitet !
 Saget ir uns, daz er sant Pêters slüzzel habe,
 sô saget, war umbe er sine lêre von den buochen schabe ?
 Daz man gotes gâbe iht koufe oder verkoufe,
 daz wart uns verboten bî der toufe.

Nû lêre êt'z in sîn swarzez buoch, daz ime der hellemôr
 hât gegeben, und ûz im lese êt sîniu rôr,
 Ir kardenaele, ir decket iuwern kôr :
 ûnser alter frône der stêt undr einer übelen troufe.

Ye bishops and ye noble priests, you are misled. See how the Pope entangles you in the Devil's net ! If you say to me that he has the keys of St. Peter, then tell me why he banishes St. Peter's teaching from the Bible ? By our baptism it is forbidden to us that God's sacraments should be bought or sold ! But now let him read that in his black book, which the Devil gave him, and take his tune from Hell's pipe ! Ye cardinals, ye roof your choirs well ; but our old holy altar stands exposed to evil weather.

This is strong language for the year 1200. In other poems Walther speaks of the inefficiency of a profession of faith, without good works, very much as any practical Christian of our day might speak. His boldness was equal to his honesty : he gives us a very distinct impression of his fine, manly, independent character, of a life unstained by the prevalent vices of his day, and of a simple, loving nature which his many years of court-life do not seem to have vitiated. When he asks Frederick II. to give him a home, it is because he feels that his services deserve reward ; and, indeed, the property he finally received was barely sufficient to support him in his age. The distinguished Minnesingers were nearly all of noble blood ; for the nobles of Provence and Arragon had set the fashion, and it was not so easy for a plebeian minstrel to crowd his way into the company of the knightly singers. Walther von der Vogelweide did this—for he

was ennobled late in life—and he also, by the force of his native genius, made his supremacy acknowledged. Although we know less of him than of many of his contemporaries, we cannot study the literature of the day without finding that his character immediately detaches itself from the company around him, and shines out alone in its clearness and sweetness and strength.

The number of Minnesingers is quite large, but many of them have but a slight literary importance, and I will not burden your memories with a complete catalogue. Passing over Ulric von Singenberg, who wrote a lament for Walther von der Vogelweide, I shall pause a moment at the name of Nithart, who is interesting from the circumstance that, although he was a wealthy noble, the material of his songs was mostly drawn from peasant life, and have almost a coarsely realistic character, while Walther, the born peasant, is always noble and dignified in his verses. Nithart was also a crusader; his poetic life belongs to the middle of the thirteenth century. His pictures of common life, dances, festivals, love-making, tricks and quarrels, are lively and sometimes amusing, but prosaic in tone. He was a ready rhymers rather than a poet.

One of Walther von der Vogelweide's imitators, who during his life acquired nearly an equal fame, is called the Marner, an old German word corresponding exactly with our Mariner. His real name is unknown, although he was said to have been a nobleman. His verses have

a more didactic character than those of his master, but in rhythmical form they show an almost equal skill. Walther was really the first who gave fluency and music to the High-German dialect, and his followers, whatever might be their amount of talent, were quick to copy the external graces of his style. Of the many poems of the Marner, I will quote one in which he mentions the themes he is accustomed to sing at court :

Ich sunge ein bîspel oder ein
spel,
ein wârheit oder ein lûge,
ich sunge wol, wie Titurel

die Templeise bî dem grâle
züge,
wie sûeze ist Sirênen dôn und arc
des cocatrillen zorn.

Ich sunge ouch drachen viurin
kel,
unt wie der grîfe vlûge,
wie sich des salamander vel
in heizem viure strachte und
smûge
unt wie sich teilt shimaeren lîp
unt wie diu vipper wirt ge-
born.

Ich sunge ouch wol, wie sîniu
eiger brûeten kan der strûz ;
ich sunge ouch wol, wie sich der
fênix junget ûz ;
ich sunge ouch wie der lît,

der manigen in der wunderburc
verslunden hât dur sînen
gît.

I would sing a fable or a tale,

A truth or lie, for good example ;
How forth to seek the Holy
Grail

Titurel led the knights of the
Temple ;
How fierce the rage of crocodile,
how sweet the Siren's tone.

I would sing of the fiery dragon's
throat,

And how the griffin flieth ;
And how the salamander's coat
Unto the flame replyeth ;

How the Chimæra's body parts,
and how the snake is grown.

I would also sing how on its
eggs the ostrich broods ;

And how the phoenix is renewed,
burned up with spicy woods ;
And also where the hero lies
asleep,

Who slew so many in the magic
keep.

Ein wunder wont dem hove bî	'Mid wondrous customs, thus,
mit wunderlichen siten :	the wondrous beast at court
mit pfâwen schriten,	Struts like a peacock, for their
	sport,
unt mit menschen triten	With human feet and height,
kan ez lâgen, lôsen, biten ;	Must lie and beg and bite,
ez hât mit sîner zungen wâfen	And many a lord must wound,
maneges herren muot ver-	with tongue that knows to
sniten :	smite :
dem kan ich gesingen niht, nûn	For such I cannot sing—'twould
rede ist an ime gar ver-	be a mock delight !
lorn.	

The scornful air of the closing words suggests to us that the poem is satirical, the subjects being those demanded by the taste of the courts, not those which the poet would prefer to sing. The Marner was another bold, independent character who scourged the vices and follies of his day ; but he lived beyond the protection of the Hohenstaufens, and, after an old age of poverty and persecution, was basely murdered.

Among the other minstrels of note were Burkhardt von Hohenfels and Ulric von Winterstetten, whose songs are noted for illustrations drawn from the knightly pastime of the chase ; the two Reinmars, Reinmar the Old and Reinmar von Zweter, agreeable singers, but without original character ; Master Johannes Hadlaub, who has left behind him some very sweet pastoral and harvest songs ; the monk Wernher ; Conrad of Würzburg, and Heinrich von Meissen, who became famous under the name of *Frauenlob*. In addition to these, there were many who were known by epithets, either

assumed or bestowed upon them by the people—such as the Chancellor, the Undaunted and the Schoolmaster of Esslingen. In sifting their productions, we do not often find more than a few grains of genuine, vital poetry in a bushel of wordy chaff; but they all have a real value, from their constant references to the manners, morals and customs of the age. I will quote a few lines from Conrad of Würzburg, written about forty years after Walther von der Vogelweide, to show what progress had been made in developing the rhythmical capacity of the language :

Jâr lanc wil diu linde
vom winde
sich velwen,
Dîn sich vor dem walde
ze balde
kan selwen ;
Trûren úf der heide
mit leide
man üebet ;
sus hât mir diu minne
die sinne
betrüebet.

Year-long will the linden
The wind in
Go waving,
While a tempest sorest
The forest
Is braving ;
To wail the moorland through,
One's sorrow
Is doubled ;
Sweetly love's pretenses
My senses
Have troubled.

It is not often that Goethe, or Rückert, or Uhland employs a difficult metre with such apparent lightness and ease. But in Conrad's lines the sound is more than the sense. Toward the close of the thirteenth century, a great elaboration and refinement of form takes the place of fancy and sentiment, and from this sign we anticipate the coming decay of literature.

Even Ulric von Winterstetten, to whom we must grant some amount of native talent, took the pains to write verses in lines of a single syllable, such as this :

Wol ûf, ir kint,
sint
vrô,
sô
muoz
buoz
sorgen sîn !
Trûren, var hin !
Sîn,
muot
tuot
geil,
heil
werden schîn.

It is impossible to translate this ; but an imitation will answer just as well :

At night,	“ Boys ? ”
In fright,	“ No,—
Says the wife :	Guess ! ”
“ My life,	“ Oh,
Hear,	Yes !
Near,	That’s
Noise ! ”	Cats ! ”

One more quotation from Conrad of Würzburg will be enough to make clear the degeneracy into which the old German minstrelsy fell. This is a stanza from his “ Winter-Song ” :

Schoene doene klungen
jungen liuten, triuten
inne minne mêrte;
sunder wunder baere

swaere wilden bilden
 heide, weide rêrte,
 dô vrô sâzen die
 der ger lâzen spil wil hie.

Instead of a translation, I shall quote a few lines from Thomas Hood's comical proposition to write blank verse in rhyme, which is very much like it:

“ Evening has come, and from the dark park, hark,
 The signal of the setting sun—one gun !
 And six is sounding from the chime, prime time
 To go and see the Drury-Lane Dane slain—
 Or hear Othello's jealous doubt spout out,
 Or Macbeth raving at that shade-made blade,
 Denying to his frantic clutch much touch ! ”

I give these grotesque specimens, because there is a poetical moral to be drawn from them. I hardly need to point it out. A poem may have perfect form, as a woman may have perfect physical beauty; but the perfect poem requires feeling and thought, as the perfect woman must have goodness and intelligence. Form, alone, gives us a waxen doll, heartless and brainless. This characteristic is not peculiar to the age of the Minnesingers: there are volumes of poetry, published every year, in which we find it very clearly manifested.

The minstrelsy of that age, like all popular forms of literature, presents two different aspects. We may say, indeed, that every era of literature has three classes of writers—first, the Masters, who originate new forms of expression, and, by the power of their genius, force the race to accept them; second, the honest secondary in-

telligences, who imitate and illustrate and popularize, clear-sighted to follow though incapable of leading; and lastly, that class of vain and shallow minds who, as Tennyson says, turn the new flower into a weed,—who unconsciously parody the very spirit which they aspire to possess. Yet their grotesque affectation may deceive a portion of the public, and they may die in the full conviction of literary immortality. Among the Minnesingers, I should only admit Walther von der Vogelweide to the rank of a master. In the second class I should place the Marner, Reinmar von Zweter, Master Hadlaub and Burkhardt von Hohenfels; while no better representative of the extravagant burlesque of imitation would be desired than Ulric von Lichtenstein. He was an Austrian, of the same race from which the present Princes of Lichtenstein are descended, and appears to have begun his career as a knight and minstrel about the year 1223. If Cervantes had known anything of the German Minnesingers, we might charge him with borrowing parts of his *Don Quixote* from Ulric von Lichtenstein's history. The latter deliberately chose his Dulcinea, and for years devoted himself to singing her praises, although she only returned him scorn and ridicule. He relates that she would not at first look at him on account of his having three lips. He thereupon went to Gratz and employed a surgeon to cut off one of them. It was probably a hare-lip, the upper one counting for two. Then, at a tourney in Brixen, one of his

fingers was wounded, and he sent her word that he had lost it for her sake. The lady discovered soon afterward that the wound was healed, and she so ridiculed him that he had the finger actually cut off and sent to her in a box lined with green velvet. Afterward, he dressed himself as a woman, braided his hair with pearls, called himself "Dame Venus," and traveled through Germany and Italy, challenging the knights to fight with him (or her), in honor of the scornful lady. He traveled in state, with banners, marshals, heralds, musicians, and a retinue of men and women, and it is gravely related that, during the years of this singular and most expensive pilgrimage, he fought no less than five hundred and seventy-eight times. Yet, when it was over, and he called upon the lady for whose sake he had dared so much, she had him thrown out of the window of her castle! She assured him repeatedly that she not only did not love but actually hated him, and it is not probable that there was the least love on his side. She was a married lady, and he had his own wife and children in his castle of Lichtenstein; yet for thirty-three years he kept up the absurd farce, writing poems, singing and fighting, followed by crowds of silly knights who admired his constancy and bravery, and enjoying an immense amount of popularity. The colossal affectation of his career seems to us little short of idiocy; but every age has the same phenomena, and it would not be difficult to find names now, both in Europe and

America, which have become notorious from as absurd reasons as that of Ulric von Lichtenstein in his day. I will quote nothing from his long-winded work, called "*Frauendienst*," Woman's Service, because I find it a prosaic, tiresome performance, of little more value in German literature, except as a curious picture of the times, than are the novels of Sylvanus Cobb in ours.

Heinrich von Meissen, or *Frauenlob*, has also a more conspicuous place than he deserves. It was his good luck that he lived at the close of the period when minstrels had become scarce, and the glory of the better singers threw a reflected light on his own performances. He is said to have established the first school of minstrelsy in Mainz, in the early part of the fourteenth century. When he died, women bore his body, with weeping and lamentations, to his tomb in the cathedral, and, as an old chronicler says, "poured so much wine upon the tombstone, that the whole church was flooded with it." In the schools afterward established, where versification was taught as we teach grammar or arithmetic, he is credited as the inventor of thirty-five measures. About five hundred of his strophes have survived,—quite enough to enable us to judge of his quality as an author. He has given us his own opinion of his merits in one of his poems. Speaking of Reinmar, Wolfram von Eschenbach and Walther von der Vogelweide, he says: "They sang of the froth and neglected the substance, but I dip from the very bottom of the ves-

sel, and the shrine of my song should be splendidly crowned. I am the master of all those who have sung heretofore, or who sing now. I wear the yoke of profoundest thought, and my words and harmonies never wander from the track of the true sense." In spite of these lofty claims, the most of his poems are so obscure, artificial and involved, that they cannot now be read with any satisfaction. Yet, when he chooses to be simple and natural, singing some theme which appeals to the common sentiment of man, he has still the power to give us pleasure. One of his poems, entitled "Honor Women!" commences :

Ô reiniu wîp, ûfhaltunge aller welde	O woman, pure, all worlds in thee preserving
gên Gote unt gên der muoter sîn,	For God and for His Mother divine,
als hie mit sange ich melde,	My song proclaims, from thee unswerving,
si sint der hôhsten saelden schrîn :	Of highest souls art thou the shrine :
kein meister mac ir hôhez lop vol- denken.	No master can exhaust thy lofty praises.

The phrase *ûfhaltunge aller welde* suggests to us at once the exclamation of Faust, "*Inbegriff von allen Himmeln.*" Frauenlob stands at the close, as Diethmar von Aist at the beginning of this bright period of one hundred and fifty years, during which the seeds of all modern lyric poetry were planted in Provence and Germany.

The most famous event in the literary history of the Middle Ages—the *Sîngerkrieg*, or War of the Minstrels,

in the Wartburg Castle, near Eisenach,—is such a singular mixture of possible fact and evident fiction, that we shall probably never ascertain the true story. German scholars seem to be agreed that there was a meeting of Minnesingers, a tournament of song, at the Wartburg, between the years 1204 and 1208; but they cannot satisfactorily explain in what manner the romantic legend grew, so many features of which were long accepted as undoubted history. The old chroniclers relate that the combat took place at the court of Hermann, Landgraf or Count of Thuringia, and his wife, the Countess Sophia. There were present Wolfram von Eschenbach, Walther von der Vogelweide, Heinrich von Ofterdingen, Reinmar von Zweter, Biterolf and the Virtuous Scribe. The penalty of failure was death by the executioner's hand, and this fate fell upon Henry of Ofterdingen, who implored the mediation of the Countess Sophia, claiming that he was unfairly judged, and asking time to bring his master, the minstrel Klingsor, from Hungary, to aid him. The prayer was granted: Henry went to Hungary, reappeared with Klingsor in a year and a day, and the latter succeeded, with the devil's assistance, in rivaling, though not overcoming, Wolfram von Eschenbach. The result was, however, that Henry of Ofterdingen's life was saved.

The few facts are, that the Landgraf Hermann of Thuringia was a patron of literature; that both Wolfram von Eschenbach and Walther von der Vogelweide were his

guests in the Wartburg, and that the courtly minstrels who chanted their own songs sometimes met in rivalry. But Reinmar von Zweter belongs to a later generation, the Hungarian Klingsor is certainly a fictitious character, and there is no satisfactory evidence of a Heinrich von Ofterdingen, if the Minnesinger who is simply named Heinrich be not the same. The poetic fragment, purporting to be the strife between Klingsor and Wolfram von Eschenbach, betrays the speech of the end of the thirteenth century, and some conjecture that it was written by Frauenlob.

Not many years ago, the restoration of the Wartburg, which afterward became the scene of the most memorable year of Luther's life, was undertaken by the Grand-Duke of Saxe-Weimar, and it was found that many windows and arched galleries in the most beautiful Byzantine style, frescoes and other forms of ornament, dating from the time of the Landgraf Hermann, had been filled up, plastered over and hidden by later masonry. The ancient halls have now resumed their original character, and the walls within which the minstrels sang, the raised dais for the ruling prince and his wife, and the deep mullioned windows through which they looked on the wooded mountain ranges around, stand at present as they then stood. While there, knowing that at least two renowned Minnesingers had certainly sung within that hall, I found it easy to believe the picturesque legend.

The story of Tannhäuser belongs to the same neighborhood, and some traditions connect him with the war of the minstrels, although he was contemporary with Hermann's son, Ludwig, and with the latter's wife, St. Elizabeth of Hungary. The Hörselberg, a barren ridge which rises over an intervening valley, northeast of the Wartburg, is believed to be the mountain of Venus, in the interior of which Tannhäuser found the heathen goddess and her court.

In order to appreciate the legend of Tannhäuser, it must be remembered that the ancient gods were not immediately forgotten after the triumph of Christianity. The common people gradually came to look upon them as evil demons, who still existed, and the one to be most dreaded was Dame Venus. She was supposed to live somewhere, with her Nymphs and Graces, in a wonderful subterranean garden. The knight Tannhäuser, in the legend, finds the entrance to this garden, descends and lives there a year in the midst of pagan delights. He grows weary at last, comes back to the world, recognizes his sin, and wanders as a penitent pilgrim to Rome. There he confesses everything to the Pope, and begs for pardon: but the Pope, holding a staff in his hand, answers: "Sooner shall this dry stick burst into blossoms, than pardon come to a sin like thine!" Tannhäuser wanders back to Germany in despair; but three days after his departure the Pope's staff bursts into blossom. A messenger is instantly

dispatched with the news of the miracle and the pardon. It is too late: Tannhäuser has already gone down again to the garden of Dame Venus, and never returns. Thus the name of the real Tannhäuser is surrounded by a romantic interest, at once tragic and tender, which is justified by nothing in his life or his rather commonplace poems. He was an Austrian, a crusader, and died about the year 1270. With all the magic which later poets, and last of all a modern composer, have thrown backward upon his name, I find it impossible to feel any interest in his poetry. The concluding lines of his "Minstrel's Lament" will give a sufficient idea of his style:

Min hûs, daz stât gar âne dach, swie ich dar zuo gebâre,	My house, it stands without a roof, however I repair it;
mîn stube steht gar âne tür, daz ist mir worden swaere,	My chamber stands without a door, 'tis hard for me to bear it;
Mîn kelre ist in gevallen, mîn küche ist mir verbrunnen,	My cellar-vaults have tumbled in, my kitchen has been burned up,
mîn stadel stât gar âne bant, des höus ist mir zerrunnen;	My barn it stands without a lock, no hay could there be turned up:
mir ist gebachen, noch gemaln, gebrûwen ist mir selten;	They never grind nor bake for me, they brew for me but rarely,
mir ist diu wât ze dünne gar, des mag ich wol entgelten:	My coat is worn so very thin I am treating it unfairly;
mich darf durch geraete nieman niden, noch beschelten.	None has a right to envy me, still less to scold me squarely.

There is not much of the transcendental worshiper

of the antique goddess in these lines ; but, fortunately, when we come to substitute History for Romance, if we find many shadowy beauties shrink away to a basis of rather coarse fact, we are compensated by the discovery of unsuspected grace and nobility and gentle manhood. It is a bright, animated, eventful age which we find reflected in the literature of the Minnesingers ; not trivial, for the stern premonition of coming struggle is felt ; frank, artless, and natural, but almost never coarse ; original, because reaped on fresh fields, by fresh hands ; and with a direct impress of Nature, which we find for the first time in any literature. We can only express it properly by its German word *Gemüth*, which, in our language, includes both feeling and sentiment. A hundred years later, the kindred blood sent the same warmth to the heart and brain of Chaucer, and an independent English literature began to grow, not by the same stages, but by related laws of development. No one can study the two periods, without feeling how near the natures of the races still were to each other.

III.

THE MEDIÆVAL EPICS.

I HAVE already said that the age of the Minnesingers was especially an age of epic poetry, and that many of its authors were renowned in both qualities. It is possible that the brief lyrics and songs of love and of the charms of nature, performed as important a service in popularizing literature and furthering the higher education of the whole people, as the somewhat ponderous epics of the time ; but the broad and massive character of epic poetry, the deeper elements with which it deals, give it an intrinsic dignity and authority which cannot belong to the short flights of lyric song. The latter may furnish the ornament of the temple, but the former contributes the blocks and the pillars which give it space and permanence.

In examining the German epics of the Middle Ages, and tracing the sources of their material, as well as the tastes or fashions of thought which have had an influence in determining their character, we soon discover the presence of two very clearly separated elements. One has a racy flavor of the native soil, the other betrays the presence of foreign ingredients. One seems to have grown through the richer development of that

autochthonous poetic genius which produced the "*Hildebrandslied*," itself a descendant of older and wholly lost lays of the ancient Teutonic gods and heroes ; the other, starting from the Latin epic, "Walther of Aquitaine," in the tenth century, and revived by the German "*Eneid*," of Heinrich von Veldeck, in the twelfth, assimilated the romantic material of Wales, Cornwall and Brittany, became quickened with a different soul and embodied itself in different forms. In short, as the simplest distinction between the two, I should call the first the epic poetry of the People, and the second the epic poetry of the Courts. One is represented by the "*Nibelungenlied*," with its continuations, and "*Gudrun*;" the other by the epics of "*Tristan*," "*Parzival*," "*Erek*," "*Iwein*," "*Titurel*" and the shorter heroic ballads.

I am obliged to omit a numerous class of works which appeared during the eleventh, twelfth and thirteenth centuries, many of which have been preserved, for the reason that they are only embodiments of the legends of the Church, the lives of the saints, or the exploits of Greek and Roman heroes, in a poetical form—rhymed narratives of little literary value, although they were no doubt important agents in the education of the race. In days when there were neither newspapers, political meetings, elections, societies of Reform or cheap literature, men might very well sit down to the perusal of an epic of seventy-five or one hundred thousand lines ; but when I select the five or six, which really deserve notice

as illustrations of the narrative genius of that age, and find that they will average nearly twenty thousand lines apiece, I find my task sufficient, and must not go beyond it.

The "*Nibelungenlied*" and "*Gudrun*" must be treated separately. They floated along, under the favoring current which bore the courtly epics, almost unnoticed, and working upon the race by very slow and subtle agencies. Their influence on the German authors of our day has been much greater than it appears to have been upon the minstrels of the Middle Ages. But the epics of Gottfried von Strasburg, Wolfram von Eschenbach, Hartmann von Aue and the Priest Conrad, had an immediate effect upon the language and literary tastes of the educated classes throughout Germany. They have a monumental character in the literary history of the race; they are part of the expression of a great and wonderful period, not dark, as it has been foolishly called, but full of scattered lights, uncertain as morning, restless as early spring, and, like both, bringing life unto men.

Like the Elizabethan dramatists, all the famous epic poets and Minnesingers were contemporaries; the life of Wolfram von Eschenbach, the greatest of the former, from about 1150 to about 1230, covers the epic and the best of the lyric period. The Latin narrative poetry of the tenth and eleventh centuries, and the versified religious legends, undoubtedly prepared the

way for the greater works which followed ; but the first fresh impulse toward the creation of genuine heroic epics was given, between 1170 and 1180, by the nearly simultaneous production of three narrative poems of great length,—the “*Rolandslied*” of Priest Conrad, the “*Alexanderslied*” of Priest Lamprecht, and the “*Eneid*” of Heinrich von Veldeck. The first of these is a translation of the earlier French “*Chanson de Roland* ;” the second is a rhymed history of Alexander the Great, with romantic amplifications ; and the third is a very free translation, in the romantic manner, from Virgil. The popularity of these works may have been one cause which led the greater poets to exercise their genius in the same field, since they too commenced their literary career as Minnesingers.

The subject of the “*Rolandslied*” belongs to the literature of France. I need only say that Geoffrey of Monmouth, whose chronicles of Arthur and his Knights of the Round Table were professedly translations of the Welsh legends, preceded the German epics by fifty or sixty years, so that their material was certainly drawn from him and from the French versions of the same legends. History gives us little knowledge of either Roland or of Arthur : we cannot be sure of much more than the simple fact that there were such persons ; but the marvelous legendary growths which collect around certain names, have an astonishing vitality : like the air-plants of Brazil, their gorgeous blossoms

and exquisite fragrance seem to spring from nothing. The "*Chanson de Roland*" is no longer read, except by scholars, but the famous paladin still lives and wields his sword Durindarte, and blows his tremendous horn at Ronçeval, in Ariosto's "*Orlando*" and in the exquisite ballads of Uhland. During the Middle Ages, the different *sagenkreise*, or legendary circles, sometimes became curiously mixed, not only with each other, but with certain striking episodes of classic history. Thus the feat of Xerxes at the Hellespont was transferred to Charlemagne, who, as early as the tenth century, was believed by the people to have built a bridge across the sea in order to visit Palestine. Then Charlemagne's pilgrimage was transferred to Arthur, who was said to have made a journey to Jerusalem at the invitation of the Sultan,—although he lived long before there were any sultans! As the legend passed from age to age, each version took the entire stamp and character of the day—precisely as Tennyson's Arthur and Geraint and Elaine and Guinevere are not Celts of the sixth century, but ideal English men and women of the nineteenth. I doubt, indeed, whether any literary work would be generally acceptable to the people if this were not so—that is, if the speech, customs and character of former ages were reproduced with historical accuracy. But the mirage, which the Romancers impose between far-off, insignificant circumstances and our eyes, turns the former into grand, illusive forms. Arthur, for example,

seems to have been the owner or feudal lord of the island of Avalon, on the coast of Brittany—the name Avalon signifying apple-trees. After his death, it was said in Cornwall that he had gone to Avalon, and the word gradually came to signify some Armoric Elysium, whence he would return in time and drive the Saxons from Britain. In Tennyson's verse, the mysterious transformation becomes complete, and we read of Arthur carried away to

“ The island-valley of Avilion
Where falls not hail, or rain, or any snow,
Nor ever wind blows loudly ; but it lies
Deep-meadowed, happy, fair with orchard lawns
And bowery hollows crowned with summer sea.”

So the Arthurian legends become larger, broader, and transformed in many important features, in passing into German epic song. Their personages are advanced from the sixth century to the twelfth, and their love, sorrow, jealousy and revenge express themselves according to the fashion of the later time. But, as in the old Flemish paintings, we can study the costume of the artist's time and home as well in a Holy Family as in a tavern scene, so here the foreign theme is only an illustration of the tastes, opinions and habits of the age.

The wonderful age of epic poetry in Germany, under the Hohenstaufen Emperors, lasted about as long as the age of English drama, under Elizabeth and James I.—about fifty years. It is difficult to describe several epics satisfactorily, in a single lecture ; but I

may perhaps be able to enlist your interest by showing how the same material which we find in them has taken possession of modern Literature and Art. They were all inspired by the half-historic, half-romantic legends which already existed. The chief of these were the following:—first—the oldest Scandinavian Eddas, with the story of Sigurd and Brynhilda: second—a lost group of Gothic and Burgundian legends, one of which we find in the Lay of Hildebrand: third—the Celtic group of King Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table: fourth—the search for the Holy Grail; and lastly, a great number of subordinate legends, partly growing out of these, partly borrowed from the Orient during the Crusades, and partly original. Now, it is very singular to notice how all this material has been worked over, with little change except that of detail, in the literature of our day. I need only recall to your memory Bulwer's epic of "King Arthur;" Longfellow's "Golden Legend;" Tennyson's "Idylls of the King;" Matthew Arnold's "Tristram and Iseult;" Swinburne's poem of "Tristram and Iseult;" Morris's "Lovers of Gudrun," and "Sigurd the Volsung;" the German, Jordan's "*Nibelungenlied*," and finally, Wagner's operas of "*Lohengrin*" and the "*Nibelungen Trilogy*," performed at Bayreuth. It will certainly help us to estimate the true value of these works, by knowing the sources from which they sprang. Moreover, by taking parallel passages from the poems of the German and the

modern authors, we have the best possible illustration of the changes in modes of poetic expression which have taken place in the lapse of six hundred and fifty years.

I shall adhere to the plan, which I stated in beginning these lectures, of noticing only those works which give a distinct, characteristic stamp to each literary period. Therefore, in treating of the German epics of the twelfth century, I shall select the three greatest representatives, and say nothing of the crowd of inferior singers who imitated them.

It is remarkable that we know so little of the lives of these three principal epic poets. We can only conjecture, from some collateral evidence, the probable time when they were born and died. Gottfried von Strasburg seems to have first died, and Wolfram von Eschenbach to have outlived Hartmann von Aue. I shall commence with the last, as certainly the least endowed. It is unknown whether he was of Swiss or of Suabian birth; it is only known that he was noble. He was one of the crusaders under Barbarossa, devoted himself to poetry after his return, and died somewhere between 1210 and 1220. He seems to have enjoyed a great deal of popularity, and Gottfried of Strasburg, in his "*Tristan*," ranks him high above Wolfram von Eschenbach, probably because the latter was a more dangerous rival.

Hartmann von Aue wrote four epics—"Erek," "*Gregorius vom Steine*" (Gregory of the Rock), "*Der arme Heinrich*" (Poor Henry), and "*Iwein*." Three of these

were based on foreign originals, from which they differ only in a few details and in manner of treatment. One, the "Poor Henry," appears to have been derived from a tradition in the poet's own family, or, at least, in his native province. For the subject of his "*Erek*," I refer you to Tennyson's poem of "Enid," in his "Idylls of the King." In Hartmann's epic Enid is also the wife, but the husband is named Erek instead of Geraint. The story is almost exactly the same, except that Tennyson reconciles Geraint with his wife immediately after the slaughter of Earl Doorm in his castle, while Hartmann first adds another adventure. He brings Erek to the castle of Brandigan (Burgundy?), whose lord has overcome eighty knights in combat, and holds their eighty ladies imprisoned. Erek slays the lord of Brandigan, liberates the ladies, and then goes with Enid to Arthur's Court. It may interest you to compare corresponding passages from the German crusader and the modern English poet:

Nû kam ez alsô nâch ir site,	Now happened it as was their wont,
daz er umb einen mitten tac	That he, about the warm noon- tide
an ir arme gelac.	Was sleeping by her side.
Nu gezam des wol der sunnen schin,	The sun therein so fairly beamed
daz er dienst muoste sîn,	That he their servant seemed,
wand er den gelieben zwein	When he the wedded pair
durch ein vensterglas schein	So through the window there
unt het die kemenâten	Did light, that in the room,
liehtes wol berâten,	There nothing was of gloom,

daz sî sich mohten undersehen.

Daz ir von fluochen was geschehen,
dâ begunde se denken an :

vil gâhes ruhte sî hin dan ;

sî wânde, daz er sliefe.

Einen siuften nam sî tiefe

unde sach in vaste an ;

sî sprach : " Wê dir, vil armer man,

unt mir ellendem wîbe,

daz ich bî mînem libe

sô manegen fluoch veruemen sol ! "

Dô vernam Êrec die rede wol.

Als si der rede het gedaget,

Êrec sprach : " Frowe Ênîte, saget,

waz sint iwer sorgen,

die ir dâ klaget verborgen ? "

Nû wolde sis gelougent hân ;

Êrec sprach : " Lât die rede stân ;

des nemet in ein zil,

daz ich die rede wizzen wil.

Ir müezet mir benamen sagen,

waz ich iuch da hôrte klagen,

daz ir vor mir sus habt verswigen."

Sî vorhte, daz sî wurde gezigen

von im ander dinge

unt seite imz mit gedinge ;

daz er ir daz gehieze,

daz erz âne zorn lieze.

And they each other well could see.

Then fell to thinking she,

That he, through her, was ex-
crate ;

Thence was her trouble swift
and great ;

She thought he was asleep ;

Now sigheth she full deep,

And looketh on him steadily.

She said : " Poor man, alas for thee

And me, thy miserable wife,

That ever in my life

So many curses should receive ! "

All this did Erek well perceive :

When she that speech had fin-
ished,

" Tell me, Dame Enid," Erek said,

" What then may be your pain,

That you so secretly complain ? "

Now when deny would she,

Said Erek : " Let your talking
be ;

And be your duty so,

As I your words desire to know.

Verily you must say again

What now I heard you sore com-
plain,

What you from me have thus
concealed."

She feared lest there might be
revealed

To him, quite other thing,

And spoke, he promising

To hear withouten wrath,

What now she spoken hath.

<p>Als er vernam die maere, waz diu rede waere, er sprach : " Der rede ist gnuoc getân !" Zehant hiez er sî ûf stân, daz sî sich wol kleite unte an leite daz beste gewalte, daz sî iender haete. Sinen knaben er seite, daz man im sîn ros bereite und ir phürt der frowen Êniten ; er sprach, er wolde rîten uz kurzwîlen : des begunden sî dô îlen.</p>	<p>When he the story heard What was her spoken word, " Enough of speech !" then said he. He bade her rise, get ready, And dress herself with care In garments fair, Donning the best array That in her presses lay. The page he bade with speed Prepare his own strong steed, Dame Enid's palfrey there be- side ; He said that he would ride For pastime far away : So forward hastened they.</p>
--	---

Tennyson's "Enid":

" At last it chanced that on a summer morn
(They sleeping each by other) the new sun
Beat thro' the blindless casement of the room,
And heated the strong warrior in his dreams :
Who, moving, cast the coverlet aside,
And bared the knotted column of his throat,
The massive square of his heroic breast,
And arms on which the standing muscle sloped,
As slopes a wild brook o'er a little stone,
Running too vehemently to break upon it.
And Enid woke and sat beside the couch,
Admiring him, and thought within herself,
Was ever man so grandly made as he ?
Then, like a shadow, past the people's talk
And accusation of uxoriousness
Across her mind, and bowing over him,
Low to her own heart, piteously she said :

" ' O noble breast, and all-puissant arms,
Am I the cause, I the poor cause that men
Reproach you, saying all your force is gone ?

I *am* the cause, because I dare not speak
 And tell him what I think and what they say.
 And yet I hate that he should linger here ;
 I cannot love my lord and not his name.
 Far liever had I gird his harness on him,
 And ride with him to battle and stand by,
 And watch his mightful hand striking great blows
 At caitiffs and at wrongers of the world.
 Far better were I laid in the dark earth,
 Not hearing any more his noble voice,
 Not to be folded more in these dear arms,
 And darkened from the high light in his eyes,
 Than that my lord thro' me should suffer shame.
 Am I so bold, and could I so stand by,
 And see my dear lord wounded in the strife,
 Or may be pierced to death before mine eyes,
 And yet not dare to tell him what I think,
 And how men slur him, saying all his force
 Is melted into mere effeminacy?
 O me, I fear that I am no true wife.'

"Half inwardly, half audibly she spoke,
 And the strong passion in her made her weep
 True tears upon his broad and naked breast,
 And these awoke him, and by great mischance
 He heard but fragments of her later words,
 And that she feared she was not a true wife.
 And then he thought, 'In spite of all my care,
 For all my pains, poor man, for all my pains,
 She is not faithful to me, and I see her
 Weeping for some gay knight in Arthur's hall.'
 Then tho' he loved and revered her too much
 To dream she could be guilty of foul act,
 Right thro' his manful breast darted the pang
 That makes a man, in the sweet face of her
 Whom he loves most, lonely and miserable.
 At this he hurl'd his huge limbs out of bed,
 And shook his drowsy squire awake and cried,
 'My charger and her palfrey,' then to her,
 'I will ride forth into the wilderness ;

For tho' it seems my spurs are yet to win,
 I have not fall'n so low as some would wish.
 And you, put on your worst and meanest dress
 And ride with me.' And Enid ask'd, amaz'd,
 'If Enid errs, let Enid learn her fault.'
 But he, 'I charge you, ask not, but obey.'"

These passages illustrate not only the common source from which both poets derived their material, but also the different manner of treatment between a poet of the twelfth century and one of the nineteenth. Tennyson has endeavored to imitate the old epic simplicity—rather the Greek, it is true, than the German or Anglo-Saxon—but he cannot escape the atmosphere of our day. As compared with Hartmann von Aue, he has less of simple, direct, natural narration, and much more both of description and of subjective study of character.

I will pass over "Gregory of the Rock," founded on an obscure legend concerning Pope Gregory VII., which will not well bear repeating, and come to the "*Arme Heinrich*." Here, again, the material has been used by a living poet, and you all are—or ought to be—familiar with it. The author is Longfellow, and the poem is the "Golden Legend." Instead of Heinrich von Aue, Longfellow calls the hero Prince Henry of Hoheneck, and gives him Walther von der Vogelweide as a friend. He takes only the thread of the story from Hartmann—the incurable disease, the self-sacrifice of the maiden, the journey to Salerno, and the happy termination of the story in her marriage with the prince, and has so en-

riched and adorned it with the fairest suggestions of his own genius that it becomes a new creation. Certainly no more exquisitely finished and harmonious poetical work has been written in this country than the "Golden Legend."

Hartmann's last epic, "*Iwein*," is taken from the traditions of King Arthur and the Round Table. The name *Iwein* is the Welsh *Evan*, the Russian *Ivan*, the English *John*. The poem, except toward its close, is a repetition of the adventures of the Knight Iwein, as related in the Welsh Mabinogion. This, no less than his other epics, bears the stamp of elegant mediocrity. His verse is carefully constructed, the separate episodes are often well narrated, but the characters are not consistent nor properly sustained, and the poem becomes wearisome to one accustomed to better models.

Nevertheless, among the German critics there are very different verdicts pronounced upon Hartmann von Aue. Some consider him an undoubted master, combining sentiment, power and purity of style: others condemn him for a total lack of high poetic instinct. Grimm, curiously enough, has expressed himself on both sides of the question in different works. If we avoid either extreme, yet place him decidedly below both Gottfried and Wolfram, I think we shall come nearer fixing his true place. But his importance in his age cannot be fairly estimated by our modern literary standards. The very smoothness and polish, which become

so wearisome to us when they are not penetrated with the presence of a strong informing spirit, may have been an agency of culture, as well as a charm, to his contemporaries.

Of Gottfried von Strasburg, we only know that he was probably a native of the city for which he is named ; that he was not of noble family, but well educated, and apparently in good circumstances, and that he must have died, still comparatively young, before 1210. One of the old manuscripts has a portrait which represents him as a young man with long, curling locks, but its authenticity cannot be relied upon. He was perhaps a personal friend of Hartmann von Aue : it is not known that he ever met Wolfram von Eschenbach.

Gottfried also drew the subject of his one epic, "*Tristan*," from English and French sources. It had even been used before him by a German poet, Eilhart von Oberg, who, some thirty years before him, wrote a poem called "*Tristan*" in the Low-German language. Like the "*Erek*" and "*Arme Heinrich*" of Hartmann, you will find the substance of the story in poems by two living authors—in Tennyson's Idyll of "The Last Tournament," and in the "*Tristram and Iseult*" of Matthew Arnold. The plot, in its general outline, has a resemblance to the story of Lancelot and Guinevere, but it is more tragic, because the element of magic is introduced, and the final sorrow is thus not the consequence of voluntary sin. It is, in fact, one of the most touching and beautiful of all those

purely romantic legends which were so popular over all Europe during the Middle Ages. None of the characters are historical: it seems to have had no original connection with the Arthurian stories, although it was afterward attached to them, and its invention is ascribed to some Celtic minstrel of Brittany.

The outline of the story is so simple that it may be told in a few words. Mark, the king of Cornwall, who resided at the castle of Tintágil, so famous as the residence of Uther, the father of Arthur, had a nephew, Tristan or Tristram, who was the most gallant and accomplished knight of his court. The king of Ireland, having promised the hand of his daughter Iseult, Isôt, or Isolde, as the name is differently written, to King Mark, Tristan was sent to bring the bride to Cornwall. On leaving Ireland, Iseult's mother gave her daughter's attendant lady, Brangène by name, a love-potion to be secretly administered to her and her royal bridegroom on the day of their nuptials, in order to secure their wedded bliss. But the magic elixir was administered, by mistake, to Tristan and Iseult, during the voyage from Ireland to Cornwall. This fixed the destiny of both during the remainder of their lives. The spell compelled them to love each other, though separated by holy vows. The truth was soon discovered at the Court of Cornwall, and Tristan, to avoid his uncle's wrath, went to Brittany, where he met another Iseult—she is sometimes called Iseult of Brittany and some-

times Iseult of the White Hands—whom he married, more out of gratitude than love. But the infection of the magic potion was still in his blood: he wandered forth, tormented by his passion, and became the hero of many daring exploits which made his name famous in Britain. At last, sick, worn, and wounded nigh unto death he returned to Iseult of the White Hands, who is represented as a sweet, forbearing and forgiving woman. Her nursing was of no avail; and a messenger was sent to bring Queen Iseult of Cornwall, who alone could heal him. She fled from King Mark's Court, crossed to Brittany in a wild storm, and reached Tristan's castle just in time to see him die. Her heart broke, and she sank dead beside his corpse. Another version, which I prefer not to believe—in fact, refuse to believe—states that the vessel which was to bring Iseult of Cornwall was to hoist white sails on returning, if she was on board; but black sails, if it came without her. Iseult of Brittany bribed the captain to hoist black sails, in either case. When the ship was seen afar, and the color of the sails was reported to Tristan, he died in disappointment and despair: Iseult of Cornwall found only his dead body. King Mark, who had learned the story of the magic potion, had them buried side by side. He planted over Iseult a rose, and over Tristan a grape-vine, which twined themselves around each other as they grew, and could not be separated. It is curious how this last particular has lived to this day in the Ballad of Lord

Lovel, which is still sung by the country people of England :

“ And out of her breast there grew a red rose,
And out of his breast a brier.”

This is, of course, only the slightest framework of the story. Gottfried is a more daring and original poet than Hartmann; in the scenes and episodes, from first to last, he allows his invention full play, and so enriches and extends the material that, although his poem contains thirty books and twenty thousand lines, it was terminated by his death when only two-thirds had been written. Both the choice of the subject and the manner of treatment give evidence of true literary feeling and skill, but not of that grand, independent disregard of former models or prevalent fashions which marks the pathfinder. He took the forms which he found, with all their monotony, their interminable diffuseness and tolerance of digressions. They became purer and stronger in his hands; the great mass constantly moves with life, but it still lacks that harmony and mutual dependence of parts, that organic unity, which every great literary work must possess. There are many passages which may be read with delight, but the perusal of the whole work becomes a rather serious task.

“*Tristan*” commences with an *Eingang*, or Introduction, in which the author explains his reasons for writing the poem, and the service which he thereby hopes to ren-

der to the noble and loving among men. In the very first stanza we recognize his characteristic style :

Gedaechte man ir ze guote niht,	If we the good should never heed,
von den der werlde guot geschiht,	That haps on earth, as is decreed,
sô waere ez allez else niht,	Then were it nothing worth, indeed,
swaz guotes in der werlt geschiht.	That any good should be decreed.

Another stanza, quite as terse and sound, is :

Tiur' unde wert ist mir der man,	Dear and worthy is the man
der guot and übel betrahten kan,	Who good and evil study can :
der mich und iegelichen man	Who me and every other man
nâch sinem werde erkennen kan.	At his true value measure can.

The first book describes the loves of Prince Reivalin, the father of Tristan, and Blanchefleur, his mother, the sister of King Mark. Their meeting in the spring-time reminds us of the similar scene in the story of Lancelot and Guinevere.

There is such a charming brightness and freshness in the lines, that I must quote the passage :

diu senfte sûeze sumerzit	The soft and tender summer air
diu haete ir sûeze numûezekeit	Disturbed the summer idlesse there,
mit sûezem flîze an sî geleit.	And woke sweet industry, and fair.
diu kleinen wâltvôgelîn,	The little wood-birds singing clear,
diu des ôren fröude solen sîn,	It should be such a joy to hear,

bluomen, gras, loup unde bluot	Blossoms, grass, and leaves on trees,
und swaz dem ougen sanfte tuot	And what the eye may gently please,
und edele herze erfröuwen sol,	And joy to noble hearts may yield,
des was diu sumerouwe vol :	Of that was the summer-meadow filled.
man vant dâ, swaz man wolte,	All one wished was gathered then
daz der mēie bringen solte :	Of what the May-time brings to men :
den schate bi der sunnen,	Shade, when the sun would sting ;
die linden bi dem brunnen,	Lindens beside the spring ;
die senften linden winde,	And soft, sweet winds that sent
die Markes ingesinde	Where Mark's retainers went,
sîn wesen engegene macheten.	A fresh delight to meet them :
die liebten bluomen lacheten	And the bright buds laughed to greet them,
ûz dem betoûwêtem grase.	In the dewy grass that day ;
des meien friunt, der grüne wase,	And the green turf, the friend of May,
der haete ûz bluomen ane geleit	Wove from its own loveliness
sô wunneclichin sumerkleit,	So delightful a summer dress
daz sî den lieben gesten	That in the guests' glad eyes
in ir ougen widerglesten.	'Twas mirrored in fairer wise.
diu süeze boumbluot sach den man	The bloom of trees looked down on men
sô rehte suoze lachende an,	So openly, sweetly smiling then,
daz sich daz herze und al der muot	That heart and mind and senses lent
wider an die lachende bluot	The dancing blood their light content,
mit spilnden ougen machete	And forever made reply
und ir âllez wider lachete.	In the light of the merry eye.
daz senfte vogelgedoene,	All notes the birds repeat,—
das süézé, daz schoene,	So beautiful, so sweet,—
daz ôren unde muote	That unto heart and ear
vil dicke kumet ze guote,	So goodly 'tis to hear,

daz fulte dâ bere unde tal.	Rang there from hill and dale.
diu sâelige nahtegal,	And the blissful nightingale—
daz liebe sîeze vogelin,	The dear, sweet birdling she
daz iemer sîeze mueze sîn,	That ever sweet shall be,
daz kallete ûz der blûete	From out the blossoms trolled
mit solher übermûete,	So clear and over-bold,
daz dâ manc edele herze van	That many a noble heart that
	heard,
fröud' unde hohen muot gewan.	Took joy and hope from the
	happy bird.

I have not space to describe the wealth of picturesque incidents with which Gottfried has amplified the story. Tristan is brought up as the son of Rual in Brittany, is carried off by the Norwegians, shipwrecked on the coast of Cornwall, and becomes, as a boy, hunter and minstrel at the Court of King Mark. Rual wanders over the world to find him, comes finally to Tintigil and discloses his relationship to the king, after which there are many adventures before Iseult enters upon the scene. The last book describes Tristan's wooing of Iseult with the White Hands in Brittany. He sings at the Court of the old Duke Jovelin, her father, a passionate song with the refrain, in the French of that day :

“*Îsôt, ma drûe, Îsôt m'âmie,
en vûs ma mort, en vûs ma vie !*”

thinking in his heart only of Iseult of Ireland, while the ladies and knights imagine that he is celebrating her of the White Hands.

Among other quaint and curious episodes, the twenty-fifth book is taken up with the account of a little dog

named *Petiteriu*, which a fairy in Avalon had presented to Gilan, the Duke of Wales. The hair of the dog shimmered in all bright colors, and around its neck there was a bell, the sound of which banished all sorrow from the heart of him who heard it. Tristan wins *Petiteriu* from Duke Gilan, and sends him to Iseult, whose sorrow for her absent lover is instantly soothed when she hears the bell; but, remembering that Tristan is wandering alone and unconsolated, she takes the bell from the dog's neck and throws it into the sea.

I find no better specimen of Gottfried's narrative style than the passage where Tristan and Iseult accidentally drink the love-potion :

Nu man gelante in eine habe :
nu gie daz volc almeiste abe

durch banekie uz an daz lant ;

nu gienc ouch Tristant ze hant

begrüezen unde beschouwen
die liechten sine vrouwen.

Und als er zuozir nider gesaz,
unt redeten diz unde daz

von ir beider dingen,
er bat im trinken bringen.

Nune was dâ niemen inne
ân die küneginne,
wan kleiniu juncfröuwelîn ;
der einez sprach : " Seht, hie
stât wîn

Now they a harbor came unto,
Where nearly all the vessel's
crew

Went forth to land, on pastime
bent ;

And Tristan, also, straightway
went

To greet, with bliss o'erladen,
The brightness of the maiden.
And as he thus beside her sat,
And they had spoken of this and
that,

Of things concerning both,
Said he : " To drink I were not
loath."

Now was there no one there,
Beside the Princess fair,
But one small waiting-maid :

" The wine is here," she said,

in disem vāzzelīne."

Nein ! ezn was niht mit wine,
doch ez im geliche waere,

ez was diu waernde swaere,
diu endelôse herzenôt,

von der si beide lâgen tôt.
Nu was ab ir daz unrekant :
si stuont ûf unt gie hin ze hant,

dâ daz tranc und daz glas
verborgen unt behalten was.

Tristande, ir meister, bôt si daz ;

er bôt ^ÀIsôte vûrbaz :
si tranc ungerne und überlanc,

unt gap dô Tristand, unde er
tranc,

unt wânten beide, ez waere wûn.
Ie mitten gienc ouch Brangæn
în,

unde erkande daz glas,

unt sach wol, waz der rede was.

Si erschrac sô sêre unde erkam,
daz ez ir alle ir kraft benam,
unt wart reht als ein tôte var.

Mit tôtem herzen gie si dar :

si nam daz leide veige vaz,
si truog ez dannen unt warf daz

in den tobenden wilden sê.

"Owê mir armen," sprach se,
"owê !

" Within this flagon fine."

Ah, no ! It was not wine :
Though wine's hue it might bor-
row,

'Twas filled with coming sorrow,
With endless heart-pain brim-
ming high,

Whence both at last must die.

But she thereof was ignorant :
She rose, and straightway thith-
er went,

Innocent and unchidden,

Where glass and drink were hid-
den ;

Brought to Tristân, her master
brave,

Who first to Iseult gave.

She first refused, then drank and
laughed,

And gave to Tristân, and he
quaffed :

They both imagined, it was wine.
Then came Brangæne, saw the
shine

Of that bright flagon, knew it
well,

And did forbode the coming
spell.

So great her terror was, that she
Lost force and senses utterly,
And she became as are the
dead.

With deathly heart then forth
she sped,

That fatal flagon of all the world
Took with her, threw, and down-
ward hurled

Into the wild and raging sea.

" Ah, woe ! " she cried, " O, mis-
erable me !

daz ich zer werlde ie wart geborn!
 Ich arme, wie hân ich verlorn
 mîn êre unt mîne triuwe!
 Daz ez Got iemer riuwe,
 daz ich an dise reise ie kam,
 daz mich der tôt dô niht ennam,

dô ich an dise veige vart
 Mit Îsôte ie bescheiden wart!
 Owê Tristan unde Îsôt!

diz tranc ist iuwer beider tôt!"

Nu daz diu maget und der man,
 Îsôt unde Tristan,
 den tranc getrunken beide, sâ

was ouch der werlde unmuoze
 dâ,

Minne, aller herzen lâgerîn,

unt sleich zir beider herzen in.

Ê sis ie wurden gewar,
 dô stiez se ir sigevanen dar,

unt zôch si beide in ir gewalt:

si wurden ein und einvalt,

die zwei unt zwîvalt waren ê:

si zwei enwâren dô niht mê
 widerwertic under in:
 Îsôte haz, der was dô hin.
 Diu suonerinne Minne,
 diu haete ir beider sinne
 von hazze alsô gereinet,
 mit liebe alsô vereinet,

That ever to the world was born!
 O, wretched me, how am I shorn
 Of honor and fidelity!

Now God's great pity granted be,
 That ever I this journey made,—
 That death had not the purpose
 stayed,

Or ever on this voyage of woe
 With Iseult I should go!
 Iseult and Tristan — fatal
 draught!

'Tis woe and death to both that
 quaffed!"

Now that the maiden and the
 man,

Fair Iseult and Tristân,
 Both drank the drink, upon them
 pressed

What gives the world such sore
 unrest,—

Love, skilled in sly and prowling
 arts,

And swiftly crept in both their
 hearts:

So, ere of him they were aware,
 Stood his victorious banners
 there.

He drew them both into his
 power:

One and single were they that
 hour

That two and twofold were be-
 fore.

They twain were verily no more
 Opposèd thence, under his sway;
 For Iseult's hate had flown away.
 The troubled senses of the two
 Sweet Love, the Expiator, knew,
 Made clean of hate that blighted,
 Gave love that so united,

daz ietweder dem andern was
durhlûter als ein spigelglas.

Si haeten beide ein herze ;

ir swaere was sîn smerze,
sîn smerze was ir swaere ;
si waren beide ein baere
an liebe unde an leide,
unt hâlen sich doch beide,
unt tete daz zwîvel unde scham :
si schamte sich, er tete alsam ;

zi zwîvelte an im, er an ir.

That either to the other was
More crystal-clear than mirror-
glass.

Both had one heart between
them,

Her pain became his sorrow,
His sorrow was her pain ;
And both were fondly fain
Suffering to share, and bliss ;
Yet hid the sense of this
And felt both doubt and shame :
She was abashed, and he the
same ;

He doubted her, she doubted
him.

The clearness and purity of the language will make themselves felt, even by one who is only slightly familiar with the German of the Middle Ages. Of all the Minnesingers and courtly epic poets, I find that Gottfried and Walther von der Vogelweide offer the least difficulty to the modern reader,—for the same reason that Goldsmith's "Vicar of Wakefield" is the English book most easily read by a German: they combine elegance of style and the nicest choice of epithets with the greatest simplicity and fluency. To one already acquainted with German, the poets of the Middle Ages are more rapidly understood through the ear than through the eye, because the rules of spelling have been varied much more, during the last five or six hundred years, than those of pronunciation. The latter, in fact, still exists as a vulgar dialect, in the mountain regions of Central Germany. I have quoted,

purposely, the original text instead of the translations into Modern German, because I think a little attention will enable you to understand it nearly as well, and something of its peculiar racy flavor will always be felt, even when not entirely understood.

If you are familiar with Tennyson's poem of "The Last Tournament," in his "Idylls of the King," I beg you to notice the violence he has done to the original legend. He quite omits the episode of the magic love-potion, and presents Tristan and Iseult to us as a pair of common sinners. It is this very magic spell—the equivalent of the *Fate* of the Greek tragedies—which moves our deepest sympathies, and ennobles the two characters. Tristan cannot escape his devotion, in the legend; he is made faithful by a fatal spell; but Tennyson makes him sing: "Free love; free field; we love but while we may!"

Gottfried von Strasburg certainly possesses, in a very high degree, the talent of poetic narrative. We may tire of his interminable details, when reading several books of "*Tristan*" connectedly; but we may open the work anywhere, and we strike at once upon life, movement, brightness. The uniformity of the short iambic measure, which allows little variety of cadence, is not favorable to a long epic poem; but the authors of that age seem to have known only this measure and a rather rough alexandrine. The iambic pentameter appears in their lyrics, and moves with both sweetness and dig-

nity ; yet it never occurred to them to use it in narrative poetry.

I shall last notice him whom I consider the greatest of the courtly minstrels — Wolfram von Eschenbach. Although he was a noble, we know less of his personal history than of that of the peasant Walther. The date of his birth is unknown ; even the place is uncertain, although the village of Eschenbach, in Franconia—some fifty miles west of Nuremberg—has been fixed upon by most scholars. He was wholly uneducated—could not even read or write ;—the materials of his epics were read to him by others, and his own verses were dictated to scribes. He lived for many years at the court of the Landgraf Hermann of Thuringia, in the Wartburg, and after the latter's death is supposed to have been driven away by the severe piety of his son Ludwig and St. Elizabeth of Hungary. He died somewhere about the year 1230.

When, in reading Gottfried von Strasburg's "*Tristan*," I came upon the passage in the eighth book, where he speaks of Hartmann von Aue, how he "through and through colors and adorns a story, how clear and pure is the crystal current of his words,"—followed by a reference to Wolfram von Eschenbach, as "the inventor of all strange things, hunter of wild stories,"—I could not reconcile the unfriendly words with the place and fame of the two authors. There is no probability that they ever met, or some personal enmity of Gottfried

might explain the passage. But, after more carefully examining Wolfram von Eschenbach's epics, I am satisfied that the radical difference between the poetic constitutions of the two men, together with the despotism of conventional tastes in their day, furnish a sufficient explanation. If you take the two men—one blond, blue-eyed, joyous, graceful, sympathetic, and one dark, brooding, with deep-set, inscrutable eyes, irregular in his movements, abstracted and proud—and put them into garments of the same stuff and the same cut, you will have an illustration of the difference between Gottfried's "*Tristan*" and Wolfram's "*Parzival*." The change of spirit and atmosphere is so marked, that one need not be a critical scholar to feel it. I have quoted the opening lines of the former epic: now take the opening of "*Parzival*":

Ist zwîvel herzen nâhgebûr,
 daz muoz der sêle werden sûr?
 gesmaehet unde gezieret
 ist, swâ sich parrieret
 unverzaget mannes muot,
 als agelestern varwe tuot.
 der mac dennoch wesen geil,
 wand' an ime sint beidin teil
 des himeles und der helle.
 der unstaete geselle
 hât die swarzen varwe gar,
 und wirt och nâh der vinster var:
 sô habet sich an die blanken
 der mit staetén gedanken.

Is doubt a neighbor to the heart,
 That to the soul must be a smart?
 Disgrace and honor bide
 As equals, side by side,
 In the strong man and bold,
 Like magpie's hue twofold.
 Yet may he joyful be,
 When unto both sides free,
 To heaven and to hell.
 But when he's false and fell,
 Then black's his hue in verity.
 And near to darkness standeth
 he:
 So he who steadfast is, and
 right,
 Holds only to the color white.

diz fliegénde bîspel
 ist tumben liuten gar ze snel,
 sine mugen's niht erdenken ;

wand' ez kan vor in wenken

rehte alsam ein schelles hase.

This flying parable, I wis
 Too fast for silly people is ;
 They cannot come the meaning
 nigh,

Since it before their minds will
 fly,

Even as flies a frightened hare.

Here we feel, in the very first words, the presence of a metaphysical or rather psychological element: the sense is compact, and the lines move as if with a different step, although the measure is the same as in "*Tristan*." There are none of those sparkling epithets which entice us on from point to point; but, on the other hand, we feel the touch of a grave and lofty intelligence, to whom the thought is more than its external form. In Wolfram the poetic nature seems to move forward centuries, at a single stride; but the poetic art fails to keep pace with it. Even the language no longer seems the same: the construction is unnecessarily forced, uneven, and impresses us like a different dialect, until we perceive that it is only the dialect of an individual mind, our insight into which will furnish us the key.

The name is our English Percival, and the hero is that knight of Arthur's Round Table, who alone saw the Holy Grail, after the transfiguration of Sir Galahad which Tennyson describes in the second of his last volume of *Idylls*. A Provençal poem by Guiot, and the French legend of "*Chrétien de Troyes*" seem to have been Wolfram's chief authorities for the story; but he has

amplified and enriched it, not like Gottfried in "*Tristan*," for the delight of picturesque narrative, but with reference to the spiritual symbolism which pervades it. The search for the Holy Grail—the *San Graal*—the cup from which Christ drank at the last supper with his disciples, is one of the most mysteriously beautiful legends of the Middle Ages. Galahad, whom Tennyson has celebrated, is not mentioned by Wolfram. The story, as he tells it in "*Parzival*," is so rich in details, that I cannot take time to repeat them: the rudest outline must suffice.

The poem commences with the adventures of Gamuret of Anjou, the father of Parzival, who, after becoming King of Wales and Norway and marrying Queen Herzeleide, dies in Bagdad. The sorrowing Queen retires into the desert of Soltane, and brings up Parzival as a peasant-boy. When he grows up and sees the gay knights riding by, he begs leave to go out and seek adventures, and his mother finally consents, but puts on him a fool's cap and bells. After overcoming various knights, he reaches Arthur's court, but is not yet admitted to the Round Table. An old knight, named Gurnemanz, teaches him knightly manners, and sends him forth with the caution not to ask many questions. He rescues the Queen Condwiramur from King Clamide of Brandigan, marries her and becomes King of Brobarz. On his way to visit his mother, after these events, he comes to a castle beside a lake. The King,

with four hundred knights, sits at a table in a splendid hall, and all are fed by the miraculous power of the Holy Grail, which the Queen places upon the table. The King bleeds from a wound, and the knights are overcome with sorrow, but Parzival, who is most hospitably treated, asks no question. On leaving, he learns, too late, that he has been in Monsalvälſche, the castle of the Grail, and should have asked the King the cause of his wound. Soon after this, Arthur, who has heard of Parzival's wonderful exploits, leaves his capital of Carduel to seek him. After fighting, *incognito*, with several, he is recognized by Gawain, and becomes a member of the Round Table.

Several books are devoted to the adventures of both Parzival and Gawain, in their search for the Grail. Neither finds it, but both perform wonders of bravery, strength and self-denial. Toward the close, without any apparent reason for the preference given, or the sudden change of destiny, a sorceress announces to Parzival, at Arthur's table, that he has been chosen King of the Grail. He thereupon goes to the lost castle, heals the former King, by asking him the cause of his wound, and declares his son Lohengrin,—who afterward, as the Knight of the Swan, becomes the hero of a romantic legend,—King of Wales, Norway, Anjou and several other countries.

This is a very insufficient sketch of the story, but the episodes are so attached to each other, by the associated

fates of the different characters, that they cannot easily be separated. The author's peculiar genius is manifested in every part, and thus the work has a spiritual coherence which distinguishes it from all other epics of the age. Parzival is not a mere form of action—a doer of deeds, like Hartmann's *Erek*; or a heroic lover, like Gottfried's *Tristan*: he is a pure, noble, aspiring soul, and the Grail is to him the symbol of a loftier life. Many scholars, indeed, consider that he represents the life of the spirit, and Gawain the life of the world, and they have found a more pervading and elaborate allegorical character in the work than, I think, was ever intended by its author. But in regard to the tendency of his genius, we cannot be mistaken.

I must confess that the more I study the poem, the more I find a spiritual meaning shining through its lines. The perfect innocence and purity of Parzival, as a boy, are wonderfully drawn: the doubts of his age of manhood, the wasted years, the trouble and gloom which brood over him, suggest a large background of earnest thought; and, although the symbolism of the Holy Grail may not be entirely clear, it means at least this much—that peace of soul comes only through Faith and Obedience. Like Tennyson's Galahad, Wolfram seems to say, in *Parzival*:

“I muse on joy that will not cease,
Pure spaces clothed in living beams,
Pure lilies of eternal peace,
Whose odors haunt my dreams.”

To Wolfram von Eschenbach, the external shows of life were but disguises through which he sought to trace the action of the moral and spiritual forces which develop the human race. His psychological instincts were too profound for a simple tale of knightly adventure; he was not enough of a literary artist to arrange his conceptions of man's nature into a symmetrical form, and then to represent them completely through his characters; and thus we find, in "*Parzival*," a struggle between the two elements—between thought and language, between idea and action. This peculiarity is at first a disturbance to the reader, but it does not prevent him from feeling the latent, underlying unity of the work.

The parting of Queen Herzeleide from her son Parzival is one of the simpler passages, yet even here we find some of Wolfram's characteristic expressions:

Der knappe tump unde wert	The boy, silly yet brave indeed,
iesch von der muoter dicke ein pfert.	Oft from his mother begged a steed.
daz begünde se in ir herzen klagen.	That in her heart did she lament:
sie dâhte "i'n wil im niht versagen:	She thought: "him must I make content,
éz muoz âber vil boese sîn."	Yet must the thing an evil be."
do gedâhte mêr diu kûnegin,	Thereafter further pondered she:
"der liute vil bî spotte sint.	"The folk are prone to ridicule.
tôren kleider sol mîn kint	My child the garments of a fool
ob sîme lichten libe tragen.	Shall on his shining body wear.
wirt er geroufet unt geslagen,	If he be scoffed and beaten
	there,

sô kumet er mir her wider wol."	Perchance he'll come to me again."
ôwê der jaemerlîchen dol !	Ah, me, how wretched was her pain !
diu frouwe nam ein sactuoeh :	The dame a piece of sackcloth seeks,
sie sneit im hemedede unde bruoch,	And cuts therefrom a shirt and breeks,
daz doch an éime stücke er- schein,	That both in one they seem to be,
unz enmitten an sîn blankez bein.	And reach below to the white knee.
daz wart für tôren kleit erkant.	For a fool's dress known was that,
sîn gugel man obene drûfe vant.	And up above a pointed hat.
al frisch rûch kelberin	Then from a fresh, rough heifer's hide
von einer hût zwei riballin	Stuff for two shoes did she di- vide,
nâch sînen beinen wart gesniten.	And cut them so to fit his feet ;
dâ wart grôz jâmer niht vermiten.	And still her dole was great.
din kûnegin wâs alsô bedâht,	The Queen considered all aright,
sie bat beliben in die naht.	And bade him tarry over night.
"dune solt niht hinnen kêren,	"Hence not sooner shalt thou go,
ich wil dich list ê lêren.	Ere I to thee shall wisdom show.
an ungebanten strâzen,	Shun untraveled road :
soltu tûnkel fürte lâzen :	Leave dark ways untrode ;
die sihte unde lûter sîn,	If they are sure and fair,
dâ solte al balde rîten in.	Enter and journey there.
du solt dich site nieten,	Strive to be courteous then,
der werelde grûezen bieten.	Offer thy greeting to men.
op dich ein grâ wîse man	If thee a gray wise man
zuht wil lêrn als er wol kan,	Duty will teach, as well he can,
dem soltu gerne volgen,	Willingly follow his rede,
und wis im niht erbolgen.	And anger him not with deed.
sun, lâ dir bevolhen sîn,	Son, be advised this thing :
swa du gúotes wîbes vingerlîn	If thou a good dame's ring
mügest erwerben unt ir gruoze,	And her greeting may'st win to thee,
daz nim : ez tuot dir kumbers buoz.	Take : and thy troubles shall lighter be.

du solt z'ir kusse gahen	Hasten to kiss her face,
und ir lip vast' umbevâhen :	And to clasp her in firm em- brace ;
daz git gelücke und hôhen muot,	For, when she is good and pure,
op sie kiusche ist unde guot."	'Twill good luck and courage in- sure."

As a specimen of his descriptive style, I will quote some lines from the fifth book, where, in the magic castle of Monsalvâlsche, the Queen, *Repanse de Schoie*, brings the Holy Grail to the King's table :

Sie nigen. ir zwúo do truogen dar	They bowed. Then twain of them did bear
ûf die tavelen wol gevar	The silver to the tables fair
daz silber, unde leiten'z nider.	Full carefully, and there did place :
dô giengen sie mit zûhten wider	And they returned with modest grace
zuo den êrsten zwelven sân.	To the first twelve within the hall,
ob i 'z geprüevet rehte hân,	If I have rightly counted all,
hie sulen ahzéhen frouwen stên.	Must there now' eighteen ladies be.
âvoy nu siht man sehse gên	Behold ! six others next we see,
in waete die man tiure galt :	All clad in cloth men precious hold :
daz was halbez plîalt,	The stuff was half of silk and gold,
daz ander pfell' von Ninnivê.	Muslin of Nineveh the rest.
dise unt die êrsten sehse ê	These, and the first six, thus were drest
truogén zwelf röcke geteilet,	Alike in mantles two - fold wrought,
gein tiwerr kost geveilet.	And for a heavy treasure bought.

nâch den kom din kûnegîn.
 ir antlitze gap den schîn,
 sie wânden alle ez wolde tagen.
 man sach die maget an ir tragen
 pféllél von Arâbî.
 ûf einem grûenen achmardî
 truve sie den wunsch von pár-
 dîs,
 bêde wurzeln unde rîs.
 daz was ein dinc, daz hiez der
 Grâl,
 erden wunsches überwal.
 Repanse de schóyê sie hiez,
 die sich der grâl tragen liez.
 der grâl was von sôlher art :
 wol muose ir kiusche sîn be-
 wart,
 diu sîn ze rehte solde pflegen :
 diu muose valsches sich bewe-
 gen.
 Vóreme grâle kômen licht :
 diu wârn von armer koste niht ;
 sehs glas lanc lûter wol getân,
 dar inne balsam der wol bran.
 dô sie kômen von der tür
 ze rehter mâze alsus her für,

Now after them advanced the
 Queen,
 With countenance of so bright
 a sheen,
 They all imagined day would
 dawn.
 One saw, the maiden was clothed
 on
 With muslin stuffs of Araby.
 On a green silken cushion she
 The pearl of Paradise did bear,
 Complete,—root, branch, begin-
 ning, end,—
 The Grail it was, all-glorious,
 fair,
 Beyond perfection Earth can
 lend.
 Repanse de Schoie, so runs the
 tale,
 Was name of her that bore the
 Grail ;
 And so its nature did endure,
 That she who bore it must be
 pure,
 Of just and perfect heart, and
 strong
 To frighten falsehood, sin and
 wrong.
 Before the Grail there came a
 light,
 The worth whereof was nothing
 slight :
 Six cups of dazzling crystal held
 A burning oil that balm dis-
 pelled.
 Now when, in proper order,
 all,
 Entering, had traversed the high
 hall,

mit zûhten neic diu kûnegîn	The Queen bowed down with modest grace,
und al diu juncfrôuwelîn	And the six maidens bowed the face,
die dâ truogen balsemvaz.	Who bore the cups of burning balm.
diu kûnegîn vâlschêite laz	The blameless Queen, proud, pure and calm,
sazte fur den wirt den grâl.	Before the host put down the Grail ;
diz maere giht daz Parzivâl	And Percival, so runs the tale,
dicke an sie sach unt dâhte,	To gaze upon her did not fail,
diu den grâl dâ brâhte.	Who thither bore the Holy Grail.

I have chosen those passages which illustrate Wolfram's manner as a poet, especially as compared with Gottfried's. We have no means of estimating the influence of either upon his day and generation. Gottfried's allusion indicates that there were rival audiences as well as authors, and, since we find the critics divided now, we may well believe that there was greater diversity of opinion then. Wolfram's adherents would be among the thinkers, who were then rapidly increasing in number; Gottfried's among the men of refinement and education. The latter may be called the literary ancestor of Wieland; but Wolfram's lineal descendant, with a long line of generations between, was Goethe.

Neither of the other two epics of Wolfram—"Willehalm" and "Titurel"—was completed: the latter was barely begun, at the time of his death. The "Willehalm" celebrates the adventures of Wilhelm von Orange,

of Provence, the son of the Count of Narbonne, in his wars with the heathens. He undoubtedly followed a Provençal original in this, as in "*Parzival*," and was perhaps led to the theme by his admiration of Wilhelm's character. "*Titarel*" is an outgrowth from "*Parzival*": the same characters appear. It is written in a different metre, and shows, in the fragment which remains, a greater force and fluency of expression. Although the length of the last line interferes with the movement of the verses, it is easy to see how much more freely the author's thought carries itself, without losing anything of its subtlety and suggestiveness. I quote a few stanzas from the conversation of the two lovers, Schionatulander and Sigune:

Sigune says:

" Ich weiz wol, du bist lands unt liute grôziu frouwe;	" I know full well that thou of lands and people art the Queen;
des enger ich alles niht, wan daz dîn herze dur dîn ouge schouwe,	I seek not that, so through thine eyes thy heart be seen,
alsô daz ez den kumber mîn be- denke:	So that it doth perceive my weight of sorrow;
nu hilf mir schiere, ê daz dîn minn mîn herze und die fröude verkrenke."	Then help me now, ere heart and love a deeper trouble borrow!

The Queen answers:

" Swersô minne hât, daz sîn minne ist gevaere	" If one hath such a love that danger therein be,
deheime als lieben friunde, als du mir bist, daz wort unge- baere	The unfitting word, to friend so dear as thou to me,

wirt von mir nimêr benennet minne :	I ne'er will name with name of love or lover :
Got weiz wol, daz ich nie bekan- de minnen flust, noch ir ge- winne.	For, knoweth God, love's loss or gain I never did discover.
“Minne, ist daz ein Er? maht du minn mir diuten?	“For love, is it a He? Canst give solution just?
Ist daz ein Sie? Komet mir minn, wie sol ich minne getriuten?	Is it a She? So come it, how shall I dare trust?
Muoz ich sie behalten bi den tocken?	Must love with dolls be left, and childish rapture?
Od fliuget minne ungerne ûf hant durh die wilde? ich kan minn wol locken.”	Or flieth it out of hand in the woods? I surely can recap- ture.”

Here you will notice, not only the expression of the feeling, but also the tendency to speculate upon its nature, which is a peculiarity of Wolfram von Eschenbach. It is not too much to say that he was the only profound thinker among the German authors of the Middle Ages.

Wolfram takes the same delight in many-syllabled geographic names, as Milton; and there are many of his lines which ring with the same half-barbaric music as the latter's “Aspramont and Montalban.” He is an unlettered minstrel, with great qualities in the rough; a man of high aims and noble aspirations, struggling with insurmountable limitations, and missing real greatness on account of them. In Gottfried's case, we have everything but the original quality of intellect; but Wolfram, having that, misses the clear and harmonious form which must be added, chiefly through the want of the

culture which Gottfried possessed. Could the two have been united in one individual, Germany would have had her great mediæval poet, the equal of Dante.

But the epithet *great* must be denied to this courtly literature. The influence of the church and of classic learning, though greatly weakened, was still too powerful to permit a positive departure from previous paths of thought. The new wine was poured into old bottles, but it was not quite strong enough to burst them. So, these epics remain as priceless illustrations of the growth of the German mind during the Middle Ages, of the long fermentation which clarified into purity and flavor centuries afterward, not immortal in their own solitary right, but from the circumstances out of which they grew. Add to them the lyric poetry of the Minnesingers, and we are astonished at the productiveness of the age. From this point we must date the commencement of a national culture; for much of the great work of Charlemagne had been undone in the three centuries between him and the Hohenstaufens. If the literature of the latter period failed of its immediate and full effect, through the re-intervention of political and ecclesiastical causes, it was none the less a basis of achievement upon which the race thenceforth stood; and if we could read the secrets of History, we should perhaps find that the harp preserved for Germany a better possession than was lost to her by the sword.

IV.

THE NIBELUNGENLIED.

WE now come to that other literary element of the Middle Ages, which is of earlier origin than the courtly epics, but which only assumed its present form about the time when they were produced. I have called it the epic poetry of the People, because, more than anything else in the literature of the human race—not even excepting the “Iliad” and the “Odyssey”—it has the character of a growth rather than a composition. We may guess when its growth began; we can very nearly determine the time when that growth ended; but there our knowledge stops. By whom, or under what circumstances, the first legends came into being,—how they were kept alive, increased, transformed with each generation—who took the rude, shapeless, separated parts, and united them in one grand, coherent form,—are questions which cannot be positively answered.

The more carefully we study the “*Nibelungenlied*” and its history, the more we are impressed with its exceptional character. Unnoticed in the records of the ages; ignored, perhaps contemptuously disparaged by the minstrelsy of the courts; kept alive only through the inherited fondness of the masses for their old tra-

ditions, it has been almost miraculously preserved to us, to be now appreciated as the only strong, original creation of the youth of the German race.

The fact that we find in the "*Nibelungenlied*" traces of the ancient mythology, with various incidents which are given in the earliest prose Edda of the Scandinavians, together with characters taken from the most stirring history of the *Völkerwanderung*, or Migration of the Races, proves the antiquity of the material. But the anachronism of making Theodoric the Great, the Gothic King of Italy, and Attila, King of the Huns, contemporaries, also gives us a clue to the probable time when the two elements began to be fused together. Attila died in 453, and Theodoric in 526. The uneducated mass of people would soon forget dates, and confuse the events of former generations; but some little time must be allowed to elapse before this could take place. The "oldest inhabitants" must first die, before the united legends could be publicly recited without their accuracy being disputed by some grey-haired listener. We can hardly assume that the first blending of the different elements took place before the year 600, or much later than a century afterward. It is most probable that the collection made by Charlemagne included all that was in existence in his day; but, that collection being lost, we are left without any record of the growth or changing character of the legend, until the tenth century.

First of all, I must recall to your memory the features of the migration of the tribes. The commencement of this remarkable historical episode is usually fixed about the year 375, in which year the Huns, coming from Central Asia, and first overcoming the Alans, between the Volga and the Don, broke up the ancient kingdom of the Goths, and started them on their wanderings westward. The Ostrogoths had up to that time possessed the country between the Don and the Dniester, in Southern Russia, and the Visigoths, all the region north of the Danube, as far westward as the river Theiss, in Hungary. Gradually pressing westward, and driving the other tribes, including the original Germanic races, before them, the Huns, then under Attila, were finally arrested by the great battle near Chalons-sur-Marne, where they were defeated by the Romans under Aëtius and the Visigoths under Theodoric I. This was in the year 451, and two years later Attila died. The Visigoths, under Alaric, had already invaded Italy in 402, but ten years later they passed through Southern Gaul into Spain. The Ostrogoths, on the contrary, did not reach Italy until 488, under Theodoric the Great, who made Verona his capital, and is therefore called, in the German legends Dietrich von Bern. After Theodoric's death, the kingdom existed for a few years, but finally ceased about 554, and the Gothic blood mixed itself with that of the Lombards, the Helvetians and the Germans, losing all distinctive national character.

The Burgundians, who were a Germanic race, inhabiting the region between the Vistula and the Oder, in Prussia, were also driven to west and south in the general movement, and first settled, eighty thousand men strong, in Gaul, between Geneva and Lyons. Here they became Arian Christians in the space of eight days, seven days being allowed for conversion and one for baptism. Sidonius Apollinarius describes them as men from six to seven feet high, clothed in the skins of beasts, and valuing their freedom as the highest possession. When Attila entered Gaul in 451, the Burgundian King Gundicar (supposed to be the Gunther of the "*Nibelungenlied*") opposed his march with ten thousand warriors, but all were slain after a long and heroic defense. The tribe finally moved northward, and occupied the country from the Rhine westward, including the present French province of Burgundy.

This is all of the great migratory movement which we require to know, in reading the "*Nibelungenlied*;" the other elements embodied in it are either taken from the same source as the older Scandinavian Edda, or were added as the story was transmitted from mouth to mouth for centuries. Lachmann, who devoted a great deal of labor to the examination of the existing manuscripts and their chronological character, as derived from the language, has fixed upon twenty lays, or separate chapters of the poem, as being of an ancient origin; the remaining nineteen he considers as addi-

tions made about the close of the twelfth century, for the purpose of uniting the whole into one consistent story. He states that there were two, if not more, attempts to perform this difficult task, without counting the previous changes which he thinks the original lays must have undergone in the course of several centuries. About one hundred and eighty years after the close of this mediæval period of German literature, printing was invented, and one of the earliest native works which was transferred from manuscript to type was Wolfram von Eschenbach's "*Parzival*." The "*Nibelungenlied*" seems to have been already forgotten by the people; and not until the year 1751 was a part of it published by Bodmer, in Zurich, under the title of "Chriemhild's Revenge." The first complete republication of the entire epic was made by Müller in 1782. Afterward, Lachmann and the Brothers Grimm made careful comparisons of the three complete manuscripts, and it now appears to be settled that the oldest is that of Munich, the next that of St. Gall—although there are but a few years' difference between them, either way—and the latest, that belonging to Baron von Lassberg. This last is the most complete, but appears to be the least authentic. The Munich manuscript is generally attributed to the great unknown, who conceived the idea of creating an epic unity out of the scattered material,—an idea which he carried out with wonderful power and skill, and so nearly achieved the highest

success that we wonder how he should have fallen short of it.

Since Lachmann, however, other scholars have taken up the study of the poem with the fresher and keener knowledge of our day. Zarneke, Bartsch, and last of all, Hermann Fischer, have applied to it the tests of philological and metrical criticism; and the chief result is that the belief which was so long entertained—which suggested to the Greek scholar Wolff his celebrated Homeric theory—that it was the production of many authors, combined and thrown into a symmetrical form by some poetic editor, has been generally given up. It is now admitted that the greater portion of the poem was the work of one author, who took the chief incidents of the story from a version of the popular legend, written by order of Bishop Pilgrim of Passau, somewhere about the year 980. The time when the "*Nibelungenlied*," in its present form, was written, has also been approximately fixed. It could not have been earlier than 1130, nor later than 1180: thus it precedes the romantic epics by a few years.

One of the early Minnesingers, who was called "the Kürenberger," has left behind him fifteen detached stanzas, written in the measure of the "*Nibelungenlied*." It is conjectured that he was either Magnus or Konrad von Kürenberg, who were natives of Upper Austria, and the German critics incline more and more to the belief that we must accept him as the great poet of the Middle

Ages, hitherto unknown. Fischer asserts that the "*Nibelungenlied*" was either originally written, or carefully revised and polished, about the year 1170, and that it was intended to be recited at courts, and heard by noble auditors. It is quite certain that between the years 1190 and 1200, the poem was reproduced in two different copies, one of which, called the "*Vulgata*," addressed itself to the common people. The aristocratic version had but a short life, if indeed any life: the taste of courts preferred the epics based on the Arthurian legends. But the people gratefully accepted and cherished their version, and for one hundred and fifty years the few fragments of their poetry which survive, betray its influence.

If you remember the bareness and bluntness of the "*Hildebrandslied*"—the simple means by which strong effects are produced—you will understand the original character of the "*Nibelungenlied*," which is still preserved through all the changes of language. But with this simplicity of diction, it is richer in incident than the "*Iliad*." The stage is crowded with characters; for the union of three legendary cycles in one work, which shall combine the best features of all, has resulted in a condensation which excludes the prolific description and sentiment of the courtly epics. There are not quite 10,000 lines, instead of the 20,000 of Gottfried or Hartmann. Certain forms of expression are repeated, as in their poems, but the action varies with each *Aventiure*,

or adventure, of the thirty-nine, and the poem closes as abruptly as it begins. Carlyle says, with entire truth: "The unknown singer of the '*Nibelungen*,' though no Shakespeare, must have had a deep poetic soul. . . . His poem, unlike so many old and new pretenders to that name, has a basis and an organic structure, a beginning, middle and end; there is one great principle and idea set forth in it, round which all its multifarious parts combine in living union. Remarkable it is, moreover, how along with this essence and primary condition of all poetic virtue, the minor external virtues of what we call taste, and so forth, are, as it were, presupposed: and the living soul of Poetry being there, its body of incidents, its garment of language, come of their own accord."

Now let us take up the "*Nibelungenlied*," in the form it wore, at the end of the twelfth century. It may be so easily read, that I have never been able to see the necessity of the translations into modern German. This is the opening stanza:

Uns ist in alten maeren wun-	We find in ancient story won-
ders vil geseit	ders many told,
von heleden lobebaeren, von	Of heroes of great glory, of
grôzer arebeit,	spirit strong and bold;
von frôuden, hôchgeziten, von	Of joyances and high-tides, of
weinen und von klagen;	weeping and of woe,
von küener recken strîten mu-	Of strife of gallant fighters,
get ir nu wunder hoeren	mote ye now many wonders
sagen.	know.

You will notice that the measure is peculiar. Each

line is divided by a cæsural pause so marked that there is a space left between the words to indicate it. The first half of the line has three iambic feet, with a redundant syllable; the latter half three feet, except in the closing line of the stanza, where it occasionally has four. The measure varies in effect, sometimes bold and strong, with a fine irregularity of movement, sometimes sweet and musical, but frequently rough and halting, and it requires some familiarity before it adjusts itself to the ear. Yet how near it came to a noble rhythmical form may be seen from those ballads of Uhland, wherein he has taken the same metrical principle, and simply given it regularity. Take the opening of his historical Suabian ballads, for instance:

“Ist denn im Schwabenlande verschollen aller Sang,” etc.

Are then the Suabian valleys, by sounds of song unstirred,
Where once so clear on Staufen the knightly harp was heard,
And why, if Song yet liveth, proclaim not now its chords
The deeds of hero-fathers, the clash of ancient swords?

Or take the opening of Macaulay’s “Horatius,” throw two lines into one, and you have the same measure:

“Lars Porsena of Clusium, by the nine gods he swore
That the great house of Tarquin should suffer wrong no more.”

The second stanza of the “*Nibelungen*” is:

Ez wuohs in Búrgónden ein vil	There once was in Burgundy a
édel magedin,	maid of high degree,
daz in allen landen niht schoe-	That in all lands and countries
ners mohte sîn,	no fairer might there be ;

Kriemhilt geheizen: si wart ein	A lovely woman was she,
scoene wip.	Chriemhild was she hight,
dar umbe muosen degene vil	For her sake many swordsmen
verliesén den lip.	must lose their lives in fight.

Thus simply the theme opens. Chriemhild the fair and Brunhild the dark are the heroines; Siegfried the Strong, Gunther and Hagen, Attila and Theodoric the heroes. The sagas of the Niblungs and the gods Odin and Loki, the marches of the Huns and Goths, magic and human passion, love and hate, are now mixed together in a wild, fierce and fateful story, which yet does not soar so high as to lose its hold on the general sympathies of men.

At the same time with the fair Burgundian maiden, lived in the Netherlands Siegfried, the son of King Siegemund and Queen Siegelinde. He is synonymous with the Sigurd of Scandinavian saga, the fair, strong young knight who overcomes men, giants and dragons. When he has reached the proper age, Siegfried is knighted; then, refusing to accept his father's sceptre, he goes to Worms, where Chriemhild lives under the care of her three brothers, Gunther, Gernot and Geiselher. He does not see the famous beauty until after he has conquered the Saxons and Danes, and brought the Danish King Lindegast captive to Worms: then he is presented to her, she thanks him, and he is permitted to give her a kiss. He asks Gunther for her hand, which is promised to him on condition that he will accompany

the latter to Iceland and assist him in his wooing of Queen Brunhild. Gunther's uncle, Hagen, who afterward becomes the evil genius of the story, and the knight Dankwart accompany them. The enterprise would have failed had not Siegfried possessed a *tarn-kappe*, or cap which rendered the wearer invisible, and the sword Balmung of marvelous power. Besides, he had bathed in the fat of a dragon which he had slain, and was invulnerable except in a small spot, between the shoulders, where a linden-leaf had fallen upon him as he bathed.

The amazon Brunhild fights with Gunther, but is really vanquished by the invisible Siegfried. The latter then steers to the land of the Niblungs, takes possession of a great treasure, or hoard, which he had previously won in a fight with giants, and returns to Iceland with a thousand of the Nibelungen warriors, as Gunther's escort when he carries Brunhild to Worms. When the two are married, Siegfried also receives the hand of Chriemhild. He assists Gunther again in overcoming the magical strength of Brunhild, and gives the amazon's girdle and ring to his wife, together with the "*Nibelungenhort*." To this treasure a curse is attached, and an evil fate follows its possessor.

Siegfried and Chriemhild rule for ten years as King and Queen of the Netherlands; then, with a large retinue of Nibelungen warriors, they pay a visit to Worms, at the invitation of King Gunther. After the first splen-

did festivities, a strife for precedence arises between Chriemhild and Brunhild: the two queens meet at the door of the cathedral, and each insists on entering first. Brunhild claims that Siegfried is Gunther's vassal; Chriemhild retorts by asserting that Siegfried, not Gunther, overcame her rival in Iceland, and produces the ring and the girdle in proof. The two kings, who are summoned by their wives, endeavor to compose the quarrel; but the uncle Hagen goes secretly to Brunhild, and promises to revenge her. Externally there is peace again, but the elements of ruin are at work. Hagen now goes to Chriemhild, professes to be a friend, and offers to watch over Siegfried, in case Brunhild should attempt any secret revenge. Chriemhild is deceived by the old traitor: she tells him of the vulnerable spot on Siegfried's back, where the linden-leaf lay, and even braids an ornament over the spot on his mantle, so that Hagen may know where to ward off a blow.

The catastrophe instantly follows. Siegfried is taken out to hunt by Gunther and Hagen, and in a moment of the gayest peace and confidence is treacherously slain. But Chriemhild's woes are not yet at an end: Siegfried's father returns in haste to his own land: Gunther persuades his sister to bring the "*Nibelungenhort*" to Worms, which is no sooner done than he seizes it by force, and its attending curse is thus transferred to his own house. It is not long before the three brothers, Gunther, Gernot and Geiselher, begin to quarrel about

the treasure, and finally Hagen sinks it in the Rhine, making each take an oath that he will not reveal the spot while either of the others is alive.

In the meantime the count Rüdiger comes to Worms to solicit Chriemhild's hand for Attila. She hesitates, until Rüdiger hints that she may in this way obtain her revenge for Siegfried's death; then, taking her brothers Gernot and Geiselher, she sets out for the Danube, reaches the land of the Huns, and is married to Attila. The account of the wedding in Vienna, of their life in Attila's castle, and Chriemhild's wise government are minutely described in the poem. She has a son who is named Ortlieb, she possesses the entire love and confidence of Attila, she is renowned among the Huns and in foreign lands, but the dream of vengeance never fades from her mind. Night and day she plans how to get possession of her uncle Hagen, her brother Gunther, and the Nibelungen treasure. Finally, in the thirteenth year of her marriage, she persuades Attila to send two minstrels to Burgundy, and invite the whole court to a grand high-tide, or festival, in the land of the Huns.

Hagen foresees danger, and counsels against accepting the invitation, but he is overruled. I must here explain that the Burgundians, after obtaining the treasure and its *Niblung* guardians, are thenceforth called "*Nibelungen*," and the poem, from this point to the end, was called the "*Nibelungennoth*"—need, extremity, or fate. The journey to the Danube, the crossing of that river

and the arrival of the Nibelungen at Attila's Court, are described in detail, with great spirit and picturesqueness. It is evident that the last author is on familiar ground: he mentions places which retain nearly the same names at the present day. As the march advances, the omens increase; even Theodoric appears and warns the Nibelungen of their coming danger. Hagen, whose part in these final lays is compared by some of the German critics to that of Cassandra in the "Iliad," now becomes grand in spite of his treachery. His fidelity to his friend Volker, the minstrel, his courage, his desperate bravery, his unshaken attitude of heroism, lift him beside Chriemhild into a splendid tragical prominence, beside which the other characters—Guntler, Attila, Theodoric and Hildebrand—sink into comparative indistinctness. Rüdiger, only, rises into prominence toward the close, as a man of singular honor and nobility of nature. But Hagen towers above all, grimmer and grander than Macbeth, in his defiance of the coming doom.

Attila, who knows nothing of Chriemhild's plans of vengeance, receives the Nibelungen kindly, and sleeps innocently during the night when her armed Huns are waiting the opportunity for murder, of which they are deprived by Hagen's watchfulness. In the morning, when the guests are dressing for mass in the cathedral, Hagen tells them: "Ye must take other garments, ye swordsmen, hauberks instead of silk shirts,

shields instead of mantles ; and now, my masters dear, squires and men likewise, ye shall most earnestly go to church, and lay before the high God your sorrow and your dire extremity ; for verily death is nigh unto us." At the royal feast in Attila's hall, the strife, instigated by Chriemhild, commences, and Hagen first strikes off the head of her son, Ortlieb. Then swords are drawn and murder is loose. Theodoric, with a mighty voice, attempts to stop the fray, but in vain ; then he, Attila and Chriemhild withdraw. From this point to the end all is movement and passion ; every incident is illuminated as by a fierce crimson light. No mere outline can do it the least justice. The Huns press into the hall, and all night there is naught but carnage, fire and the terrible noise of fighting. At last all are slain but Hagen and Gunther, both sorely wounded. They are bound by Theodoric, whose warriors, except Hildebrand, have shared the common fate, and are then brought before Chriemhild, who demands to know where they have sunk the "*Nibelungenhort*." Hagen answers that he cannot tell while Gunther lives. The latter is instantly slain, and then the fierce old uncle says : "Now none knoweth of the hoard but God and I, and from thee, she-devil, shall it be forever hidden!" Thereupon Chriemhild seizes his own sword—the famous sword Balmung, which had once belonged to Siegfried—and strikes off his head. Attila laments his fate, but Hildebrand—the hero of the "*Hildebrandslied*"—slays the avenging

Chriemhild, and the poem closes, after this terrible night of slaughter, with these stanzas :

Hildebrant mit zorne zuo Kriemhilde spranc, er sluoc der Küneginne einen swaëren swertes swanc.	Then Hildebrand in fury to Chriemhild did go, And struck the queen with fal- chion a sore and heavy blow ;
jâ tet ir diu sorge von Hilde- brande wê, waz mohte si gehelfen daz si sô grüzlichen scrê?	Of Hildebrand her terror was more than she could hide, But nothing did it help her that there so miserably she cried.
Dô was gelegen aller dâ der reigen lîp. ze stücken was gehouwen dô daz edele wîp. Dietrich und Etzel weinen dô began :	Now slain were all that should be, they lay withouten life, And she was hewn to pieces, and dead, that royal wife ; Theodoric and Attila a weeping then began ;
si klageten innecliche beidin mâge unde man.	Sore was the lamentation of maiden and of man.
Diu vil michel êre was dâ gele- gen tôt.	Ah, how much was the splen- dor which there lay dead and cold !
die liute heten alle jâmer unde nôt. mit leide was verendet des Kû- niges hôhgezît, als je diu liebe leide z'aller jûngîste gît.	And fell on all the people dis- tress and woe untold ; In sorrow thus was ended the high-tide of the King, As after joy comes always some sad and cruel thing.
I'ne kan iu niht bescheiden, waz sider dâ geschach : wan ritter unde vrouwen wei- nen man dâ sach, dar zuo die edelen knechte, ir lieben friunde tôt.	I cannot tell you further what happened of the tale, Except that knights and ladies were seen to weep and wail, And eke the gallant swords- man, whose dearest friends lay low.
hie hât daz maere ein ende : daz ist der Nibelunge nôt.	And here the story endeth : this is the Nibelungen woe.

Even from the very brief sketches of the courtly epics which I have given, you will be able to recognize how strongly the "*Nibelungenlied*" contrasts with them in plan, character and expression. The strong, large features of the old legends, both Gothic and Scandinavian, still look upon us from its lines; something of the rudeness, but also the power, of the early Bardic songs is felt in its measures; the Christian faith has been added, it is true, but without changing in any way the pagan virtues and vices of the original characters. Siegfried and Hagen are made of other flesh and blood than the love-stricken Tristan or the pure-souled Parzival. There are no fair descriptions of nature, no expressions of sentiment or emotion beyond the most necessary utterances. When Siegfried is treacherously slain, he only says: "I lament nothing upon the earth except Frau Chriemhild, my wife." "In poetry," says a critic, "the rude man requires only to see something going on; the man of a more refined nature wishes to feel; while the man of the highest culture asks that he shall be made to reflect." The "*Nibelungenlied*" fulfills the first of these conditions to the utmost: there is action, much of it of the most tremendous character, from beginning to end; and the stage, vast as it is, is always crowded with persons. But the second condition is not entirely neglected in the poem, as we now have it. The genius who moulded all its alien elements into such a grand unity may very well have added those slight, almost uncon-

scious touches which constantly appeal to our sympathy. Indeed the latter effect is most frequently produced where it is not planned beforehand, as we have seen in Hildebrand's words to his son Hadubrand, before they fight.

The action of the thirty-nine *Aventiures* is so continuous and so rich in details, that it is somewhat difficult to find brief illustrative passages. We must be satisfied with three specimens, not better than many others in the poem, but more easily detached from the context: the first is the meeting of Chriemhild and Siegfried, after the latter has defeated the Saxons and Danes:

Dô hiez der kûnec rîche mit	Then ordered for his sister the
sîner swester gân,	King so rich and proud,
die ir dienen solden, wol hun-	A hundred men of battle unto
dert sîner man,	her service vowed,
ir und sîner mâge : die truogen	For her and for her mother, a
swert enhant.	sword in every hand :
daz was daz hovegesinde vôn	Such were the royal servants in
der Bûrgônden lant.	the Burgundian land.

Nu gie diu minneclîche alsô	There came the fair and lova-
der morgenrôt	ble as comes the morning-
	glow
tuot ûz den trûeben wolken. dâ	From clouds that would obscure
sciet von maneger nôt	it. And gone was many a
	woe
der se dâ truog in herzen und	From him who in his bosom
lange het getân :	had yearned for her so long :
er sach die minneclîchen nu	He saw her stand before him
vil hêrlichen stân.	in beauty bright and strong.

Jâ lûhte ir von ir waete | vil
manec edel stein :
ir rôsenrôtiu varwe | vil min-
neelichen seîn.
ob iemen wûnschen solde, | der
kunde niht gejeihen
daz er ze dirre werelde | hete
iht scoeners gesehen.

Upon her garment sparkled |
full many a jewel-stone ;
Her rosiness of color | like
purest love-light shone.
Whatever one might hope for,
| yet now he must confess
That here on Earth could noth-
ing | surpass her loveliness.

Sam der liechte mâne | vor den
sternen stât,
des scîn sô lûterliche | ab den
wolken gât,
dem stuont si nu geliche | vor
maneger frouwen guot.
des wart dâ wol gehoehet | den
zieren heleden der muot.

Even as the shining full-moon
| comes out before the
stars,
So pure in powerful lustre | it
melts the cloudy bars,
So verily she in beauty | before
all ladies there :
And all the gay young heroes |
were proud to see her fair.

Die richen kameraere | sah man
vor in gân.
die hôhgemuoten degene | die 'n
wolden daz niht lân,
sine drungen dâ sie sâhen | die
minneelichen meit.
Sivride dem herren | wart beide
lieb ûnde leit.

Court-servants made a passage,
| in glittering array,
The strong, courageous swords-
men | followed upon her
way ;
And ever pressed and crowded
| to see the maiden go.
Now this was unto Siegfried | a
joy and yet a woe.

Erdâhte in sinem muote : | “ wie
kunde daz ergân

Within his thought he ponder-
ed : | “ How thought I, I was
fain

daz ich dich minnen solde ? | daz
ist ein tumber wân.
sol aber ich dich vremeden, | sô
waere ich sanfter tôt.”
er wart von den gedanken | vil
dicke bleich unde rôt.

With love of man to woo thee ?
| It is a fancy vain :
And yet, should I avoid thee, | so
were I earlier dead.”
He grew, while thus a-thinking,
| oft pale, and then how
often red !

Dô stuont sô minneclîche daz	They saw the son of Sieglind,
Sigemundes kint,	lover-like standing there,
sam er entworfen waere an ein	As if he had been painted, on
pérmiât	parchment clear and fair,
von guotes meisters listen, als	By hand of some good master :
man ime jach,	'twas pleasant him to see,
daz man helt deheinen nie sô	For none so grand a hero be-
scóenén gesach.	held before as he.

Dô sprach von Burgonden der	Then swiftly spake Lord Ger-
herre Gêrnôt :	not, of the Burgundian
	land :

“ der iu sînen dienest sô gûet-	“ To him who did us service
lichen bôt, .	with such a mighty hand,
Gunthér, vil lieber bruoder,	To him, dear brother Gunther,
dem sult ir tuon alsam	now offer fitting pay
vor allen disen recken : des râts	In presence of the warriors :
ich nimmer mich gescam.	no man will scorn my say.

“ Ir heizet Sivrêden zuo mîner	“ Summon straightway Siegfried
swester kumen,	unto our sister pure,
daz in diu maget grueze : des	That so the maiden greet him :
habe wir immer frumen.	'twill bring us luck, be
	sure !

diu nie gegruozte recken, diu	She who never greeted heroes
sol in grûezen pflegen :	shall grace to him award,
dâ mite wir haben gewonnen	And thereby we shall win us
den vil zierlichen degen.”	the service of his sword.”

Dô giengen 's wirtes mâge dâ	The King's friends, then ad-
man den helt vant.	vancing where the hero
	still did stand,

si sprachen zuo dem recken	Spake to the mighty warrior
ûzer Niderlant :	from out the Netherland :

“ iu hât der kûnec erloubet, ir	“ The King's will hath permitted
sult ze hove gân,	that you to court repair ;
sîn swester sol iuch grûezen :	His sister there shall greet you :
daz ist zen êren iu getân.”	this honor shall be your
	share.”

Der herre in sinem muote | was
des vil gemeit.

dô truog er ime herzen | lieb
âne leit,

daz er sehen solte | der scoenen
Uoten kint.

mit minneclîchen tugenden | si
gruozte Sîvriden sint.

Dô si den hôhgemuoten | vor ir
stênde sach,

do erzunde sich sîn varwe. | diu
scoene magt sprach :

“sît willekomen, her Sîvrit, | ein
edel ritter guot.”

dô wart im von dem gruoze | vil
wol gehoéhét der muot.

Er neig ir flîzeclîche ; | bî der
hênde si in vie.

wie rehte minneclîche | er bî der
frouwen gie !

mit lieben ougen blicken | ein
ander sahen an

der herre und ouch diu frouwe :
| daz wart vil tougenlich
getân.

Wart iht dâ friwentlîche | get-
wungen wîziu hant,
von herzen lieber minne, | daz
ist mir niht bekant.

The hero, gentle-hearted, | re-
joiced to hear the word ;

Love, free of doubt or torment,
| in all his senses stirred,

With hope that Ute's daughter,
| the fair one, he should
see :

And she with gentle glances |
received Siegfried full cour-
teously.

But when before her standing |
she saw him bold and
proud,

Like flame her color kindled :
| the Fair One spake aloud :

“Be welcome here, Sir Siegfried,
| a noble knight and true !”

And he from such a greeting | a
higher courage drew.

He bowed to her full gently, | to
thank her for her rede,

Then drew them towards each
other | love's yearning and
its need ;

With eyes that shone more
fondly | each then the other
spied,

The hero and the maiden : | that
glance they strove to hide.

If then some softer pressure |
on her white hand might be,
Love's first and heart-sweet
token— | it is unknown to
me.

doch enkan ich niht gelouben	But yet believe I cannot that
daz ez wurde lân :	they did not do so ;
si het im holden willen kunt	For hearts of love desirous
vil sciére getân.	were wrong to let it go.

Bî der sumerzîte und gein des	In the days of summer and in
meijen tagen	the time of May,
dorft er in sime herzen nim-	He never in his bosom again
mer mêr getragen	might bear away
sô vil der hôhen vreude denn'	So much of highest rapture
er dâ gewan,	as in that hour he knew,
dô im diu gie enhende die er ze	Seeing her walk beside him,
trûte wolde hân.	whom he so wished to woo.

Do gedahte manec recke : "hey	Then thought many a swordsm-
waer' mir sam gesechen,	man : — "Ha ! if I were
	but thou
daz ich ir gienghe enhende, sam	And I could walk beside her
ich in hân gesehen,	as I see thee now,
oder bi ze ligene ! daz liez' ich	Or, perhaps, embrace her— I
âne haz."	were ready, sure !"
ez gedîente noch nie recke nach	Never served a swordsman
einer kûneginne baz.	queen so good and pure.

Von swelher kûnege lande die	And from whatever country a
geste kômen dar,	guest was present there,
die nâmen al gelîche niwan ir	In the high hall was nothing
zweier war.	he looked on but this pair.
ir wart erloubet kûssen den	To her it was permitted the
waetlichen man :	gallant man to kiss :
im wart in dirre werlde nie	In all his life he never knew
sô liebê getân.	aught so dear as this.

Der Kûnec von Tenemarke	Began the King of Denmark,
der sprach sâ zestunt :	and these the words he
	spake :
" diss vil hôhen gruozes lît man-	" Sure, such a noble greeting
eger ungesunt,	here many a wound doth
	make ;

des ich vil wol enpfinde, von Sivrides hant.	As I around me notice, and all from Siegfried's hand :
got enlâze in nimmer mêre komen in miniu kûnges lant."	God grant he never travel into my Danish land."

The whole chapter entitled "How Siegfried was slain," is an admirable piece of narrative, gay, bright, full of joyous action, until the hero is treacherously struck, when it becomes as simple as if told by a child. These are the concluding verses :

" Ir müget iuch lihte rüemen," sprach dô Sifrit.	" You may lightly boast," said Siegfried of the Nether- land,
---	---

" het ich an iu erkennet den mortlichen sit,	" But had I known your purpose, against your murderous hand
---	---

ich hete wol behalten vor iu nîmen lîp.	Had I full well protected my body and my life :
--	--

mich riuwet niht sô sêre sô vrou Kriemhilt mîn wîp.	On earth I grieve for nothing but Dame Chriemhild, my wife.
--	---

" Nu müeze got erbarmen deich ie gewan den sun	" May also God take pity on the boy I leave behind,
---	--

dem man daz itewîzen sol nâh den ziten tuon	Who in all time henceforward must hear the taunt unkind,
--	---

daz sine mâge iemen mortliche hân erslagen,	That his own friends his father have murderously slain.
--	--

môht' ich," sô sprach Sifrit, " daz sold' ich pilliche klagen."	If I had time, with justice I might of that complain."
--	---

Dô sprach vil jaemerliche der verchwunde man :	Then mournfully spake fur- ther the hero nigh to death :
---	--

" welt ir, kûnic edele, triuwen iht begân	" O noble King, if ever ye drew a faithful breath,
--	---

in der werlt an iemen, | lât iu
bevolhen sîn
ûf iuwér genâde | die lieben
triutinne mîn.

If ever kept ye pledges, | I do
entreat ye here
To hold in grace and pity | my
sweetheart fair and dear.

“ Und lât si des geniezen | daz si
iuwer swester si.
durch aller fürsten tugende |
wont ir mit triuwen bî.
mir müezen warten lange | mîn
vater und mîne man.
ez enwart nie vrouwen leider |
an liebem vrîundé getân.”

“ Let it to her be profit | that she’s
your sister still :
For every princely virtue | com-
mands your faithful will.
Forme my land and father | will
long and vainly wait :
Never met any woman | from a
dear spouse such bitter
fate.”

Die bluomen allenthalben | von
bluote wâren naz.
dô rang er mit dem tôde : | un-
lange tet er daz,

The blossoms all around him |
wet with his blood became :
With death he fiercely strug-
gled, | not long he did the
same ;

want des tôdes wâfen | ie ze sêre
sneit.
dô mohte reden niht mêre | der
recke kûen’ unt gemeit.

The sword of death was on him |
and cut him very sore ;
And soon the noble warrior |
could speak a word no more.

Dô die herren sâhen | daz der
helt was tôt,

Now when the lords beheld
there | the hero pale and
cold,

si leiten in ûf einen schilt, | der
was von golde rôt,
und wurden des ze râte, | wie
daz solde ergân
daz man ez verhaele | daz ez het
Hagene getân.

Upon a shield they laid him, |
the which was red with gold.
Then they began to counsel |
how further to proceed,
That none would learn the se-
cret | that Hagen did the
deed.

Dô sprâchen ir genuoge : | “ uns
ist übele geschehen.
ir sult ez heln alle | unt sult gel-
îche jehen,

After this wise spake many : |
“ An evil thing is done.
We’ll hide it with a story, | and
all shall say, as one,

da er rite jagen eine, der	As he alone rode hunting, this
Kriemhilde man,	son of Siegmund's line,
in slüegen scâchaere, dâ er	The ruffian robbers slew him
füere durch den tan."	among the woods of pine."

Dô sprach von Tronege Ha-	Then spake von Troneg Hagen:
gene: "ich bringe'n in daz	"Him home myself will
lant.	bear,
mir ist vil unmaere, und wirt	And if she learn who did it,
ez ir bekant',	for that I shall not care.
diu sô hât betrübet den Prün-	Yea, she that vexed Brunhilde
hilde muot.	before the people's eyes,
ez ahtet mich vil ringe, swaz	It will concern me little if now
si wéinéns getuot."	she weeps and cries."

For the third specimen, I will take a passage which Mr. Carlyle has translated. When the Nibelungen come to the Danube, on their way to the Court of Attila and Chriemhild, they are at a loss how to cross the river. Hagen learns from the mermaids where to find the ferryman, and is ordered by them to call himself Amelrich, or he will not be allowed to enter the boat. When this has taken place, however, and the ferryman sees that it is not Amelrich whom he has taken on board, he wrathfully orders Hagen to leap on shore again:

"Nune tuot des niht," sprach Ha-	"Now say not that," spake Hagen;
gene: "trurec ist min muot.	"Right hard am I bested.
nemet von mir ze minne ditze	Take from me, for good friend-
golt vil guot.	ship, this clasp of gold so
	red;
unt füert uns über tûsent ross	And row our thousand heroes
unt alsô manigen man."	and steeds across this river."
dô sprach der grimme verge:	Then spake the wrathful boat-
"daz wirdet nímmer getân."	man, "That will I surely
	never."

Er huop ein starkes ruoder, michel unde breit, er slúoc éz ûf Hagenen, (des wart er ungemeit), daz er in dem schiffe strúchte ûf siniu knie. sô rehte grimmer verge kom dem Tronegaere nie.	Then one of his oars he lifted, right broad it was and long, He struck it down on Hagen, did the hero mickle wrong, That in the boat he staggered, and alighted on his knee; Other such wrathful boatman did never the Troneger see.
Dô wolde er baz erzürnen den üermüeten gast :	His proud unbidden guest he would now provoke still more ;
er sluoc eine schalten, daz diu gar zerbrast,	He struck his head so stoutly that it broke in twain the oar,
Hagenen über daz houbet : er was ein starker man.	With strokes on head of Ha- gen ; he was a sturdy wight :
dâ von der Elsen verge grôzen schaden dâ gewan.	Nathless had Gelfrat's boat- man small profit of <i>that</i> fight.
Mit grímmégem muote greif Hagene zehant vil balde z'einer scheiden, da er ein wâfen vant.	With fiercely-raging spirit the Troneger turned him round, Clutch'd quick enough his scab- bard, and a weapon there he found ;
er sluoc im ab daz houbet und warf ez an den grunt.	He smote his head from off him, and cast it on the sand :
diu maere wurden schiere den stolzen Burgonden kunt.	Thus had that wrathful boat- man his death from Ha- gen's hand.

These passages, I am aware, will not avail to give an adequate representation of the whole tone and atmosphere of the poem. The attractive quaintness and artlessness of the old dialect, with its many curious

idiomatic phrases, cannot be preserved in our modern English, any more than the same fresh and racy flavor which we find in the older English of Chaucer and Spenser. Neither can the mere skeleton of the story, as I have been forced by want of space to give it, do justice to the many touches which constantly soften its gathering chronicles of slaughter. When Rüdiger, who obeys Attila's command with a heavy heart, and goes with his warriors to attack the Nibelungen in the fatal banquet-hall, gives his own shield to Hagen, to replace that which has been hacked to pieces, we are told that "many cheeks were red with weeping." Gernot and Geiselher beg Queen Chriemhild to spare their lives, for they were all nursed by one mother; but when she promises to do so if only Hagen, the murderer of Siegfried, be given up, the gallant Kings answer: "That can never be." There is the phantom of an implacable Fate behind all those dreadful deeds: the kings and warriors clearly see the coming doom, and they meet it like heroes. At the close, we have forgotten the perfidy of Hagen, the fury of Chriemhild, the meanness of Gunther, the weakness of Attila, and are ready to join in that general lamentation which indiscriminately mourns all the slain.

If the historical tradition of the Burgundian King Gundicar and his ten thousand warriors falling before Attila's march into France, be the exaggerated form of an actual occurrence, this may be one of the bases of the

"*Nibelungenlied*." The other and earlier basis is Scandinavian saga, not history,—or history in mythological disguise. The only other facts are that Attila's first wife, named Herka, is certainly the Halke of the epic; while an ancient Hungarian chronicle, of somewhat doubtful character, speaks of his second wife as Kriemheilch. Theodoric and Hildebrand are anachronisms, not to be explained by the supposition that the former is intended for the Visigoth, Theodoric I. This is the slender root of fact to which hangs the wonderful growth of so many centuries.

If I have not been able to prove it to you, in this brief space, I trust that I have at least indicated why the "*Nibelungenlied*" may be one of the most remarkable poems ever written. It is one of the oldest epics of our race. But when the enthusiastic German scholar calls it a Gothic *Iliad*, he uses an epithet which only confuses our ideas. It has neither the unity nor the nobility of style which we find in Homer. There is the same difference as between a Druid circle of huge granite boulders, although overgrown with ivy and wild blossoms and encircled by a forest of Northern pine, and a symmetrical marble temple on a sunny headland beside the blue sea. The world has fallen into a bad habit of naming everything after something else. Let us call the Greek epic the "*Iliad*," and the old German epic of the people nothing else but the "*Nibelungenlied*."

In regard to that unknown man, whose genius, in the

thirteenth century, sealed and transmitted to us the precious inheritance, I cannot do better than repeat Carlyle's words: "His great strength is an unconscious, instinctive strength; wherein truly lies his highest merit. The whole spirit of Chivalry, of Love and heroic Valor must have lived in him and inspired him. Everywhere he shows a noble sensibility; the sad accents of parting friends, the lamentings of women, the high daring of men, all that is worthy and lovely prolongs itself in melodious echoes through his heart. A true old Singer, and taught of Nature herself! Neither let us call him an inglorious Milton, since now he is no longer a mute one. What good were it that the four or five letters composing his name could be printed, and pronounced with absolute certainty? All that is mortal in him is gone utterly: of his life, and its environment, as of the bodily tabernacle he dwelt in, the very ashes remain not: like a fair, heavenly Apparition, which indeed he *was*, he has melted into air, and only the Voice he uttered, in virtue of its inspired gift, yet lives and will live."

It is difficult to ascertain, at this distance of time, whether any stimulus was given to the popular forms of poetry in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries by the poetry of the courts; but the latter certainly gave license—which, in literature, is life,—to the former. The same phenomena, of course, would be found in both circles. Even as the renown of Walther, Wolfram, Gottfried and

Hartmann would call into life a host of inferior minstrels, so the popularity of the "*Nibelungenlied*" would inspire imitations, rival epics, based, like itself, on older lays, and even fanciful continuations of the same story. Many of these still remain, but I can only mention a single one of them—"The Lament," which some consider to be of earlier origin than the latest form of the "*Nibelungen*." It commences where the latter terminates—in the castle of Attila, among the corpses left by the great slaughter. It is written in the short couplet, which we have already met in "*Tristan*" and "*Parzival*," and the inferiority of which to the *Nibelungen* verse we feel more clearly than ever, if we take it up immediately after the latter. It is a weaker hand, which endeavors to express that woe which the master only dared to indicate; but there is one really touching passage, where Theodoric calls upon the people to cease from weeping, through God's help; and the author says: "as much as they promised it to him, yet did they not do it." When the dead have all been lamented, the minstrel Schwemmel is sent as a messenger, to bear the news to Worms. Frau Ute, the mother of the three Kings and Chriemhild, dies of sorrow: the amazon Brunhild falls senseless; and the young Siegfried, her son and Gunther's, is proclaimed King of the *Nibelungen*.

Of the other epics or epical fragments which have been saved, I will only mention "*Gudrun*," as the most complete in form, and the next in literary character,

after the "*Nibelungenlied*." The subject, however, belongs to a different *sagenkreis*, or legendary circle: the scene is laid alternately in Ireland, Wales and on the Saxon shores of the North Sea. The same subject has very recently been used by a living poet, Mr. William Morris, in "The Lovers of Gudrun,"—one of the narratives in his "Earthly Paradise." This circumstance, at least, may increase your curiosity to explore a field of literature so long forgotten to Germany, and even now almost unknown to the very race whose civilization flowed from the same original fountain. If we, as Americans, in the national sense, have an equal share in Shakespeare, Spenser and Chaucer, with our English brethren, so the Gothic and Saxon blood in our veins claims the inheritance of the "*Hildebrandslied*" and the early Nibelungen legends as fully as the German people.

I have not now time to repeat the story of Gudrun and her lovers, of her brother Ortwin, and her betrothed, Herwig, of her captivity, and her hard service as a washerwoman by the sea-shore, of the fierce battle which released her, the joy of her mother Hilde, and the marriage of all the principal characters, which happily closes the thirty-two *Aventiures* of the poem. Its character seems almost idyllic when contrasted with the tragedy of the "*Nibelungenlied*." Perhaps this distinction may be felt, in the single quotation which I shall give, where Horant, the "storm-eagle" of Denmark,

appears as a minstrel at the Court of Hagen, Gudrun's father :

Dô sich diu naht verendet und ez begunde tagen, Hôrânt begunde singen, daz dâ bî in den hagen geswigen alle vogeles von sî- nem sîezen sange. die liute, die dâ sliefen, die enlâgen dô niwet lange.	Now when the night was end- ed and it was near to dawn, Horânt began his singing, and all the birds were drawn To silence in the hedges, be- cause of his sweet song ; And the folk who still were sleeping, when they heard him slept not long.
---	--

Sîn liet erklang im shône, ie hôher und ie baz. Hagene ez selbe hôrte; bî sînem wîbe er saz. ûz der kemenâten muosten s'in die zinne. der gast wart wol berâten. ez hôrte ez diu junge kûni- ginne.	Sweetly to them it sounded, so loud and then so low ; And also Hagen heard it, with his wife of rose and snow. Forth they came from the cham- ber, to the hanging balcony; As the minstrel wished, it hap- pened; for the young Queen heard the melody.
---	---

Des wilden Hagenen tochter und ouch ir magedin, die sâzen unde loseten, daz diu vogellin vergâzin ir doene ûf dem hove frône, wol hôrten ouch die helde, daz der von Tenemarke sanc sô schône.	The daughter of wild Hagen, and her maidens highest and least, They sat and silently listened, while the songs of the small birds ceased, About the court of the castle, and the heroes also heard, How the minstrel of Denmark chanted, so sweetly the souls of all were stirred.
--	--

Dô wart im gedanket von wîben und von man. dô sprach von Tenen Fruote: " mîn neve môhte s'lân,	He was thanked by every woman, and after by all the men, And out of the guests of Denmark, spake bold Fruote then :
---	--

sîn ungefüege doene, | die ich in “ My nephew should leave his
hoere singen. singing : | 'tis too unskilful-
ly played :

wem mag er ze dienste | als un- To whom may he be bringing |
gefüege tagewise bringen ?” this awkward morning sere-
nade ?”

Dô sprâchen Hagenen helde : | Answered Hagen, the hero : |
“ herre, lâit vernemen : “ My lord, let me know your
mind !

niemen lebet sô siecher, | im No one unsmote by sickness |
möhte wol gezemen could pleasure fail to find
hoeren sîne stimme, | diu gêt ûz In the beautiful voice that com-
sinem munde.” eth | out of his mouth so
true :”

“ daz wolde got von himele,” | Said the King : “ Would to God
sprach der künig, “ daz ich in heaven | that I myself the
sie selbe kunde.” same could do !”

Dô er dûe doene | sunder vol When he had sung three mea-
gesanc, sures, | even to the end each
song,

alle die ez hôrten, | dûhte ez niht Every one thought who heard
sô lanc, them, | the time was not so
long.

sie heten'z niht geachtet | einer They had not thought it longer |
hande wile, than the turning of a hand,

obe er solde singen, | daz einer Though he sang while one were
möhte rîten tûsent mile. riding | a thousand miles
across the land.

Here there is altogether a softer, more lyrical spirit than in the “*Nibelungen*.” Something of the sentiment of the Minnesingers has been incorporated into the older legend, and it takes not only the form but also the feeling of the later age. Gervinus says—and in this sense we may admit the comparison—that “*Gudrun*” bears the

same relation to the "*Nibelungenlied*" as the "Odyssey" to the "Iliad:" "it has many qualities," he adds, "which we would willingly see added to the greater epic. It avoids the dry, colorless manner of narration, without adopting the hollow love of ornament of the courtly poets. Both poems may claim an immortal honor for the nation. They reach equally far into time with their deeds, customs and views of life,—and into those times, whereof the prejudiced Roman enemies reported the bravery and barbarism, but also the fidelity and honesty, the honor and chastity of our venerable ancestors."

So far I may quote and accept the views of the great historian of German literature; but when he compares these epics with the "inflated and disgusting British romances," referring to the legends of Arthur and the Holy Grail, he shows rather the egotism of his blood than the impartial vision of his calling.

But, in reality, we need no critical guide for this period, when we have once mastered the language. There was no elaborate art, even for the most accomplished of the courtly minstrels: each expressed what he knew, without those disguises or affectations of deeper wisdom which are common in a more highly developed age. The popular epics are as frank and transparent as the unlettered human nature of the race, and it is not the least of their many excellent qualities that they inspire us with a better respect for that nature, since it produced them.

V.

THE LITERATURE OF THE REFORMATION.

THE fourteenth and the fifteenth centuries seem, at first sight, to present nearly a blank in the history of German literature, and it would greatly simplify my task if I could omit all notice of them, and pass at once to the new spirit which was born with the Reformation, and partly because of it. Such an omission, however, would leave unexplained the manner of a change which distinguishes the German literature of the Middle Ages from that which succeeded it after so long an interval. The two intervening centuries were in some respects the darkest in mediæval history; they were certainly the most confused; and whether we take the political, the religious or the literary element, we shall have equal difficulty in finding an easy path through the chaos.

With the fall of the Hohenstaufen dynasty the power of the German Emperors in Italy was broken, to be soon entirely lost. The same result which attended the partial religious enfranchisement of Germany followed the political enfranchisement of Italy: the stars of Dante and Petrarch rose, as those of Walther and

Wolfram set. Art and Literature revived there, under the new republics, but in Germany the successors of the Hohenstaufens were men of a very different stamp. Rudolf of Hapsburg first set the example of a narrow attention to the affairs of his race, but he was no lover of the minstrels—and perhaps with good reason. The mediæval passion for song began at the top and worked downward, from reigning princes and poetic knights, through the subordinate classes of society. By the end of the thirteenth century the aristocratic power of production was exhausted, while the popular element—in spite of the “*Nibelungenlied*” and “*Gudrun*”—had not yet worked its way upward to influence the tastes or instincts of the higher classes. There was no prose literature as yet, and nearly a hundred years more elapsed before the official documents and records of the country were written in the German language.

We can hardly wonder that courtly patronage was withheld, when the minstrels had come to be bores, both in their numbers and in the quality of their songs. The largesse bestowed on a few lucky ones tempted great numbers of poor, ambitious, half-educated nobles to adopt the profession, and Germany began to resound with the strains of hungry, pretentious and not even elegant mediocrity. Then began the rivalry of the imperial candidates, the fierce discussion between emperor and nobles. the petty feuds of several hundred reigning princes, counts and prelates,—the appearance of a grow-

ing middle class,—all these causes resulting in constant war or menace of war. Pestilence, in new and fearful forms, followed by famine, swept over Europe; Huss came, and was burned, leaving a sword behind him which was not sheathed until nearly two hundred and fifty years had passed; and the forerunners of the modern time appeared, as the mariner's compass, gunpowder, watches and the art of printing. Yet, during this season of agitation and conflict and violence, the basis of a new literature was laid, partly through the revival of the ancient instincts of the people, and partly from the stimulus of coming religious and political struggles.

The two literary forces which were so marked in the Hohenstaufen period continue to be distinguished for some time afterward. Both the courtly and the popular minstrels followed for a while the same retrograde path. Even as they had evolved the epic from ballad material, they now began to take epic subjects and, from deficiency of power, to treat them as ballads; and, as is always the case, their vanity and arrogance increased in proportion as their performance became contemptible. We have but to read a few pages of Hugo von Montfort, Oswald von Wolkenstein, or Albrecht's "*Titurel*," to see the decadence of the courtly poetry; or of Kaspar von der Roen and Ulric Fütterer, to see how the popular poetry kept pace with it downward. The one man who, in imitation of Petrarch, was

crowned by the Emperor, Frederic III., in the fifteenth century, was Conrad Celtes, whom we do not know as a poet. A single fact may be mentioned, to show the utter absence of the most ordinary literary instinct in that period. A Baron von Rapoltstein, who perceived that Wolfram von Eschenbach had omitted from his "*Parzival*" many episodes of the original legend, which would not harmonize with his poem, employed a Jew to translate, and a scribe to write for him, all these episodes, which, turned into the worst doggerel by himself, he then published as a continuation of Wolfram's great work! Even the "*Theuerdank*" of the Emperor Maximilian, although it must have been immensely admired by the courtiers, is too stupid to be read by any healthy person now-a-days. The scholar Vilmar, with all his apparent reverence for Maximilian, cannot help saying: "the '*Theuerdank*' now rests in the dust of the libraries, even as the noble Maximilian in the mould of his imperial vault. Let us leave them in peace, the great Emperor and his little book!"

About the only conclusion we can draw from the examination—I will not say the study—of those inferior works, is this: that Wolfram von Eschenbach was the one master whom the degenerate poets imitated in epic narrative, and Walther von der Vogelweide was their model in Minne-song. They must, therefore, have enjoyed a popularity in their own day, and have made an impression strong enough to be inherited by the com-

ing generations,—just as now no one dares to dispute Milton's or Dryden's place, though so few read them. In the popular poems, a didactic element gradually became apparent, possibly encouraged by the continued reproduction of the much older poem of "*Reinecke Vos*," which appeared, in the latest and best version, in Lübeck, in the year 1498. This is another of those works which come down to us, like the "*Nibelungenlied*," out of an impenetrable mist. We cannot say when or where it originated: we only know that it also grew by the accretion of scattered fragments or independent fables, that it was twice written in Latin, under the name of "*Reinardus*," in Flanders, in the twelfth century, that it soon after (or, possibly, even earlier) entered French and German literature, was retold by an unknown German author in the thirteenth century, and about the same time by William de Matoc, in Dutch,—some of these versions containing from fifty to one hundred thousand lines. I cannot undertake more than the mere mention of this remarkable work, not because it does not deserve it, but simply because it seems to have exercised no very important influence upon German literature, in comparison with the heroic epics. It contains, in fact, so much shrewd knowledge of human nature, so much wit and vivacity, and, as a story, is constructed with such undoubted skill, that when Goethe undertook to reproduce it in his own finished hexameters, he did not dare to change the original in any essential particular. But,

"*Reinecke Fuchs*" is a compound fable, born of those times when the fox, the lion, the wolf, the bear, the ass and the hare were made the object of that satire which the author was not at liberty to fling openly upon their human representatives. Fable is the refuge of the poet when his people are barbarous and his ruler despotic. As soon as he may venture to satirize and scourge the vices of classes, and then of individual characters, its office is at an end. For men are always more legitimately his theme than beasts, and Fable is only generally popular among restricted and undeveloped races, or with children in passing through the corresponding stage of growth. Not even Goethe's genius, and Kaulbach's after him, can make men read "*Reinecke Fuchs*" at this day. It impresses us as a performance of masked figures, and we prefer to see the full range of undisguised human expression on the stage. I find very little evidence that the older poem contributed toward the development of even the humorous element in German literature. It is an illustration, and a valuable one; but in dealing with the direct and powerful influences, the effects of which we can trace from century to century, it must be set aside, to be considered afterward from an independent point of view.

There are records, nevertheless, left by the fourteenth and the fifteenth centuries, which possess a genuine interest for us. Unnoticed at the time, much of the material must have died, as naturally as it originated, ignorant

of its own value; but here and there a little song or ballad, like the English Reliques gathered by Percy and Ellis, has survived the storms of the ages. The popular songs—by which I mean, not those written for the people, in imitation or continuation of the earlier heroic ballads or epics, but those written by the people themselves,—nay, not written, only sung, verse sprouting from verse as simply as leaf from leaf on a plant—these songs show that we have found a new spirit. They are an evidence that the impulse from above, under the Hohenstaufens, has at last touched bottom, and quickened the latent poetic instinct of the people, which begins to speak with the childish stammer of a new language.

Take, for example, this little “Trooper’s Song,” from the fifteenth century, hinting of plunder, but very bold and spirited :

Woluf, ir lieben gsellen,
die uns gebrudert sein,
und raten zuo ! wir wöllen
dort prassen über Rein ;
es kumt ein frischer summer,
daruf ich mein sach setz,
als ie lenger, ie dummer :
hin hin ! wetz, eber, wetz !
wack, hütlein, in dem gfretz !

Up and away, good comrades,
Ye gallant brothers mine,
Ride fast ! it is our purpose
To dash beyond the Rhine.
There comes a fine fresh summer
And promises good store :
The longer ’tis, the better ;
Up, whet your tusks, old boar !
The pasture waits once more.

Der sumer sol uns bringen
ein frischen freien muot,
leicht tuot uns irn gelingen,
so kum wir hinder guot ;

The summer, it shall bring us
Good luck and courage pure :
Success for us is easy,
And gay return is sure.

sie sein vil e erritten,
 dan graben, dise schetz,
 wir han uns lang gelitten :
 hin hin ! wetz, eber, wetz !
 wack, hütlein, in dem gfretz !

Many rode out before us
 And treasure found in store ;
 We're starved too long already ;
 Up, whet your tusks, old boar !
 The pasture waits once more.

Drumb last üch nit erschreck-
 en,
 ir frischen kriegler stolz !
 wir ziehen durch die hecken

Then be not slow or timid,
 Ye troopers, fresh and good !
 We'll break through hedge and
 thicket,

und rumpeln in das holz ;
 man wird noch unser geren
 und nit achten so letz,
 all ding ein weil tuon weren :
 hin hin ! wetz, eber, wetz !
 wack, hütlein, in dem gfretz !

And crash across the wood !
 Ours shall be name and honor
 As good as any wore :
 What others do, we'll do it :
 Up, whet your tusks, old boar !
 The pasture waits once more.

I think it requires but a slight familiarity with the German language, to feel the complete variation in tone and spirit between these verses and those of the Minnesingers. The movement, the character, almost the language, is that of modern song: so might Theodor Körner have written, had he lived in those days.

This popular poetry grew up simultaneously with another variety of lyric art which I must mention here, since it can be traced back to the middle of the fourteenth century, although its period of bloom was much later. It is the most remarkable phenomenon in the intellectual history of any people. One who is unacquainted with the development of German literature might well be pardoned for doubting it. The fact that thousands upon thousands of persons organized for the

purpose of writing poetry, and kept up their organization for centuries, seems incredible. What is called the *Meistergesang* in Germany (master-poetry, though a better translation is trade-poetry) was the successor of the *Minnegesang*, and there is some reason for conjecturing that Frauenlob, the last, and, to my thinking, the poorest of the Minnesingers, was one of the first Masters of the trade. When the organized societies had existed for some time throughout Germany, and traditions of former generations of professional singers began to gather about them, an attempt was made to give a Masonic mystery and antiquity to the craft; but it is not officially mentioned in documents before the close of the fourteenth century, and there is no evidence whatever that any of the guilds were in existence before the year 1300. The mechanics, singularly enough, were among the first to enroll themselves, and it is probable that the conservatism of their class was the chief means of sustaining these guilds of song for five hundred years; for, although the famous school of Nuremberg was closed in 1770, the last songs were sung by the twelve masters of Ulm, in the year 1330.

A rapid sketch of the nature and regulations of one of these master-schools must not be omitted. Each city had its own laws and customs, but the constitution of all was similar. The general method, according to which all songs must be written—called the *Tabulatur*—was first adopted. Then the members of the guild

were divided according to their knowledge and skill. Those still ignorant of the rhythmical laws were called "Pupils;" those acquainted with those laws, "School-friends;" those who knew several "tones" (forms of verse), were "Singers;" those who were able to compose new words to the old tones, were "Poets;" and, finally, those capable of inventing a new tone, were "Masters." Frauenlob, for instance, was the inventor of thirty-five such new tones. The names given to them were very curious and ludicrous. In his "Hyperion," Longfellow mentions the "flowery-paradise-measure, the frog-measure, and the looking-glass-measure,"—and he might also have added "the much-too-short-sunset-measure, the striped-saffron-flower-measure, the English-tin-measure, the blood-gleaming-wire-measure, the fat-badger-measure, the yellow-lion's-hide-measure, and the deceased-glutton-measure!"

When the guild assembled, three officials, called the *Merker*, took their seats upon a raised platform; their business was to listen sharply, detect faults in the singers, and either punish or reward them according to their deserts. The rules, in this respect, were very strict: among the crimes were not only unusual words, slight rhythmical changes or variations in the melody, but even what were called "false opinions." Whoever succeeded in fulfilling all the laws of the *Tabulatur*, and was therefore perfect in the trade, received a silver chain to which a medal, containing the head of King

David, was attached : the second prize was a wreath of artificial flowers made of silk.

When we consider that, from first to last, this institution of the Master-Song existed five hundred years, and that every considerable town in Germany had its guild, we may guess what a colossal quantity of mechanical poetry was produced. On the other hand, we shall not wonder that so little of it has survived. The Reformation only strengthened it by giving it a religious character, and the Thirty Years' War probably only made the blood-gleaming-wire-measure more common, for it hardly shook a single society out of existence. Of the thousands of Masters who lived and died, only one—the greatest—has been much heard of outside of Germany, and that is Hans Sachs, of Nuremberg, the writer of more than six thousand poems and dramatic pieces. Even he, though the later poets and the modern critics of Germany have recognized his merit and deserved prominence in a dreary literary age—even he cannot escape the hard mechanical touch of his laws of master-song. In Kaulbach's picture of the Reformation, he is drawn in his leather apron, seated, and counting off the feet of his verse with his thumb and forefinger. This is a nice characteristic ; for I need hardly tell you that the Poet who is born, and not made, never counts his feet in that way. Nevertheless, there is little of Hans Sachs's poetry which does not suggest to me that thumb and forefinger.

Since the members were almost exclusively mechanics, we might expect that so long a metrical discipline must have affected the tastes and instincts of the people. It must, at least, have partly laid the basis of that general æsthetic development which occurred seventy or eighty years ago. At the present day there are few educated Germans, men or women, who cannot write rhythmically correct verse. But when we come to speak of poetry as the expression of intellectual growth, the result would probably be the very opposite. The good mechanics confounded the letter and the spirit, like many men in much higher stations. I confess there is something picturesque and even beautiful in this long devotion to the external form, with all its unnatural and ludicrous features; and I am ready to agree with Longfellow, when he, a Master-singer, thus sings of those old Master-singers :

“ From remote and sunless suburbs came they to the friendly guild,
Building nests in Fame’s great temple, as in spouts the swallows
build.

As the weaver plied his shuttle, wove he too the mystic rhyme;
And the smith his iron measures hammered to the anvil’s chime;
Thanking God, whose boundless wisdom makes the flowers of poesy
bloom

In the forge’s dust and cinders, in the tissues of the loom.”

Here, then, are the chief features of German literature between the years 1300 and 1500—weak echoes of the epic and the minne-song, gradually dying of their own imbecility: the institution of poetry as a trade or

handicraft (more correctly, *wordicraft*); the modest growth of a new spirit of song among the common people; the increasing prominence of the didactic element, and the slow and painful effort of the neglected German prose to raise itself into notice. The invention of printing, at the start, gave currency to many more indifferent works than to those which needed to be saved; but the fermentation which preceded the great religious movement had already commenced, and it was destined to stamp its character upon nearly all the literature of the next century.

Before we turn to the coming change, let me mention two or three works which lift themselves a little above the level of the intermediate period. In the first place many knightly legends and old traditions were translated and read throughout Germany—among others “*Die sieben weisen Meister*” (The Seven Wise Masters) and the “*Gesta Romanorum* ;” various historical chronicles were written; and the theological writings of Tauler, the mystic, and Gailer von Kaysersberg, are worthy of notice. Sebastian Brandt, toward the close of the fifteenth century, published his “*Narrenschiff*” (Ship of Fools) and his “*Narrenspiegel*” (Mirror of Fools), or a didactic poem of a Hudibrastic character, full of shrewd and pithy phrases, in a coarse Alsatian German, and with frequent gleams of a genuine humor. It was very popular for some years, until the religious division of Germany drew nearer, when Brandt, like his successor,

Thomas Murner, became a bitter opponent of the Reformation. Murner followed with his "*Narrenbeschwörung*" (Conjuration of Fools); but his chief merit was his version of the pranks of *Till Eulenspiegel* (Till Owlglass)—a famous book ever since that day. A translation of it was published in this country only four or five years ago. I might also mention the names of Rosenblüt and Muscatblüt, and of that hand-organ grinder, Caspar von der Roen, but only because they sometimes occur in German literature. They wrote nothing of sufficient interest to review here.

The Reformation was partly heralded by pamphlets and poems, as well as by sermons. All the principal Reformers rose at once, as authors, far above their immediate literary predecessors. That daring and independent spirit which grew from their strongest spiritual convictions extended itself to everything which they spoke or wrote. In forgetting the conventionalities of literature, and giving their whole soul and strength to the clearest utterance of their views, they unconsciously acquired a higher literary style. In singing what they felt to be God's truth, they did not take the Minnesingers as models, or consider the artificial rules of the Masters; and so there came into their songs a new, veritable sweetness and strength, drawn directly from the heart. It was no time for purely æsthetic development; fancy or imagination could not soar in that stern, disturbed atmosphere. But the basis was then laid, on

which the immortal literature of the last century is founded.

Zwingli was born in November, 1483, Luther two months afterward, and Ulric von Hutten in 1488. They worked simultaneously, but in different ways and with very different degrees of literary merit. Zwingli was polemical, Hutten satirical, and Luther creative. Hutten's Dialogues, in point, satire and rapid ease of movement, surpass any German prose before him ; but they, like all German prose up to that time, are marked by the local dialect of the author. The language was gradually developing its qualities, but in an irregular and not very coherent fashion. Philologically, there were almost as many different varieties of prose as there were authors, while poetry (except the unnoticed songs of the people) had hardened into the rigid moulds made for it more than two hundred years before.

The man who re-created the German language—I hardly think the expression too strong—was Martin Luther. It was his fortune and that of the world that he was so equally great in many directions—as a personal character, as a man of action, as a teacher and preacher, and, finally, as an author. No one before him, and no one for nearly two hundred years after him, saw that the German tongue must be sought for in the mouths of the people—that the exhausted expression of the earlier ages could not be revived, but that the newer, fuller and richer speech, then in its childhood,

must at once be acknowledged and adopted. He made it the vehicle of what was divinest in human language; and those who are not informed of his manner of translating the Bible, cannot appreciate the originality of his work, or the marvelous truth of the instinct which led him to it.

With all his scholarship, Luther dropped the theological style, and sought among the people for phrases as artless and simple as those of the Hebrew writers. * He frequented the market-place, the merry-making, the house of birth, marriage or death among the common people, in order to catch the fullest expression of their feelings in the simplest words. He enlisted his friends in the same service, begging them to note down for him any peculiar, sententious phrase; "for," said he, "I cannot use the words heard in castles and at courts." Not a sentence of the Bible was translated, until he had sought for the briefest, clearest and strongest German equivalent to it. He writes, in 1530: "I have exerted myself, in translating, to give pure and clear German. And it has verily happened, that we have sought and questioned a fortnight, three, four weeks, for a single word, and yet it was not always found. In Job we so labored, Philip Melanchthon, Aurogallus and I, that in four days we sometimes barely finished three lines. . . . It is well enough to plow, when the field is cleared; but to root out stock and stone, and prepare the ground, is what no one will."

He illustrates his own plan of translation by an example which is so interesting that I must quote it: "We must not ask the letters in the Latin language how we should speak German, as the asses do, but we must ask the mother in the house, the children in the lanes, the common man in the market-place, and read in their mouths how they speak, and translate according thereto: then they understand, for they see we are speaking German to them. As when Christ says: *Ex abundantia cordis os loquitur*. Now if I were to follow the asses, they would dissect for me the letters and thus translate: 'Out of the superabundance of the heart, speaks the mouth.' Now tell me, is that spoken German? What German understands that? What is superabundance of the heart, to a German? No German would say that, unless he meant that he had too much of a heart, or too big a heart, although even that is not correct; for superabundance of heart is no German, any more than—superabundance of house, superabundance of cooking-stove, superabundance of bench; but thus speaketh the mother in the house and the common man: Whose heart is full, his mouth overflows. That is Germanly spoken, such as I have endeavored to do, but, alas! not always succeeded."

Luther translated the Bible eighty years before our English version was produced. I do not know whether the English translators made any use of his labors, although they inclined toward the same plan, without

following it so conscientiously. In regard to accuracy of rendering, there is less difference. Bunsen, in his "*Bibelwerk*," states that there are more than five hundred errors in either version. But, in regard to the fullness, the strength, the tenderness, the vital power of language, I think Luther's Bible decidedly superior to our own. The instinct of one great man, is, in such matters, if not a safer, at least a more satisfactory guide than the average judgment of forty-seven men. Luther was a poet as well as a theologian, and, as a poet, he was able to feel, as no theologian could, the intrinsic difference of spirit and character in the different books of the Old Testament,—not only to feel, but, through the sympathetic quality of the poetic nature, to reproduce them. These ten years, from 1522 to 1532, which he devoted to the work, were not only years of unremitting, prayerful, conscientious labor, but also of warm, bright, joyous intellectual creation. We can only appreciate his wonderful achievement by comparing it with any German prose before his time. Let me quote his version of the 139th Psalm, as an example of the simplicity, the strength and the nobility of his style:

Herr, du erforschest mich, und kennest mich.

2.—Ich sitze oder stehe auf, so weisst du es; du verstehest meine Gedanken von ferne.

3.—Ich gehe oder liege, so bist du um mich, und siehest alle meine Wege.

4.—Denn siehe, es ist kein Wort auf meiner Zunge, das du, Herr, nicht Alles wissest.

- 5.—Du schaffest es, was ich vor oder hernach thue, und hältst deine Hand über mir.
- 6.—Solches Erkenntniss ist mir zu wunderlich und zu hoch; ich kann es nicht begreifen.
- 7.—Wo soll ich hingehen vor deinem Geist? Und wo soll ich hinflehen vor deinem Angesicht?
- 8.—Führe ich gen Himmel, so bist du da. Bettete ich mir in die Hölle, siehe, so bist du auch da.
- 9.—Nähme ich Flügel der Morgenröthe, und bliebe am äussersten Meer,
- 10.—So würde mich doch deine Hand daselbst führen, und deine Rechte mich halten.
- 11.—Spräche ich: Finsterniss möge mich decken; so muss die Nacht auch Licht um mich seyn.
- 12.—Denn auch Finsterniss nicht finster ist bei dir, und die Nacht leuchtet wie der Tag; Finsterniss ist wie das Licht.

Now let us take a few verses from the well-known chapter of Paul—the thirteenth of the first Epistle to the Corinthians, and feel how Luther was equally capable of expressing the warmth, the tenderness and the beauty of the original. You will note that the word “charity” of our version is more correctly rendered “love”:

- Wenn ich mit Menschen- und mit Engelzungen redete, und hätte der Liebe nicht; so wäre ich ein tönend Erz, oder eine klingende Schelle.
- 2.—Und wenn ich weissagen könnte, und wüsste alle Geheimnisse, und alle Erkenntniss, und hätte allen Glauben, also, dass ich Berge versetzte, und hätte der Liebe nicht; so wäre ich nichts.
 - 3.—Und wenn ich alle meine Habe den Armen gäbe, und liesse meinen Leib brennen, und hätte der Liebe nicht; so wäre mir's nichts nütze.
 - 4.—Die Liebe is langmüthig und freundlich, die Liebe eifert nicht, die Liebe treibt nicht Muthwillen, sie blähet sich nicht,
 - 5.—Sie stellet sich nicht ungeberdig, sie suchet nicht das Ihre, sie lässt sich nicht erbittern, sie trachtet nicht nach Schaden,

- 6.—Sie freuet sich nicht der Ungerechtigkeit, sie freuet sich aber der Wahrheit,
- 7.—Sie verträgt Alles, sie glaubet Alles, sie hoffet Alles, sie duldet Alles.
- 8.—Die Liebe höret nimmer auf, so doch die Weissagungen aufhören werden, und die Sprachen aufhören werden, und das Erkenntniss aufhören wird.

I have not the time to compare, as I should wish, certain passages, verse by verse, nor, indeed, to dwell longer on a work which, although a translation, possesses for the German race the literary importance of an original creation. Let us take two very different examples of Luther's abilities as an author—the first, that celebrated hymn, "*Eine feste Burg ist unser Gott*," which should be properly chanted to his own music, as it still is in Germany, in order to be fully appreciated. The theme is taken from the forty-sixth Psalm; the translation is Carlyle's:

Ein feste burg ist vnser Gott,
ein gute wehr vnd waffen:
Er hilfft vns frey aus aller not
die vns itzt hat betroffen.

Der alt böse feind
mit ernst ers itzt meint,
gros macht vnd viel list
sein grausam rüstung ist,
auff erd ist nichts seins gleichen.

Mit vnser macht ist nichts ge-
than,
wir sind gar bald verloren:
Es streit für vns der rechte man,
den Gott hat selbs erkoren.

A safe stronghold our God is still,
A trusty shield and weapon;
He'll help us clear from all the ill
That hath us now o'ertaken.

The ancient Prince of Hell
Has risen with purpose fell;
Strong mail of Craft and Power
He weareth in this hour,
On Earth is not his fellow.

With force of arms we nothing
can,
Full soon were we down-ridden;
But for us fights the proper Man,
Whom God himself hath bidden.

Fragstu, wer der ist?
er heisst Jhesus Christ,
der HERR Zebaoth,
vnd ist kein ander Gott,
das felt mus er behalten.

Ask ye, Who is this same?
Christ Jesus is his name,
The Lord Zebaoth's Son,
He and no other one
Shall conquer in the battle.

Vnd wenn die welt vol Teuffel
wer,
vnd wolt vns gar verschlingen,
so fürchten wir vns nicht so sehr,
es sol vns doch gelingen.

And were this world all Devils
o'er,
And watching to devour us,
We lay it not to heart so sore,
Not they can overpower us.
And let the Prince of Ill
Look grim as e'er he will,
He harms us not a whit:
For why? His doom is writ,
A word shall quickly slay him.

Der Fürst dieser welt,
wie sawr er sich stelt,
thut er vns doch nicht,
das macht, er ist gericht,
ein wörtlin kan jn fellen.

God's Word, for all their craft
and force,
One moment will not linger,
But spite of Hell shall have its
course,
'Tis written by his finger.
And though they take our life,
Goods, honour, children, wife,
Yet is their profit small;
These things shall vanish all,
The City of God remaineth.

Das wort sie sollen lassen stan
vnd kein danck dazu haben,
Er ist bey vns wol auff dem plan

mit seinem geist vnd gaben.
Nemen sie den leib,
gut, ehr, kind vnd weib:
las fahren dahin,
sie habens kein gewin,
Das Reich mus vns doch bleiben.

We seem to hear the steps of a giant, to whom everything must give way, in the strong, short march of the original lines. I meant to quote, as a contrast to this, the letter which Luther wrote to his little son, as delightfully artless and childlike a piece of writing as anything which Hans Christian Andersen has ever produced. But it is so well known that I have decided to translate, instead, a Christmas poem for

children, which I believe has never been rendered into English :

Vom Himel hoch da kom ich her, ich bring euch gute neue mehr,	From Heaven I come, a herald true, To bring glad tidings down to you.
Der guten mehr bring ich so viel dauon ich singen vnd sagen wil.	So much good news I hither bring That I thereof must speak and sing.

Euch ist ein kindlein heut ge- born, von einer Jungfraw, auserkorn,	There's born, to-day, a little child, And from a Virgin, pure and mild ;
Ein kindelein, so zart und fein, das sol ewr freud vnd wonne sein.	A babe so fine and fair to see, It must your bliss and fortune be.

Es ist der HERR Christ vnser Gott, der wil euch fürn aus aller not,	'Tis Christ, the Lord, our God indeed, Who out of trouble us shall lead ;
Er wil ewr Heiland selber sein, von allen sunden machen rein.	He shall your Saviour be, and make Ye pure of sin for his sweet sake.

Er bringt euch alle seligkeit, die Gott der Vater hat bereit,	All joy to you his hand shall bear, Which God the Father did pre- pare,
Das jr mit vns im himelreich solt leben nu vnd ewigleich.	That so with us ye children be In his own heaven eternally.

So mercket nu das zeichen recht, die krippen, windelein so schlecht,	Now mark ye well what tokens these : The manger and the cloth of frieze.
---	---

Da findet jr das kind gelegt,
das alle welt erhelt und tregt.

The little baby there ye'll find,
Who shall the world sustain and
bind.

Des lasst vns alle frölich sein
vnd mit den hirtten gehen hinein,
Zu sehen, was Gott vns hat be-
schert,
mit seinem lieben Son verehrt.

Let us with gladness and with
prayer
Now enter with the shepherds
there,
To see what God for us hath
done
In giving us his darling Son.

Merck auff, mein hertz, vnd sich
dort hin :
was ligt doch in dem krippelin,
Was ist das schöne kindelin ?
es ist das liebe Jhesulin.

Look up, my dears ! turn there
your eyes :
What is it in the manger lies ?
Who is the babe, the lamb, the
dove ?
'Tis little Jesus whom we love.

Bis willekomen, du edler gast,
den Sunder nicht verschmehet
hast,
Vnd kömpst ins elend her zu
mir ;
wie sol ich immer dancken dir ?

Be welcome, guest so nobly
prized,
Who hast the sinner not de-
spised,
And should'st thou come thro'
woe to me,
How shall I render thanks to
thee ?

Ach, HERR, du schöpffer aller
ding,
wie bistu worden so gering.

Ah, Lord ! who did'st all things
create,
How art thou fallen to low
estate !

Dass du da ligst auff dürrem
gras,
dauon ein rind vnd esel ass.

Upon dry grass thou liest here :
Beside thee feed the ass and steer.

Vnd wer die welt vielmal so
weit,
von edel stein vnd gold bereit,

Were the whole world full as't
could hold
Of precious jewels and of gold,

So wer sie doch dir viel zu klein, zu sein ein enges wigelein.	For thee 'twere far too small: 'twould be A narrow cradle unto thee !
Der sammet vnd die seiden dein, das ist grob hew und windelein,	Thy velvet and thy silks, to-day, Are coarsest cloth and roughest hay,
Darauff du, König so gross vnd reich, her prangst, als wers dein Hi- melreich.	Whereon thou, mighty King, dost lie As grandly as in Heaven high.
Ach, mein hertzeliebtes Jhesulin, mach dir ein rein sanfft bettelin, Zu rugen in meins hertzen schrein, das ich nimer vergesse dein.	Ah, Jesus, darling of my breast, Make thee a pure, soft bed of rest. Within my heart as in a shrine, That so I keep thy love divine.
Dauon ich allzeit fröhlich sey, zu springen, singen imer frey Das rechte Sussanine schon, mit hertzen lust den süssen thon.	Thence happy shall I always be, And leap and sing, rejoicing free, As one who feels the perfect tone Of sweet heart-music is his own.
Lob, ehr sey Gott im höchsten thron, der vns schenckt seinen einigen Son, Des frewen sich der engel schar, vnd singen vns solchs newes jar.	Glory to God in the Highest spend, Who us His only Son did send, While angels now sing hymns of cheer, To give the world a glad New- year.

I make no apology for quoting this simple strain ; for when we have the expression of a man's power and energy on the one side, and of his delicacy of mind and playful tenderness of heart on the other, we have

the broadest measure of his character. The influence of Luther on German literature cannot be explained until we have seen how sound and vigorous and many-sided was the new spirit which he infused into the language. For it is not simply the grand and stately elements which must be developed; not the subtlety which befits speculation, or the keenness and point which are required for satire; but chiefly the power of expressing homely human sentiment and painting the common phases of life.

The hymns—or rather, devotional poems,—written by Luther's contemporaries, have a greater or less resemblance to his, in form and style. The one *lied* of Ulric von Hutten, commencing "*Ich hab's gewagt*," has the keenness of a sword-thrust: those of Paul Eber, Hermann, Nicolai and others vary according to the temperament or talent of the writer, but have a family resemblance. Some are rough in measure and almost rude in diction; others have some fluency and melody, with no special literary merit. To read them after Luther, is like reading Dr. Watts after Milton's "Hymn on the Nativity." I do not consider it necessary to give any specimens of their hymns, except a single verse from that written by the Duke John Frederick, the Magnanimous, of Saxony:

As't pleases God, so let it pass;
 The birds may take my sorrow;
 If fortune shun my house to-day,
 I'll wait until to-morrow.

The goods I have
I still shall save,
Or, if some part forsake me,
Thank God, who's just :
What must be, must ;
Good luck may still o'ertake me !

The secular poets of the first half of the sixteenth century may be easily reviewed. I find no author of note, except Hans Sachs, although some of the shorter lyrics of Weckrlin and Andraea are more than mechanical verse. One of the most prolific of this class of poets was Helmbold, whose productions were almost as plentiful, and not much more valuable, in a literary sense, than the rhymed advertisements of the newspapers now-a-days.

Hans Sachs, who was born in 1494 and lived until 1576, must not be confounded with the host of Master-singers. He was a man of genuine native ability, of great experience and unusual learning. Educated at a good school as a boy, he then became a shoemaker, traveled as a wandering journeyman all over Germany, from the Baltic to the Tyrolese Alps, was a hunter in Maximilian's service, made the personal acquaintance of Luther, and returned to Nuremberg, at the age of twenty-two, to marry and devote himself to poetry. He was in easy circumstances, and did not need to depend on his trade. He knew all German and the best of classic literature, and even the works of Petrarch and Boccaccio. His glowing Protestantism gave much of his poetry a

religious and didactic character, and the soulless mechanism of the Master-craft is too frequently apparent; but we also meet with lyrics and short dramatic pieces which are full of nature and grace, and which charm us by their happy felicity of language. If we approve only five per cent. of his productions, we shall still have three hundred good works out of six thousand. His narrative tone is sometimes admirable, especially when he describes the scenes and circumstances of the life around him, not inventing, but representing poetically—to use Grimm’s distinction between *erdichten* and *dichten*. He seems to be happiest when both subject and sentiment are what is called *bürgerlich*, that is, belonging to the solid, thrifty middle class: there is nothing of the fine frenzy in him. Among English authors, I might compare him to Crabbe in the qualities of careful, nice observation and sturdy good sense, but Crabbe was much his inferior in grace and variety of expression. Lessing and Goethe were among the first to rescue the fame of Hans Sachs from the disrespect into which it had fallen, under the dominion of French taste in Germany. Now, the honest Master is lifted again upon his proper pedestal, and sits (to quote Longfellow again):

“ as in Adam Puschman’s song,
As the old man, gray and dove-like, with his great beard white and
long.”

I have had some difficulty in selecting a single short poem of Hans Sachs, which may illustrate the lighter

and more graceful features of his Muse. Every poem is accompanied by a statement of its measure, whether copied from an older master or original. The latter, of course, is the more characteristic. As scarcely anything of Hans Sachs has ever been translated, I must furnish at least one specimen; and I have taken a short poem, which he says was written in 1517, in his own "silver measure."

DICHTER UND SINGER.

Ich lob ein brünlein küle
mit ursprungen aufwüle
für ein gross wasserhüle,
die keinen ursprung hat.
Sich allein muss besechen
mit zuflussenden bechen
der brünnelein, mag ich sprechen;
die hül nit lang bestat.
Wan von der sunen grosser hitz
im sumerlangen tak
die hül wirt faul und gar unnütz,
gewint bosen geschmak;
sie trucknet ein, wirt grün und
gelb;
so frischet sich das brünnelein
selb
mit seinem uresprunge,
beleibet unbezwunge
von der sune scheinunge,
es wirt nit faul noch mat.

THE POET AND THE SINGER.

I.

I like a fountain, flowing
Beside a cavern, showing
No token, in its going,
Of whence its waters came.
Itself must fill forever,
And by its own endeavor,
The urn of its light river:
The cave is not the same.
When from the sun's increasing
heat,
In days of summertime,
The cave is neither fresh nor
sweet,
But smells of mould and slime,
And dries, and groweth rank
and green;
Then doth the fount itself keep
clean
From out its hidden sources,—
Conquers the sun's hot forces
In all its crystal courses,
And grows not foul nor dull.

II.

Das brünlein ich geleiche
einem dichter kunstreiche,

That fountain I compare to
The poet, who doth swear to

der gesang anfenkleiche
dichtet aus künsten grunt ;
Bas lob ich den mit rechte
für einen singer schlechte,
der sein gesang enpfechte
aus eines fremden munt.
Wan so entspringet neue kunst,
noch sherfer, dan die alt,
des singers gesang ist umsunst,
er wirt geschweiget balt ;
er kan nit gen neue gespor
sie sei im den gebanet vor
durch den dichter on sherzen,

der aus kunstreichem herzen
kan dichten ane scherzen
neu gesang alle stunt.

The poetry he's heir to ;
And honors art the more.
But he—I say with sorrow—
Is a wretched singer thorough,
Who all his songs must borrow
From what was sung before.
For when new art is born again,
Better than ancient tune,
The singer's song is all in vain :
He shall be silenced soon :
No effort of his own avails
To follow on those fresher trails,
'Gainst him whose fancies bear
us,—

Whose heart and art declare us,
That lightly he can spare us
A new song every hour.

III.

Won alle künst auf erden
teglich gescherfet werden
von grobheit und geferden,
die man vor darin fant.
Von gesang ich euch sage,

das er von tag zu tage
noch scherfer werden mage
durch den dichter, verstant.
Darum gib ich dem dichter ganz

ein kron von rotem golt
und dem singer ein grünen
kranz.

darbei ir merken solt :
kem der singer auf todes bar,
sein kunst mit im al stirbet gar ;
wirt der dichter begraben,
sein kunst wirt erst erhaben
müntlich und in buchstaben
gar weit in mengem lant.

Our art, of truth the mirror,
Should daily be the clearer
Of coarseness and of error,
That erewhile clouded it.
And song — there's nothing
surer !—

Should day by day be purer,
And nobler, and securer,
Made by the poet's wit.
Therefore a crown of red-gold
sheen

The poet should receive ;
The singer but a garland green.

That ye this truth believe :
Lieth the singer cold and dead,
His art with him hath perished ;
But when the poet dieth
His art that end denieth,
And liveth still, and flieth
To many a distant land.

The songs of the people continued to increase and to be sung, during the period of the Reformation. It is only in them, in fact, that we find the music and the melody of verse, of which the devotional and didactic poetry is so bare. The character of these songs remains the same as in the previous century, but the language shows a great improvement. Take this lovely little "Hunter's Song," by some unknown peasant-author:

Es jagt ein jeger wolgemût
er jagt auss frischem freiem mût
wol unter eine grüne linden,

er jagt derselben tierlein vil
mit seinen schnellen winden.

Er jagt uber berg und tiefe tal
under den stauden überal,
sein hörnlein tat er blasen ;
sein lieb under einer stauden sass,
tet auf den jeger losen.

Er schweift sein mantel in das
gras,
er bat sie, dass sie zû im sass,
mit weissen armen umbfangen :

"So gehab dich wol, mein
trösterin !
nach dir stet mein verlangen.

A hunter hunted merrily,
Under the leafy linden-tree ;
His free, strong heart upbore
him ;

Many a beast he hunted down,
With his greyhounds fast before
him.

He sped through vale, o'er
mountain cold,
The thicket and the bushy
wold,
And blew his horn so clearly ;
But under the boughs his sweet-
heart sat,
And looked on him so dearly.

Upon the ground his cloak he
threw,
Sat there, and her beside him
drew,
And said, her white hand press-
ing :

"Well may'st thou fare, con-
soler mine,
My one desire and blessing !

“ Hat uns der reif, hat uns der schne, hat uns erfrört den grünen kle, die blümlein auf der heiden : wo zwei herztlieb bei einander sind, die zwei sol niemant scheiden.”	“ If hoar-frost come, or snow be seen, To kill for us the clover green And the blossoms on the heather, Nor frost nor snow can part the twain Who love, and sit together !”
---	---

Or this little song of the “Nettle-Wreath” :

“ O baurnknecht, lass die röslein stan! sie sein nit dein ! du tregst noch wol von nessel- kraut ein krenzelein.”	“ O peasant-lad, let the roses be ! Not for thee they blow ! Thou wearest still of the nettle- weed Thy wreath of woe.”
--	---

Das nesselkraut ist bitter und saur, und brennet mich: verloren hab ich mein schönes lieb das reuwet mich.	The nettle-weed is bitter and sour, And burneth me : But that I lose my fairest love Is my misery.
Es reut mich sehr, und tut mir in meinem herzen we : gesegn dich gott, mein holder bul, ich sehe dich nimmer me !	This I lament, and thence my heart Is sad and sore : God keep thee now, lost, lovely girl ! I shall never see thee more.

At first it may seem remarkable that, with such elements as Luther's prose and the birth of a true poetry among the people, there was not an immediate revival of literature in Germany. The new faith, however, did not bring peace, but a sword. If arms silence laws, they silence letters all the more speedily. The

oppressions of the feudal system, which brought on the Peasants' War in Luther's time, were strengthened by the bloody failure of that war: rulers and nobles trod out every spark of a claim for better rights among the people. Thus, toward the close of the sixteenth century, when Spain and Italy and England were rejoicing in their classic age of literature, the finer mind of Germany seemed to be dead. But for Luther's achievements, the Age of the Reformation would seem to be one of baffled promise, separated by dreary centuries from the literature of the Middle Ages, on the one hand, and that of the modern period on the other. Yet, as the strong foundations of an edifice must sometimes wait long for the building of the superstructure, so here the basis of the later development was complete, and the development itself predicted, in spite of all delays.

VI.

THE LITERATURE OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

IN our journey downward, from the earliest period of German literature, we have traversed very different regions. We found ourselves, at the start, as in a rough land of mountains and dark fir forests, inhabited by a strong and simple race. There are meadows and fresh clearings in the valleys, but from the deeper gorges we hear the chant of Druids and the harps of the last Bardic singers. Then we issue upon a long, barren waste, beyond which lies the bright, busy, crowded land of the Middle Ages, with its castles and cathedrals, its marches and tournaments, its mingled costumes of the East and the West, its echoes of Palestine and Provence, of Brittany and Cornwall. Then again comes a waste, through which we walk wearily for a long time, before we reach a new region—a land of earnest workers and builders, where the first resting-place we find is the block of a new edifice, not yet lifted to its place—a land of change and preparation, overhung by a doubtful sky, but overblown by a keen, bracing air, in which the race again grows strong. We have now one more long, half-settled stretch of monotonous plain to traverse, before

finding the work of the builders completed, and the substructures of thought risen into temples which stand fair and firm under a sky of eternal sunshine.

It is impossible for me, now, to give even a flying explanation of the many depressing influences which operated directly upon the literary activity of the German people during the latter half of the sixteenth and the whole of the seventeenth century. I can only name the chief of them: first, the change in the spirit and character of the Reformation, after the Peasants' War, and again after Luther's death, coupled with the influence of the nobles and the ruling princes, who were at once despotic and indifferent to letters; then the terrible Thirty Years' War,—the cruelest infliction to which any people were ever exposed; and, finally, the subjection of Germany to the tastes and the fashions of France and of French thought.

Although Luther had created the modern High-German on the basis of the common speech of the people, and forced the Low-German into the position of a dialect, the dry theological tendency of his successors interfered directly with his work. The true beginning of a new literature having been found, it could only be developed in the same direction. But when the democratic element in the Reformation was suppressed, the popular mine of speech which Luther discovered was no longer worked. Indeed the religious principle, which was inherited by the next generation, became a different

agency from that which had been attained through struggle and sacrifice. It had no longer the same vital, informing power ; and it settled rapidly into a dogmatism only less rigid than that of the Church of Rome. Not only the literary interests suffered under this state of things, but the very language became corrupted by neglect and the style of ignorant and pretentious writers. In the beginning of the seventeenth century, Dr. Fabricius writes : “ Our German tongue is not to that extent poor and decayed, as many persons would now have us believe, so patching and larding it with French and Italian, that they cannot even send a little letter without furbishing it with other languages, so that one, in order to understand it, ought to know all the tongues of Christendom, to the great disgrace and injury of our German language.” It was probably the same circumstance which led Fischart to write, a little earlier : “ Our language is also a language, and can call a sack a *sack*, as well as the Latins can call it a *saccus*.”

Directly following this haughty indifference of the higher class, this spiritual degeneracy of the middle class, and the suppression of the claims of the common people, came the Thirty Years’ War,—that terrible period from which Germany, in a material and political sense, has been nearly two hundred years in recovering. Whole regions were so devastated that the wolf and the bear resumed their original ownership ; the slow education of centuries was swept away ; a second barba-

rism, worse than the first, in some instances took its place; and the Westphalian Peace left a land broken and despoiled of nearly everything, except the power of the rulers over their subjects. I have seen more than one district of Germany which, in 1850, had just recovered the same amount of population, of cattle and of agricultural productions which it possessed before the year 1618. It is only by such statements that we can measure the results of that struggle. The Germany of to-day is not the work of its petty princes, not the work of the sham emperors, whose "holy Roman" sceptre was the symbol of imaginary power, but the work of the people, liberated, educated, conscious of their strength and grand in exercising it.

When we have studied the history of Germany sufficiently to comprehend the constant, almost indescribable trials and sufferings of the people during this period, we no longer wonder at their retarded intellectual development. But for an infinite patience and courage, they must have lost their national identity, like the Goths and Burgundians. But, as we have seen, much good seed had been planted, and such seed will always germinate, though held in the hand of an Egyptian mummy for three thousand years. It was only a delayed, not a prevented growth. Two men then arose who belong to the greatest minds of the world—two men whose peculiar labors abstracted them from the miserable circumstances into which they were born,

and rendered them comparatively independent of their time. They were Kepler and Leibnitz. One belongs to science, and the other to philosophy. But Kepler is hardly to be called an author, and Leibnitz wrote chiefly in Latin, and therefore hardly connects himself with German literature.

The one author who especially represents the latter half of the sixteenth century is Johannes Fischart. We know very little about his life—not even the probable date of his birth; but only that he was a jurist and theologian, that he lived in Strasburg, Speyer and Forbach, that he traveled much, having visited England, and was acquainted with many languages. He was partly a contemporary of Shakespeare, to whose portrait his own has some resemblance, and whom he resembled also in the wonderful breadth and variety of his accomplishments. Although his works were quite popular during his life, they seem to have been wholly forgotten at the close of the Thirty Years' War, and his name was almost unknown when revived by the late recognition of Bodmer and Lessing. There was really, in the long interval between his death and the birth of these men, no author of sufficient scope to appreciate his works, unless it was Frederick v. Logau, who probably never heard of him.

The first thing which strikes us in Fischart is his style, which reminds us of Rabelais, and sometimes of Richter. His vocabulary is inexhaustible, and his sati-

rical humor never wearies. He is quite equal to Rabelais in the invention of comical words, and it is therefore almost impossible to translate many of his best passages. He even transforms, or Germanizes with great humor, words of foreign origin, constituting, in fact, a very curious form of punning,—as *melancholisch*, which he turns into *maul-häng-cholisch*, *podagra* into *pfoten-gram*, and *Jesuit* into *Jesu-wider*. Such specimens will give you an idea of his peculiar manner. In a sort of grotesque absurdity, he was the forerunner of a class of American authors who are now attempting to make everything in the world comical for us, from the raising of potatoes to the massacre of St. Bartholomew; but, unlike those American authors, his fun rests on a broad foundation of learning, and is constantly softened and lightened by a noble humanity. When his humor is apparently most lawless and chaotic, he never loses sight of its chosen object. Even his "*Aller Praktik Grossmutter*," which seems to be a collection of absurdities, was meant to cure the people of their dependence on soothsayers and prognosticating almanacs. I regret that I have not had time to attempt the translation of a few passages, in which Fischart's remarkable humor and style might be preserved; but in order to give anything like a fair representation of his comic genius in English, we should have to find a man like Urquhart, the translator of Rabelais, and such translators appear as rarely as the original authors.

I can give only a little specimen of his serious prose, from his “*Book of Conjugal Virtue*,” wherein he compares matrimony to a ship :

On the sea the wind is the governing power ; in the household it is God. In this house-ship, trust in God fills the sails favorably : the mast, to which the sails are fastened, is the Divine institution of marriage : the anchor is a believing, enduring hope. The ship’s tackle is the house-furniture ; the freight is all household service ; the crew are those who perform it : the sea is the world, the great sea-waves are the many troubles and anxieties which come to the house-folks, in trying to support themselves in honor. The tacking of the ship is the going out and in : the lading and unlading are the expenses and the incomes. Shipwreck is the ruin that comes upon a house, either from dying away of the wind of God, or from the slack, evil sails of mistrust, or from dissipated courses.

The shrouds on the mast are a good conscience ; the pennon at the mast-head is faith in God, the compass is the commandments of God. The rudder is Obedience, the figure-head at the prow is the fear and honor of God. The deck is decent life and fidelity of them that serve. Pirates are the devils that disturb married life, and the envious who attack the house-ship. And finally, even as the islands of the sea,—yea, half the world—were not inhabited save for navigation, so lands and places would be desolate, but for the households of marriage. And as unto him who goes to sea the sailing prospers, so he prospers in his household who applies an honest art and skill thereto. Not unjustly do we compare a household to a vessel, since the first house and the first house-keeping, during and after the Deluge, were a ship and in a ship.

Fischart was a man of strong religious and patriotic feelings. In his “*Serious Warning to the beloved Germans*,” he gives a picture of what Germany then was and what she should be, which will apply to the history of the first half of this century. “What honor is it to you,” he asks, “that you praise the old Germans because

they fought for their freedom, because they suffered no bad neighbors to molest them? And you disregard your own freedom, you can hardly be secure in your own land, you allow your neighbor to tie his horse, head and tail, to your hedge." Fischart was a native of Elsass, and the neighbor, of course, was France. In another poem, he exclaims: "The flower of freedom is the loveliest blossom! May God let this excellent flower expand in Germany everywhere: then come peace, joy, rest and renown!"

Fischart first introduced the Italian sonnet into German literature. His poetical versions of some of the Psalms more nearly approach Luther's in rugged grandeur than those of any other writer of the time; but his verse lacks the ease and the animation of his prose. As a prose writer, he gives exactly that element to the language which the Reformers could not furnish in their graver works—an element of playful and grotesque humor which does not again appear until we find it in Richter. But Fischart, coming after Luther and profiting by his labors, cannot be called a founder. Had he fallen upon other times—for instance on an age of dramatic literature, like Shakespeare—his great natural powers might have been more broadly and happily developed. As in the case of Wolfram von Eschenbach, we feel that the man must have been greater than his works.

I have mentioned the corruption which came upon the

language about the close of the sixteenth century, and have given you two instances to show that it was grievously felt by men of intelligence. In spite of the continual religious and political agitation, the class of cultivated persons slowly increased: the need of a literary reformation was recognized, and finally, in 1617, a year before the breaking out of the Thirty Years' War, a society was formed, on the model of those Italian literary associations, some of which exist to this day. It was called the "Fruit-bringing Society," or the "Order of the Palm": its chief object was to restore and preserve the purity of the German tongue. It seems like an omen of the future that this society—the first sign of a distinct literary aspiration since the Crusades—should have been founded in the Duchy of Weimar. It was followed by the "Sincere Society of the Pine," in Strasburg, in 1633; the "German-thinking Brotherhood," in Hamburg, in 1643, and various later associations, the objects of which were identical or related. Now, although literature cannot be created by societies, literary influence can be; and it was a member of the Order of the Palm whose example and success made the High-German the exclusive language of poetry, as Luther, a hundred years before, had made it the language of prose.

I allude to Martin Opitz, the founder of what is called the Silesian school. He was born in 1597, some years after Fischart's death, and died in 1639. His short life

was one of such successful labor, when we consider the unfortunate time, that his deserts, on account of what he did for the language, overbalance the harm which he inflicted upon the popular taste by a false system. His prose work, upon the principles of German poetry, written in 1624, declared, in advance, the character of nearly all the poetic literature of the century. His doctrine is, briefly, that the author should use only the pure High-German; that he should draw his themes from Nature, but not describe things as they are, so much as represent them as they might be, or ought to be; and, finally, that his only models should be the classic authors. Opitz seems to have followed the French work of Scaliger, and his views therefore harmonize with that of the French classical school of the time. He was both crowned as a poet and ennobled by the Emperor Ferdinand; he received official stations and honors, and his influence thus became much more extended and enduring than the character of his works would now lead us to suppose. We can scarcely say, in fact, that he was taken down from his lofty pedestal until about the middle of the last century. But the establishment of the literary societies and the example of Opitz certainly saved verse, in those days, from the disgraceful condition into which prose had fallen; for, while the prose writers of the seventeenth century utterly lack the strength and dignity and tenderness and idiomatic picturesqueness of those of the Refor-

mation, either expressing themselves awkwardly and laboriously, or showing the taint of a vulgar dialect, the poets, with all their pedantry and affectation, are always admirably pure in language and careful in diction.

Opitz was a man of the world, with more ambition than principle. A Protestant, he could become the secretary of Count Dohna, who used torture to force Catholicism upon his Silesian vassals; a German, he died in the service of the King of Poland. We could not expect to find the fiery sincerity of a true poet expressed in such a life; and we do not find it in his works. In form and language he is almost perfect: within the limits which he fixed for himself, he displays an exquisite taste, and we cannot come upon his works, directly from those which immediately preceded them, without a sudden surprise and pleasure. Take the two opening stanzas of his poem "To the Germans," which seems to have been inspired by some event of the Thirty Years' War:

Auff, auff, wer Teutsche Frey-	Up, now! who German Freedom
heit liebet,	loveth,
Wer Lust, für Gott zu fechten	And who for God is proud to
hat!	bleed!
Der Schein, den mancher von	Mere show of faith, that many
sich giebet	moveth,
Verbringet keine Ritter-that.	Was never nurse of knightly
	deed!
Wann fug vnd Vrsach ist zu	When need and cause command
brechen,	decision,

Wan Feind nicht Freund mehr bleiben kan,	When former friends as foes we ban,
Da muss man nur vom Sehen sprechen,	Then speech must follow clearer vision,
Da zeigt das Hertze seinen Mann.	And by his heart we know the man.
Lass die von jhren Kräfften sagen,	They on their strength may prate reliance
Die schwach vnd bloss von Tu- gend sind :	Whose virtue's weak, and bare, and cold :
Mit trotzen wird man Bienen jagen,	'Tis chasing bees to talk de- fiance,
Ein Sinn von Ehren, der gewinnt.	But Honor wins because 'tis bold !
Wie gross vnd starck der Feind sich mache,	Though mightily the foe may face us,
Wie hoch er schwingt Muth vnd Schwert,	And wave a sword that terror spreads,
So glaube doch, die gute Sache	The cause each true man now embraces
Ist hundert tausend Köpffe werth.	Is worth a hundred thousand heads !

This is almost the German of to-day. The quaint, archaic character of Fischart's verses and Eber's hymns has suddenly disappeared ; we hear only familiar words and melodies. From this time forward the language of German poetry is modern, and the authors must be valued according to our present standards. I will quote one other brief lyric of Opitz, as an example of his occasional grace and sweetness :

EILE DER LIEBE.

Ach liebste, lass vns eilen,
Wir haben zeit :
Es schadet das verweilen
Vns beyderseit.

THE HASTE OF LOVE.

Ah, sweetheart, let us hurry !
We still have time.
Delaying thus we bury
Our mutual prime.

Der edlen schönheit Gaben	Beauty's bright gift shall perish
Fliehn fuss für fuss,	As leaves grow sere :
Dass alles, was wir haben,	All that we have and cherish
Verswinden muss.	Shall disappear.

Der Wangen Ziehr verbleichet,	The cheek of roses fadeth,
Das Haar wird greiss,	Gray grows the head ;
Der Augen Feuer weichet,	And fire the eyes evadeth,
Die Brunst wird Eiss.	And passion's dead.

Das Mündlein von Corallen	The mouth, love's honeyed win-
	ner,
Wird vngestalt,	Is formless, cold ;
Die Hand als Schnee verfallen,	The hand, like snow, gets thin-
	ner,
Vnd du wirst alt.	And thou art old !

Drumb lass vns jetzt geniessen	So let us taste the pleasure
Der Jugend Frucht,	That youth endears,
Eh' als wir folgen müssen	Ere we are called, to measure
Der Jahre Flucht.	The flying years !

Wo du dich selber liebest,	Give, as thou lov'st and livest,
So liebe mich !	Thy love to me,
Gieb mir das, wann du giebest	Even though, in what thou
	givest,
Verlier auch ich.	My loss should be !

The tendency of the literary societies, like that of the guilds of the Master-singers, was to increase the quantity of aspirants for poetic honors, while unfavorably affecting the quality of their productions. It is probable that the despotism of the French, or pseudo-classical ideas, was as severe, in its way, as the metrical rules of the Masters ; but it was a despotism of principles, not of mechanical forms. The number of writers during the century was greater than that of the six-

teenth, and, if we set aside Luther and Fischart from the latter, their average performance was of a higher quality. It appears to be a level which we are crossing, but there is a gradual ascending slope perceptible, if we look a little closer. There is, fortunately, such a radical difference of spirit between the German and the French languages that the power of imitation is limited: the French models could not be reproduced without losing much of their original character. Moreover, the religious element, to some extent, operated against the foreign influence in literature; for, about the middle of the century, the dry theological life which succeeded the Reformation was quickened by a change. Paul Gerhardt, and after him especially Spener, inaugurated a mild, gentle, half ecstatic form of devotion, which infected large classes throughout Germany, and continued to exist and operate in the following century. It was rather a sentiment than an active force; and coming immediately after the misery of the desolating war, it had something of the character of those prayer-meetings which business men hold in Wall Street during a financial crisis, and at no other time; yet it was genuine, and it was wholly German—therefore a good and necessary agency, which operated indirectly upon literature.

The seventeenth century is therefore interesting to us as a field of conflicting influences, and it is curious to see how they sometimes unconsciously existed side

by side. The Order of the Palm, for instance, contained nine noble members to one commoner,—that is, nine who habitually used the French, as a court-language, yet were associated in order to preserve the purity of German! Many of the poets of the Silesian school were nobles; and by the middle of the century the reigning Saxon princes began to imitate the course of their predecessors, four or five hundred years before, in patronizing Literature. The field of letters, which had previously been Suabia, Franconia and the Upper Rhine, was now suddenly transferred to Saxony and Silesia, and all the noted authors of the century were produced there. Fully as many writers appeared as during the age of the Minnesingers, and the proportion of inferior talent is about the same. I must necessarily adopt the same plan in treating of them—select the few who lift themselves above the general level of mediocrity, and let the rest go, for the present. The standard of language and the general character of diction, which Opitz established, were followed by all his successors, and for this reason our study of the age and its irregular growth is greatly lightened.

The next poet, in the order of birth, was Paul Flemming, whose short life, from 1609 to 1640, interests us as much, by its consistent manliness and truth, as we are repelled by the worldliness and want of principle of Martin Opitz. Longfellow, you will remember, gives Paul Flemming's name to the hero of his "*Hyperion*."

He was a Saxon, the son of a wealthy clergyman. As a young man he was attached to an embassy sent by the Duke of Schleswig-Holstein to Moscow, and immediately after his return, joined the famous embassy to Persia which was described by Olearius. The privations of this journey, which occupied four years, so undermined his health that he died in a year after his return to Germany. He had just taken the degree of Doctor of Medicine at Leyden, had settled in Hamburg, and was preparing for his marriage, when he was called away, leaving a beautiful legacy in his poems. He surpasses Opitz, who was his model, in warmth and tenderness and sincerity of tone. There is less of a cold, hard, exquisite polish manifest in his lines, but they are more simply melodious and fluent. If Opitz, in his manner only, reminds us somewhat of Pope, Flemming has a slight resemblance to Collins. He possesses one quality which was developed by his many years of travel, which distinguishes him from all other writers of his time, and which, had he lived, might have given him a much greater eminence: he had a clear, objective power of looking at the world and the life of men. After the age of twenty-four, but two years of his life were spent in Germany; and he was denied that rest and quiet development which might have emancipated him from the literary fashions in which he was educated. That he would have so emancipated himself I think is certain; for he shows so clear and healthy a vision, so

broad and warm a humanity. His power of description, moreover, was remarkably vigorous and picturesque. The opening of his poem on a cavalry soldier reminds us at once of old George Chapman and of Schiller:

Ein frischer Heldenmuht ist über alle Schätze,
Ist über allen Neid : er selbst ist sein Gesetze,
Sein Mahl, sein Sold, sein Preiss. Er reisset durch die Zeit,
Vergnüget sich durch sich, lässt bey sich Ruh' und Streit,
Inn gleicher Waage stehn.

In all that Paul Flemming wrote—in his warlike alexandrines, in his hymns, his sonnets, and in his lyrics and madrigals—I find an equal excellence. For sweetness and a delicate play of fancy, some of his sonnets approach those of Petrarch, and there is more genuine passion in the address to his soul, entitled “Why delayest thou?” than in all Opitz ever wrote. Flemming’s poems were first collected and published, two years after his death, by the father of his betrothed bride. The sonnet which he wrote on his death-bed is a good illustration both of his genius and his fine manhood:

Ich war an Kunst und Gut, an	In art, wealth, standing, was I
Stande gross und reich,	strong and free ;
Dess Glückes lieber Sohn, von	Of honored parents, fortune’s
Eltern guter Ehren,	chosen son,
Frey, Meine; kunte mich aus	Free, and mine own, and mine
meinen Mitteln nehren ;	own substance won ;
Mein shall floh überweit : kein	I woke far echoes,—no one sang
Landsmann sang mir gleich ;	like me ;

Von reisen hochgepreist ; für keiner Mühe bleich ;	Praised for my travels, toiling cheerfully,
Jung, wachsam, unbesorgt. Man wird mich nennen hören,	Young, watchful, eager, — named for what I've done,
Biss dass die lezte Glut diss al- les wird verstören.	Till the last sands of earthy time be run.
Diss, Deutsche Klarien, diss gantze danck ich Euch !	This, German Muses, was your legacy !
Verzeiht mirs, bin ichs werth, Gott, Vater, Liebste, Freunde ?	God, Father, Dearest, Friends, is my worth so ?
Ich sag Euch gute Nacht und trete willig ab :	I say good night, and now must disappear :
Sonst alles ist gethan biss an das schwartze Grab.	The black grave waits, all else is finished here :
Was frey dem Tode steht, das thu er seinem Feinde !	What Death may do, that do he to his foe !
Was bin ich viel besorgt, den Othem aufzugeben ?	To yield my breath shall bring me little strife :
An mir ist minder nichts, das lebet, als mein Leben !	There's naught of life in me that less lives than my life !

I give one more example, for the sake of its brief strength and grace :

Lass dich nur nichts nicht tauren	My soul, no dark depression borrow
mit trauren !	From sorrow !
Sey stille !	Be still !
Wie Gott es fügt,	As God disposeth now,
So sey vergnügt,	Be cheerful thou,
Mein Wille !	My will !
Was wilt du heute sorgen	To-day, why wilt thou trouble borrow,
auff morgen ?	For to-morrow ?
der eine	One alone
steht allem für ;	Careth for all that be :
Der giebt auch dir	He'll give to thee
das deine !	Thine own !

Sey nur in allen Handel

ohn Wandel,
Steh' feste !

Was Gott beschleust,
das ist und heisst
das beste.

Stand, then, whatever 's under-
taken,

Unshaken !
Lift up thy breast !

Whatso thy God ordains,
Is and remains
The best !

Paul Flemming is another instance, like Schiller and Burns and Charles Lamb, where the quality of the author's character becomes a part of his fame. One who knows nothing of his personal history will feel his nature in his works. I should like to linger longer in his company, but the mild eyes of Simon Dach, the huge wig of Gryphius, and the modest dignity of Friedrich von Logau's attitude warn me that we are not yet halfway through the century.

Of Simon Dach there is little to be said. He was born on the eastern verge of Germany, at Memel, in the beginning of the century, passed the greater part of his life as Professor of Poetry at the University of Königs-berg, and died in 1659. He was a follower of the Sile-sian school, and a writer of many hymns which combine correctness of form with sincere devotional feeling. His natural tendency seems to have been to imitate the *Volkslieder*, or common songs of the people, and how narrowly he missed an original place in literature may be seen from the popularity of his song "*Anke von Tharaw*," which every German knows and sings at this day. It is written in the Low-German of Eastern

Prussia. The tradition says that Annie of Tharaw was betrothed to him and then left him for another, whereupon he wrote the tender ballad as a piece of bitter irony; but the same story is told of the authorship of our familiar Scotch ballad, "Annie Lawrie," and is perhaps untrue in both cases. The feeling, in both the Scotch and the Low-German ballad, is very similar, as you will notice, and the melodies attached to both are as tender as the words. I will give you the original, and Longfellow's admirable translation:

Anke von Tharaw öss, de my geföllt, Se öss mihn Lewen, mihn Goet on mihn Gölt.	Annie of Tharaw, my true love of old, She is my life, and my goods, and my gold.
---	---

Anke von Tharaw hefft wedder eer Hart Op my gerüchtet ön Löw'on ön Schmart.	Annie of Tharaw, her heart once again To me has surrendered in joy and in pain.
--	--

Anke von Tharaw mihn Rikh- dom, mihn Goet, Du mihne Seele, mihn Fleesch on mihn Bloet !	Annie of Tharaw, my riches, my good, Thou, O my soul, my flesh, and my blood !
--	---

Quöm allet Wedder glihk ön ons tho schlahn, Wy syn gesönnt, by een anger tho stahn.	Then come the wild weather, come sleet or come snow, We will stand by each other however it blow.
--	--

Kranckheit, Berfälgung, Bedröf- nös on Pihn, Sal vnsrer Löve, Vernöttinge syn.	Oppression, and sickness, and sorrow, and pain Shall be to our true love as links to the chain.
---	--

Recht as een Palmen-Bohm äver söck stöcht, Je mehr en Hagel on Regen an- föcht ;	As the palm-tree standeth so straight and tall, The more the hail beats, and the more the rains fall,—
So wardt de Löw' ön ons mächtig on groht, Dörch Kryltz, dörch Lyden, dörch allerley Noht.	So love in our hearts shall grow mighty and strong, Through crosses, through sor- rows, through manifold wrong.
Wördest du glihk een mal von my getrennt, Leewdest dar, wor öm dee Sönne kuhn kennt ;	Shouldst thou be torn from me to wander alone, In a desolate land where the sun is scarce known,—
Eck wöll dy fülgen dörch Wöler, dörch Mär, Dörch Yhss, dörch Ihsen, dörch fihndlöcket Hähr.	Through forests I'll follow, and where the sea flows, Through ice, and through iron, through armies of foes.
Anke von Tharaw, mihn Licht, mihne Sönn, Mihn Leven schlucht öck ön dihnet henönn.	Annie of Tharaw, my light and my sun, The threads of our two lives are woven in one.
Wat öck geböde, wart van dy gedahn, Wat öck verböde, dat lätstu my stahn.	Whate'er I have bidden thee thou hast obeyed, Whatever forbidden thou hast not gainsaid.
Wat heft de Löve däch ver een Bestand, Wor nich een Hart öss, een Mund, eene Hand ?	How in the turmoil of life can love stand, Where there is not one heart, and one mouth, and one hand ?
Wor öm söck hartaget, kabbelt on schleyht, On glihk den Hungen on Katten begeyht.	Some seek for dissension, and trouble, and strife ; Like a dog and a cat live such man and wife.

Anke von Tharaw, dat war wy nich dohn,	Annie of Tharaw, such is not our love ;
Du böst myn Dyhfken, myn Schahpken, mihn Hohn.	Thou art my lambkin, my chick, and my dove.
Wat öck begehre, begehrest du ohk,	Whate'er my desire is, in thine may be seen ;
Eck laht den Rock dy, du hätst my de Brohk.	I am king of the household, and thou art its queen.
Dit öss dat, Anke, du söteste Ruh,	It is this, O my Annie, my heart's sweetest rest,
Een Lihf on Seele wart uht öck on Du.	That makes of us twain but one soul in one breast.
Dit mahckt dat Lewen tom Hämmlischen Rihk,	This turns to a heaven the hut where we dwell ;
Dörch Zanken wart et der Hel- len gelihk.	While wrangling soon changes a home to a hell.

We cannot wonder that the peasant-poets were silent during this century. The people had suffered too sorely to sing much else than those devotional poems, in which they were directed to find consolation. This was the greatest misfortune bequeathed by the Thirty Years' War—that the nobles, as a class, soon repaired their losses and enjoyed their former state, while the people were so bruised and crippled, so weak and destitute of the means of recovering their strength, that their material condition was probably worse, and their opportunities for development less, than under the Hohenstaufen Emperors. The war lasted so long that it finally educated its own soldiery, from whose brutal character no decent song of battle could be expected. A later generation, at the end of the century, gave us

one song, or rather ballad of war, which has outlived all the others of the time—the well-known “*Prinz Eugenius, der edle Ritter*,” which celebrates the bravery of Prince Eugene of Savoy at the battle of Belgrade. The fifteenth and the sixteenth centuries were much more prolific in folk-songs, and they were of a better literary character than those of the seventeenth century.

Returning to the Silesian school, we find that the first important successor of Opitz was Andreas Gryphius, also a Silesian, born in 1616. He was well educated, a remarkable philologist for his time, familiar with the classical and Oriental languages and all the living tongues of Europe; he traveled for two years, visiting Italy and England, became Syndic of Glogau, his native place, and died in 1664. Gryphius must be placed below Opitz as a lyric poet, although in form and finish he is an equal; but he did not create a school, like the latter. He only obeyed the laws which had been already adopted. His poetry has a melancholy, almost a dreary character: his favorite themes were churchyards, death, and rest after troubles. But he deserves to be specially mentioned as a dramatic author. He was the first to elevate the dramatic literature of Germany, which, up to this time, seems to have been chiefly modeled on the puppet plays and miracle plays. As a good English scholar, Gryphius had the highest models, and one of his comedies, “*Peter Squeuze*,” gives tolerably clear evidence that he was acquainted with Shake-

speare. It is true that Peter Quince of the "Midsummer Night's Dream" was already known in Germany, as a character, through the English traveling actors; but Gryphius imitates the device of a play within a play, from the "Pyramus and Thisbe" of Shakespeare. His tragedies of "*Leo Armenius*," "*Papinian*" and "*Karl Stuart*" are declamatory and grandiloquent, somewhat like those of Dryden's famous rival, Elkanah Settle; but they at least inaugurated in Germany a much better character of dramatic art. In this respect, we must give Gryphius a similar credit to that which we have given to Opitz: he advanced the literary standard of his day. After the models which they furnished,—the one in purity of language and the external structure of verse, the other in the dramatic treatment of a proper subject,—no author dared to return to the imperfect standard of previous times. There was thus a general advance of skill and taste, in spite of the adherence to a false system. We see something similar in the phenomena of our American literature at the present day. But the "sensational" element, as it is called, which has crept into English and American literature, is even worse in its effect on the mental habits of the people than was the affected classicism of the seventeenth century; for it goes beyond "the modesty of nature," instead of falling below it.

With Andreas Gryphius the first Silesian school came to an end. Vilmar, in his history of the period, gives

some curious examples of its affectations, and some of them remind us of similar features in the English literature of the last century. Where the earliest German poets used simple substantives, as *night*, the forest, the sea, the mediæval authors added the most obvious adjectives, as *dark night*, the *greenwood*, the *blue sea*. The Silesians made a deliberate chase after elegant and original words, and the discovery of a new adjective was a cause of rejoicing to the brotherhoods of the Palm and the Pine. Thus, *black evening* was first adopted; but presently some fortunate poet hit upon *brown*, and all evenings were brown, to the end of the century. You will find the same word, applied to evening and shade, by Gray and Collins; and morning, you will notice, was nearly always *purple* in the last century. In the sensational school, now-a-days, all things are opal, topaz, emerald or ruby; and it is doubtful whether we can get any farther. Opitz established the fashion: he made all tears *salt*, all water *glassy*, all north-stars *cold*, for his followers. The earth, according to his mood, was either a *great round*, a *beautiful round* or a *desolate round*. Addison calls it a "terrestrial ball," and Tennyson styles the moon "an argent round."

Now, you can readily imagine that after Opitz and Gryphius had been accepted as models, their later followers, being utterly deficient in original genius, knew nothing else to do but to copy and exaggerate their most obvious characteristics. This is, in fact, the distinction

of what is called the second Silesian school. It rose into existence, toward the end of the century, under the leadership of two noblemen, Hoffmanswaldau and Lohenstein. Let me give you a single specimen from the first of these, and I think you will require no further illustration of the character of the school: "Your countenance gives strength and light to the stars. The year has four seasons, you but one, for the spring always blossoms on your lips. Winter does not approach you, and the sun is hardly permitted to shine beside the beam of your eyes. You carry virtue in a splendid purple dish, ornamented, as it seems, with white ivory: your mouth is the retreat of a thousand nightingales, and the tongues of angels beg to be admitted therein as servants." Add to such stuff as this the mechanical jingle of Siegmund von Birken—whom Southey seems to have imitated in his "Falls of Lodore,"—the tiresome melodies of Christian Gryphius, the literary son of his father Andreas, and the blood-and-thunder tragedies of Lohenstein, and we cannot help feeling that the only use of this second Silesian school was to create such a disgust with the system, that a reaction must inevitably follow. So, in England, the bombast and nonsense of the aristocratic writers, of exactly the same period, was followed by the revival of Queen Anne's time.

This is the translation of a passage from Siegmund von Birken, which may have suggested the tinkling music in the "Falls of Lodore":

WELCOME TO SPRING.

They're glancing, entrancing and dancing,
The blossoming meadows ;
While gleameth, and beameth, and streameth
The dew in the shadows.
They're spreading, and wedding, and shedding,
The freshly-leaved branches ;
And rustle, and hustle with bustle
The wind as it launches.
They spring out, and sing out, and ring out,
The pipes in their blowing ;
In daytime the playtime of May-time
The shepherds are showing.

But there was one man, also a Silesian, yet standing as much alone as Milton, and Dryden after him, whose works are as the shadow of a rock in a weary land. This is Friedrich von Logau, another of the neglected minds who first received recognition and critical justice from Lessing. He was born in 1604, educated at Brieg, in Silesia, where he was a page in the house of the reigning Duke, and afterward, having studied jurisprudence, an official in the chancery of the Duchy. He was poor, dependent on a small salary, and his life was one of toil and trouble. A complete collection of his aphorisms, epigrams and lyric poems was published under the name of Salomon von Golaw, in 1654, and in the following year he died. Five or six years before his death, he was elected a member of the Order of the Palm ; but he seems to have had very little intercourse with the other Silesian members, and his works show only slight traces of the influence of the school.

Friedrich von Logau is a noble character, in whatever aspect we consider him. He was an earnest thinker in a thoughtless time; he was a strong, believing, aspiring soul, a man of steadfast integrity and virtue, in an age of lawlessness and vice. His possessions were wasted by the terrible war; Wallenstein's troops overran the Duchy, and left a trail of barbarism behind them; but nothing could shake his inherent goodness and bravery for the sake of good. The thousand brief aphorisms which he has left were written as they came to him during a period of twenty-five years of labor: they are simply the necessary recreation of his mind. The governing principle of his life was to do his nearest duty, and he only gave to letters the time which he could spare from his office and the care of his family. The following couplet of Logau, which is almost proverbial to-day, will be readily recognized in Longfellow's translation:

Gottes Mühlen mahlen langsam, mahlen aber trefflich klein;	Though the mills of God grind slowly, yet they grind ex- ceeding small;
Ob aus Langmut er sich säumet, bringt mit Schärf' er alles ein.	Though with patience he stands waiting, with exactness grinds he all.

This image of a mill seems to have been a favorite with him. I find the following satirical allusion to some one of his acquaintance:

Fungus' mouth is like a mill, and as fast as ever ran;
For each handful wit it grinds, there's a bushel wordy bran.

Here is another:

A mill-stone and the human heart are whirled forever round :
Where either nothing has to grind, it must itself be ground.

This is the general character of Logau's aphorisms—brief, pithy, witty, but with an underlying tone, either of wisdom, or satire, or faith, or tenderness. Many of his couplets or verses have strayed away from him, and are used at this day by thousands who never guess whence they came. I remember that when I first traveled on foot through Germany, I often saw these lines in the *Stammbücher*, or albums, of the traveling journey-men whom I met on the highways:

Hoffnung ist ein fester Stab,
Und Geduld ein Reisekleid,
Da man mit durch Welt und Grab
Wandelt in die Ewigkeit.

These lines I afterward found in Logau's aphorisms. Like all genuine, thinking brains, his pages are full of suggestions of the expressions of later and more fortunate authors. Goethe says: "Es irrt der Mensch, so lang er strebt," but Logau had said before him—"Dass ich irre, bleibt gewiss, alldieweil ein Mensch ich bin." Logau wrote:

"Frühling ist des Jahres Rose; Rosen sind des Frühlings Zier;
Und der Rosen Rosenfürstin sey und heisset billig Ihr';"

and two hundred years after him Tennyson wrote:

"Queen rose of the rosebud garden of girls,
Queen lily and rose in one."

The modern German poet Rückert says: "Repetition is compensation for the transitory bliss"—and we find in Logau "The best nourishment of pleasure is repeated pleasure." I might extend this list of correspondences, and thus prove, backward, the genuine quality of Logau's genius. There could be no greater contrast than between the members of the second Silesian school, with their thin and weak pretense of ideas, their inflated diction and deluge of interminable works, and this hard-working, lonely, modest man, crowding his honest thought and sound reflection into a few brief lines, and giving them to the world under an assumed name. He might have furnished not only all of them, but also the devotional poets, Gerhard and Franck, with a better material than they found. There are several sermons and hymns compressed into these four lines of Logau:

Menschlich ist es, Sünde treiben ;
 Teuflich ist 's, in Sünden bleiben ;
 Christlich ist es, Sünde lassen ;
 Göttlich ist es, Sünd' erlassen.

During the whole of the seventeenth century, there is no prose which at all approaches that of Luther in simplicity and strength. We find, it is true, that the provincialism of the writers,—the marks of their particular dialects,—begin to disappear, and the pure High-German, under the influence of the literary societies, is gradually gaining ground ; but the popular sources from which Luther drew so much are neglected. Both

Silesian schools, but especially the second, operated unfavorably upon the prose style of the day. Opitz and Gryphius taught a hard, cold, formal manner, whereby the language loses much of its native life and warmth, and the second school was such a mixture of affectation and bombast, that many of its productions now seem to us to be intentional parodies of their authors. Lohenstein's romance of "Arminius and Thusnelda," covering nearly 3,000 quarto pages, printed in double columns, is simply monstrous: we marvel that an individual should commit, or a public endure, such an overwhelming offense. But we remember how our own ancestors were fascinated with Clarissa Harlow, and how the German public of to-day reads the nine volumes and 4,000 pages of Gutzkow's "*Zauberer von Rom*."

The best prose work of the time is certainly Grimmelhausen's "*Simplicissimus*," which bears nearly the same relation to the pompous romances of the Silesian authors as Fielding to Richardson. It is a story of common life, told in bare, clear, racy language, and with the same fresh realism which we find in "Tom Jones" and "Joseph Andrews." Next in value I should rank the homilies and didactic writings of the monk Abraham à Santa Clara, which are also simple in tone, and really effective because they betray no straining after effect. Zinkgref's historical sketches, the travels of Olearius, and the orations of Baron Canitz, have, at least, the merit of being tolerable where nearly all is positively

bad. We can only say that the average performance of the prose writers is higher at the close than it was at the beginning of the century. The language by this time was sufficiently developed, and the excellences and faults of its literature so abundantly manifested, that it was ready for the use of better intellects. These came, soon afterward, in Haller and Hagedorn and Gellert—then followed the first master-mind of the great modern period, Lessing.

In studying this long and interrupted intellectual history of the German race, we must beware of confining our interest to individual authors, or even to particular eras. This seventeenth century, which we have been considering, becomes a tedious field of research if we separate it from the centuries before and after it. Each author must be judged, first, in relation to his own time, and the temporary influences which gave character to his works; then, by the absolute standard of achievement, by his contribution to the permanent elements of growth in his country and in the world. Unless we acquire this latter and broader habit of vision, we may fail to see the true meaning of many lives, the true importance of many historical periods; and we shall surely derive from the general survey one lesson which might escape us if we looked only to particulars—one lesson of the greatest value to every young American whose tastes or talents lead him toward literature:—that nothing is more delusive than the fashion of the

day: that the immediate popularity of a work is no test whatever of its excellence: that the writer who consults the general moods or likings of the public is never likely to achieve genuine and permanent success:—while he who considers only the truth of his thought, the simplicity and clearness of its expression, and its probable value to all humanity, may seem to be disparaged or neglected for a time, but shall surely be acknowledged by that everlasting, lofty intelligence of men which is above all fleeting fashions of literature.

VII.

LESSING.

WE now reach a period where the language is wholly modern. We find no difference, except in style and habit of thought, between the authors of Queen Anne's time and those of our own day: so our German brother finds no greater difference between the present and the authors who were born one hundred and fifty years ago. From this period, we are able to contrast and compare the two languages, as they are now spoken, and thus to appreciate intelligently the two literatures.

Instead of giving a general historical survey of modern German Literature, I shall take up, in the order of their lives, the six most prominent authors; and, by describing them and their works separately, give you, through them, a picture of the times in which they lived. They are—Lessing, Klopstock, Wieland, Herder, Schiller and Goethe. The great era of German Literature, which they created, corresponds to the Augustan in Rome and the Elizabethan in England—an era which commenced about the middle of the last century, and terminated, with the death of Goethe, in the year 1832. Within the prescribed limits, it will not be possible to give a complete

history of the period ; because, more than the literature of any other language, that of Germany, on account of the larger culture of its creative minds, is connected with the contemporary literature of the rest of Europe. We cannot dissociate it, as we can that of England and of France, from the influence of foreign thought and the literary fashions prevalent in other countries. But the life of every author, who has shared in shaping the development of his generation, always reflects, in an individual form, the influences which affect the class to which he speaks, since he must admit them and take them into account, although he himself may remain comparatively independent. I hope, therefore, that an account of the men who have created the modern literature of Germany will, at the same time, enable us to estimate the character of that literature, and its importance as an element of human development.

One who is familiar with the German language will have little difficulty in selecting the characteristics which distinguish the literature of Germany from that of other nations. You are aware that the German language is subtle, rich and involved in its structure ; while the English, with an even greater flexibility, generally remains realistic, simple and direct. These prominent characteristics repeat themselves in the two literatures, for speech and thought have a reciprocal influence. A great genius partly forces the language he uses to adapt itself to his own intellectual quality, and he is partly

forced by the language to submit his intellect to its laws. Apart from this circumstance, however, the natural tendency of a German author is to express himself in accordance with an intellectual system, which he has discovered or imagined, and adopted as his own; while the English author, if he be honest, is more concerned for the thing he expresses, and its effect, than for its fitness as a part of any such system. In the private correspondence of the German authors, we find their works reciprocally analyzed, according to the literary principles of each; their conceptions are tested by abstract laws; and felicities of expression, which an English critic usually notices first, are with them a secondary interest.

Now, where such theories, or systems, harmonize with the eternal canons of Literary Art—and of *all* Art, the key to which may be given in three words, Elevation, Proportion, Repose—they help, not hinder, the author's best development. Goethe, Lessing and Schiller are illustrious examples of this. But where the system reflects some special taste, some strong personal tendency, as in the cases of Klopstock, Wieland and Richter, it carries its own limitations along with it. The author who allows himself to be thus circumscribed, may become ruler over some fair province of literature, but he cannot belong to the reigning line of the kingdom.

This tendency, perhaps, explains the fact that German literature seems to reflect a greater range of intellectual

and spiritual experience than ours. It is more frank, intimate and confidential—sometimes to a degree which is almost repellant to Anglo-Saxon reserve; for the author is less careful to conceal the operations of his mind;—it touches the nature of man on many sides, and endeavors to illuminate all the aspects of life. The theoretic tendencies of its authors do little harm, for they counteract each other—nay, they often do good by substituting a fashion of thought for the narrower form of a fashion in expression.

During the whole of the seventeenth century and the beginning of the eighteenth, as I have already said, the literary history of Germany may almost be compared to a desert. The annals of scarcely any other modern nation show such a long period of barrenness. But early in the last century, Gleim and Gellert were born—two authors who seem to have been destined to stand between the waste that went before and the harvest which followed. They are thus important or insignificant, according to the side from which we look at them. But, even before they had reached their productive activity, greater minds were in the world. In the year 1724, Klopstock was born; in 1729, Lessing; in 1733, Wieland; in 1744, Herder; in 1749, Goethe; in 1759, Schiller, and in 1762, Richter. Every six years a new name, destined to be an independent, victorious, permanent power.

Great men never come upon an age entirely unpre-

pared to receive them. The secret influences which culminated in a fierce social and political crisis, toward the end of the century, were already at work, and there must have been a large class of receptive minds capable of sustaining those which were born to create. For these latter, however, a season of struggle was certain. There is a vast difference between the silent and the spoken protest. The courts, the universities and the clergy, at that time, held a despotic sway over opinion and taste. The young author made haste to secure his titled patron, and paid by flattery for the little freedom of expression which he was allowed to exercise. We can best measure the stagnation of the period, and its general subservience to authority, by the angry excitement which followed every attempt at literary independence. The richest gifts were repelled; the ways to larger liberty were closed as fast as they were opened; and the present glory of the German race was for a long time resisted as if it were a shame.

The man who first broke a clear, broad path out of this wilderness was Gotthold Ephraim Lessing. I choose him first because he was the true pioneer of German thought—because his life was “a battle and a march”—a long and bitter fight for truth, tolerance and freedom. If his greatest merits seem to have been overshadowed for a time by the achievements of others, they come all the more clearly to light in that distance of time which gives us the true perspective of men. We

see him now as he was, an unshaken hero of literature, always leading a forlorn hope, always armed to the teeth, always confident of the final victory. I know of no finer instance of justified self-reliance than is furnished by his life.

He was born in Camenz, a small Saxon town, where his father was a clergyman of scanty means and of a severe and stubborn nature. Being the eldest son, it was meant that he should follow his father's calling. At the age of twelve he was sent to school at Meissen, and three years afterward to the University of Leipzig. But even as a boy he asserted his independence, entirely neglecting theological studies, and devoting himself to languages, literature and the drama. The dictator in literary matters in Leipzig, at that time, was Gottsched,—a man of some ability, but pedantic, conventional and arrogant to the last degree. The boy Lessing was one of the first to dispute his authority. He became a contributor to literary journals, writing anacreontic lyrics or stinging criticisms, according to his mood, and in his eighteenth year completed a comedy, "*Der junge Gelehrte*" (The Young Savant), which was performed soon afterward. Even at that age, he recognized clearly the characteristics of French and of English literature, and became a partisan for the latter, in order to resist the French influence which was then so powerful in Germany. In a short time, he stood almost alone: there were few hands (or, at least, pens) that were not raised

against him. So poor that he was barely able to live, he was called immoral and profligate; his contempt of the reigning pedantry was ascribed to a barbaric want of taste; and his refusal to devote himself to theology was set down as atheism. The slanders prevalent in Leipzig reached his home, and were followed by angry or reproachful letters from his father. The patience and the good sense with which he endured these troubles are remarkable in one so young. In one of his letters, he quotes from Plautus the words of a father who is discontented with his son; in another, referring to his refusal to become a clergyman, he says boldly: "Religion is not a thing which a man should accept in simple faith and obedience from his parents,"—meaning that it must be developed through the aspiration of the individual soul.

In his twenty-first year, Lessing went to Berlin, where he succeeded in supporting himself by literary labor. He made the acquaintance of Moses Mendelssohn, Ramler and the poets Gleim and Von Kleist, and his mind began to develop rapidly and vigorously in a fresher and freer intellectual atmosphere. Notwithstanding his scanty earnings, he managed to collect a valuable library, and to contribute small sums from time to time for the education of his younger brothers. In the year 1755 his play of "*Miss Sara Sampson*" was completed. It was modeled on the English drama, and, as the German stage up to that time had been governed entirely by French ideas, it was a sudden and violent

innovation, the success of which was not assured until ten years later, when Lessing produced "*Minna von Barnhelm*." The English authors of Queen Anne's time—especially Swift, Steele, Addison and Pope—had an equal share with the Greek and Latin classics in determining the character of his labors. He was also a careful student of Shakespeare and of Milton, and seems to have caught from them something of the compact strength of his style.

After ten years, passed partly in Wittenberg, but mostly in Berlin, Lessing became the secretary of General Tauenzien, and in 1760 followed the latter to Breslau, where he remained five years. During this time he wrote "*Minna von Barnhelm*" and "*Laocoon*" (or the Limits of Poetry and Painting), which was published in 1766. The great era of German literature commenced with these works. The "*Laocoon*" in its style, in its equal subtlety and clearness, in its breadth of intellectual vision, was a work the like of which had not been seen before. It was above popularity, because it appealed only to the finest minds; but its lessons sank deeply into one mind—that of the young Goethe, then a student at Leipzig—and set it in the true path.

The remainder of Lessing's history is soon told. He spent two more years in Berlin, living from hand to mouth, and then accepted the proposition to go to Hamburg, and assist in establishing a new theatre. The experiment failed, and he thereupon made another. He

took a partner, and commenced the printing and publishing business upon an entirely new plan; but as neither he nor his partner had any practical knowledge of printing, they failed wretchedly in a year or two. In 1770, Lessing, aged forty-one, found himself penniless, deeply in debt, his library of six thousand volumes scattered to the winds, his father writing to him for money, and his sister reproaching him with being a heartless and undutiful son. But during those three years in Hamburg he had written his "*Dramaturgie*," a work second in importance only to his "*Laocoon*."

The Duke of Brunswick offered him the post of librarian at Wolfenbüttel, with a salary of six hundred thalers (about four hundred and fifty dollars!) a year, and thenceforth his wandering life ceased. He visited Mannheim and Vienna, and accompanied the hereditary Duke of Brunswick on a journey to Italy; but travel seems to have left little impression upon his mind. In the two or three letters from Italy, written to his betrothed wife, there is nothing about either the country or the antique sculpture, concerning which he had previously written so much. He married in 1776, lost his wife and child in a little more than a year, and then lived as before entirely for literature. The two short letters which he wrote to his friend Eschenburg, after the death of his child and wife, are wonderful expressions of the strength and tenderness of the man. I know not where to find, in all the literature of the

world, such tragic pathos expressing itself in the commonest words. He does not say what he feels, but we feel it all the more.

On the 3d of January, 1778, he writes :

I seize the moment when my wife lies utterly unconscious, to thank you for your sympathy. My happiness was only too short. And it was so hard to lose him, this son of mine ! For he had so much understanding—*so much understanding !* Do not think that the few hours of my fatherhood have made me a very ape of a father ! I know what I am saying. Was it not understanding that he came so unwillingly to the world ?—that he so soon saw its unreason ? Was it not understanding that he grasped the first chance of leaving it again ? To be sure, the little fidget-head takes his mother with him, and from me !—for there is little hope that I may keep her. I thought I might be even as fortunate as other men ; but it has turned out ill for me.

Just one week afterward he wrote to Eschenburg : “My wife is dead ; now I have also had this experience. I am glad that no other experience of the kind remains for me to endure—and am quite easy.” His “*Nathan der Weise*”—the only one of his works which has been translated and published in this country—appeared in 1779, and in 1781 he died, at the age of fifty-two.

The closing years of his life were embittered by a violent theological controversy, and the enmity which it excited against him was no doubt a cause of the slight success which his last great work, “Nathan the Wise,” attained. He had not even the consolation of knowing that the seed he had sown was vital, and had

already germinated. It was a sad ending of a singularly cheerful and courageous life.

In the biographies of authors, we do not always find that genius rests on a strong basis of character. There are many instances where we approve the mind, and condemn the man. But Lessing's chief intellectual quality was a passion for truth, so earnest and unswerving, that we cannot help expecting to find it manifested in the events of his life; and we shall not be disappointed. Whatever faults may have been his, he was always candid, honest, honorable and unselfish. He lived at a time when a very little tact and pliancy of nature might have greatly advanced his fortunes—when a little prudent reticence, now and then, would have saved him from many an angry denunciation. But he seems never to have concerned himself with anything beyond his immediate needs. "All that a man wants, is health," he once wrote: "why should I trouble myself about the future? What would be privation to many is a sufficiency to me." In one of his earlier poems, he says: "Fame never sought me, and would not, in any case, have found me. I have never craved riches, for why, during this short journey, where so little is needed, should one hoard it up for thieves rather than himself? In a little while I shall be trampled under the feet of those who come after. Why need they know upon whom they tread? I alone know who I am." This self-reliant spirit, without vanity,

only asserting itself when its independence must be maintained, is very rare among men. Lessing understood the character and extent of his own power so well, even as a young man, that all his utterances have a stamp of certainty, which is as far as possible from egotism.

We must bear in mind the fact that, when he began to write, literature was not much else than a collection of lifeless forms; that government still clung to the ideas of the Middle Ages, and that religion had, for the most part, degenerated into rigid doctrine. Lessing's position was that of a rebel, at the start. It was impossible for him to breathe the same atmosphere with the dogmatists of his day, and live. His first volume of poems, chiefly imitations of the amorous lyrics of the ancients, gave the opportunity for an attack upon his moral character. In replying to his father, who seems to have joined in the denunciation, he says: "The cause of their existence is really nothing more than my inclination to attempt all forms of poetry." He then adds: "Am I so very wrong in selecting for my youthful labor something whereon very few of my countrymen have tried their skill? And would it not be foolish in me to discontinue, until I have produced a master-piece?"

Lessing's critical articles, which he began to write during his first residence in Berlin, and especially his "Letters on Literature," soon made him respected and

feared, although they gained him few friends beyond the circle of his personal associates. Industry, combined with a keen intellectual insight, had made him an admirable practical scholar, and few men ever better knew how to manage their resources. His style, as I have said, was somewhat colored by his study of the English language. It is clear, keen and bright, never uncertain or obscure. Like the sword of Saladin it cuts its way through the finest web of speculation. He had neither reverence for names, nor mercy for pretensions, and no mind of looser texture than his own could stand before him. I know of no critical papers in any literature, at once so brilliant and so destructive. They would have had a more immediate and a wider effect, but for the fact that his antagonists represented the general sentiment of the time, which could not be entirely suppressed in them. Yet his principles of criticism were broader than mere defense and counter-attack. To Pastor Klotz, who complains of his "tone" toward him, he answers: "If I were commissioned as a Judge in Art, this would be my scale of tone: gentle and encouraging for the beginners; admiring with doubt, or doubting with admiration, for the masters; positive and repellant for the botchers; scornful for the swaggerers; and as bitter as possible for the intriguers. The Judge in Art, who has but one tone for all, had better have none."

Unfortunately, he had few opportunities of expressing

either admiration or encouragement. He never failed to recognize the merits of Moses Mendelssohn, Klopstock, Wieland and Herder ; but they were authors who stood in little need of his aid. They did not set themselves in immediate antagonism to the fashion of the age. Their growth out of it, and into an independent literary activity, was more gradual ; consequently, each of them acquired, almost at the start, a circle of admirers and followers. But Lessing marched straight forward, looking neither to the right nor to the left, indifferent what prejudices he shocked, or upon whom he set his feet. Having, as he conceived, the great minds of Greece, Rome and England as his allies in the Past, he was content to stand alone in the Present. His criticism was positive as well as negative : he not only pointed out the prevalent deficiencies in taste and knowledge, but he laid down the law which he felt to have been violated, and substituted the true for the false interpretation.

I do not think that Lessing's biographers have fully recognized the extent of his indebtedness to English authors. It has been remarked that his epigrammatic poems read like stiff translations from the classics : to me they suggest the similar performances of Swift and Herrick. The three plays by which he revolutionized the German stage—"Miss Sara Sampson," "*Minna von Barnhelm*," and "*Emilia Galotti*,"—were constructed upon English models. With them the drama of ordinary

life was introduced into Germany. They have kept their place to this day, and are, even now, more frequently performed than the plays of Goethe. Although they possess little poetic merit, they are so admirably constructed, with so much regard to the movement of the plot and its cumulative development, that they have scarcely been surpassed by any later dramatic author. Even Goethe declares that it is impossible to estimate their influence on dramatic literature.

The "*Laocoon*," although a piece of positive criticism, seems to have been negatively inspired by an English book which has long been forgotten. Joseph Spense, whose "Anecdotes" of Pope and others still survives, published in 1747 a work entitled, "*Polymetis*,"—a comparison of the poetry and the art of the ancients, in which he took the ground that they illustrate each other—in other words, that they represent the same events. Lessing, whose interest in classic art had been greatly stimulated by the labors of Winckelmann, was led to examine the subject—to contrast ancient art with ancient literature, and ascertain whether indeed they were only different modes of presenting the same subject, as Spense asserted, or whether each had its own separate and peculiar sphere of existence. The description of the fate of Laocoon and his sons, in Virgil, and the famous group of sculpture, mentioned by Pliny (now in the museum of the Vatican, at Rome), furnished him with a text, and gave the title to his work; but from

this starting-point he rises to the investigation of the nature of Poetry and Art, as methods of expression, and the laws which govern them. Where Gottsched and his school furnished patterns of versification, by which men should be able to write mechanical poetry, Lessing revealed the intellectual law, without which all verse is but a lifeless jingle, dreary to the ears of men, and prohibited by the gods.

The opening sentences of the "*Laocoon*" will give you some idea of the clearness and precision of the author's mind. He begins thus :

The first person who compared Poetry and Painting with each other, was a man of sensitive perception, who felt that both arts affected him in a similar manner. Both, he perceived, represent absent objects as present, substitute the appearance for the reality ; both are illusive, yet their illusions give pleasure.

A second man endeavored to penetrate to the source and secret of this pleasure, and discovered that in both cases it flows from the same fountain. Beauty, the conception of which we first derive from material objects, has its universal laws, which apply to many things—to action and thought, as well as to form.

A third man, reflecting upon the value and the application of these eternal laws, perceived that certain of them are predominant in painting, certain others in poetry ; and that, therefore, through the latter, Poetry may come to the illustration of Painting ; through the former Painting may illustrate Poetry, by means of elucidation and example.

The first of these men was the lover ; the second, the philosopher ; the third, the critic.

Lessing then proceeds to show that a mere copy of a natural object, no matter how admirably made, does not constitute painting, and that mere description does

not constitute poetry. In both cases the higher element of beauty is necessary, and this element can only exist under certain conditions. For instance, Poetry may express continuous action, but Art can only express suspended action. Poetry may represent the successive phases of passion, Art only a single phase at a time. The agents of form and color assist the representation, in one case ; the agency of sound in the other.

I can best give Lessing's definition of the two arts—which is at the same time a distinction between them—in his own words. He says :

Objects, which either in themselves or their parts, exist in combination, are called *bodies*. Therefore bodies, with their visible characteristics, are the proper subjects of painting.

Objects, which succeed each other, or the parts of which succeed each other, are called *actions*. Therefore actions are the legitimate subject of poetry.

All bodies, however, do not exist simply in space, but also in time. They have a continuance, and each moment of their duration they may appear differently and in different combinations. Each of these momentary appearances and combinations, is the effect of a preceding and may be the cause of a succeeding one, and thus the central point of an action. Painting may therefore imitate actions, but only by suggesting them through bodies.

On the other hand, actions cannot exist of themselves, but are obliged to depend upon certain existences. In so far as these existences are bodies, or must be so considered, poetry may represent bodies, but only by suggesting them through actions.

I must admit that this careful and delicate dissection of the principles of Art and Literature, has a greater charm for the German than for the English mind. But without considering Lessing's critical genius, we can-

not properly appreciate his power and value. He was forced into this field of activity, and his capacities were sharpened by constant exercise, yet it was his true work after all. The critical and the creative faculties never entirely harmonize in the same brain. The critic detects, by observation and analysis, what the creative genius possesses by a special, splendid instinct. It is therefore possible for an author, commencing an important work, to know beforehand *too well* how it should be done. His intellectual insight may be so clear, so sure and so finely exercised, that nothing is left for the imagination. Instead of following his feeling, knowing that many a bright surprise, many an unexpected illumination of thought will come to help him on the way, he is chilled by the critical faculty, which constantly looks over his shoulder and meddles with his freedom. The evidence of this is nowhere more apparent than in Lessing's poems and plays. With all their excellent qualities, they are almost wanting in that warm, imaginative element which welds thought and passion and speech into one inseparable body. It is remarkable that his style, which is so sustained, so dignified and flexible in his critical papers, should seem slightly hard and mechanical in his verse. His most ambitious work, "Nathan the Wise," has passages where the blank verse is strong and rhythmical, but it has also passages the effect of which is not different from that of prose. The one thing, which we can all feel better than de-

scribe, was wanting, to make him a truly great creative author; but had he possessed it, he would probably have done less service to the world. Just the man that he was, was demanded by the age in which he lived.

It appears from his correspondence and the testimony of his friends, that he wrote a drama entitled "*Faust*," the manuscript of which was lost by the publisher to whom it was sent. He never attempted to rewrite it. From the small fragment which remains, and some account of the design of the whole which has been preserved, this work was undoubtedly more poetic and imaginative than any of his other dramatic poems. It coincided with Goethe's great work only in one particular—that the soul of Faust is not lost, and Mephistopheles loses his wager. His mind was not only fruitful, but very rapid in its operation, and only the smallest portion of his literary plans was carried into effect.

One of the severest experiences which Lessing was compelled to undergo had but an indirect connection with literature. He was severely attacked by Pastor Goeze, of Hamburg, for various assertions of opinion, which the latter declared to be unchristian, and the quarrel which followed lasted during the whole of the year 1778. It was carried on by printed pamphlets, of which Lessing wrote fifteen or sixteen. The ground which Lessing assumed would hardly excite any particu-

lar comment in these days. He declared, for instance, that the spirit is more than the letter ; that the truth of the Gospels is inherent in them, and not to be demonstrated by external proof ; and that the religion of Christ would have been saved to the world, even if the Gospels had not been written. It is difficult for us to comprehend, now, the violence and bitterness with which Lessing was assailed. Efforts were made to deprive him of his situation as librarian ; the Government Censor interfered with his replies, and his life, already so lonely and cheerless, was made almost a burden. He never flinched, never uttered a complaint, never, in any way, compromised his dignity or his manly independence ; but he seems to have lost something of the hope and confidence of his early days. He must have grown somewhat weary and discouraged. No man stepped forward to stand by his side, and help him fight the battle, and the thousands of eager intelligences, for whom he really spoke and suffered, were silently waiting the result. In fact, the end of the conflict came when Lessing, after having forced Pastor Goeze to admit that the authorities of the Fathers of the Church, during the first four centuries of Christianity, would be sufficient, substantiated everything he had asserted by quoting the opinions of the Fathers. In scholarship, no theologian of his day came near him. His influence, as a religious reformer, has been immense, but is hardly yet recognized by the world. In this

sense, he was no less a martyr than Arnold of Brescia and Savonarola.

When his "Nathan the Wise" was completed, he issued a prospectus, announcing that it would be published by subscription. His object probably was to secure a little more from the publication than he could expect from a bookseller. His father had died in debt, and the calls for assistance from his elder sister were both sharp and frequent. It is rather melancholy to read his appeal to his friends, informing them that the price of the work will be one groschen (two and a half cents) for each printed sheet, and that they may deduct a commission of fifteen per cent. for their services in procuring subscriptions! As the edition did not exceed two thousand copies, the author's profits must have been very moderate. In his correspondence, Lessing speaks of the work having been finished three years previously, and then laid aside. He declares his weariness of the theological controversy, and speaks of the play as "an attack in flank," as its leading idea is religious tolerance. The three principal characters—Nathan, Saladin and the Knight Templar—represent Judaism, Islam and Christianity; and the lesson to be deduced from the plot, is simply that the test of the true religion lies in deeds and works, and not in the mere profession. The finest passage in the work is the story of the rings, which is that of the Jew Melchisedech, as told by Boccaccio, in the third tale of the Decameron. As a

specimen of Lessing's best poetical style, and a parable through which he expressed his own tolerance, I will quote it:

Nath.—Vor grauen Jahren lebt'
 ein Mann in Osten,
 Der einen Ring von unschätzba-
 rem Werth
 Aus lieber Hand besass. Der
 Stein war ein
 Opal, der hundert schöne Farben
 spielte,
 Und hatte die geheime Kraft, vor
 Gott
 Und Menschen angenehm zu
 machen, wer
 In dieser Zuversicht ihn trug.
 Was Wunder
 Dass ihn der Mann in Osten da-
 rum nie
 Vom Finger liess; und die Ver-
 fügung traf,
 Auf ewig ihn bey seinem Hause
 zu
 Erhalten. Nehmlich so. Er liess
 den Ring
 Von seinen Söhnen dem Gelieb-
 testen;
 Und setzte fest, dass diesser wie-
 derum
 Den Ring von seinen Söhnen dem
 vermache,
 Der ihm der liebste sey; und
 stets der Liebste,
 Ohn' Ansehn der Geburt, in Kraft
 allein
 Des Rings, das Haupt, der Fürst
 des Hauses werde.—
 Versteh' mich, Sultan. *Sal.*—Ich
 versteh dich. Weiter!

Nathan.—In gray antiquity there
 lived a man
 In Eastern lands, who had re-
 ceived a ring
 Of priceless worth from a be-
 loved hand.
 Its stone, an opal, flashed a hun-
 dred colors,
 And had the secret power of
 giving favor
 In sight of God and man, to him
 who wore it
 With a believing heart. What
 wonder then
 This Eastern man would never
 put the ring
 From off his finger, and should
 so provide
 That to his house it be preserved
 for ever.
 Such was the case. Unto the
 best-beloved
 Among his sons he left the ring,
 enjoining
 That he in turn bequeath it to
 the son
 Who should be dearest; and the
 dearest ever,
 In virtue of the ring, without
 regard
 To birth, be of the house the
 prince and head.
 You understand me, Sultan?

Sal.—Yes;

go on!

Nath.—So kam nun dieser Ring,
 von Sohn zu Sohn,
 Auf einen Vater endlich von
 drey Söhnen ;
 Die alle drey ihm gleich gehor-
 sam waren,
 Die alle drey er folglich gleich
 zu lieben
 Sich nicht entbrechen konnte.
 Nur von Zeit
 Zu Zeit schien ihm bald der, bald
 dieser, bald
 Der Dritte, — so wie jeder sich
 mit ihm
 Allein befand, und sein ergie-
 ssend Herz
 Die andern zwey nicht theilten,—
 würdiger
 Des Ringes, den er denn auch
 einem jeden
 Die fromme Schwachheit hatte,
 zu versprechen.
 Das ging nun so, so lang es ging.
 —Allein
 Es kam zum Sterben, und der
 gute Vater
 Kömmt in Verlegenheit. Es
 schmerzt ihn, zwey
 Von seinen Söhnen, die sich auf
 sein Wort
 Verlassen, so zu kränken,—Was
 zu thun ?—
 Er sendet in geheim zu einem
 Künstler,
 Bey dem er, nach dem Muster
 seines Ringes,
 Zwey andere bestellt, und weder
 Kosten,
 Noch Mühe sparen heisst, sie
 jenem gleich,

Nathan.—From son to son the
 ring descending, came
 To one, the sire of three ; of
 whom all three
 Were equally obedient ; whom
 all three
 He therefore must with equal
 love regard.
 And yet from time to time now
 this, now that,
 And now the third,—as each
 alone was by,
 The others not dividing his fond
 heart,—
 Appeared to him the worthiest
 of the ring ;
 Which then, with loving weak-
 ness, he would promise
 To each in turn. Thus it con-
 tinued long.
 But he must die ; and then the
 loving father
 Was sore perplexed. It grieved
 him thus to wound
 Two faithful sons who trusted
 in his word ;
 But what to do ? In secrecy he
 calls
 An artist to him, and commands
 of him
 Two other rings, the pattern of
 his own ;
 And bids him neither cost nor
 pains to spare

Vollkommen gleich zu machen.
Das gelingt

Dem Künstler. Da er ihm die
Ringe bringt,

Kann selbst der Vater seinen
Musterring

Nicht unterscheiden. Froh und
freudig ruft

Er seine Söhne, jeden ins beson-
dre ;

Giebt jedem ins besondere seinen
Seegen,—

Und seinen Ring,—und stirbt.—

Du hörst doch, Sultan ?

Sal.—Ich hör', ich höre ! Komm
mit deinem Märchen

Nun bald zu Ende. — Wird's ?

Nath.—Ich bin zu Ende.

Denn was noch folgt, versteht
sich ja von selbst.—

Kaum war der Vater todt, so
kömmt ein jeder

Mit seinem Ring.—Und jeder
will der Fürst

Des Hauses seyn. Man unter-
sucht, man zankt,

Man klagt. Umsonst, der rechte
Ring war nicht

Erweislich ;—[*nach einer Pause,
in welcher er des Sultans
Antwort erwartet*] fast so
unerweislich, als

Uns jtz—der rechte Glaube.

Sal.—Wie ? das soll

Die Antwort seyn auf meine
Frage ? *Nath.*—Soll

Mich blos entschuldigen, wenn
ich die Ringe

Mir nicht getrau zu unterschei-
den, die

To make them like, precisely
like to that.

The artist's skill succeeds. He
brings the rings,

And e'en the father cannot tell
his own.

Relieved and joyful, summons
he his sons,

Each by himself ; to each one
by himself

He gives his blessing, and his

ring—and dies.—

You listen, Sultan ?

Sal.—Yes ;

I hear, I hear.

But bring your story to an end.

Nath.—'Tis ended.

For what remains would tell it-
self. The father

Was scarcely dead when each
brings forth his ring,

And claims the headship.
Questioning ensues,

Strife, and appeal to law ; but
all in vain.

The genuine ring was not to be
distinguished ;—

[*After a pause, in which he
awaits the Sultan's answer.*]

As undistinguishable as with
us

The true religion. *Sal.*—That
your answer to me ?

Nath.—But my apology for not
presuming

Between the rings to judge,
which with design

Der Vater in der Absicht machen liess,
Damit sie nicht zu unterscheiden wären.

Sal.—Die Ringe!—Spiele nicht mit mir!—Ich dächte,
Dass die Religionen, die ich dir

Genannt, doch wol zu unterscheiden wären,
Bis auf die Kleidung; bis auf Speis und Trank!

Nath.—Und nur von Seiten ihrer Gründe nicht.—
Denn gründen alle sich nicht auf Geschichte?
Geschrieben oder überliefert!—
Und

Geschichte muss doch wohl allein auf Treu
Und Glauben angenommen werden?—Nicht?

Nun, wessen Treu und Glauben zieht man denn
Am wenigsten in Zweifel? Doch der Seinen?

Doch deren Blut wir sind? doch deren, die

Von Kindheit an uns Proben ihrer Liebe

Gegeben? die uns nie getäuscht, als wo

Getäuscht zu werden uns heilsamer war?—

Wie kann ich meinen Vätern weniger,

Als du den deinen glauben? Oder umgekehrt.—

Kann ich von dir verlangen, dass du deine

The father ordered undistinguishable.

Sal.—The rings?—You trifle with me. The religions I named to you are plain to be distinguished—

E'en in the dress, e'en in the food and drink.

Nath.—In all except the grounds on which they rest. Are they not founded all on history,

Traditional or written? History

Can be accepted only upon trust.

Whom now are we the least inclined to doubt?

Not our own people—our own blood; not those

Who from our childhood up have proved their love;

Ne'er disappointed, save when disappointment

Was wholesome to us? Shall my ancestors

Receive less faith from me, than yours from you?

Reverse it: Can I ask you to belie

Vorfahren Lügen strafst, um
meinen nicht

Zu widersprechen? Oder um-
gekehrt.

Das nehmlche gilt von den
Christen. Nicht?—

Sal.—(Bey dem Lebendigen! Der
Mann hat Recht.

Ich muss verstummen.) *Nath.*—
Lass auf unsre Ring'

Uns wieder kommen. Wie ge-
sagt: die Söhne

Verklagten sich; und jeder
schwur dem Richter,

Unmittelbar aus seines Vaters
Hand

Den Ring zu haben.—Wie auch
wahr!—Nachdem

Er von ihm lange das Verspre-
chen schon

Gehabt, des Ringes Vorrecht ein-
mal zu

Geniessen.—Wie nicht minder
wahr!—Der Vater,

Betheurte jeder, könne gegen
ihn

Nicht falsch gewesen seyn; und
eh' er dieses

Von ihm, von einem solchen lie-
ben Vater,

Argwohnen lass': eh' müß' er
seine Brüder,

So gern er sonst von ihnen nur
das Beste

Bereit zu glauben sey, des fal-
schen Spiels

Bezeihen; und er wolle die Ver-
räther

Schon auszufinden wissen; sich
schon rächen.

Your fathers, and transfer your
faith to mine?

Or yet, again, holds not the same
with Christians?

Sal.—(By heaven, the man is
right! I've naught to an-
swer.)

Nath.—Return we to our rings.
As I have said,

The sons appealed to law, and
each took oath

Before the judge that from his
father's hand

He had the ring,—as was indeed
the truth;

And had received his promise
long before,

One day the ring, with all its
privileges,

Should be his own,—as was not
less the truth.

The father could not have been
false to him,

Each one maintained; and ra-
ther than allow

Upon the memory of so dear a
father

Such stain to rest, he must
against his brothers,

Though gladly he would nothing
but the best

Believe of them, bring charge of
treachery;

Means would he find the traitors
to expose,

And be revenged on them.

Sal.—And now the judge?

Sal.—Und nun, der Richter?—
 Mich verlangt zu hören,
 Was du den Richter sagen lässt.
 Sprich!

Nath.—Der Richter sprach: wenn
 ihr mir nun den Vater
 Nicht bald zur Stelle schafft, so
 weis' ich euch

Von meinem Stuhle. Denkt ihr,
 dass ich Räthsel

Zu lösen da bin? Oder harret ihr,

Bis dass der rechte Ring den
 Mund eröffne?—

Doch halt! Ich höre ja, der
 rechte Ring

Besitzt die Wunderkraft, be-
 liebt zu machen;

Vor Gott und Menschen ange-
 nehmen. Das muss

Entscheiden! Denn die falschen
 Ringe werden

Doch das nicht können!—Nun,
 wen lieben zwey

Von euch am meisten?—Macht,
 sagt an! Ihr schweigt?

Die Ringe wirken nur zurück?
 und nicht

Nach aussen? Jeder liebt sich
 selber nur

Am meisten?—O so seyd ihr alle
 drey

Betrogene Betrüger! Eure Ringe.
 Sind alle drey nicht echt. Der
 echte Ring

Vermuthlich ging verloren. Den
 Verlust

Zu bergen, zu ersetzen, liess der
 Vater

Die drey für einen machen.

I long to hear what words you
 give the judge.

Go on!

Nath.—Thus spoke the judge:
 Produce your father

At once before me, else from my
 tribunal

Do I dismiss you. Think you I
 am here

To guess your riddles? Either
 would you wait

Until the genuine ring shall
 speak?—But hold!

A magic power in the true ring
 resides,

As I am told, to make its wearer
 loved,—

Pleasing to God and man. Let
 that decide.

For in the false can no such vir-
 tue lie.

Which one among you, then, do
 two love best?

Speak! Are you silent? Work
 the rings but backward,

Not outward? Loves each one
 himself the best?

Then cheated cheats are all of
 you! The rings

All three are false. The genu-
 ine ring was lost;

And to conceal, supply the loss,
 the father

Made three in place of one.

Sal.—Herrlich, herrlich !

Nath.—Und also, fuhr der Richter fort, wenn ihr Nicht meinen Rath, statt meines Spruches wollt :

Geht nur !—Mein Rath ist aber der : ihr nehmt

Die Sache völlig wie sie liegt. Hat von

Euch jeder seinen Ring von seinem Vater

So glaube jeder sicher seinen Ring

Den echten.—Möglich, dass der Vater nun

Die Tyranny des Einen Rings nicht länger

In seinem Hause dulden wollen! —Und gewiss ;

Dass er euch alle drey geliebt, und gleich

Geliebt : indem er zwey nicht drücken mögen,

Um einen zu begünstigen.— Wohlan !

Es eifre jeder seiner unbestochenen,

Von Vorurtheilen freyen Liebe nach !

Es strebe von euch jeder um die Wette,

Die Kraft des Steins in seinem Ring 'an Tag

Zu legen ! komme dieser Kraft mit Sanftmuth,

Mit herzlicher Verträglichkeit, mit Wohlthun,

Mit innigster Ergebenheit in Gott,

Sal.—Oh, excellent!

Nath.—Go, therefore, said the judge, unless my counsel

You'd have in place of sentence.

It were this :

Accept the case exactly as it stands.

Had each his ring directly from his father,

Let each believe his own is genuine.

'Tis possible, your father would no longer

His house to one ring's tyranny subject ;

And certain that all three of you he loved,

Loved equally, since two he would not humble,

That one might be exalted. Let each one

To his unbought, impartial love aspire ;

Each with the others vie to bring to light

The virtue of the stone within his ring ;

Let gentleness, a hearty love of peace,

Beneficence, and perfect trust in God,

Zu Hülff' ! Und wenn sich dann	Come to his help. Then if the
der Steine Kräfte	jewel's power
Bey euern Kindes - Kindeskin-	Among your children's children
dern äüssern :	be revealed,
So lad' ich über tausend tausend	I bid you in a thousand, thousand
Jahre,	years,
Sie wiederum vor diesen Stuhl.	Again before this bar. A wise
Da wird	man
Ein weiser Mann auf diesem	Than I shall occupy this seat,
Stuhle sitzen,	and speak.
Als ich ; und sprechen. Geht !—	Go !—Thus the modest judge
So sagte der	dismissed them!
Bescheidne Richter.	

Ellen Frothingham.

“Nathan the Wise” was not immediately popular: too many hostile elements were combined against its author. The sectarian spirit of Germany was determined, in advance, not to accept it; and the crowd of pretentious scholars and second-rate authors, who had felt the sting of Lessing's criticism, took every opportunity of revenge. He was accused of glorifying Judaism, in the person of Nathan, at the expense of Christianity, and the slander was everywhere circulated and believed, that the Jews of Amsterdam had sent him a gift of a thousand ducats. He outlived the violence of the assault, but with failing health came a weariness of the struggle; and his last work, “The Education of the Human Race,” shows traces of a desire to avoid any further controversy. What general popularity he enjoyed during his life came from his three earlier dramas; but the recognition of the best minds—the only fame which a poet values—was due to his “*Laocoon*.” His life

was not without its compensations. The hot water in which he lived was much preferable to the stagnant water in which his literary predecessors had slowly decayed. There was day-break in the sky before he died, and he, who anticipated so many of the currents of thought of the present day, certainly had clearness of vision to see the coming change. He was like the leader of a forlorn hope, who falls at the moment when victory is secured.

The strongest quality of Lessing's mind was his passion for positive truth. The passage in which he sublimely expresses this aspiration has been often quoted, but I must give it again: "Not the truth of which any one is, or supposes himself to be, possessed, but the upright endeavor he has made to arrive at truth, makes the worth of the man. For not by the possession, but by the investigation of truth are his powers expanded, and therein alone consists his ever-growing perfection. If God held all truth shut in his right hand, and in his left hand nothing but the ever-restless instinct for truth, though with the condition of forever and ever erring, and should say to me, 'Choose!' I should humbly bow to his left hand, and say: 'Father, give! Pure truth is for thee alone!'"

The period between 1729 and 1781, which Lessing's life covers, was that of transition—and a transition all the more difficult and convulsive because, for a hundred years previous, the intellectual life of Germany lay in

a trance resembling death. Although the influence of Rousseau and Voltaire, felt in Germany only less powerfully than in France, helped to break up the old order of things, there was not the least connection between their action and that of Lessing. He made Voltaire's acquaintance only to become involved in a personal quarrel with him, and his works show no trace of Rousseau's ideas concerning education and society. He moved forward on a line parallel with other prominent minds in other countries, but always retained a complete independence of them. When he died, the period of struggle was really over, although the fact was not yet manifest. Goethe had published "*Götz von Berlichingen*" and "*Werther*," and Schiller had just written "*Die Räuber*." Herder had given to the world his "Poetry of the People," and was employed upon his "Spirit of Hebrew Poetry;" and Richter, a student of nineteen, had just awakened to a knowledge of his own genius. One by one, the pedants and the mechanical organ-grinders of literature were passing off the stage. French taste died two years later, in the person of its last representative, Frederic the Great, and the close air of Germany was at last vitalized by the fresh oxygen of original thought. Lessing's career, indeed, might be compared to a pure, keen blast of mountain wind, let loose upon a company of enervated persons, dozing in an atmosphere of exhausted ingredients and stale perfumes. It was a breath of life, but it made

them shriek and shudder. When they tried to close the window upon him, he smashed the panes ; and then, with the irreverence of all free, natural forces, he began to blow the powder from their wigs and the wigs from their heads. There is something comically pitiful in the impotent wrath with which they attempted to suppress him. We can imagine Gottsched, amazed and incredulous that any one should dare to dispute his pompous authority, and even the good and gentle Gellert, grieving over the pranks of this uncontrollable young poet. We may be sure that none of his faults of character were left undiscovered, and there are few men of equal power whose character shows so fairly after such a scrutiny. He was accused of being a gambler ; but the facts of his life are the best answer to the charge. As a poorly-paid writer for the press in Berlin, and a general's secretary in Breslau, he supported himself, contributed toward the education of his brothers, and collected a choice library of six thousand volumes. It is not easy to see what would be left for gambling purposes, after accomplishing all this. His letters to his father exhibit a tender filial respect, a patience under blame and misrepresentation, and a gentle yet firm resistance, based on a manly trust in himself, the like of which I know not where to find. In him, genius and personal character are not to be separated. In one of his conversations with Eckermann, Goethe exclaimed : " We have great need of a

man like Lessing; for wherein is he so great as in his character, in his firm hold of things? There may be as shrewd and intelligent men, but where is such a character?" At another time Goethe said: "Lessing disclaimed any right to the lofty title of a genius; but his permanent influence testifies against himself." Goethe always considered it his special good fortune that Lessing existed as a guide for his youth. He compares the appearance of "*Minna von Barnhelm*" to that of a shining meteor, bursting suddenly on the darkness of the age. "It opened our eyes to the fact," he says, "that there was something higher, something of which that weak literary epoch had no comprehension."

I hope that the distinction which I have already indicated is now tolerably clear—that as a creative intellect, the highest rank cannot be awarded to Lessing; while, as a revolutionary power, as a shaping and organizing force, he has scarcely his equal in history. He was a Reformer, in the truest sense of the word, and bore himself through life with the same independence, the same dignity, the same simple reliance on truth, as Luther at Worms. Notwithstanding the ephemeral nature of many of his controversies, the greater part of them may still be read with profit; for the truth that is in them belongs to no time or country. While some of his contemporaries—Klopstock and Wieland, for example—are gradually losing their prominence in Ger-

man literature, the place which Lessing fills is becoming larger and more important. In one of his early letters to his father, he says: "If I could become the German Molière, I should gain an immortal name." He did more than this: he became the German Lessing!

VIII

KLOPSTOCK, WIELAND AND HERDER.

I AM obliged, by my limits, to group together in one lecture, the three distinguished contemporaries of Lessing—Klopstock, Wieland and Herder—who also assisted, though by very different methods, in the literary regeneration of Germany. There was no immediate connection between his and their labors, except that all tended in the same direction; and the most I can attempt will be to give a brief outline of their lives, and the special influence which the mind of each exercised upon the period in which they lived. As all three survived the close of the century, they were more fortunate than Lessing, in beholding the transition accomplished—in seeing the age of formality and pedantry buried without funeral honors, and the age of free, vigorous and vital thought triumphantly inaugurated.

Although Klopstock, who was born in 1724, was five years older than Lessing, the two were students together at the University of Leipzig, in 1746, and Lessing's *début* as a dramatic author was coeval with the publication of the first three cantos of Klopstock's "*Messias*." This is the only coincident circumstance in their lives; in all other

respects there is the greatest unlikeness. Klopstock, a native of Quedlinburg, in Northern Germany, was the son of an official, in easy circumstances. His education, completed at Jena and Leipzig, was thorough; no discouragements met his early aspirations, and his very first literary venture gave him fame and popularity. As a boy, his ambition was to produce a great German epic, and he first selected the Emperor, Henry the Fowler, as his hero. The study of theology in Jena, and probably Milton's example, led him to change the plan, and adopt, instead, the character of Christ. His classic tastes suggested the form: a German counterpart of the "Iliad," he imagined, must also be written in hexameters. The first three cantos of the "*Messias*" were published in 1748, when he was twenty-four years old, and created the profoundest impression all over Germany. They were read with a reverence, a pious fervor, scarcely less than that claimed for the Sacred Writings. Gottsched and his school, it is true, attempted to depreciate the work; but it was not felt by the people to be a violent or dangerous innovation, and its popularity was not affected by the attack. On the other hand, Klopstock was welcomed by the Swiss school, and invited by Bodmer, its head, to visit Zurich. I must here explain that Zurich was then an important literary centre. The English influence was there predominant, as the French was at Leipzig, and the two schools were therefore antagonistic. In intellectual force and temper there was

not much difference between the two, but they achieved some good by partly neutralizing each other's power.

Klopstock went to Zurich in 1750, but did not remain there long. Baron Bernstorff, one of the King of Denmark's ministers, invited him to Copenhagen, offering four hundred thalers a year for his support, in order that he might be free to finish his "Messiah." The proposal was accepted, the salary became a pension for life, and for twenty years Klopstock divided his time between Copenhagen and Hamburg. He had no material cares; his popularity as a poet was so great, that it now seems almost disproportionate to his deserts, and the only shadow upon his fortune was the death of his wife, Meta Moller, whom he lost in 1758, four years after their marriage. In 1771 he left Denmark, and took up his permanent residence in Hamburg, where, about the year 1800, he was visited by Wordsworth and Coleridge. His death took place in 1803, at the age of seventy-nine.

The importance of his life, however, must not be measured by its uneventful character. With the exception of his one great sorrow, his years rolled away tranquilly and happily. He was a frank, honest and loving nature, attracting to himself the best friendship of men, and the enthusiastic admiration of women. The Danish pension, which he received at the beginning of his career, secured him against want, and, with all the breadth and humanity of his views, he was fortunate

enough to escape any serious persecution. Yet, although his life was so serene and successful, the influences which flowed from his works were none the less potent. He was also a reformer, although not militant, like Lessing. We do not see the flash of his sword, and mark the heads that fall at every swing of his arm; but if we look closely, we shall find that the strength of the enemy is slowly sapped, and his power of resistance paralyzed.

In examining Klopstock's place as an author, we must avoid the injustice of applying the standard of a modern and more intelligent taste to his works. The very fact that he attained a swift and widely-extended popularity, proves two things—that there was an amiable, sympathetic quality in his mind, which appealed to the sentiment of his readers, and that he did not rise so far above their intellectual plane that they were unable to follow him. He might, indeed, have diverged more widely from the taste of his time, and still retained his popularity; for he possessed one of the radical qualities of the German nature, which was almost wanting in Lessing—sentiment. He had the power of drawing easy tears, even from those who were unable to appreciate his genius. He was more or less a spoiled child, through his whole life. Portions of his history read very strangely to us now. On leaving the University, he fell in love with a cousin, whom he addressed as “Fanny” in a number of despairing Odes, because

his affection was not returned. He read these Odes in private circles, weeping as he read, and moving his hearers to floods of tears. "Fanny" was soon overwhelmed with letters from all parts of Germany, even from Bodmer in Switzerland, either reproaching her for her cruelty, or imploring her to yield. I am glad to say that she had character enough to refuse, and to marry a man whom she loved. Klopstock, afterward, floating on the Lake of Zurich, with large companies of men and maidens, continued to repeat his melancholy verses, until he and all the others wept, finally kissed all around, and cried out: "This is Elysium!"

What is called the *Sturm und Drang* period of German literature (Carlyle translates the phrase by "Storm and Stress"), was partly a natural and inevitable phase of development; but in so far as it was brought about by the influence of living authors, Klopstock must be looked upon as one of the chief agencies. When we hear of the boy Goethe and his sister Cornelia declaiming passages from the "Messiah," with such energy that the frightened barber dropped his basin, and came near gashing the throat of Goethe the father, we may guess the power of the impression which Klopstock made. It is not sufficient, therefore, that we read the "Messiah" as if it had been written yesterday. We may smile at its over-laden passion and its diffusive sentiment, but when we come to it from the literature

which preceded it, we feel, by contrast, that a pure and refreshing stream of poetry has at last burst forth from the barren soil. The number of those who in Germany, at present, read the whole of the "Messiah," is larger than the number of those who in England now read the whole of Spenser's "Faery Queene;" but it is yet very small. In fact, life is too short for a poem of twenty cantos and twenty thousand lines of hexameter, unless it be a truly great poem. Klopstock began the publication of the "Messiah" in 1748 and finished it in 1773—a period of twenty-five years. It would take more time than I can now spare, to give even an outline of the poem. It commences with the withdrawal of Christ apart from his disciples, to commune with God upon Mount Olivet, includes the Last Supper, the Trial, Crucifixion and Resurrection, and closes in Heaven, when Christ takes his seat, as the Son, on the right hand of the Father. The action, however, is complicated by the introduction of a great number of angels and devils, and the souls of all the chief personages of the Old Testament, beginning with Adam and Eve. Even the daughter of Jairus and the son of the widow of Nain are among the characters.

The opening lines remind us both of Homer and of Milton :

Sing', unsterbliche Seele, der sündigen Menschen Erlösung,
Die der Messias auf Erden in seiner Menschheit vollendet,

Sing, Immortal Spirit, of sinful man's redemption,
Which on earth in his human form fulfilled the Messiah,

Und durch die er Adams Geschlechte die Liebe der Gottheit,	Suffering, slain and transfigured, whence the children of Adam
Mit dem Blute des heiligen Bundes von Neuem geschenkt hat.	Once again he hath lifted up to the love of the Godhead.
Also geschah des Ewigen Willen. Vergebens erhob sich	Thus was done the Eternal Will: and vainly did Satan
Satan wider den göttlichen Sohn; umsonst stand Juda	Trouble the Son Divine; and Juda vainly opposed him:
Wider ihn auf; er that's und vollbrachte die grosse Versöhnung.	As it was willed, he did, and completed the mighty Atonement.

The "Messiah" is only indirectly didactic and doctrinal. On account of the multitude of characters, there is a great deal of action, and the narrative continually breaks into dialogue. It is pervaded throughout by the tender humanity of the Christian religion, and has many passages of genuine sublimity. But it is pitched altogether upon too lofty and ambitious a key, and the mind of the reader, at last, becomes very weary of hanging suspended between heaven and earth. I will translate another passage, to show how Klopstock describes the Indescribable:

Gott sprach so und stand auf vom ewigen Throne. Der Thron klang	God so spake, and arose from his Throne Eternal, resounding
Unter ihm hin, da er aufstand. Des Allerheiligsten Berge	Under Him, as He arose: the hills of the Holy of Holies
Zitterten und mit ihnen der Altar des göttlichen Mittlers.	Trembled, and with them the altar of the Divine Mediator.

Mit des Versöhnenden Altar die Wolken des heiligen Dun- kels	Yea, with the altar the clouds of the holy, mysterious dark- ness
Dreimal fliehn sie zurück. Zum viertenmal bebt des Gericht- stuhls	Thrice they withdrew : the fourth, the Seat of the Judge to its summit
Letzte Höh', es beben an ihm die furchtbaren Stufen	Shook, and the awful steps that lead to the summit were shaken
Sichtbar hervor, und der Ewige steigt von dem himmlischen Throne.	Visibly : down from his Throne descended then the Eternal.
So, wenn ein festlicher Tag durch die Himmel alle ge- feiert wird,	As, when a festival day is kept through the infinite heavens,
Und mit allgegenwärtigem Wink der Ewige winket,	When the beckon of God is om- nipresently witnessed,
Stehen dann auf Einmal, auf allen Sonnen und Erden,	Then, at once, on all the suns and all of the planets
Glänzend von ihren goldenen Stühlen, tausend bei taus- end,	Shiningly from their golden seats, by thousands of thousands
Alle Seraphim auf; dann klin- gen die goldenen Stühle	Rise the Seraphim : then from their golden seats the ac- cordance
Und der Harfen Gebet und die niedergeworfenen Kronen.	Joins the sound of the harps and the clang of the crowns in their falling :—
Also ertönte der himmlische Thron, da Gott von ihm auf- stand.	So, when God stood up, the Heavenly Throne resound- ed.

If we cannot now find such passages as this almost superhuman in their sublimity, we can, at least, with a little effort of the imagination, understand that a large portion of the German reading public should have so considered them, at the time when they appeared. Klopstock's friends claim that he was the first to intro-

duce the classic hexameter into the language. He was certainly the first who did so successfully ; but Lessing shows that both the hexameter and the elegiac measure were used by Fischart, in the seventeenth century. Klopstock's hexameters, moreover, are by no means above criticism ; many of his lines try both the ear and the tongue, while now and then we find one which is melody itself. Take, for instance, this line in the original :

Todesworte noch stets und des Weltgerichts Fluch aussprach.

Here the ear bumps along over a corduroy road of hard syllables. Now compare this line :

Deines schwebenden tönenden Ganges melodisches Rauschen.

It has a linked sweetness which would have delighted Milton. Klopstock did not perceive the truth, which Goethe afterward discovered, that the hexameter, to be agreeable, must put off its Greek or Latin habits, and adapt itself to the spirit and manner of the German language ; but his labor was both honest and fruitful. The " Messiah " was the result of a deliberate purpose to produce an epic ; the subject, we might almost say, was mechanically chosen, and we can only wonder that a work produced under such conditions had so much positive success in its day.

His " Odes," which also attained a great popularity, were formed upon classical models. He endeavored,

in them, to make eloquence and sentiment supply the place of rhyme. To me they seem like a series of gymnastic exercises, whereby the muscles of the language became stronger and its joints more flexible, although the finer essence of poetry disappears in the process. Klopstock hoped, and his admirers believed, that he was creating a classic German literature, by adopting the forms which had become classic in other languages. All we can now admit is that he substituted the influence of Greek literature for that of the French; and this, at the time, was no slight service. His Odes were the earliest inspiration of Schiller, and he had also a crowd of imitators who have left no names behind them.

None of his dramatic poems can be called successful. His "Herman's Fight" was written, like his "Messiah," for a deliberate purpose—to counteract the French influence which was still upheld in Germany, not only by Gottsched and his school, but also by the Court of Frederick the Great. It was dedicated to Joseph II. of Austria, who was looked upon as the representative of the German spirit. But Klopstock, faithful to his idea of transplanting classic forms, revived the old Teutonic gods, and endeavored to construct a new German Olympus. The result is very much like a masquerade. We see the faces and beards of the old Teutonic tribes, their shields and war-clubs, but we hear would-be Grecian voices when they speak. His

attempts in this direction, however, led him to a deeper study of the growth and development of the German language, and determined, for many years, the character of his literary activity. In 1780 he published his "Fragments relating to Language and Poetry," and in 1793 his "Grammatical Conversations"—both sound and valuable works. Yet in them, as in his dramatic poems, the effect was greater than its cause. Probably no author of the last century did so much toward creating a national sentiment, toward checking the impressibility of the race to foreign influences, arousing native pride and stimulating native ambition. This was his greatest service, especially since the German people saw in him the evidence of what he taught. Where Lessing cut his way by destructive criticism, Klopstock worked more slowly by example. In force and scope and originality of intellect there can be no comparison between the two men: Klopstock must always be ranked among minds of the second class: but when we estimate what they achieved during their lives, there is less difference. After Gottsched's death there was no one to assail Klopstock's fame, for all the greater minds that followed him appreciated his work and honored him for it. His prominence as an author did not diminish materially during his life, and the true proportions, into which his fame has since then slowly settled, are still large enough to make him a conspicuous figure in the literary history of the age. Although not more

than ten of his two hundred odes live in the popular memory, his sweet and fervent hymns are sung in all the Protestant churches, and many lines and phrases from his poems have become household words.

In Christopher Martin Wieland, we have a personal history almost as placid as Klopstock's, yet an intellect of very different texture, to consider. Through him we shall first make acquaintance with that company of men who have made the name of Weimar almost as renowned as that of Athens. I shall have more difficulty in indicating the exact place which he occupies in the literary development of Germany, for the reason that his intellectual characteristics are of a lighter and airier quality, and are not so readily transferred to another language.

Wieland was born near Biberach, in Würtemberg, in 1733. Like Lessing, he was the son of a clergyman, and as a boy was noted for his lively, precocious intellect. He had studied Latin, Greek and Hebrew, and attempted poetry, at the age of twelve. Three or four years later he acquired the French and English languages, and then entered the University at Tübingen for the purpose of studying law, to which he devoted no more attention than Lessing did to theology. His nature was flexible and easily impressed, and the appearance of the first three cantos of the "Messiah" impelled him to attempt a similar work. He projected a great German epic, to be called "*Arminius*," very little of

which was written. One of the first works which he published was entitled "Ten Moral Letters." These early essays attracted the notice of Bodmer and the Zurich school, and he was invited thither in 1752, as Klopstock had been two years before. He was then a youth of nineteen, and for several years thenceforth he seems to have been entirely under the influence of Bodmer, Gessner and the other chiefs of the Swiss literary clan.

He was unfortunate in all his ventures during this period. He commenced an epic, of which Cyrus was the hero, but the first five books were received so coldly by the public, that the design was given up. A tragedy called "*Lady Jane Gray*" met with no better fate, unless Lessing's merciless review of it can be considered a distinction. He thereupon attempted a lighter and gayer style, choosing as his subject the episode of "Araspes and Panthea" from Xenophon, but this work also attracted very little attention. He remained in Switzerland until 1760, when he returned to his native place, and accepted a clerkship in the Chancery. The duties of the office were distasteful to so mercurial a nature, and he sought relief from them in undertaking a translation of Shakespeare, which employed him for four or five years. This, I believe, was the first complete publication of Shakespeare in German, and it appeared most opportunely for the development which had then commenced. Although it has since been super-

seded by the more thorough translation of Schlegel and Tieck, it was a careful and conscientious work, for which Wieland deserves the gratitude of his countrymen.

Wieland married in 1765, and four years later accepted the appointment of Professor of Philosophy at the University of Erfurt. After the publication of his Shakespeare, he turned again to authorship, and his persistence at last brought success. With the same susceptibility to external influences, his new attempts were inspired, partly by the French authors of the time, Rousseau among them, and partly by his lyric taste. His "*Agathon*," published in 1767, first made him generally and favorably known. Its leading idea is to show in what degree the external world contributes to human development, and how far wisdom and virtue are sustained by the forces of nature. Three or four works, in which love is the sole theme, followed in quick succession; and, although they were denounced in many quarters, as being free to the verge of immorality, they were none the less read. After his acceptance of the professorship at Erfurt he probably found it expedient to guard himself against a recurrence of the charge, for the character of his works changed, and we find in them an element of satire which up to this time was not exhibited. He next published "*Der goldene Spiegel*" (The Golden Mirror), which was inspired by the liberal policy of Joseph II. Wieland's intellectual

nature, thus far, may best be described by our homely word "flighty." There is little evidence of any serious literary principle, any coherent purpose, in his works, and he seems, in this respect, as un-German as possible. But there is a sportive ease and grace in everything he undertakes, which is new to the language. If Lessing gave it precision and Klopstock freedom, Wieland certainly gave it lightness. The first half of Wieland's life and literary activity was passed, as we have seen, in a restless series of changes; his place of residence, his occupation and the character of his works changing every few years. His wanderings were now to end, and a long season of rest and stability, the effect of which is manifest in his later writings, was granted to his life. In 1772, the Duchess Amalia, of Saxe-Weimar, offered him the post of tutor to the young princes, her sons, with a salary of one thousand thalers a year, which afterward was continued as a pension for life. The eldest of these princes was Karl August, the immortal patron of literature, who was then fifteen years old. The Duchess Amalia had already assembled around her in Weimar a superior literary circle, including Knebel, Musæus and Einsiedel. Three years later, when Karl August assumed the ducal government, Goethe, then in his twenty-sixth year, was called to Weimar. In the meantime, however, Wieland had published a lyrical drama, "*Alcestis*," which was well received by everybody except

Goethe, who satirized it in a dialogue entitled: "Gods, Heroes and Wieland." One of Wieland's admirers retorted by publishing a farce, called "Men, Beasts and Goethe." Wieland seems to have been neither vain nor sensitive to attack. He treated the matter good-humoredly, afterward acknowledged the justice of Goethe's satire, and became at once his personal friend.

Wieland's intellect became broader and clearer through his intercourse with the Weimar circle. His works, thenceforth, exhibit greater finish and consistence; yet he never entirely emancipated himself from the influence of the French school, never adopted the lofty standard of excellence which Schiller and Goethe, and even Herder, set for themselves. The deficiency was inherent in his nature: his temperament was too gay and cheerful, too dependent on moods and sensations, for the earnest work of his fellow authors. He did good service, however, by establishing, soon after his arrival in Weimar, a monthly literary periodical, called "*Der deutsche Mercur*," which he thenceforth edited for more than thirty years, and which was the vehicle through which the most prominent authors became known to a wider circle of readers. In 1780 he published his romantic epic of "*Oberon*," the most permanently popular of all his works. It is an admirable specimen of what Goethe calls the *naïve* in literature—the free, graceful play of the imagination. In-

deed, as a specimen of poetic story-telling, it has not often been excelled in any language. We have, at present, such a story-teller in England—Mr. William Morris—the graces of whose metrical narratives are now delighting us; but their tone, even when he chooses a bright Greek subject, is grave almost to sadness. They are chanted in the minor key, and a sky of gray cloud, or, when brightest, veiled by a hazy mist, hangs over all the landscapes of his verse. Change this tone and atmosphere: let them be clear, fresh and joyous: add sunshine, and pleasant airs, and the multitudinous dance of the waves, and you have the character of Wieland's poetry. His "*Oberon*" is as charming now as when it was first written. It has all the grace and the melody and the easy movement of Ariosto. The severe critic may say that the poem teaches nothing; that many of the incidents are simply grotesque; that the plot is awkwardly constructed; that the hero exhibits no real heroism, and the fairy king and queen are borrowed from Shakespeare: the reader will always answer—"All this may be true, but the poem is delightful." The secret of "*Oberon*" seems to me, that Wieland has combined the joyousness and the freedom of the Greek nature, with the form and the manner of the romantic school in literature. I have re-read it carefully (for the third or fourth time) for the purpose of selecting some passages which might best illustrate its character; but I find it difficult to make any choice, where the key-note of the poem is so

evenly sustained throughout. I will therefore translate a few of the opening stanzas, which will serve my purpose as well as any others. You will notice that while these stanzas are each of eight lines, the length and the metrical character of the lines, and the order of rhyme, are varied according to the author's will :

Noch einmal sattelt mir den
Hippogryphen, ihr Musen,
Zum Ritt ins alte romantische
Land !

Wie lieblich um meinen ent-
fesselten Busen
Der holde Wahnsinn spielt !
Wer schlang das magische
Band

Um meine Stirne ? Wer treibt
von meinen Augen den Ne-
bel,

Der auf der Vorwelt Wundern
liegt ?

Ich seh', in buntem Gewühl,
bald siegend, bald besiegt,
Des Ritters gutes Schwert, der
Heiden blinkende Säbel.

Vergebens knirscht des alten
Sultans Zorn,

Vergebens dräut ein Wald von
starren Lanzen ;

Es tönt im lieblichen Ton das
elfenbeinerne Horn,

Und, wie ein Wirbel, egreift
sie alle die Wuth zu tan-
zen.

Ye Muses, come saddle me the
Hypogryff again,
For a ride in the old, the ro-
mantic land !

How sweetly now, around my
breast and brain,
The fair illusion plays ! Who
bound that magic band

About my brow ? Who from
mine eyelids blew the haze,

Hiding the wonders of old days ?

I see, now conquered, now o'er-
come, in endless labor,
The faithful sword of the
knight, the Paynim's shin-
ing sabre !

In vain the ancient Sultan's
wrath and scorn,

Threatens in vain a grove of
leveled lances ;

The exquisite notes are heard of
the ivory horn,

And the crowd is seized and
whirled in tumultuous
dances !

Sie drehn im Kreise sich um, bis Sinn und Athem ent- geht.	They turn and circle till breath and sense are lost.
Triumph, Herr Ritter, Triumph! Gewonnen ist die Schöne.	Triumph, Sir Knight, is thine! Thou hast won the beauty:
Was säumt ihr? Fort! der Wimpel weht:	Why delay? Thy flag in the breeze is tossed;
Nach Rom, dass euern Bund der heil'ge Vater kröne!	Away to Rome, where the Holy Father claims thy duty!

This light and rapid movement characterizes the whole poem, which seems to have been written only in holidays of the mind. The reading of it, therefore, is not a task, but a pure recreation. Wieland, in this respect, was an unconscious and unintentional reformer. Goethe, I have already stated, was led by Lessing to seek for the true principles of literary art; but it is equally certain that he learned of Wieland to relieve and lighten the gravity of his style—to add grace to proportion, and give a playful character to earnest thought.

Wieland must be considered as one of the chief founders of the romantic school. The “Storm and Stress” period, which was simply a fermentation of the conflicting elements—a struggle by means of which the new era of literature grew into existence—commenced about the year 1770, and continued for twenty years. During its existence the Romantic School was developed, separating itself from the classic school, by its freedom of form, its unrestrained sentiment, and its seeking after startling effects. It was a natural retaliation, that France, forty years later, should have bor-

rowed this school from Germany. Wieland was not a partisan in the struggle ; neither was he drawn into it, and forced to work his way out again, as were Goethe and Schiller. He belonged to the Romantic school by his nature, and to the classic school by his culture, but the former gave the distinguishing character to his works.

After the completion of "*Oberon*," he undertook the translation of Horace and Lucian, which was followed by the publication of the "*Attische Museum*"—a collection of the principal Greek classics, translated by different hands. Until Schiller started his magazine, called "*Die Horen*" (The Hours), Wieland's "*Deutscher Mercur*" was the first literary periodical in Germany. His later original works are few and unimportant, and had little influence on the thought of the time. He lived to see the battle of Jena, to be presented by Napoleon with the Cross of the Legion of Honor, in 1808, and died, eighty years old, in the year of German Liberation, 1813.

In this brief sketch of Wieland, I have scarcely mentioned more than half of his works, because it is not necessary for the purpose of indicating his place as an author. Perhaps ten per cent. of the thirty-six volumes which he left behind him, are now read. The winnowing-mill of Time makes sad havoc with works considered immortal in their day. A great deal of Wieland's productiveness has been blown away as chaff,

but enough sound grain remains to account for his influence, and to justify our honorable recognition of his genius. If he did not follow truth with the unselfish devotion of Lessing—if he was not animated by a lofty patriotic purpose, like Klopstock—we nevertheless do not feel inclined to judge him too rigidly. His grace, his humor, his delicate irony and refined though rather shallow appreciation of the element of beauty, disarm us in advance. We cannot escape a hearty friendly feeling for the man who was always so cheerful and amiable, and whose works, light as they may seem in comparison, form a counterpoise for so many of the “heavy weights” in German Literature. Falk relates that on the day after Wieland’s burial, Goethe spoke of him in these terms: “He possessed an incomparable nature: in him all was fluency, spirit and taste! It is a cheerful plain, where there is nothing to stumble over, threaded by the stream of a comical wit, which winds capriciously in all directions, and sometimes even turns against its author. There is not the slightest trace in him of that deliberate, laborious technical quality, which sometimes spoils for us the best ideas and feelings, by making their expression seem artificial. This natural ease and freedom is the reason why I always prefer to read Shakespeare in Wieland’s translation. He handled rhyme as a master. I believe, if one had poured upon his desk a composing-case full of words, he would have arranged them, in a little while,

into a charming poem." Although this is the tribute of a friend who had been for forty years intimate with Wieland, and was given during the tender sorrow which his loss called forth, it is not exaggerated praise.

Just such an intellectual temperament as Wieland possessed was needed in his time. The language as well as the literature was in the process of development: there were enough of thoughtful and earnest minds engaged in the work, and they would have fallen too exclusively into the serious, brooding habit of the race, had they not been interrupted by Wieland's playful fancy and his delicate satire. Our English language found all these qualities combined in the one man, Shakespeare, but other countries have not been so fortunate. It required three men—Lessing, Wieland and Goethe—to perform a similar service for the German language. In this respect, the sportive element in Wieland's mind was as valuable as genius. It is certainly rarer. Much of our modern literature lacks the same quality. It betrays the grave labored purpose of the author, as if expression were a stern duty, instead of seeming, as it should seem, free, inevitable and joyous. Goethe says that Wieland was the only member of the Weimar circle who could publish his works in the monthly "*Mercury*" by instalments, as they were written, without being at all affected by the misconception of the public or the hostile criticism of his rivals. It is pleasant to contemplate the activity of so

serene and cheerful a mind. He never had a following of enthusiastic admirers, like Klopstock or Schiller, but the public regarded him always with a kindly good-will. It was for a time fashionable, in Germany, to depreciate his literary achievements. He has been accused of being governed by French influences, because of his light and volatile nature ; but the influence, so far as it existed, soon wore off, and left only the natural resemblance, which was no fault. On the contrary, it was his good fortune and that of his contemporaries.

I do not mention Herder last because I consider him the least important of the three, but simply because he came last in the order of birth. Although a good part of the fight had been fought, by the time he was old enough to engage in it, he belongs also to the pioneers and builders. It is remarkable that, in this review of the great German authors of the last century, each retains, from first to last, his own clearly-marked individuality. Each preserves his own independent activity, while following a similar aim, even after years of the closest personal intercourse. There was a wide field and much work before them, and Nature seems so to have ordered their minds, that each found his fitting department of labor, and all, together, carried forward a broad front of development.

Johann Gottfried Herder was born in 1744, in a village in Eastern Prussia, where his father was teacher and

Cantor in the church. Allowed to read nothing but the Bible and the hymn-book at home, his craving for knowledge attracted the attention of a neighboring clergyman, who gave him instruction in Latin and Greek. At the age of eighteen, a Russian physician, who took a great interest in the eager, intelligent, friendless boy, proposed to have him educated as a surgeon, in Königsberg and St. Petersburg. He fainted on beholding the first dissection, and the plan was given up; but he remained in Königsberg, subsisting literally on charity, and studying at the University. The philosopher Kant allowed him to attend his lectures without paying the usual fee. The study of theology specially attracted him, but no branch of knowledge was neglected. After struggling along, under the most discouraging circumstances, for two years, he accepted a situation as teacher in Riga, and began to preach as soon as he had been properly ordained to the office. His popularity became so great, both as a teacher and as an eloquent, earnest preacher, that in the course of four or five years his friends in Riga determined to build a large church, and have him installed as pastor. At the same time he was invited to become the Director of the German school in St. Petersburg. He declined both these offers, and left Riga in 1769, intending to make a journey through Europe. At Strassburg, an affection of the eyes obliged him to give up the plan, and to remain in that city for surgical treatment. Here he became acquainted with a youth of

twenty, named Goethe, and for some months the two were inseparable companions. Herder, then twenty-five years old, had already published two works—"Fragments concerning Recent German Literature," and "Forests of Criticism," wherein he had planted himself on the side of Winckelmann and Lessing, taking a strong position of antagonism to the pedantry and superficial taste which those authors assailed. Goethe, who, during his residence in Strassburg, wrote his play of "*Die Mitschuldigen*" (The Accomplices) and was brooding over the plan of "*Götz von Berlichingen*," profited greatly by his intercourse with Herder, and his friendship became one of the influences which determined Herder's later life.

While at Strassburg, Herder received an invitation to become Court-Preacher at Bückeburg, a town in Northern Germany, the capital of the little principality of Schaumburg-Lippe. He accepted the call, and remained at Bückeburg, in that capacity, for five years, during which time his reputation as a theologian became so generally established, that he was offered the Professorship of Theology at Göttingen. He hesitated to accept the position, because, by order of the Elector of Hanover, it was burdened with certain conditions which were not agreeable. After the negotiations had continued for some months, a day was fixed for Herder's decision, and on that very day he received an offer of the place of Court-Preacher and member of the Clerical Consistory

at Weimar. He delayed no longer, but followed the instinct which led so many tempest-tost brains into that quiet and secure harbor of the German Muses. By the end of the year 1776, Wieland, Herder and Goethe were citizens of Weimar. Here the incidents of Herder's life, like those of Wieland's, cease to interest us, and we are occupied only with his literary development.

In 1778 he published his "*Volkslieder*": the English title, which would best express the character of the work, is "Poetry of the Races." It is a careful selection from the popular songs and ballads of nearly all the languages of Europe, including the Lithuanian, Livonian, Servian, Danish, English and Modern Greek. He makes good use of Percy's "*Reliques*" and the lyrics of the Elizabethan dramatists, and even translates passages of Ossian into rhyme. These translations, although not always very literal, are thoroughly poetic, and may be read with satisfaction. His object seems to have been, to direct the attention of the German public to the natural poetic elements which exist in the early civilization of all races, and thereby to counteract the tendency toward schools or fashions in poetry. He sought to impress the catholicity of his own taste upon the popular mind, and was certainly successful in diverting much of the thought of his day out of the narrow channels in which it had been accustomed to move. In 1782 he published his "*Spirit of Hebrew Poetry*," a work which has been translated and extensively read in English.

It is an exposition of his views in regard to the primitive poetry of the race, in its connection with religion. Its indirect tendency, as well as that of his strictly theological writings, was to inculcate a broader, a more intelligent—one might almost say, a more human—religious sentiment. He took the same ground as Lessing, concerning the superiority of the spirit to the letter, but, as a clergyman, he was spared the bitter hostility which the layman had provoked. Perhaps, also, the warmth, the eloquence and the enthusiasm which pervaded all his writings gave his ideas an easier acceptance than they would have found, if presented with the intellectual bareness and keenness of Lessing's style.

Passing over Herder's essays and critical papers, I will only mention two other of his more important works—the metrical romance of "*Der Cid*," the materials of which he collected from the old Spanish legends and ballads, and his "Ideas toward a Philosophy of Human History," which is generally considered to be his greatest work. "The Cid" is written in unrhymed Trochaics—a measure which was first employed in English by Longfellow in his "*Hiawatha*." Although it is considered a classic poem in German, and is still printed in luxurious editions, it is only enjoyed by the more cultivated class of readers. It has something of the mechanical character of many of his Odes. He was less a poet, in fact, than a man of sensitive poetic taste. He had a large, warm, receptive nature, and his inspiration came from

the feelings rather than from the imagination. His "Ideas of the Philosophy of History" are the fragments of a larger design. They anticipate many views which have only been taken up and practically developed in the literature of our day. He considers man as an entity, whose different modes of development in the earlier races must be referred to the operation of the same universal laws. He traces the upward tendency, the preparation for a higher spiritual life, through all the varied forms of civilization, and infers the existence of a sublime progressive destiny, of which all our past history is a part.

During the later years of his life, Herder became sensitive and irritable, although he still retained his wonderful magnetic power over other men. His performance of his official duties was beneficently felt throughout the Duchy. His authority in the Church, his supervision of the schools, his control of the government-charities, were all characterized by a wise, liberal and thoroughly humane spirit. In 1801 he was appointed President of the Consistory, the highest office belonging to his profession, and was ennobled by the Elector of Bavaria. He lived but two years longer to enjoy these honors, dying in 1803, in his sixtieth year. The Duke, Karl August, ordered the words to be engraved upon his tomb—"Light, Love, Life."

The great influence which Herder exercised during his life cannot be doubted ; yet, in looking over his

works at the present day, it is easy to miss the secret of that influence. I confess that, notwithstanding the evidence of an earnest, brooding mind, which I find everywhere—notwithstanding the variety and beauty of the scattered thoughts—Herder's works impress me like a collection of great, irregular fragments. He has less of positive style than any of his contemporaries. His views seem to lack an ordered connection, and this gives an air of uncertainty to the operations of his mind. Everything he does resembles a figure which the sculptor has not wholly hewn from the marble. Here and there an outline may be clearly cut, the form and expression may be everywhere indicated, but we are nevertheless tantalized by the unchiseled stone hiding as much as it reveals. His design is evidently greater than his power of execution—like the face of the Dawn, which baffled Michael Angelo.

But this very circumstance, if I rightly interpret it, gives a hint of his true power—and it is an agency which we have not yet considered. I mean the power of *suggestiveness*. There is something stimulating and provocative in ideas which fall short of their full and clear expression. The breadth of Herder's views, aided as they were by his remarkable eloquence, made them attractive at a time when the mind of Germany was throbbing with its highest vitality, and they must have opened innumerable side-paths to others. The place which he attempted to fill was so large, that there was

necessarily more variety than thoroughness in his work. But all that he did helped to widen the intellectual horizon: his spirit was never otherwise than liberal, tolerant and pervaded with the noblest sympathies. Neither his philological learning, nor his philosophy, would now be considered remarkable, but, as one of his critics truly says, they were exactly adequate to his needs and the needs of his time.

I think, therefore, that we shall be correct in designating Herder as a *procreative*, rather than a *creative* power in German literature—that is, that his suggestive, awakening and stimulating influence on other minds was his chief merit. The value of his writings is thus not affected by their want of artistic completeness,—nor is it merely a temporary value. His ideas still retain their fructifying character, because the aspiration which underlies them is always lofty and sincere.

Goethe, speaking to Eckermann, in the year 1824, thus expressed himself concerning Klopstock and Herder: "Had it not been for these powerful forerunners, our literature could not have become what it now is. When they came, they were far in advance of their time, and they equally drew it after them; but now the age has distanced them, and notwithstanding they were once so necessary and important, they have ceased to be vital forces. A young man who should now-a-days draw his culture from Klopstock and Herder, would fall to the rear."

Goethe ascribed the unusual culture of the middle classes, which had been developed throughout Germany during the previous fifty years, more to Wieland and Herder, than to Lessing. "Lessing," he said, "was the highest intelligence, and only an equal intelligence could thoroughly be taught by him. He was dangerous to half-capacities. To Wieland," he added, "all the higher cultivation of Germany owes its style. This class learned a great deal from him, not the least of which was the faculty of appropriate expression."

In these remarks, Goethe refers principally to Lessing's critical works, and he also ignores both his own and Schiller's influence on the national culture. Nevertheless, the distinction which he draws is at bottom correct. Taking Lessing, Klopstock, Wieland and Herder, as the representative forerunners and reformers, who first created the splendid age of literature which they then adorned, we may thus apportion their separate shares in the work. Lessing, unquestionably first, both in intellect and character, was a strong independent power, operating chiefly on the best thinkers and writers of his day. Klopstock, by his use of the religious element, won the people to his side, employed his influence to implant among them a lofty national sentiment, and gave eloquence, form and expression to the language. Wieland, the literary Epicurean, giving himself up to the shifting play of his moods and sensations, imparted lightness, grace and elegance to the

language, adding sparkle to strength and melody to correctness of form. Herder, finally, broke down the narrower limits of thought, led the aspirations of men back to their primitive sources, placed before them the universal and permanent in literature, rather than the national and temporary, and deepened and widened in every way the general culture, through the fruitful suggestiveness of his ideas. The more we contemplate the lives and the labors of these four authors, the more clearly we feel the necessity of each. The development of the German language had been long delayed, but these men, working simultaneously, raised it rapidly to an equal power and dignity among the other modern tongues of Europe.

We now turn from the period of struggle to that of creative repose. The battle has been fought: the ground has been won: we shall henceforth breathe a serener air, and feel the presence of a purer and grander inspiration.

IX.

SCHILLER.

TAKING the German authors in the order of their progressive development, we are next led to Schiller, who, although he was born ten years later than Goethe, died twenty-seven years earlier. His life is thus included within that of Goethe, but only as the orbit of Venus is included within that of the Earth: the courses may be nearly parallel, but are never identical.

In Schiller's case, I have the advantage of dealing with material, much of which is tolerably familiar to English readers. The biography and essays of Carlyle, and the translations of Coleridge, Bulwer, Bowring and others, have gradually created an impression, in England and America, of Schiller's character and genius—an impression which is just in outline, if somewhat vague in certain respects. The more delicate lights and shades, which are necessary to complete the picture, can be given only by the intimate and sympathetic study which the poet inspires in those who have made his acquaintance. Like Burns and Byron, he creates a personal interest in the reader, in the light of which his works are almost inevitably viewed. An indefinable

magnetism clings to his name, and accompanies it all over the world. In vain Richter speaks of "the stony Schiller, from whom strangers spring back, as from a precipice"—in vain Mr. Crabb Robinson describes him as unsocial, and with a wild expression of face—few poets have ever excited more enthusiasm, sympathy, and love in the human race, than Friedrich Schiller. Even when we know his life, and have analyzed his works, the problem is not entirely solved. Mankind seems sometimes to give way, like an individual, to an impulse of unreasoning affection, and the fortunate poet upon whom it falls is sure of a beautiful immortality.

Schiller was born on the 10th of November, 1759, in the little town of Marbach, in Würtemberg. His father was a military surgeon, who had distinguished himself in campaigns in the Netherlands and Bohemia, where he also served as an officer, and attained the rank of Captain. He was an instance, very rare in those days, of a man who tried, in middle age, to make up for the deficiencies of his early education, and whatever capacity Schiller may have received by inheritance came from him, and not from the mother. Noted, as a child, for his spiritual and imaginative nature, Schiller's early ambition was to become a clergyman; but the Duke Karl of Würtemberg insisted, against the wish of the boy's parents, on having him educated in a new school which he had just founded in Stuttgart.

At the age of fourteen Schiller entered this school,

which was conducted according to the strictest military ideas. The pupils were considered as so many machines, to be mechanically developed: not the slightest regard was paid to natural differences of capacity: their studies, their performances, and even their recreation, were regulated by an inflexible system. Unable to escape his fate, Schiller at first selected jurisprudence, but soon changed it for medicine, in which branch he was graduated, in his twenty-first year. There is no doubt that the severe and soulless discipline to which he was subjected for seven years was one cause of the fierce, reckless, rebellious spirit which pervades his earliest works. The religious aspiration having been checked, all the strength and passion of his nature turned to poetry. "The Messiah" and the Odes of Klopstock, and Goethe's drama of "*Götz von Berlichingen*," made the most powerful impression upon his mind, and the circumstance that all such reading was prohibited, only spurred him the more to enjoy it by stealth. Among the authors with whom he became acquainted was Shakespeare, whose power he felt without clearly comprehending it. His own ambition was stimulated by his intense enjoyment of poetry, and he attempted both an epic and a tragedy before his eighteenth year. These boyish works he threw into the fire, and then commenced his play of "*Die Räuber*" (The Robbers), which was completed about the time of his graduation as a military surgeon. After being appointed to a regiment in Stuttgart, and feeling

that the subordinate period of his life was ended, he published "The Robbers" in 1781, at his own expense, no publisher daring to run the risk. The impression which it produced was as immediate and powerful as that of Byron's "Childe Harold"—he woke up one morning and found himself famous. Its wild and passionate arraignment of Society, its daring blending of magnanimity, courage and crime in the same character, and the stormy, impetuous action which sweeps through it from beginning to end, startled not only Germany but all Europe. The popular doctrines which preceded the French Revolution, now only nine years off, prepared the way for it: the "Storm and Stress" period of German literature, exultant over the overthrow of the old dynasties in letters, hailed it with cries of welcome, and in the chaotic excitement and ferment of the time its flagrant violations of truth and taste were overlooked. Only its defiant power and freedom were felt and celebrated. Even in reading "The Robbers" now, we are forced to acknowledge these qualities, although we are both amused and shocked at its extravagance. Much of the play cannot be better characterized than by our slang American word—"highfalutin." No one saw this more clearly, or condemned it more emphatically than Schiller himself, in later years. "My great mistake," he once said, "was in attempting to represent men two years before I really knew a single man."

The hostility which "The Robbers" provoked was

fully as intense as the praise. The Conservative sentiment of Germany rose in arms against it. The Duke sent for Schiller and endeavored to exact a pledge from him that he would publish nothing further without first submitting it to him, the Duke. To a man of Schiller's temperament, this was impossible. Moreover, he had seen the unfortunate poet Schubart, in the fortress of Hohenasperg, where he was confined ten years for having offended his Ruler by the liberal tone of his poetry, and could easily guess how much freedom the Duke's censorship would allow him. At the same time Baron Dalberg, Director of the theatre at Mannheim, requested him to adapt "The Robbers" for representation on the stage. When the first performance was to take place, Schiller, unable to obtain leave of absence, went to Mannheim without it, and on his return was arrested and imprisoned. His insubordination gave great offence to the Duke, and it seems probable that severer measures were threatened. But one alternative was left to Schiller, and he adopted it. In 1782, he left Stuttgart in disguise, and under an assumed name, went first to Mannheim, and then to the estate of a friend near Meiningen, where he remained in complete seclusion for almost a year. During this time he completed his plays of "*Fiesco*" and "*Kabale und Liebe*" (Intrigue and Love), which were both successful on the stage. It is easy to detect their faults of construction and their overcharged sentiment, but in both the vital warmth and

the fire of the author's nature make themselves felt. The general public, who are never critical, found a new sense of enjoyment in Schiller's plays, and accepted him in spite of the critics. Towards the close of 1783, he was summoned to Mannheim, where Baron Dalberg offered him the post of Dramatic Poet, connected with the theatrical management. He remained there eighteen months, and during this time started the "Rhenish Thalia"—a literary periodical which treated especially of the drama. Various causes, which need not now be explained, combined to make his position disagreeable, and in March, 1785, he took up his residence in Leipzig. The principal cause of this change was a circumstance which many persons would brand as "sentimental," but which seems to me, in the noblest sense, human. Some months previous, he had received a letter from Leipzig, signed by four unknown persons, and accompanied by their miniature portraits. These persons were Huber and Körner, both of whom became afterwards distinguished in letters, and Minna and Doris Stock, their betrothed brides. The letter which they wrote exhibited so much refined and genial appreciation of Schiller's genius—so much affectionate interest in his fortunes—that, to Schiller's eager and impulsive nature, it offered him an escape from the annoyances which attended his position at Mannheim. Körner and Huber received him like brothers. All they had—money, time, counsel, help,—he was free to

claim: the "sentiments" of their letter to the unknown poet were justified by the practical results.

Schiller's critics and biographers seem to have united in dividing his literary life into three distinct periods, the first of which closes with his emigration from Mannheim to Leipzig. We might call this the period of Assertion, and designate the others which followed as the periods of Development and Achievement. Up to this time, in fact, we find the evidence of powers, neither harmonious nor intelligent as yet, forcing their way to the light: we find the spirit of other poets stimulating him to warmer and more passionate expression than they would have dared: all is vivid, luxuriant, teeming with life, and permeated with the kindred forces of hope and desire. It was this intense vitality, this outpouring of a nature which pressed upward and onward with all its energies, which accounts for Schiller's immediate popularity. Something similar in English literature was the reception given to Bailey's "Festus" and Alexander Smith's "Life Drama"—but they were really the end of their achievement, whereas this was the beginning of Schiller's. His early plays and poems reflect the roused and restless spirit of the times,—the universal yearning for light and liberty. The beginning of his literary activity corresponds exactly with the date of Lessing's death. The field was therefore cleared for him, and we should not marvel if something of the wildness and crudity of a first settler stamps his performance.

In the lyrics belonging to the First Period, the glow and warmth which, in his later poems, fuse the subject and sentiment together, are already apparent, although the fusion is less perfect. They are mostly irregular in form and incomplete in thought. The poems addressed to "Laura" correspond to Tennyson's youthful lyrics to "Eleanore," "Adeline" and other girlish names, with the difference that the sentiment is German and not English. As an example I will quote two brief lyrics, "*Tartarus*" and "*Elysium*" (of the latter only the first half):

GRUPPE AUS DEM TARTARUS.

Horch—wie Murmeln des em-
pörten Meeres,
Wie durch hohler Felsen
Becken weint ein Bach,
Stöhnt dort dumpftief ein
schweres, leeres,
Qualerpresstes Ach!

Schmerz verzerret
Ihr Gesicht; Verzweiflung sperret
Thren Rachen fluchend auf.

Hohl sind ihre Augen, ihre Blicke
Spähen bang nach des Cocytus
Brücke,
Folgen thränhend seinem Trau-
erlauf,

Fragen sich einander ängstlich
leise,
Ob noch nicht Vollendung sei?

A GROUP IN TARTARUS.

Hark! as noises of the hoarse,
aroused sea,
As through hollow-throated
rocks a streamlet's moan,
Sounds below there, wearily and
endlessly,
A torture-burdened groan!

Faces wearing
Pain alone, in wild despairing,
Curse through jaws that open
wide;

And with haggard eyes forever
Gaze upon the bridge of Hell's
black river,
Weeping, gaze upon its sullen
tide.

Ask each other, then, in fearful
whispers,
If not soon the end shall be?

Ewigkeit schwingt über ihnen
 Kreise,
 Bricht die Sense des Saturns
 entzwei.

The End?—the scythe of Time
 is broken ;
 Over them revolves Eternity !

Now let us turn to the brightness and music of his
 picture of

ELYSIUM.

Vorüber die stöhnende Klage !
 Elysiums Freudengelage
 Ersäufen jegliches Ach—
 Elysiums Leben
 Ewige Wonne, ewiges Schwe-
 ben,
 Durch lachende Fluren ein flö-
 tender Bach.

Jugendlich milde
 Beschwebt die Gefilde
 Ewiger Mai ;
 Die Stunden entfliehen in golde-
 nen Träumen,
 Die Seele schwillt aus in unend-
 lichen Räumen,
 Wahrheit reisst hier den
 Schleier entzwei.

Unendliche Freude
 Durchwaltet das Herz.
 Hier mangelt der Name dem
 trauernden Leide ;
 Sanfter Entzücken nur heisset
 hier Schmerz.

ELYSIUM.

Gone is the wail and the tor-
 ture !
 Elysium's banquets of rapture
 Chase every shadow of
 woe !
 Elysium, seeing,
 Endless the bliss and end-
 less the being,
 As musical brooks through the
 meadows that flow !

May is eternal,
 Over the vernal
 Landscapes of youth :
 The Hours bring golden dreams
 in their races,
 The soul is expanded through
 infinite spaces,
 The veil is torn from the vis-
 age of Truth !

Here never a morrow
 The heart's full rapture
 can blight ;
 Even a name is wanting to Sor-
 row,
 And Pain is only a gentler de-
 light.

A comparison of these early poems of Schiller with those of Klopstock, at his best period, will show how much the language has already gained in fire and freedom of movement. A new soul has entered into and taken possession of it, and we shall find that the promise of loftier development was not left unfulfilled.

Körner married soon after Schiller's arrival in Leipzig, and then settled in Dresden, whither Schiller followed him. For nearly two years Körner's house was his home. The play of "*Don Carlos*," which he had begun to write in Mannheim, was there re-written and completed. It was a great advance upon his former works, although far below what he afterwards achieved. Few dramatic poems are more attractive to young men, and, as Goethe says, it will always be read, because there will always be young men. In the character of Don Carlos we detect a great deal of Schiller's own aspiration and impatience of obstacles, while the Marquis Posa is at the same time a noble ideal and an impossible man. The great attraction of the play is its sustained and impassioned eloquence.

Before its publication, Schiller's circumstances obliged him to cast about for some literary labor which might support him. He finally decided to write an historical work, selecting the Revolt of the Netherlands for his theme. His preliminary studies were not very thorough, nor was the history ever completed, but its lively and picturesque narrative style gave it a temporary success.

He formed various other plans of labor, few of which were carried out—probably because he found it difficult to endure much drudgery of the kind; and for several years his life was burdened with pecuniary embarrassments. In 1787 he went to Weimar for the first time, and made the acquaintance of Wieland and Herder. Goethe was then absent in Italy. The most important result of this visit, however, was his meeting in Rudolstadt with his future wife, Charlotte von Lengefeld. It was the cause of his returning to Rudolstadt the following summer, and there, in the garden of the Lengefeld family, he first met Goethe. The interview has a special interest, from the fact that these two poets, destined to be friends and co-laborers, mutually repelled each other. Schiller wrote of Goethe to Körner: “His whole being is, from its origin, constructed differently from mine; his world is not my world; our modes of conceiving things are essentially different, and with such a combination there can be no substantial intimacy between us.” Nevertheless, it was through Goethe’s influence that Schiller, early in 1789, was offered the place of Professor of History at the University of Jena. Schiller at first hesitated about accepting the offer, on account of his want both of preparation and of natural fitness, but he was tired of his homeless life, he craved some fixed means of support, and he saw in the appointment the first step towards marriage. In 1858, when the three-hundredth

anniversary of the University of Jena was celebrated, I met there with a graduate, ninety years old, who had heard Schiller's first historical lecture, in 1789. The account he gave of the rush of the younger students to hear him, and the immediate popularity of the new professor, explained the modest hints of his success which we find in Schiller's letters to Körner. He was so new to the subject that he was frequently obliged to learn one day what he taught the next, but this very circumstance added to the spirit and freshness of his lectures. His productive activity re-commenced with this change in his fortunes. In February, 1790, he married, and the unrest of his life ceased; but for several years thereafter he undertook no important work except the "*History of the Thirty Years' War*," which was completed in 1793. Carlyle speaks of this work as the best piece of historical writing which, up to that time, had appeared in Germany.

The causes of this apparent inactivity—that is, inactivity, only as contrasted with his usual productive industry—were two-fold. In the year 1791 he was attacked with an inflammation of the lungs which brought him to the verge of the grave, and left lasting consequences behind it. Meyer, the artist, who first met Schiller in that year, states that his appearance was that of a man stricken with death. Goethe was with Meyer, and said, after Schiller had passed: "there are not more than fourteen days of life in him." But

there proved to be fourteen years, and fourteen years of such earnest, absorbing, unremitting labor, such great and progressive achievement, as can be found in the life of no other poet who ever lived. Although Schiller did not attain the highest, he pressed towards the highest with an energy so intense that it seems almost tragic. His illness was a cloud which was speedily silvered with the light of the noblest sympathy. The news of his death had gone forth, and a company of his unknown friends in Copenhagen instituted a solemn service in honor of his name. Among them were the Prince of Augustenburg, Count Schimmelmann, and the Danish poet Baggesen. They met on the shore of the Baltic, pronounced an oration and chanted a dirge, when the news of Schiller's recovery reached them while they were still assembled. A joyous song succeeded the mourning services, and the two noblemen pledged themselves to offer the poet one thousand thalers annually for three years, that he might rest and recover his strength. Thus, as his early exile brought him Körner's friendship and help, the illness, which disabled him for a time, gave him a new experience of human generosity. No man can attract such sympathy unless he possesses qualities of character which justify it. We are reminded of Lowell's lines :

“Be noble, and the nobleness that lies
In other men, sleeping but never dead,
Will rise in majesty to meet thine own.”

However, it was not alone this illness which interfered with Schiller's literary activity. I have called his Second Period that of Development, but it was not, therefore, a period of sound and harmonious growth. Before accepting the Professorship at Jena, his wandering, irregular life had given him little opportunity for quiet study; the strongly subjective habit of mind, which caused him to throw something of his own nature into all the characters of his dramas, had also interfered with his true education, and the necessity which forced him to take up collateral studies was a piece of good fortune in the end, although he could not feel it so at the time. He was nearly thirty years old before he could appreciate the objective character of Shakespeare's genius. When, at last, his eyes were opened, he looked upon himself and recognized his own deficiencies. After Shakespeare he studied Homer and the Greek dramatists, and was then led, through his association with the learned society of Jena, into the misty fields of philosophical speculation. The latter, no doubt, misled him as positively as the study of the great poets had guided him towards the right path. He became a zealous disciple of Kant, and the few poems which he wrote during this period show to what an extent his mind was given to theorizing. His poem of "*Die Künstler*" (The Artists), which he considered at the time his best production, is chiefly valuable to us now as an example of poetry crushed by philosophy. His

"Æsthetic Letters" and his "Essay on Naïve and Sentimental Poetry," written during those years, contain many admirable passages, but we cannot help feeling that they interfered with his creative power. It was a period of transition which unsettled the operations of his mind, and sometimes prevented him from seeing clearly. "The Artist," he wrote, in a passage which has been much admired, "the Artist, it is true, is the son of his time; but woe to him if he is its pupil, or even its favorite! Let some beneficent divinity snatch him, when a suckling, from the breast of his mother, and nurse him with the milk of a better time; that he may ripen to his full stature beneath a distant Grecian sky. And having grown to manhood, let him return, a foreign shape, into his century; not, however, to delight it by his presence, but dreadful, like the son of Agamemnon, to purify it!" In this passage Schiller expresses his own temporary ambition, but not his true place in literature. The ideal he represents is noble, but it is partly false. The Artist cannot grow to his full stature under a Grecian sky: he must not be "a foreign shape" in his century: he must place his "better time" not in the Past, but in the Future, and make himself its forerunner. Schiller seems to have had an instinct of his unsettled state. Although he conceived the plan of "*Wallenstein*" while writing his "History of the Thirty Years' War," he hesitated for a long time before beginning to write, and, in his letters to Körner, expresses doubts of his final success.

The one poem which permanently marks this phase of Schiller's life, is "*Die Götter Griechenlands*" (The Gods of Greece)—one of the finest lyrics in the language. The fact that we can detect the secret of its inspiration does not diminish the charm which seduces us to read and re-read it, until its impassioned, resonant stanzas are fixed in the memory. Although it is merely a lament for the lost age of gods and god-like men—a disparagement of the Present, exalting a Past so distant that it becomes ideal—the poem appeals to a universal sentiment, and expresses a feeling common to all educated men, at one period of their lives. Most poets have dropped "melodious tears" upon the crowning civilization of Greece, but none with such mingled fire and sweetness as Schiller. At the time when this poem appeared, the Counts Stolberg, who represented a rigidly sectarian clique in German literature, had assumed a position of hostility to the Weimar authors, and they bitterly assailed the "Gods of Greece" on the plea that it was an attack upon Christianity! This is the usual subterfuge of narrow natures: it is so much easier to awaken religious prejudices against an author, than to meet him with fair and intelligent criticism. The Stolbergs made a little noise for a time, but their malignity was as futile as that of the publisher, Nicolai, in Berlin, who coolly declared that he would soon suppress Goethe!

I quote a few stanzas of the "Gods of Greece:"

Da ihr noch die schöne Welt
regieret,
An der Freude leichtem Gängel-
band
Selige Geschlechter noch gefüh-
ret,
Schöne Wesen aus dem Fabel-
land !
Ach, da euer Wonnedienst noch
glänzte,
Wie ganz anders, anders war es
da !
Da man deine Tempel noch be-
kränzte,
Venus Amathusia !

Da der Dichtung zauberische
Hülle
Sich noch lieblich um die Wahr-
heit wand—
Durch die Schöpfung floss da
Lebensfülle
Und was nie empfinden wird,
empfand.
An der Liebe Busen sie zu
drücken,
Gab man höhern Adel der Natur,
Alles wies den eingeweihten
Blicken,
Alles eines Gottes Spur.

Wo jetzt nur, wie unsre Weisen
sagen,
Seelenlos ein Feuerball sich
dreht,
Lenkte damals seinen goldnen
Wagen
Helios in stiller Majestät.

While ye governed yet the cheer-
ful nations,—
While the leading-strings in
Joy's light hand
Led the fair, the happy genera-
tions,—
Beings beautiful, from Fable-
land !
While they came, your blissful
rites to render,
Ah, how different was then
the day,
When thy fanes with garlands
shone in splendor,
Venus Amathusia !

Then of Poesy the veil en-
chanted
Sweetly o'er the form of Truth
was thrown :
To Creation fullest life was
granted,
And from soulless things the
spirit shone.
Nature, then, ennobled, elevated,
To the heart of human love
was prest ;
All things, to the vision con-
secrated,
All things, then, a God con-
fessed !

Where, as now our sages have
decided,
Soulless whirls a ball of fire
on high,
Helios, then, his golden chariot
guided
Through the silent spaces of
the sky.

Diese Höhen füllten Oreaden,
 Eine Dryas lebt' in jenem Baum,
 Aus den Urnen lieblicher Na-
 jaden
 Sprang der Ströme Silber-
 schaum.

Jener Lorbeer wand sich einst
 um Hülfe,
 Tantal's Tochter schweigt in die-
 sem Stein,
 Syrinx Klage tönt' aus jenem
 Schilfe,
 Philomela's Schmerz aus diesem
 Hain.
 Jener Bach empfing Demeter's
 Zähre,
 Die sie um Persephonen ge-
 weint,
 Und von diesem Hügel rief Cy-
 there—
 Ach, umsonst ! dem schönen
 Freund.

Eure Tempel lachten gleich Pa-
 lästen,
 Euch verherrlichte das Helden-
 spiel
 An des Isthmus kronenreichen
 Festen,
 Und die Wagen donnerten zum
 Ziel.
 Schön geschlungne, seelenvolle
 Tänze
 Kreisten um den prangenden
 Altar ;
 Eure Schläfe schmückten Sie-
 geskränze,
 Kronen euer duftend Haar.

Misty Oreads dwelt on yonder
 mountains ;
 In this tree the Dryad made
 her home ;
 Where the Naiads held the urns
 of fountains
 Sprang the stream in silver
 foam.

Yonder laurel once was Daphne
 flying ;
 Yonder stone did Niobe re-
 strain :
 From these rushes Syrinx once
 was crying,
 From this forest Philomela's
 pain.
 For her daughter Proserpine,
 the mighty
 Ceres wept beside the river's
 fall ;
 Here, upon these hills, did
 Aphrodite
 Vainly on Adonis call.

Then like palaces your fanes
 were builded :
 You the sports of heroes glori-
 fied,
 At the Isthmian games, with
 garlands gilded,
 When the charioteers in thun-
 der ride.
 Breathing grace, the linked and
 woven dances
 Circled round your altars, high
 and fair ;
 On your brows the wreath of
 victory glances,—
 Crowns on your ambrosial hair.

Das Evoë muntre Thyrsus- schwinger	Shouts of Bacchanal and joyous singer,
Und der Panther prächtiges Ge- spann	And the splendid panthers of his car,
Meldeten den grossen Freude- bringer ;	Then announced the mighty Rapture-bringer,
Faun und Satyr taumeln ihm voran !	With his Fauns and Satyrs, from afar !
Um ihn springen rasende Mä- naden,	Dancing Maenads round his march delight us,
Ihre Tänze loben seinen Wein,	While their dances celebrate his wines,
Und des Wirthes braune Wan- gen laden	And the brown cheeks of the host invite us
Lustig zu dem Becher ein.	Where the purple goblet shines.

We now come to the third and most important period of Schiller's life. There was, as I have said, a natural repulsion between him and Goethe, when they first met; but it extended no deeper than the surface of their natures. Goethe was ten years older, and the license of the "Storm and Stress" school, from which Schiller was just emerging, lay far behind him: the lives of the two men had been wholly different: their temperaments had nothing in common: yet both cherished the same secret ambition, both were struggling towards an equally lofty ideal of literary achievement. After Schiller settled in Jena they occasionally met, without being drawn nearer; but in the course of three or four years, various circumstances compelled them to approach. Both stood almost alone, independent of the clans of smaller authors who assailed them; both

felt the need of a generous and intelligent sympathy. Schiller, in 1794, projected a new literary periodical, "*Die Horen*," and Goethe's co-operation was too important to be overlooked. He replied to Schiller's letter in a very friendly spirit, and the two soon afterwards met in Jena. They became engaged in a conversation upon natural science, which was continued through the streets to the door of Schiller's house. Goethe entered, sat down at a table, took a pen and paper, and drew what he called a typical plant, to illustrate some conclusions at which he had arrived in his botanical studies. Schiller examined the drawing carefully, and then said: "This is not an observation, it is an idea." Goethe, as he related long afterwards, was very much annoyed by the remark, because it betrayed a habit of thought so foreign to his own; but he concealed his feeling and quietly answered: "Well, I am glad to find that I can have ideas, without being aware of it." The conversation presently took another turn, and the two poets found various points wherein they harmonized. They parted with the mutual impression that a further and closer intercourse would render them a mutual service; and there is no literary friendship in all history comparable to that which thenceforth united them. Their unlikeness was both the charm and the blessing of their intercourse. Each affected the other, not in regard to manner, or superficial characteristics of style, but by the shock and

encounter of thought, by approaching literature from opposite sides and contrasting their views, by stimulating the better development of each and giving a new spur to his productiveness. The deep and earnest bases of their natures kept them together, in spite of all dissimilarity.

Goethe possessed already the element of repose, which was wanting to Schiller. He had a feeling for the proportion of parts, in a literary work, which Schiller was painfully endeavoring to acquire. His imagination worked from above downward, in order to base itself upon real, palpable forms, while the natural tendency of Schiller's was to get as far away as possible from the reality of things. The difference in their temperaments was also peculiar. Schiller's habit was to discuss his poetic themes in advance of writing—to change and substitute, to add here and cut off there, and so exhaust the modes of treatment of his subject before he began to treat it; while Goethe never dared to communicate any part of his plan in advance. When he did so, he lost all interest in writing it. His judgment was opposed to Schiller's choice of "*Wallenstein*" for dramatic treatment; but he confessed his mistake when the work was finished. Schiller, on the other hand, insisted that Goethe would write a poem in *ottava rima*—rhymed stanzas of eight lines—and was thunderstruck when Goethe sent him the entire manuscript of "*Hermann und Dorothea*," written in hexame-

ters. The thorough independence of the two men is a rare and remarkable feature of their intercourse.

The rich correspondence left to us from those years enables us to restore all the details of Schiller's life and literary labor. The income which he derived from editing and superintending his periodical, "The Hours," was not more than five hundred dollars a year. At the end of seven or eight years it was discontinued for lack of support. Another of the forms of drudgery whereby Schiller earned his bread, was the publication of the "*Musen Almanach*" or "Calendar of the Muses"—an annual volume of poetry. He was obliged to procure contributions from all the principal German poets, to arrange them in proper order, contract for the printing, read the proofs, superintend the binding, pay the authors and send specimen copies to them. The publisher, whose only labor was to sell the books thus furnished to his hands, paid Schiller twenty dollars for every printed sheet of sixteen pages, out of which sum Schiller paid the authors sixteen dollars, reserving four dollars as his own remuneration. His whole profit on the volume was a little less than five hundred dollars, after months of correspondence, of annoyance with tardy printers, and all the interruption which the task caused to his studies.

The completion of "*Wallenstein*" was fortunately delayed by these labors and by the new poetic activity which sprang up through his intercourse with Goethe.

The contact of two such electric intellects struck out constant flashes of light from both. Schiller's poetry, from this time, exhibits a finish, a proportion, a sustained and various music, which shows that his powers were at last reduced to order, and working both joyously and intelligently. Those noble poems, "*Der Spatziergang*" (The Walk) and "*Das Lied von der Glocke*" (The Song of the Bell) were soon followed by his famous ballads—some of which are masterpieces of rhythmical narrative. "*Der Taucher*" (The Diver), "*Der Gang nach dem Eisenhammer*" (The Message to the Forge) and "*Der Ring des Polykrates*" (The Ring of Polycrates) are as familiar to all German school-boys as "Lochiel's Warning" or "Young Lochinvar" to ours, and no translation can wholly rob them of their beauty. In them we find no trace of the crudity and extravagance of the poems of the First Period, nor the somewhat artificial, metaphysical character of most of those of the Second Period. The first foaming of the must and the slow second fermentation are over, and we have at last the clear, golden, perfect wine "cellared for eternal time." These ballads might properly be called epical lyrics. Their subjects have an inherent dignity; their style is simple, sustained and noble; their rhetoric has never been surpassed in the German language, and their resounding music can only be compared to that of such English poems as Byron's "Destruction of Sennacherib,"

Macaulay's "Horatius," and Campbell's "Mariners of England."

The connection with Goethe gave rise to another joint literary undertaking, of a very different character, provoked by the continual attacks of Count Stolberg, Novalis, Schlegel and their followers. Up to the year 1796, neither poet had taken any notice of the abuse and misrepresentation heaped upon them; but in the summer of that year, Goethe, who had been reading the Latin *Xenia* of Martial, wrote a few German *Xenia*, directed against his literary enemies. Schiller caught the idea at once; they met and worked together until they had produced several hundred stinging epigrams of two or four lines each, and then they published the collection. It was like disturbing a wasps' nest. The air of Germany was filled with sounds of pain, rage and malicious laughter. As Lewes says: "The sensation produced by Pope's 'Dunciad' and Byron's 'English Bards and Scotch Reviewers' was mild compared with the sensation produced by the '*Xenien*,' although the wit and the sarcasm of the '*Xenien*' is like milk and water compared with the vitriol of the 'Dunciad' and the 'English Bards.'" Lewes, however, did not appreciate the peculiar sting of the "*Xenien*," which did not satirize the individual authors or their peculiarities of expression, so much as their intellectual standpoint and their manner of thought. The hostility created by this defence and counter-assault of Goethe

and Schiller lived as long as the persons who suffered from it.

In the year 1799, the dramatic trilogy of "*Wallenstein*" was completed. Instead of the one tragedy which Schiller had planned, seven years before, he had produced three plays—" *Wallensteins Lager*" (Wallenstein's Camp), an introductory act, in eleven scenes, the object of which is to give a picture of soldier-life, towards the close of the Thirty Years' War: "*Die Piccolomini*," which discloses the conspiracy against Wallenstein, and prepares for the tragic sequel of the plot in the third part—" *Wallensteins Tod*" (Wallenstein's Death). I have said that the work was fortunately delayed, because Schiller had not attained his higher development when he began it. The feeling of uncertainty which made him lay it aside from time to time was a true instinct: he waited until he felt that his powers were equal to the task. How much he had learned, may be seen by comparing "*Wallenstein*" and "*Don Carlos*." It is the difference between passion and eloquence and impetuous movement, and the stately, secure march of a mind which has mastered its material. In "*Don Carlos*," we feel that Schiller has expressed himself affirmatively in the hero and the Marquis Posa, and negatively in Philip II. and the Princess Eboli: whereas, in "*Wallenstein*," each character has its own objective life, and the poet seems calmly to chronicle the unfoldings of a plot which is evolved by and from those characters. "*Wallenstein*"

belongs in the first rank of dramatic poems, after those of Shakespeare. Coleridge's Translation gives a fair representation of it in English, although he has sometimes mistaken Schiller's meaning, and sometimes changed the text. The famous passage, referring to the forms of old mythology, which he has added, is very beautiful in itself, but it is dramatically out of place. It may be interesting to you to know just what Schiller wrote, and in what manner Coleridge has amplified the lines. This is the original passage :

Die Fabel ist der Liebe Heimath-
land ;
Gern wohnt sie unter Feen, Ta-
lismanen,
Glaubt gern an Götter, weil sie
göttlich ist.
Die alten Fabelwesen sind nicht
mehr,
Das reizende Geschlecht ist aus-
gewandert ;
Doch eine Sprache braucht das
Herz, es bringt
Der alte Trieb die alten Namen
wieder,
Und an dem Sternenhimmel
gehn sie jetzt,
Die sonst im Leben freundlich
mit gewandelt ;
Dort winken sie dem Liebenden
herab,
Und jedes Grosse bringt uns
Jupiter
Noch diesen Tag, und Venus
jedes Schöne.

For Fable is the native home of
love ;
'Mid fays and talismans he loves
to dwell,
Believes in Gods, being himself
divine.
The ancient forms of fable are
no more,
The enchanting race has gone,
migrating forth ;
Yet needs the heart its language,
yet return
The olden names when moves
the old desire,
And still in yonder starry heav-
ens they live
Who once, benignant, shared
the life of earth ;
There, beckoning to the lover,
they look down,
And even now 'tis Jupiter that
brings
Whate'er is great, and Venus
all that's fair !

I will now give the mixture of Schiller and Coleridge :

For Fable is Love's world, his home, his birth-place :
 Delightedly dwells he 'mong fays and talismans
 And spirits ; and delightedly believes
 Divinities, being himself divine.
 The intelligible forms of ancient poets,
 The fair humanities of old religion,
 The power, the beauty, and the majesty,
 That had their haunts in dale, or piny mountain,
 Or forest by slow stream, or pebbly spring,
 Or chasms and watery depths ; all these have vanished ;
 They live no longer in the faith of reason !
 But still the heart doth need a language, still
 Doth the old instinct bring back the old names,
 And to yon starry world they now are gone,
 Spirits or gods, that used to share this earth
 With man, as with their friend ; and to the lover
 Yonder they move, from yonder visible sky
 Shoot influence down : and even at this day
 'Tis Jupiter brings whate'er is great,
 And Venus who brings everything that's fair !

There is no doubt that Coleridge has here touched to adorn : there is nothing in Schiller's lines so fine as "the fair humanities of old religion"—but his digression is a violation of the dramatic law by which Schiller was governed. We pardon it for its beauty, yet we should be wrong in allowing such a liberty to translators.

In 1799, Schiller removed to Weimar. The Duke, Karl August, influenced by Goethe, offered him a pension of one thousand thalers a year, with the condition that it should be doubled, in case of illness. Schiller, however, refused to accept this condition, saying : "I

have some talent, and that must do the rest." The success of "*Wallenstein*" stimulated him to new labor. During the year 1800, he wrote "*Marie Stuart*;" in 1801, "*Die Jungfrau von Orleans*" (The Maid of Orleans); and in 1802, "*Die Braut von Messina*" (The Bride of Messina). The first and second of these plays were more popular than "*Wallenstein*," perhaps for the reason that they are inferior as dramatic works. The interest is more obvious, the action is less involved, and there are passages in each full of that power and eloquence which tells so immediately upon an audience. In "*The Bride of Messina*" Schiller made a very daring experiment. He wrote the play in rhyme, and introduced a chorus, in imitation of the classical drama. All his rhythmical genius, all the splendor of his rhetoric were employed; but the result was, and is to this day, uncertain. The "*Bride of Messina*" is still occasionally presented on the German stage; but it is listened to more as a brilliant phenomenon than as a confirmed favorite of the public. The innovation has not been naturalized in Germany, and probably never will be.

In the year 1802, at the request of the Duke, the Emperor of Austria conferred a patent of nobility upon Schiller. The cause of this honor was not his genius as a poet, but the circumstance that his wife, losing the *von* out of her name in marrying him, had forfeited her right to appear in Court society—a right which she possessed before her marriage. Of course the rules of

the Court could not be broken, or the Earth might have been shaken from its orbit; so the only way in which the *Frau* Schiller could recover her lost aristocracy was to make her husband Friedrich von Schiller. It was only for her sake that he accepted the title: it enabled him to repay her for the conventional sacrifice which she had made in marrying him. It is true, nevertheless, that he was far from being democratic in his political views. The Democracy of Germany celebrates him as its special poet, and condemns Goethe for his aristocratic predilections. This impression is so fixed that it is now almost impossible to change it; yet, if there was any difference between the two poets, Goethe was certainly the more democratic. It seems to me that Schiller's intellectual revolt against authority in his youth, combined with the intense yearning for spiritual growth and spiritual freedom which throbs like an immortal pulse of life through all his later works, must be accepted as the explanation. Such expressions as "Freedom exists only in the realm of dreams," and "The Poet should walk with Kings, for both dwell upon the heights of humanity"—certainly do not indicate a political feeling at all republican in its character. In 1814, Goethe said to Eckermann: "People seem not to be willing to see me as I am, and turn away their eyes from everything which might set me in a true light. On the other hand, Schiller, who was much more of an aristocrat than I, but who was also much more considerate

in regard to what he said, had the remarkable fortune of being always looked upon as a friend of the people. I do not grudge him his good luck: I console myself with the knowledge that others before me have had the same experience."

As Schiller's life drew towards a close, the outward evidences of his success came to cheer and encourage him. In Leipzig, in 1803, and in Berlin, in 1804, he was received with every mark of honor. The King of Prussia offered him a salary of three thousand thalers, to take charge of the Royal theatre, but he refused to give up Weimar, and the intercourse with Goethe, which had now become an intellectual necessity. His last great work, by some critics pronounced to be his greatest dramatic success, was the play of "*Wilhelm Tell*," the subject of which, and part of the material, he owed to Goethe. It is a pleasant illustration of the manner in which the two poets assisted each other. When Goethe visited Switzerland in 1797, he formed the idea of writing an epic poem, with Tell as the hero. He made studies of the scenery, collected historical data, and for two or three years carried the plan about with him, letting it slowly mature in his mind, as was his habit of composition. He finally decided to give it up, but, feeling that the subject was better adapted to dramatic representation than epic narrative, he gave his material to Schiller, reserving only a description of sunrise among the Alps, which is now to be found in

the first scene of the Second Part of "*Faust*." The intense, glowing quality of Schiller's imagination soon assimilated this foreign material, and in none of his works is there such a fusion of subject, scenery and sentiment. From the first page to the last, the reader—or the hearer—is set among the valleys of the Alps, and surrounded by a brave and oppressed people. Historians may attempt to show that there never was either a William Tell or a Gessler—that the whole story is a myth, borrowed from Denmark, but Schiller has made Tell a real person for all time. As he says, in one of his lyrics :

Was sich nie und nirgends hat begeben,
Das allein veraltet nie.

There are serious dramatic faults in the work, but they never can affect its popularity. It has that exquisite beauty and vitality which defy criticism. The diction has all the dignity of that of "*Wallenstein*," with an ease and grace of movement, which cannot be called new in Schiller, and which exhibits the perfection of his best qualities. If any one supposes that the German language is harsh and unmusical, let him listen to the song of the fisher-boy, rocking in his boat on the lake, with which the drama opens :

FISCHERKNABE.

Es lächelt der See, er ladet zum
Bade,
Der Knabe schlief ein am grünen
Gestade,

FISHER-BOY.

Inviting the bather, the bright
lake is leaping ;
The fisher-boy lies on its margin
a-sleeping :

Da hört er ein Klingen,
Wie Flöten so süß,
Wie Stimmen der Engel
Im Paradies.

Und, wie er erwachet in seliger
Lust,

Da spülen die Wasser ihm um
die Brust.

Und es ruft aus den Tie-
fen :

Lieb Knabe bist mein !

Ich locke den Schläfer,
Ich zieh ihn herein.

HIRT.

Ihr Matten, lebt wohl !
Ihr sonnigen Weiden !
Der Senne muss scheiden,

Der Sommer ist hin.

Wir fahren zu Berg, wir kom-
men wieder,

Wenn der Kukul ruft, wenn
erwachen die Lieder,

Wenn mit Blumen die Erde sich
kleidet neu,

Wenn die Brunnlein fliessen im
lieblichen Mai.

Ihr Matten, lebt wohl !

Ihr sonnigen Weiden !

Der Senne muss scheiden,

Der Sommer ist hin.

ALPENJÄGER.

Es donnern die Höhen, es zit-
tert der Steg,

Nicht grauet dem Schützen auf
schwindlichtem Weg ;

Then hears he a music
Like flutes in its tone,
Like voices of angels
In Eden alone.

And as he awakens, enraptured
and blest,

The waters are whirling around
his breast ;

And a voice from the
waters

Says : " mine thou must
be !

I wait for the sleeper,
I lure him to me ! "

HERDSMAN.

Ye meadows, farewell !

Ye sunniest pastures,

The herdsman must leave
you,

The summer is gone.

We go from the hills, we come
ere long

When the cuckoo calls, and the
sound of song ;

When the earth with blossoms
again is gay,

When the fountains gush in the
lovely May.

Ye meadows, farewell !

Ye sunniest pastures,

The herdsman must leave
you,

The summer is gone.

ALPINE HUNTER.

The avalanche thunders, the
bridges are frail,

The hunter is fearless, though
dizzy the trail :

Er shreitet verwegen Auf Feldern von Eis; Da pranget kein Frühling,	He strides in his daring O'er deserts of snows, Where Spring never blossoms
Da grünet kein Reis; Und, unter den Füßen ein ne- bliches Meer, Erkennt er die Städte der Men- schen nicht mehr;	And grass never grows, And the mists like an ocean be- neath him are tost, Till the cities of men to his vi- sion are lost.
Durch den Riss nur der Wolken Erblickt er die Welt, Tief unter den Wassern	Through the rifts of the cloud-land The far world gleams, And the green fields un- der
Das grünende Feld.	The Alpine streams.

Such is the musical overture of Alpine life with which Schiller opens the drama.

He never recovered from the inflammation of the lungs, which attacked him in 1791. During the last ten or twelve years of his life he was rarely free from pain, but his mind seems to have been always clear and vigorous, and his astonishing industry was really a necessity to his nature. He lived in his art, and was happy in recognizing his own progress towards a lofty and far-off ideal. In order to avoid interruption, he contracted the habit of writing wholly at night, and of keeping off drowsiness by setting his feet in a tub of cold water. He was physician enough to know that he was shortening his life by such an unnatural habit of labor, but his literary conscience was inexorable. For him there was no rest, no relaxation. No sooner was "William Tell" given to the stage, and triumphantly greeted by the

public, than he began a new dramatic poem, taking for his hero the false Demetrius, who imposed himself on the Russian boyards as the true heir to the throne, and reigned for some months in Moscow. In the spring of 1805, when midway in his work, he was seized with a chill at the theatre, and went home, never to leave his door again as a living man. A few hours before his death, he seemed to realize his condition, and uttered the words: "Death cannot be an evil, for it is universal." He died on the 9th of May, aged forty-five years and six months. His remains now rest in a granite sarcophagus, by the side of Goethe, in the vault of the Ducal family at Weimar.

In carefully studying Schiller's life and works, and contrasting his position in German literature with that of his contemporaries, we are struck with a certain discrepancy between his fame and his achievement. With all his rare and admirable qualities, we cannot place him higher than in the second rank of poets—in the list which includes Virgil, Tasso, Corneille, Spenser and Byron. Yet his place in popular estimation, not only in Germany, but throughout the educated world, is certainly among the first. His fame is of that kind which depends partly upon the sympathetic attraction that sometimes surrounds an individual life,—in other words, the interest of character is added to the intellectual recognition of the poet. We may say that a character so positive as Schiller's breathes through his literary

records, and cannot be disconnected from his intellect; but we shall only state the same fact in a different form. To other poets—to Tasso, Burns and Byron—the same personal interest is attached, yet in no one does it spring from that lofty, unceasing devotion to a noble literary Ideal, which gave its consecration to Schiller's life. Like Lessing, he sought Truth, but not in the realm of fact. To him she was not a severe, naked form, beautiful as a statue, but as hard and cold; she was rather a shape of air and light, poised above the confusion of life, in a region of aspiration and hope. The sense of her beauty came to Schiller through sentiment and sensation, as well as through the intellect; and herein he touches the universal yearning of Man.

His power over the harmonies of language was never so grandly manifested as in some passages of Homer, Milton and Goethe; but it is more uniformly fine than in almost any other poet. From the tones of a flute or a wind-harp he rises to the strength and resonance of an organ, and in many of his lyrics the rich volume of sound rolls unbroken to the end. His language sometimes reflects the struggle of his thought to shape itself clearly; but it is always pure and elevated, and his lines and stanzas cling to the memory with wonderful tenacity. These qualities, which address themselves primarily to the ear, support his sentiment and thought, and bear them, as if unconsciously, into a higher atmosphere of poetry. There is an upward tendency—a lifting of the

intellectual vision, a stirring as of unfolding wings—in almost everything he has written. He is an example of a genius, not naturally of the highest order, carried by the force of an aspiring, enthusiastic, believing temperament almost to a level with the highest. Where so many others lose faith and cease exertion, he began. That is the difference between the Schiller of “The Robbers” and the Schiller of “Wallenstein” and the Ballads.

Carlyle says of him: “Schiller has no trace of vanity; scarcely of pride, even in its best sense, for the modest self-consciousness which characterizes genius is with him rather implied than openly expressed. He has no hatred; no anger, save against Falsehood and Baseness, where it may be called a holy anger. Presumptuous triviality stood bared in his keen glance: but his look is the noble scowl that curls the lip of an Apollo, when, pierced with sun-arrows, the serpent expires before him. In a word, we can say of Schiller what can only be said of a few in any country or time: He was a high ministering servant at Truth’s altar, and bore him worthily of the office he held. . . . His intellectual character has an accurate conformity with his moral one. Here, too, he is simple in his excellence; lofty rather than expansive or varied; pure, divinely ardent rather than great.”

I have allowed myself no space to examine Schiller’s works in detail, because it is better first to define the

place which his life occupies in the literary history of Germany, and his individual characteristics as a poet. Though disparaged by the Stolbergs, Riemer and others, and exalted by Börne and a class of later writers above Goethe, he has fixed his own true place at the side of the latter, lower through the opportunities of life, lower in breadth of intellect and the development of all the faculties, but equal in aspiration and equal in his own field of achievement. His life is an open book for whoever chooses to read it. All his early impatience and extravagance, all the struggles through which he rose, the steps whereby he climbed to a knowledge of himself and his art, are revealed to our gaze; but when the history closes, we leave him in the ripeness, the harmony, the joyous activity of his powers, and this final impression is the standard by which we measure his fame.

No German poet since Schiller has equalled his magnificent rhythm and rhetoric. The language has been made sweeter, clearer, more flexible: it has caught new varieties of movement and melody: it has been forced to reflect the manner of many new minds, yet in the qualities I have mentioned Schiller is still the climax of performance.

I can find no more fitting words to close this review of a life measured by heart-throbs and brain-throbs, rather than by years, than the stanzas which Goethe dedicated to his memory, as an epilogue to the "Song

of the Bell," when it was represented in Weimar, in the year 1815:

“Denn er war unser ! Mag das stolze Wort
Den lauten Schmerz gewaltig übertönen !
Er mochte sich bei uns, im sichern Port
Nach wildem Sturm zum Dauernden gewöhnen.
Indessen schritt sein Geist gewaltig fort
Ins Ewige des Wahren, Guten, Schönen,
Und hinter ihm, in wesenlosem Scheine,
Lag, was uns Alle bändigt, das Gemeine.

Nun glühte seine Wange roth und röther
Von jener Jugend, die uns nie entfliegt,
Von jenem Muth, der früher oder später,
Den Widerstand der stumpfen Welt besiegt,
Von jenem Glauben, der sich stets erhöhter
Bald kühn hervordrängt, bald geduldig schmiegt,
Damit das Gute wirke, wachse, fromme,
Damit der Tag dem Edlen endlich komme !”

For he was ours ! Be this proud consciousness
A spell that shall subdue our lamentation !
He sought with us a harbor from the stress
Of storms, a more enduring inspiration.
While with strong step his mind did forward press
To Good, Truth, Beauty, in its pure creation,
And far behind him lay, a formless vision,
The vulgar power that fetters our ambition.

And thus his cheek grew red, and redder ever,
From that fair youth whose wings are never furled,
That courage, crowned at last, whose proud endeavor
Tames the resistance of the stubborn world,—
That faith, that onward, upward, mounts forever,
Now patient waiting, now in conflict hurled,
That so the Good shall work, increase and sway,
And for the noble man shall dawn a nobler day !

X.

GOETHE.

IN considering the central figure of the great age of German literature—the god, he might be called, who sits alone on the summit of the German Parnassus—I feel how impossible it is to give more than the merest outline of a life which was both broad and long, of an activity unbroken for more than sixty years, and covering in its range nearly every department of Literature, Art and Science. If a cabinet-picture will suffice for Klopstock and Wieland, a life-size sketch for Lessing and Schiller, I feel the need of a canvas of heroic proportions when I come to portray Goethe.

If I were not afraid of falling into the fault which I have attributed to the German mind—of constructing a theory wherever the operation is possible—I might trace a gradual order of development in the authors who preceded Goethe, and show how his intellect, possessing the supreme quality which was lacking in them, both individually and collectively, became the crowning element in German literature. But it will be enough to say that he was born “in the fullness of time”—when Klopstock, Lessing, Wieland and Herder were already

upon the stage ; and that the experience prepared for him by their labors was precisely that which his development required. In the case of Klopstock, we have a useful and fortunate, though not a great life ; in Lessing and Schiller, a life of struggle, nobly endured ; in Wieland and Herder, lives of change, of action and ambition, fruitful in influence ; but in Goethe we find a long, rich, and wholly fortunate life, almost unparalleled in its results. In him there is no unfulfilled promise, no fragmentary destiny : he stands as complete and symmetrical and satisfactory as the Parthenon.

I can best represent his achievements by connecting them with the events of his life ; and must therefore give an outline of his biography. If many of you are already familiar with the principal facts, you will pardon me for repeating them, since I can thus best describe the man. Johann Wolfgang Goethe was born in Frankfort on the Main, on the 28th of August, 1749. His father, the Councillor Goethe, was a man of wealth, education and high social position ; his mother was the daughter of the Imperial Councillor Textor. These officials of the free city of Frankfort considered themselves on a par with the nobility of other German lands, and were equally proud and dignified in their bearing. Goethe was not only a marvelous child, but he enjoyed marvelous advantages, from his very birth. His mother invented fairy stories for his early childhood ; he learned French from an officer quartered in his father's house ;

the best teachers were provided for him, and when only eight years old, he was able to write—not very correctly, of course—in the German, French, Italian, Greek and Latin languages. His beauty, his precocious talent, his bright, sparkling, loveable nature, procured him an indulgent freedom rarely granted to children, and gave him at the start that independence and self-reliance which he preserved through life. He began to compose even before he began to write: expression, in his case, was co-existent with feeling and thought. Before he was twelve years old, he planned and partly wrote a romance which illustrates his wonderful acquirements. The characters are seven brothers and sisters, scattered in different parts of Europe. One of them writes in German, one in French, one in English, one in Italian, one in Latin and Greek, and another in the Jewish-German dialect. The study of the latter led him to Hebrew, which he kept up long enough to read a portion of the Bible. At an age when most boys are struggling unwillingly with the rudiments of knowledge, he had laid a broad basis for all future studies, and grasped with passionate eagerness every opportunity of anticipating them. There have been similar instances of precocity, but the informing and mastering genius was lacking. The boy Goethe assimilated and turned to immediate use all that he learned. His creative power was developed many years in advance of the usual period. He soon became a hero in the youthful society of Frankfort

—a poet, an improvisatore and a wit, astonishing his associates by his brilliancy and daring, and at the same time offending his stern, respectable father.

In 1765, at the age of sixteen, he was sent to the University of Leipzig, to study jurisprudence ; but he soon wearied of that study, as well as of logic and rhetoric, as they were then taught. Except botany and mineralogy, he neglected all graver studies, gave up much of his time to society, and imagined himself in love with a maiden two or three years older than himself. His life at Leipzig, it must be confessed, was very wild and irregular. The scornful independence of others, which he asserted, began to show itself in excesses, and at the end of three years he went home with hemorrhage of the lungs and a tumor on his neck. More than a year was needed for his entire recovery, and during this period the better forces of his nature began to assert themselves. He regained his lost balance : his literary aspirations revived, and gradually grew into earnestness and coherence.

In his twenty-first year he was sent to Strassburg, to continue his legal studies, but already carrying with him the plan of his first famous work—the tragedy of “*Götz von Berlichingen*.” During the seclusion of his illness, he had occupied himself chiefly with alchemy and mystic speculation. The seed of the future “*Faust*” was even then sown, and it was not long before it began to germinate. But the greatest fortune of his residence

in Strassburg was his acquaintance with Herder, who was five years older than Goethe, and at that time of a graver and profounder temperament. The two men were very much unlike, and they never became intimate friends; but there is no doubt that Herder's companionship and counsel, during the six months they spent together, was of great value in weaning Goethe from the lawless, impulsive mood into which he had fallen. He was suddenly seized with a desire to overcome everything which seemed like a weakness in his nature. He cured his tendency to giddiness, on looking down from heights, by climbing the spire of Strassburg Cathedral every day. He had a constitutional dread of the supernatural, without believing in it; so he went into graveyards at midnight; he disliked loud voices, and therefore went as near as possible to the drums of the military band. He was easily affected by a sense of disgust, and for that reason attended the dissections of the medical class. He also studied electricity, wrote a pamphlet on Gothic architecture, and withal, qualified himself for the degree of *Doctor Juris*, which he received in a little more than a year. Returning to Frankfort, he first re-wrote the tragedy of "*Götz von Berlichingen*," and was then sent by his father to practice in the Imperial Chancery at Wetzlar, a small town near Giessen. But he remained there only a few months, occupying himself much more with literature than with law. His tragedy was again revised, and was then published in

the spring of 1773. Its popularity was immediate and universal. Compared with Schiller's "Robbers," produced at very nearly the same age, every reader will feel the great superiority of "*Götz*." Here there is nothing crude, and little that is purely subjective. The piece is full of life and movement, and the touch of a master is seen in the delineation of every character. In regard to form, Goethe undoubtedly owed something both to Shakespeare and Lessing, but his management of the historic material is entirely his own. His literary fame was secured at one blow. It is worthy of remark that the translation of "*Götz von Berlichingen*" was Walter Scott's first essay in literature.

The attention of such men as Zimmermann, Lavater, and Klopstock was attracted towards Goethe by this work. His name began to be known throughout Germany: he was astonished at his sudden popularity, and considered it, at first, a lucky accident. Soon after the publication of "*Götz*," the young prince Karl August of Weimar passed through Frankfurt, and sent for Goethe. This was the beginning of a friendship which lasted for fifty-five years, and determined the external circumstances of Goethe's life. Law was now entirely given up, and Goethe, again an inmate of his father's house for two or three years, gave all his time to literature. He planned a tragedy to be called "*Mohammed*," a fragment of which survives, wrote several admirable lyrics, and produced his satire, called "*Götter, Helden*

und Wieland" (Gods, Heroes, and Wieland). In 1774, two years after the events upon which the book is founded had occurred, he published "*Die Leiden des jungen Werthers*" (The Sorrows of Werther). The history of this work, the prodigious sensation which it produced, and the character of its influence contrasted with the author's design, make it a phenomenon in the annals of literature. The "Storm and Stress" period, to which I have referred, was then approaching its climax. Although "*Götz von Berlichingen*" is remarkably free from its spirit, Goethe could no more escape the infection than a child can escape the mumps or the measles. His powerful nature experienced every symptom of the disease in an aggravated form, and then healed itself. Although no poet ever made freer use of his own sensations and experiences—his joy, suffering, passion and aspiration—yet his habit was to wait until the experience had passed, then holding it firmly apart from him—as a man might hold an amputated limb, wherein every nerve is dead—to make it an intellectual study. He revives the tempest, and lets it rage around him; but in the centre there is a vortex of calm, where he sits and controls it. "*Werther*" is a psychological study of this character. Goethe combined his own experience with the tragical fate of a man whom he knew, and produced what is generally called a sentimental story, but which is really a remarkable dissection of a typical character. But it was not so received and understood. All Europe

dissolved in a gush of emotion over its pages. It was hailed as the triumph and justification of the sentimental school, and a whole literature of imitations, parodies and criticisms followed it.

Although we cannot divide the literary life of Goethe into periods, like that of Schiller, because his growth was not only steady and symmetrical, but also because some of his faculties were nearly perfect at the start, yet there are occasional pauses in his activity and variations in its character. The one important change in his external life now occurred. In September, 1775, the Duke Karl August invited Goethe to visit him at Weimar. This visit, which lasted two months, was followed by an invitation to accept a permanent situation at the Court, with the title of Privy Councillor, and a salary of twelve hundred thalers a year. In spite of his father's opposition, Goethe accepted the offer, and thenceforth Weimar was his home. The appointment of an untitled poet to a place which tradition required to be filled only by a noble, was a great scandal throughout Germany; but the wild and rather grotesque life led by the Duke and Goethe gave much greater offence. Their chief object seemed to be, to violate all the sacred conventionalities of German courts. They appeared in society in top-boots, cracked whips together in the public market-place, plunged into the river Ilm at midnight, and conducted themselves altogether more like boys playing truant than a pair of dignified personages. For some

years Goethe's productiveness slackened, because there was now no external incitement, and the internal impulse gave way, for a time, to his hearty delight in active physical life. It was his habit to carry a poetical conception for a long time in his brain, allowing it to develop by its own force, until the proper mood and leisure for its delivery arrived: then it was put into words with a rapidity and artistic completion which astonished his friends, who did not guess how much of the labor had been silently performed in advance. So, now, while he seemed indolent, the dramatic poems of "*Iphigenie auf Tauris*," "*Tasso*," and "*Egmont*" were in progress, and portions of the first two were even written in prose. After three years of free, unrestrained life with the Duke, he began to weary of balls, hunts and picnics, and withdrew more and more from the society of the Court. He was eight years older than the Duke, and "the intoxication of youth" (to use his own words) was over with him that much earlier. The inseparable companionship was broken off, although the Duke was steadfast in his friendship. In 1782, Goethe was made President of the Chamber, and ennobled. The death of his father, in the same year, having made him comparatively wealthy, he determined to carry out his long-cherished plan of a journey to Italy; but four years still intervened before he succeeded in leaving Weimar. During this time he began to write his philosophical romance of "*Wilhelm*

Meister," which was not published until long afterwards.

At last, in 1786, secretly and under an assumed name, he set out for Italy, where he remained for nearly two years, residing alternately in Venice, Florence, Rome, Naples and Sicily. It appears to have been a period of pure and perfect enjoyment. After ten years of distractions, his time was wholly his own. He practised painting, for which he always had a passion, studied classic art, correcting and elevating thereby his poetic ideal, and worked faithfully upon the plans he had carried with him. The "*Iphigenie auf Tauris*" and "*Egmont*" were completed, and "*Tasso*" commenced, before he visited Sicily. I have seen an original manuscript letter, which he wrote from Naples to his servant in Weimar, giving as minute and enthusiastic an account of his literary labors, as if it had been written to a brother author. His little song of "*Kennst du das Land*" expresses the strength of the longing which drew him to Italy, and he was not deceived in the real experience. When, in 1788, he left Italy to return to Weimar, it was with a feeling of regret so strong that he was positively unhappy for months afterwards.

The "*Iphigenie auf Tauris*," which now appeared, is one of the noblest dramatic poems in any language. As Schiller truly said, it is not Greek, but neither can it be called German. It moves in a higher region than

that where the signs of time and race may still be read.
From the opening lines :

“ Hinaus in eu're Schatten, rege Wipfel
Des alten, heil'gen, dicht-belaubten Haines,”

to the closing farewell of Thoas, the reader breathes the purest ether of poetry. Its grandeur is inherent in the lines, and its finest passages seem to exist of themselves, rather than to have been elaborated by the thought of years. It is a poem in dramatic form, not a drama; and the same distinction will apply to “*Tasso*.” Neither is adapted to the stage. “*Iphigenie*” was acted by the Court at Weimar, Goethe taking the part of Orestes, and the Duke that of Pylades; but at Weimar Sophocles was performed,—the high cultivation which prevailed there rendering even that possible. “*Tasso*” may also be called a psychological study. It is almost without action, and is monotonous in tone, but it abounds in fine passages. It is a poem, however, which will never be generally appreciated, except by poets. In “*Egmont*” Goethe achieved a theatrical success. This tragedy is still more frequently performed than any of his other dramas.

Three such works as these should have placed Goethe at once at the head of German literature; but they seem to have made an impression upon a comparatively small number, at the time of their appearance. The author's genius was felt everywhere, but it disturbed to a greater

extent than it gave delight. He stood almost alone: Klopstock was unfriendly, Herder was jealous and sensitive, Schiller was still shy and doubtful, and Wieland, who never was else than a large-hearted friend, could give him no satisfactory support. Although, fifteen years before, the nerves of all Europe had been shattered by his "*Werther*," and his name was as well known as that of Rousseau or Voltaire, yet, when the collected edition of his works was published in Leipzig, in 1790,—an edition containing "*Götz*," "*Iphigenie*" "*Tasso*," "*Egmont*," much of the First Part of "*Faust*," and his exquisite songs and lyrics—the publisher complained that the sale was not sufficient to pay his expenses! Those whom he had offended, or who were jealous of his genius or his fortune, now formed quite a large class, including many authors in the flush of a transient popularity. He never betrayed his feelings in such matters, but it is evident that his exclusive devotion to science for some years was partly the consequence of a discouragement in regard to his literary work. It is hardly within my province, at present, to speak of Goethe as a man of science, but I may at least mention that his studies in osteology had already resulted in his discovery of the inter-maxillary bone; that his studies in botany led him to the composition of a really important work on the "*Metamorphoses of Plants*," and that his "*Science of Colors*" was for a while accepted (though not generally by opticians) as

having superseded Newton's. He was an eager if not a very thorough observer; but, being a poet, he was sometimes inclined to depend rather on his scientific intuitions than on the laborious observation of Nature. In this respect he differed from Humboldt, while he resembled him in his insatiable thirst for knowledge and his untiring industry. We cannot say that the time he devoted to natural science was lost, even if it had been less fruitful in results, for at the same time he made himself acquainted with the metaphysical systems of Kant, Fichte and Hegel, and all those bones and stones kept him close to solid fact while his mind was occupied with pure intellectual speculations. He was never German enough to lose his way in those misty realms, yet it was certainly an advantage to have a basis of reality under his feet.

In 1794, nearly six years after Goethe's first interview with Schiller, the two came together again—this time, only to be separated by death. It was not long before the effect of this close intercourse with another spirit, as restlessly creative as his own, began to show itself in Goethe's return to poetry. He was then about publishing the first part of "*Wilhelm Meister*"—the "*Lehrjahre*" or "Apprenticeship,"—and Schiller's friendly intelligent criticism of the work in manuscript was an encouragement which he had not felt for years. This work, which has been admirably translated by Carlyle, might be called a philosophical romance. It is a sin-

gular compound of pictures of life, so plain and realistic that they sometimes become actually coarse, with theories of society, labor and education so refined that they frequently lose all practical character. The faults of the work are as positive as its beauties; but it had no antetype in literature. Parts of it, such as the episode of Mignon, the criticism on Hamlet, and the detached aphorisms scattered through it, are generally known and admired, but the work, as a whole, is only relished by those readers who are able to think for themselves while they follow the thoughts of another. By a large class it is considered immoral, because some of the characters introduced are not always better than they should be. The best answer to this charge is given by one of Goethe's most intelligent critics. "In '*Wilhelm Meister*,'" he says, "there is a complete absence of all moral verdict on the part of the author. Characters tread the stage, events pass before our eyes, things are done, and thoughts are expressed; but no word comes from the author respecting the moral bearing of those things. Life forgets in activity all moral verdict. The good is beneficent, but no one praises it; the bad works evil, but no one anathematizes it." This description is entirely correct, and it would apply equally to much of Shakespeare. Our American taste of the present day would hardly be satisfied with a fiction, wherein the good and the bad characters are simply presented, as we see them in ordinary life. An author's principles

are suspected unless he denounces the one and praises the other,—or, at least, heightens the colors so that we shall detect the undercurrent of his own preferences. No man, however, will ever read “*Wilhelm Meister*” as he reads a certain class of modern romances, for the sake of gratifying an immoral taste: to all except persons of genuine intellect and culture, it is a sealed book.

Another result of Goethe’s intercourse with Schiller was the re-awakening of his lyrical genius. He himself compares the effect upon his poetic faculty to that of a second spring, wherein a thousand germs of thought, long lying dormant, suddenly sprouted and blossomed. A conception which once entered his brain never was forgotten. Even the idea of a simple little ballad would linger with him for years. So when Schiller and he agreed to write a number of brief narrative poems, he had only to free his mind of the material which had already accumulated there. Some of his finest and most celebrated poems—such as “*Die Braut von Corinth*” (The Bride of Corinth), “*Der Gott und die Bajadere*” (The God and the Bayadere), “*Der Fischer*” (The Fisher), and “*Der Erlkönig*” (The Erl-King) were written at this time. He also arranged for Schiller’s periodical, “The Hours,” two collections of short epigrammatic poems, written in the classic distich, and called “*Die Römischen Elegien*” (The Roman Elegies) and “*Die Vier Jahreszeiten*” (The Four Seasons). These are masterpieces of poetic art. They, and Schiller’s

noble poem of "*Der Spaziergang*" have naturalized the ancient elegiac measure in the German language. The only successful English example I know of, is in the short introductory passages of Clough's "*Amours de Voyage*." I cannot resist the temptation of quoting a few couplets from the "*Jahreszeiten*":

1.

"Auf, ihr Distichen, frisch! Ihr muntern lebendigen Knaben!
Reich ist Garten und Feld! Blumen zum Kranze herbei!

2.

Reich ist an Blumen die Flur; doch einige sind nur dem Auge,
Andre dem Herzen nur schön; wähle dir, Leser, nun selbst!

3.

Rosenknospe, du bist dem blühenden Mädchen gewidmet,
Die als die Herrlichste sich, als die Bescheidenste zeigt.

4.

Viele der Veilchen zusammen geknüpft, das Sträusschen erscheint
Erst als Blume; du bist, häusliches Mädchen, gemeint.

5.

Eine kannt' ich, sie war wie die Lilie schlank, und ihr Stolz war
Unschuld; herrlicher hat Salomo Keine gesehn.

6.

Schön erhebt sich der Agley und senkt das Köpfchen herunter.
Ist es Gefühl? oder ist's Muthwill? Ihr rathet es nicht."

I regret that I cannot find a translation of "*The God and the Bayadere*" which at all reproduces its compact power of expression and its majestic rhythm; indeed, these minor poems of Goethe almost defy translation.

In many of them the sentiment is as airy and delicate, the charm as easy to feel and as difficult to define, as in the songs of Shakespeare. His mastery over all the powers and possibilities of the language was so marvellous, that an almost equal mastery of the resources of the English language is required in one who attempts to reproduce them.

A few years ago, among the correspondence of the publisher Vieweg, of Brunswick, a letter of Goethe's was found, consisting of these two sentences: "If you are willing to publish the contents of the accompanying sealed package, send me two hundred ducats (about eight hundred dollars). If you decline, return the package with the seals unbroken." This was a hard condition for the publisher: he deliberated a day or two, then sent the two hundred ducats, and opened the package. It contained the pastoral epic of "*Hermann und Dorothea*," one of Goethe's most perfect works. We happen to know, through his correspondence with Schiller and others, the manner in which it was written. Goethe had finished the "*Achilleïs*," which we can only call an imitation of Homer, and was encouraged by Schiller to write a poem on the subject of Nausikää. But the work dragged: by a sudden revulsion of feeling, Goethe turned to the life of his own day, took up a subject which had been waiting six or seven years in his brain, planned and arranged it during his official journeys through the Duchy, and then wrote it in the

course of a few weeks of summer leisure. We have his own word for the statement that more than half of it was written in nine consecutive days. It was one of his most fortunate inspirations. The perplexed publisher was lucky in his venture, for the poem not only revived Goethe's popularity, but stamped upon the literary circles of Germany the impression of his true power. "Hermann and Dorothea" is the simplest possible idyl of common life. The characters of the parents, the young man and the maiden, the clergyman and the apothecary are drawn with exquisite truth and reality; the measure is fluent as prose, yet flatters the ear like rhyme; the language is the simplest possible, poetic in its essence, not from ornament, and the events of the story, occupying not more than two days, are so naturally and artlessly evolved, that the reader follows them with pure and perfect enjoyment, from beginning to end. I care not what may be said against the use of hexameter in modern literature: in "Hermann and Dorothea" it is a thorough success. Goethe understood, as many poets do not, the importance of form as a vehicle of thought. With all his acquired self-control, his intellectual nature was as sensitive as a wind-harp to the lightest breeze of imagination; but he had the power of retaining every passing strain, every fugitive tone, until they grew to a connected melody. Then he sought for the one form which might most fitly express it, very much as the sculptor seeks

for a living model, to assist in bringing out the ideal figure in his brain. He never lost sight of the real truth of Nature, but the commonest scenes and events, in passing through his mind are saturated with a subtle element of poetry. This is nowhere so wonderfully illustrated as in "*Hermann and Dorothea*," and we can readily understand that it was that one of his works to which he turned with the most satisfaction in his old age.

After Schiller's death, in 1805, Goethe lost for a time his interest in literature. Within a year and a half the battle of Jena occurred, and Weimar was sacked by the French army. It was perhaps the insecurity of his life at the time which led him to marry the mother of his son, with whom he had been living for seventeen years—or, rather, the sense of insecurity led her to consent to the marriage, which she had refused up to that time. Nothing in Goethe's life has been so misunderstood and misrepresented as his relation to Christiane Vulpius. When I was last in Weimar, I discovered a great many facts which throw an entirely new light on this subject. Christiane was an uneducated woman, from a much lower rank in society; but she understood Goethe's nature as no one else did.

Goethe's first important work, after the death of Schiller, was his novel of the "*Wahlverwandtschaften*," which has been translated "*The Elective Affinities*." It is much more compact, and, as a story, more coherent than "*Wilhelm Meister*." His scientific pursuits

absorbed a great deal of his time during the early years of this century, but he found time to write an autobiography under the title of "*Wahrheit und Dichtung*" (Truth and Fiction), and in his sixty-fifth year commenced the study of the Persian and the Arabic languages. At a time when the world supposed that the period of his poetic activity was over, his "*West-östlicher Divan*," suddenly appeared. It is a collection of short poems, two or three hundred in number, German in spirit and Oriental in character. In them the fire of a second youth glows and throbs through the wisdom of age. Some of the most beautiful brief lyrics he ever wrote are contained in this collection. This was the source whence Count Platen and Rückert drew their Oriental inspiration. The impression it produced was so strong that it almost created a new fashion in literature. By this time Goethe had outlived the jealousy and the enmity which had so long assailed him. Kotzebue was powerless; Novalis and Nicolai were dead; Schlegel was silent; the Stolbergs were forgotten; and a new generation had grown up, to whom the poet was an acknowledged power. The race was not yet sufficiently developed to appreciate his best work, but they could reverence without reaching that point. He had also withdrawn from official duties. His time was his own; society came to him at his own convenience, and his life thenceforth was quiet, serene, yet still unweariedly active.

He conducted a periodical called "*Kunst und Alterthum*," (Art and Antiquity), and wrote a number of scientific essays, but undertook no larger work until after his seventieth year, when he completed "*Wilhelm Meister*." From his seventy-fifth to his eighty-first year, he wrote the Second Part of "*Faust*," dictated his "Annals," and revised the complete edition of his works, in forty volumes. It is a remarkable fact, showing the little protection accorded to literature in Germany during the lives of her greatest authors, that this complete edition could only be secured against reprints by other publishers, through a special act of the German Diet, which was granted in 1826. It is doubtful whether Goethe received more than twenty or thirty thousand dollars from his works during the whole of his life; but his grand-children received fortunes from them.

The end came slowly on, like the sinking of the sun, in a cloudless sky. In 1828 the Duke, Karl August, died; soon after, his widow, the Duchess Luise; then, Goethe's only son, and he was left alone, still grand and erect in body, and with every sign of intellectual vigor. He was one of the handsomest men that ever lived: the bust taken in Rome is finer than the head of the Apollo. Even eighty years could not bend his figure or dim the splendor of his dark-brown eyes: the Apollo had only grown into the Olympian Jove. Rückert, in a noble poem, wished for him the fate of the Persian

poets, Saadi and Djami, who counted a hundred years, but some hidden part of the machinery had worn out, and a very slight cause brought it to a full stop. He died on the 22d of March, 1832, in his eighty-third year.

Karl August directed in his will, that his body should be placed between those of Goethe and Schiller. This was more than the rigid laws of German Courts could endure: the will was disregarded. The two poets rest side by side, in the Ducal vault, but at a proper distance from the reigning family. Yet their sarcophagi, and that of their one princely friend, are those which draw reverent strangers to the vault, and which are always freshly crowned with garlands.

In comparing Goethe with Homer and Shakespeare, I mean to assert his equal and independent supremacy, without claiming for him precisely the qualities which made them great. In intellectual character, he is as far removed from either as each is from the other. Homer is specially epic, Shakespeare specially dramatic, and in Goethe we find the highest equal development of all the powers of the human mind. The word "many-sided," which the Germans apply to him, is not an adequate description. The general rule among men seems to be that achievement is the result of concentrated effort in one direction. Goethe reversed this rule; the broader his field of action became, the more splendid was his achievement. One cause of this phenomenon

will be found in a quality which formed the very basis of his nature. He was never satisfied until he had ascertained the positive reality of the subject of his thought, and its possible relations to other realities. His fancy and imagination were so healthy and so proportioned to his perceptive faculties, that their activity was only exercised upon a basis of real form or fact. Those vague yet splendid moods of the mind, in which some poets indulge, were never known to him—or, if he knew them, he never gave them expression. With the Swedish Tegnèr, he believed that

“ The obscurely uttered is the obscurely thought.”

We find the same realistic element in other poets, but never in such perfect combination with the highest qualities of the imagination. Edgar Poe thus addresses Science—

“ true daughter of old Time thou art,
Who changest all things with thy peering eyes !
Why prey'st thou thus upon the Poet's heart,
Vulture, whose wings are dull realities ? ”

and this is a sort of conventional sentiment with all minor poets. Even Schiller, at one period of his life, lamented—in exquisite verse, it is true—the dethronement of the Ideal by the Actual, in life. Goethe, however, would have smiled, and answered in terms like these: “ Science is truth and Poetry is truth : both are infinite and inexhaustible : both are kindred fields

through which the human approaches the Divine Mind, and they can never be antagonistic in a healthy nature. Poetry is not an exotic plant, brought down to our life from some warmer region, and to be kept alive with artificial heat; it springs from and clothes all human life with color and sweetness, as grass and daisies cover the whole earth." Goethe could have analyzed the earth in which the rose is planted, and prepared a mathematical table of its ingredients; he could then have dissected the rose as a botanist, showing the metamorphoses by which the stem becomes the leaf and the leaf the blossom; and finally, letting Science rest, while Fancy arose, fresh for the task, he could embalm the beauty and sentiment of the rose in immortal verse.

I think this might be called one of the undeveloped qualities of Shakespeare. The point wherein the two poets touch is their power of assimilating all their acquired knowledge, and using it in the service of poetry. Neither is afraid of descending to the commonest and coarsest realism, yet either can soar as lightly as a lark into the highest and purest spiritual atmosphere. Both minds claimed the largest liberty, and used it as of right. They walked over the earth, as if bare-headed and bare-handed, taking the brand of the sun, the dust of the highway and the beating of the storm upon their brows—in the strongest contrast to those minds which always seem to go abroad in white

kid gloves and patent-leather boots, with an umbrella for the sun and a theoretical Mackintosh for the rain.

There is another sense which Shakespeare possessed by nature, and could only develop by such helps as were possible in his life ; while Goethe, possessing it equally, was able, through his greater fortune, to bring it to the highest and noblest activity. I mean that element of proportion which was first discovered by the Greek mind ; that adjustment of parts to the whole, of form to spirit, which we call the artistic sense. While Shakespeare was poaching, Goethe was reading Winkelmann and Lessing ; while Shakespeare was speculating in wool, Goethe was studying the antique marbles in the halls of the Vatican : while Shakespeare was desiring " this man's art and that man's scope," Goethe could look abroad and say : " It is because none reach my art and my scope, that so few fully comprehend me." With such a vast variety of interests as he maintained throughout his whole life, many of his lighter works are faulty in construction, but nothing which matured properly in his mind is without its underlying law. Indeed, most of the fragments which he left have the roundness and the polish of pebbles of thought, smoothed by attrition in the strong current of his mind. This is not mere finish ; it also includes fullness, as the veins in a pebble may suggest the strata in a quarry. Many of his detached utterances thus hint of a broad back-ground of thought. Take a single one as a speci-

men, though I must cripple its force by turning it into prose: "Timid wavering of nerveless thought, effeminate irresolution, anxious lamentation, turn away no misfortune from thee, cannot liberate thee. To hold one's self erect, defying all forces, never swaying, showing original strength, brings down the arms of the Gods in aid!"

Here is another: "Impatience is of no service: still less remorse. The latter increases the offense—the former creates new ones."

I have purposely compared Goethe with Shakespeare in these two particulars, because in the dramatic presentation of character he is inferior to that greatest of all masters. Shakespeare is universal in his apprehension of human nature: Goethe is universal in his range of intellectual capacities and in his culture. One is greater, the other is riper. Goethe lacks two elements of success as a dramatist—inventive genius and rapidity of movement. After "*Egmont*," which was an effort to overcome his natural deficiencies, but which cannot be called a complete success, he gave more attention to dramatic poems than to acting plays. He was an admirable critic, and his counsels helped to make Schiller's "*Wallenstein*" what it is; yet it is doubtful whether the material of "*Wallenstein*," in his own hands, would have been as satisfactorily modelled as by Schiller. I do not mean to undervalue the genius which he manifested in both "*Götz von Berlichingen*" and

"*Egmont*." They are very important works; but they lack the equal power and completeness of such poems as "*Iphigenie auf Tauris*" or "*Hermann und Dorothea*." He had dramatic genius; he had the power of illustrating by the force of contrast, and the power of presenting characters in their proper objective independence; yet it seems that there were differences of action in the combination of his many gifts. In other words, certain forms of activity were more free and natural to him than others. It would have been a miracle if this had not been so.

I have already alluded to Goethe's habit of using every form of his own personal experience of life, but only after the feeling which accompanied it had become a memory. He prefaces his lyrics with the couplet:

Spät erklingt, was früh erklang,	Early sounds that echo long :
Glück und Unglück wird Gesang.	Joy and sorrow turn to song.

and in his "*Trilogie der Leidenschaft*" (Trilogy of Passion), the most youthfully fervid poem ever written by a man more than seventy years old, are the lines :

Und wenn der Mensch in seiner	While men their torment suffer,
Qual verstummt	and are dumb,
Gab mir ein Gott zu sagen, was	A God gave me to utter mine in
ich leide.	song.

One consequence of this power is that all passion in his verse obeys the supreme law of proportion. The keenest emotions are expressed, but the author himself

is serene. Calm and self-poised, he paints every ecstasy or every pang : he does not attempt to revive the feeling, only to remember it. You cannot imagine his eye “rolling in a fine frenzy,” as he writes—but rather the impartial eye of a spirit, surveying the past life of earth. Goethe has been called cold, unsympathetic, selfish, on account of this quality ; and I must admit that, even up to the present day, a large class of persons are unable to consider it in any other light. There are a great many who hide their own tears, but expect the author to weep in public. Now, the objective treatment of one’s own revelations of life, or of what is observed in the lives of others, is the highest achievement of literary art. Whatever of truth is thus presented, has a general, not an individual significance ; and the truth that dwells in passion cannot be clearly seen while the air of poetry is thick with the very cloud and storm of passion itself. All strong emotion suspends the impartial activity of the intellect ; and this is the reason why eloquence is so rarely impartial.

Although Goethe possessed this intellectual serenity, as we may call it, his finer faculties were no more under control than in the case of less gifted authors. He could not say to the Ariel of his imagination “Come !” and he came ; but was obliged to wait the pleasure of the beautiful sprite. As his habit was to arrange the plan of a poem, in all its parts, before putting it into words, he was thus able to work upon any part of it,

according to his mood. After a certain amount of progress was made, the manuscript sheets were stitched together, the parts not yet written being filled out with blank paper of a different color; and as often as one of these sheets was removed and the manuscript inserted in its place, Goethe felt himself freshly encouraged to go on with the work. He was accustomed to say at such times: "I not only know, in my own mind, how much I have added, but it is now palpable to my external senses." There could not be a better illustration of his equal use of the Real and the Ideal.

It is not incumbent upon me, now, to enter into an examination of Goethe's occasional shortcomings. Everybody knows that Homer sometimes nods, and that Shakespeare sometimes rants; and the admission that Goethe has occasionally mistaken coarseness for satire, or gravity for wisdom, cannot effect his supreme place in literature. Had he not possessed a remarkable power of self-restraint, he would doubtless have sinned more frequently. His position at Weimar, for the first ten years, was more difficult than we can now guess: when it had been stubbornly acknowledged, he stood almost alone as an author until Schiller came to his side: during the excitement which followed the overthrow of Napoleon, he was denounced as an enemy of Germany; and, finally, the most absolute homage came to him from all quarters, giving to his old age a character of literary royalty which he enjoyed without dispute.

A lesser genius would have been affected by this perversity of circumstances; but he, "standing erect, defying all forces, never swaying, showing original strength, called down the arms of the gods to his aid." In him, character and intellect were not so closely united as in Lessing; his vital power overran into wayward impulses in his early years, and sometimes broke away from his control in later life: but we must judge a man, after all, as much by what he restrains himself from doing, as by what he does, and Goethe has as much right to the plea of *multum dilexit* as a less exalted intelligence. As a mental power, he was splendidly steadfast. He was as apt at detecting shams as Carlyle, but he pierced them without making any noise about it. So far as he assumes to teach directly, it is in exact consonance with the suggestions of all his highest works; he preaches independence, self-reliance, tolerance, mutual help, cheerful acceptance of every fortune, growth as a necessity of being, and knowledge as a necessity of growth.

In the poetic appreciation of Nature, Goethe has scarcely an equal among modern authors. The transfer to natural objects of the poet's sentiment—the reflection in them of his varying moods—the creation of a sentient spirit beneath the forms of the visible world—all this belongs to modern literature. In English literature it virtually originated with Cowper, was continued by Wordsworth, made popular by Byron and

Shelley, until now it has become the inevitable field which all young authors endeavor to tread. But Goethe was before Cowper and Wordsworth, far more subtle and intimate than the former, and wholly without the air of purpose which we cannot help feeling in many of Wordsworth's descriptive passages. Goethe presents Nature to us, not in a mere catalogue of forms, but with all the more elusive influences which come to us through light and odor, and atmosphere and perspective. If my space allowed me, I could give many instances of the delicate instinct which enables him to suggest a landscape in a single line, to give us the very soul of natural objects by phrases so simple that they startle while they charm.

I have not before referred to "*Faust*," because it was only finished with Goethe's life; the Second Part was first published after his death. Without studying both parts, no one can understand the author's plan. The First Part, alone, is a sublime dramatic fragment—the whole is a complete and wonderful poem. There is nothing in the literature of any country with which we can fairly compare it. There is no other poem, which, like this, was the work of a whole life, and which so deals with the profoundest problems of all life. It is so universally comprehensive that every reader finds in it reflections of his faith and philosophy. I have the essay of a French critic, who proves it to be a gospel of Pantheism: I have the work of a Catholic

professor, who is equally sure that it shows Goethe's reverence for the Church of Rome : I have the work of a Lutheran clergyman, who illustrates its Protestant orthodoxy by parallel texts from the Bible. These criticisms only show how completely it stands above all barriers of sect, all schools of thought, in that atmosphere of pure humanity where there is no dogma to darken God to the eyes of men. The passions and indulgences of youth only bring Faust remorse : place and power at the Emperor's Court fail to satisfy him : the perception of Beauty—which, after all, is only a recognition of the Divine harmony—first elevates and purifies his nature, and his happy moment comes at the end, as the result of an unwearied and beneficent activity for the sake of the human race, aided by the Divine love which is freely bestowed upon all men.

The poem embodies all the finest qualities of Goethe's mind,—his rich, ever-changing rhythm, his mastery over the elements of passion, his simple realism, his keen irony, his serene wisdom and his most sacred aspiration. The more it is studied, the wider and further it spreads its intellectual horizon, until it grows to be so far and dim that the physical and the spiritual spheres are blended together. Whoever studies "*Faust*," in connection with the works of the other German authors, cannot but admit that the critic is not wholly mistaken, who asserts that the single elements which, separately, made his compeers great, have combined to make one

man greatest ;—that Klopstock's enrichment of the language, Lessing's boldness and clearness of vision, Wieland's grace, Herder's universality, and Schiller's glory of rhythm and rhetoric, are all united in the immortal work of Goethe !

You will allow me to close this incomplete sketch with some lines of my own :

Dear is the Minstrel, yet the Man is more ;
 But should I turn the pages of his brain,
 The lighter muscle of my verse would strain
 And break beneath his lore.
 How charge with music powers so vast and free,
 Save one be great as he ?
 Behold him, as ye jostle with the throng
 Through narrow ways, that do your beings wrong,—
 Self-chosen lanes, wherein ye press
 In louder Storm and Stress,
 Passing the lesser bounty by
 Because the greater seems too high,
 And that sublimest joy forego,
 To seek, aspire, and know !
 Behold in him, since our strong line began,
 The first full-statured man !
 Dear is the Minstrel, even to hearts of prose ;
 But he who sets all aspiration free,
 Is dearer to humanity.
 Still through our age the shadowy Leader goes ;
 Still whispers cheer, or waves his warning sign,—
 The man who, most of men,
 Heeded the parable from lips divine,
 And made one talent ten !

XI.

GOETHE'S "FAUST."

THERE are a few poetic works which possess an immortal vitality—which so represent the actions and the characters of men, the problem of human nature, or the mysteries of human life, that their interest never grows old, their value never diminishes. The "Iliad" of Homer, Dante's "*Divina Commedia*," Shakespeare's "Hamlet" and "Othello," and Goethe's "*Faust*" belong to this class. Works like these were never produced simply through the voluntary action of the mind: they grew by an inevitable law, attracting to them the best creative intelligence of the poet, and, when completed, were greater than he himself could know; for he stood too near them to measure their proportions. The truth that is in them being of no time and no country, only touches the highest intelligences at first, and is then slowly transmitted to still wider and wider circles. Goethe's long and vigorous life enabled him to watch the impression which the First Part of "*Faust*" gradually produced upon the world; but the Second Part, only a small portion of which was published before his death, is not yet fully understood and valued as it should be, even by the most cultivated thinkers. Students of the German language are at this day dissuaded

from reading it on the ground that it is incomprehensible ; and the completion of his sublime plan is charged against the author as the weak mistake of his old age !

As Goethe is the dominant figure in modern German literature, so "*Faust*" is the dominant work among his many creations. It is the one conception which began to fill and inspire him at the age of twenty-one, and remained with him until he sealed up the last pages of the manuscript, on his eighty-second birthday. Cherished thus for sixty-one years, his whole life forms the basis upon which it rests. Xavier Marmier, the distinguished French critic, says : "It was the chosen work of Goethe, the well-beloved child for which he delighted to gather the riches of science and the precious fruits of inspiration. It was the bright idea, the mistress of his youth, the companion of his mature age, who was accustomed to keep watch with him, to visit him in his dreams, to live beside him in solitude and society. He bore it tenderly, mysteriously in the depth of his heart, as a lover bears the secret of his first love. He did not reveal its growth, neither displayed its beauties nor caprices ; happy in having created his Galatea, he took pleasure in seeing her move before his mind, in warming her upon his bosom, and each day giving her a new life by his artistic word, but he kept her for himself alone, and if other eyes peered too closely, he drew the curtain before his masterpiece. Sometimes he was sombre and thoughtful in the midst of society, for he was

thinking of Faust : sometimes a king came to see him, and he left royalty with pleasure, to return to Faust."

When we have learned Goethe's plan, we also perceive the great difficulties connected with its execution. We may regret that portions of the work were so long delayed, but we are very grateful that it was not allowed to remain a fragment. The Second Part is only obscure in some of its details : one clear and easily-traced design runs through it, and the close is a solution of that which is unsolved in the First Part. I shall therefore consider both as one connected work, which was Goethe's intention, although neither the publishers, the critics nor the translators pay much regard to it. I prefer to give a briefer review of the whole work rather than confine myself to the part which is most familiar, and thus only imperfectly explain its meaning.

The Legend of Dr. Faustus first took a form in the sixteenth century, while the belief in witchcraft and diabolical agencies was still prevalent among the people. The earliest edition of the story, upon which all later variations were based, appeared in 1587, and an English translation of it, published in 1590, furnished Marlow with the material for his tragedy, which was first acted in London, I believe, in 1593. There was an actual Dr. Faust, born in 1490, who studied at the University of Wittenberg, and is said to have been acquainted with Melanchthon. What special reasons there were for making him the hero of a story, cannot be

.

ascertained with any certainty; but the charge of a compact with evil spirits was frequently made against any man of more than usual knowledge. Even Luther believed in the constant activity of a personal and visible devil, whom he imagined he sometimes beheld.

The story varies in different versions, but it is substantially this: Dr. Faust having acquired all possible human knowledge, and being still unsatisfied, invoked Satan to grant him the further power he desired. The fiend appeared, and promised to serve him in all things for four and twenty years, on condition of receiving his soul at the end of that time. The compact was made, and signed by Faust with his blood. Then commenced for him a life of indulgence. In an hour or two he was transported to Italy, Egypt or Constantinople: gold, jewels and splendid banquets came at his call: gardens blossomed and trees bore fruit for him in winter, and no man had power to injure him. The Emperor Maximilian summoned him to Insbruck, and his magic arts were exhibited before the Court. He brought back Helen of Troy from the Grecian Hades, but was himself taken captive by her beauty, and forced Satan to reanimate her, in order that she might become his wife. After exhausting all forms of enjoyment, and exercising all powers which he desired, the term came to an end. Helen and her child vanished; a storm, with terrific thunder and lightning, came at midnight, and in the morning only a few fragments of Faust's body, torn and

.

mangled by infernal claws, were found in his chamber. He had a *Famulus*—a word used to signify servant and amanuensis—by name Christopher Wagner, who followed his example, made a compact with Satan, was served by an evil spirit in the shape of a monkey, and finally met the fate of his master.

The belief in witchcraft survived among the people long after law and theology had discarded it, and a dramatized version of Faust was one of the favorite plays given in puppet-theatres, at fairs, or other popular festivals. Goethe probably saw it thus acted, as a child, and when, after his return from Leipzig, he took up the study of alchemy, himself disgusted with the manner in which knowledge was then imparted, we can easily understand how the legend must have returned to his mind. The various texts of the old puppet-plays, which I have read, are by no means mere doggerel: they show a good deal of dramatic power, and suggest, to a lively imagination, much more than they express. Goethe was not the only one to whom the idea occurred, of making a graver use of the material. Lessing and Müller (called "the Painter Müller"), each wrote a tragedy of Faust, without being aware of Goethe's design; and one of Lessing's friends, writing about the lost manuscript after his death, says that Lessing's Faust was written at a time when in every quarter of Germany a "Faust" was either published or announced. In fact, during the sixty-one years when

Goethe was occupied with his work, upwards of twenty-nine dramas or poems on the subject of Faust, by other authors, were published in Germany. There must have been something in the intellectual atmosphere of the day—some general craving for power, some dissatisfaction with the conditions of life, which made the legend attractive. Goethe took it up, like so many others; but he alone saw the typical, universal element hidden in it—he, alone, was able to engraft his own life and the governing forces of all human life upon this wild shoot of a darker age. He began to write in 1773, after the subject had been maturing for two or three years in his brain, and by 1775 had written nearly one half of the First Part. It was composed very slowly, every line and couplet being carefully finished in his mind before being put upon paper. With his removal to Weimar, the work ceased, and the manuscript was yellow with age when he took it with him to Italy. Two scenes were added in Rome, and in the edition of his works, published in 1790, first appears: "*Faust, ein Fragment*," containing not quite two-thirds of the First Part. Stimulated and encouraged by Schiller, he resumed the work in 1797, and completed the whole of the First Part, and a considerable portion of the Second, which belonged to his plan from the start. In 1808, the First Part, as we now possess it, was published; but the Second Part, delayed by his scientific and Oriental studies, was suffered to wait until 1824,

by which time Goethe was seventy-five years old. The third Act, generally called "*Die Hellena*," was published as a fragment in 1827, and the interest and the curiosity which it excited encouraged Goethe, in spite of his age, to work out the whole of his grand design. In August, 1831, the Second Part was finished, but it was not given to the world until after his death.

There is no doubt that the loss of Schiller, the battle of Jena, and the political convulsions which disturbed Germany for ten years thereafter, prevented him from undertaking the Second Part while its plan was fresh and his faculties were in their prime of vigor. We cannot but feel that a great deal was lost by the delay; yet, on the other hand, we must admit that no other test could have so splendidly proved the youth and the vitality of his genius. Three predominant elements are united in the work, and, while they are generally blended together in harmony, we are sometimes obliged to consider them separately. First, there is that broad, all-comprehensive presentation of the life of man which, at some point or other, touches the experiences of all men—including, moreover, the problem of Good and Evil, simply stated and sublimely solved. Secondly, there is a reflection throughout, of Goethe's own life,—of the phases of passion and thought, through which he passed, of his own faith and doubt, his position in and towards the world. Lastly, there is, especially in the Second Part, matter introduced which has no direct con-

nection with the plan of the work, and interferes with its natural evolution. We can easily, in reading, set this last feature aside, and separate it from the main design wherever we detect it; but we must endeavor not to lose sight of the constant and intimate presence of the two former elements—of Goethe-nature and human nature. Notwithstanding the breadth, ripeness and impartial quality of Goethe's mind, we catch a fleeting glimpse, here and there, of his individual presence; or, it may be, that because all his life is so clearly known to us, we see the experience lying far behind the poetry, as we cannot do in Shakespeare.

Instead of giving you the "argument" of "*Faust*," in advance, let me rather commence at once with an examination of the poem, and unfold it as we proceed. The Dedication, written when Goethe was nearly fifty years old, breathes a subdued and tender spirit. In resuming his work, so long after its first inception, he recalls his friends and literary associates—Merck, Lenz, Lavater, his sister Cornelia—nearly all of whom had passed from the earth. It is a sweet and solemn prelude that he sings :

Sie hören nicht die folgenden
Gesänge,
Die Seelen, denen ich die ersten
sang;
Zerstoben ist das freundliche
Gedränge,
Verklungen, ach ! der erste Wie-
derklang.

They hear no longer these suc-
ceeding measures,
The souls, to whom my earliest
songs I sang :
Dispersed the friendly troop,
with all its pleasures,
And still, alas ! the echoes first
that rang !

Mein Lied ertönt der unbe-	I bring the unknown multitude
kannten Menge,	my treasures ;
Ihr Beifall selbst macht meinem	Their very plaudits give my
Herzen bang ;	heart a pang,
Und was sich sonst an meinem	And those beside, whose joy my
Lied erfreuet,	Song so flattered,
Wenn es noch lebt, irrt in der	If still they live, wide through
Welt zerstreuet.	the world are scattered.

Und mich ergreift ein längst	And grasps me now a long-un-
entwöhntes Sehnen	wanted yearning
Nach jenem stillen, ernsten	For that serene and solemn
Geisterreich ;	Spirit-Land :
Es schwebet nun in unbe-	My song, to faint Æolian mur-
stimmten Tönen	murs turning,
Mein lispelnd Lied, der Æols-	Sways like a harp-string by the
harfe gleich ;	breezes fanned.
Ein Schauer fasst mich, Thräne	I thrill and tremble ; tear on
folgt den Thränen,	tear is burning,
Das strenge Herz, es fühlt sich	And the stern heart is tenderly
mild und weich ;	unmanned :
Was ich besitze, seh' ich wie im	What I possess, I see far distant
Weiten,	lying,
Und was verschwand, wird mir	And what I lost, grows real and
zu Wirklichkeiten.	undying.

After this Dedication follows a "Prelude on the Stage"—a conversation between the Manager, the Poet and the Merry-Andrew, or Humorous person of the company. The Manager demands something that will please the public, who have read so much that they have become fastidious in their tastes ; his preference would be a sort of literary hash, containing so many elements that each hearer will be certain to pick out something appropriate to himself, and all will go home pleased. The Merry-Andrew insists that there must be plenty of fun

and folly in the piece; while the Poet vainly protests against such a debasement of his art, and finally exclaims to the Manager: "Go, find yourself a more obedient slave!" The Merry-Andrew answers him with ridicule, and gives his idea of what the world should be, in the following words:

In bunten Bildern wenig Klar- heit,	In motley pictures little light,
Viel Irrthum und ein Fünkchen Wahrheit,	Much error, and of truth a glim- mering mite,
So wird der beste Trank gebraut,	Thus the best beverage is sup- plied,
Der alle Welt erquicket und auferbaut.	Whence all the world is cheered and edified.

The Manager then puts an end to the discussion by commanding that the work shall be commenced at once. He shows his sordid business nature, his utter ignorance of the poetic character, by saying:

Was hilft es, viel von Stimmung reden?	What need to talk of Inspira- tion?
Dem Zaudernden erscheint sie nie.	'Tis no companion of Delay.
Gebt ihr euch einmal für Poeten, So kommandirt die Poesie.	If Poetry be your vocation, Let Poetry your will obey!

He offers all the properties of his theatre—beasts, birds, sun, stars, fire and water, and closes the scene by declaring that if they are properly used,

So schreitet in dem engen Bretter- haus	Thus, in our booth's contracted sphere,
Den ganzen Kreis der Schöpfung aus	The circle of creation will ap- pear,

Und wandelt, mit bedächt'ger	And move, as we deliberately
Schnelle,	impel,
Vom Himmel durch die Welt zur	From Heaven, across the World,
Hölle !	to Hell !

To this introduction succeeds a "Prologue in Heaven," imitated from the commencement of the Book of Job. The Prologue begins with a chant of the Archangels, which is so grand that I must quote it entire :

RAPHAEL.

Die Sonne tönt nach alter Weise	The sun-orb sings, in emulation,
In Brudersphären Wettgesang,	'Mid brother-spheres, his ancient
	round :
Und ihre vorgeschriebne Reise	His path predestined through
	Creation
Vollendet sie mit Donnergang.	He ends with step of thunder-
	sound.
Ihr Anblick giebt den Engeln	The angels from his visage
Stärke,	splendid
Wenn Keiner sie ergründen	Draw power, whose measure
mag ;	none can say ;
Die unbegreiflich hohen Werke	The lofty works, uncompre-
	hended,
Sind herrlich, wie am ersten	Are bright as on the earliest
Tag.	day.

GABRIEL.

Und schnell und unbegreiflich	And swift, and swift beyond
schnelle	conceiving,
Dreht sich umher der Erde	The splendor of the world goes
Pracht ;	round,
Es wechselt Paradieses-Helle	Day's Eden-brightness still re-
	lieving
Mit tiefer, schauervoller Nacht ;	The awful night's intense pro-
	found :

Es schäumt das Meer in breiten
Flüssen
Am tiefen Grund der Felsen auf,
Und Fels und Meer wird fortge-
rissen
In ewig schnellem Sphärenlauf.

The ocean-tides in foam are
breaking,
Against the rocks' deep bases
hurled,
And both, the spheric race par-
taking,
Eternal, swift, are onward
whirled !

MICHAEL.

Und Stürme brausen um die
Wette,
Vom Meer aufs Land, vom Land
aufs Meer,
Und bilden wüthend eine Kette
Der tiefsten Wirkung rings um-
her.
Da flammt ein blitzendes Ver-
heeren
Dem Pfade vor des Donner-
schlags ;
Doch deine Boten, Herr, ver-
ehren
Das sanfte Wandeln deines
Tags.

And rival storms abroad are
surging
From sea to land, from land to
sea.
A chain of deepest action forg-
ing
Round all, in wrathful energy.
There flames a desolation, blaz-
ing
Before the Thunder's crashing
way :
Yet, Lord, Thy messengers are
praising
The gentle movement of Thy
Day.

THE THREE.

Der Anblick giebt den Engeln
Stärke,
Da Keiner dich ergründen mag,
Und alle deine hohen Werke
Sind herrlich, wie am ersten
Tag.

Though still by them uncom-
prehended,
From these the angels draw
their power,
And all Thy works, sublime and
splendid,
Are bright as in Creation's
hour.

Mephistopheles then steps forward, and in a brutal,

sneering speech, gives his opinion of the human race. The Lord asks him if he knows his servant, Faust. Thereupon Mephistopheles offers to bet that he will win Faust's soul if permission be granted. The Lord answers that he is free to try: that man errs as long as he strives and aspires; but He tells Mephistopheles, in advance, that in the end he will stand ashamed, to see that a good man, through all the obscurity of his natural impulses, still in his heart has an instinct of the one true way. Mephistopheles, however, accepts without the least fear that he shall fail. The words which Goethe puts into the mouth of the Lord intimate that Evil is a necessary part of the creative plan.

Des Menschen Thätigkeit kann	Man's active nature, flagging,
allzuleicht erschlaffen,	seeks too soon the level ;
Er liebt sich bald die unbedingte	Unqualified repose he learns to
Ruh :	crave ;
Drum geb' ich gern ihm den Ge-	Whence, willingly, the comrade
sellen zu,	him I gave,
Der reizt und wirkt und muss,	Who works, excites, and must
als Teufel, schaffen.	create, as Devil.

The "Prelude on the Stage" presents, in sharp satirical outlines, the relation of the poet to his own time. It shows that Goethe expected no popularity for his work—nay, no intelligent comprehension of its meaning. It must be read as a piece of defiant irony. The "Prologue in Heaven" indicates the grand ethical idea underlying the whole poem. Only the form is taken

from Job : the problem is stated in different terms, and worked out through an entirely new and original presentation of the life of man. But the manner in which Goethe has done this cannot possibly be understood without reading the Second Part.

We now reach the first scene of the tragedy. It is night, and Faust, in an old Gothic chamber, begins his soliloquy. He has studied Philosophy, Jurisprudence, Medicine and Theology, and finds himself no whit the wiser than before. His dreary conclusion is, that nothing can be known. Then, too, he has lacked in obtaining worldly fortune : he has neither lands nor gold, honor nor consideration among men. As a last experiment he has turned to Magic, hoping that he may detect the secret forces of nature, the undiscovered germs of all power, and rummage no more among empty words. A sense of the free delight of physical life, which he has so long given up for the sake of study, comes over him ; he longs to leave his smoky den, his jars and skeletons, and live the life of the body in the open air. In this soliloquy we find not only the early experience of Goethe, but the early conflict between the physical and the intellectual natures of all men.

Faust contemplates the cabalistic sign of the Earth-Spirit, and then invokes its appearance. The Spirit is revealed in a ruddy flame, but Faust turns away his head, unable to endure the vision. The Spirit says :

In Lebensfluthen, im Thaten-	In the tides of Life, in Action's
sturm	storm,
Wall' ich auf und ab,	A fluctuant wave,
Webe hin und her !	A shuttle free,
Geburt und Grab,	Birth and the Grave,
Ein ewiges Meer,	An eternal sea,
Ein wechselnd Weben	A weaving, flowing
Ein glühend Leben,	Life, all-glowing ;
So schaff' ich am sausenden	Thus at Time's humming loom
Webstuhl der Zeit	'tis my hand prepares
Und wirke der Gottheit leben-	The garment of Life which
diges Kleid.	the Deity wears !

There is a profound meaning in the words with which the Spirit disappears :

Du gleichst dem Geist, den du	Thou 'rt like the Spirit which
begreifst,	thou comprehendest,
Nicht mir !	Not me !

Faust is now interrupted by the entrance of Wagner, his Famulus, who represents the ordinary, mechanical man, without a spark of original thought, and whom all the education in the world only turns into a shallow pedant. The German critics consider him as the type of a *Philister*—a term which they apply to the large class of half-stupid, commonplace, conventional individuals who enter largely into all society. Wagner's remarks only increase Faust's disgust and impatience. After the former's departure, Faust resumes the soliloquy, finds every view of life discouraging, every prospect of attaining satisfactory knowledge hopeless, and is gradually led from one morbid impulse to another, until

he settles on the thought of suicide. The conclusion of the scene is so remarkable that I must give it entire :

Nun komm herab, krystallne reine Schale !	And now come down, thou cup of crystal clearest,
Hevor aus deinem alten Futter- ale,	Fresh from thine ancient cover thou appearest,
An die ich viele Jahre nicht ge- dacht !	So many years forgotten to my thought !
Du glänzttest bei der Väter Freu- denfeste,	Thou shon'st at old ancestral banquets cheery,
Erheitertest die ernsten Gäste,	The solemn guests thou madest merry,
Wenn einer dich dem andern zugebracht.	When one thy wassail to the other brought.
Der vielen Bilder künstlich reiche Pracht,	The rich and skilful figures o'er thee wrought,
Des Trinker's Pflicht, sie reim- weis zu erklären,	The drinker's duty, rhyme-wise to explain them,
Auf Einen Zug die Höhlung aus- zuleeren,	Or in one breath below the mark to drain them,
Erinnert mich an manche Ju- gendnacht.	From many a night of youth my memory caught.
Ich werde jetzt dich keinem Nachbar reichen,	Now to a neighbor shall I pass thee never,
Ich werde meinen Witz an deit- ner Kunst nicht zeigen ;	Nor on thy curious art to test my wit endeavor :
Hier ist ein Saft, der eilig trunk- en macht.	Here is a juice whence sleep is swiftly born.
Mit brauner Fluth erfüllt er deine Höhle.	It fills with browner flood thy crystal hollow ;
Den ich bereitet, den ich wähle,	I chose, prepared it : thus I fol- low,—
Der letzte Trunk sei nun, mit ganzer Seele,	With all my soul the final drink I swallow,
Als festlich hoher Gruss, dem Morgen zugebracht.	A solemn festal cup, a greeting to the morn !

[*He sets the goblet to his mouth.*]

(*Chime of bells and choral song.*)

CHORUS OF ANGELS.

Christ ist erstanden !	Christ is arisen !
Freude dem Sterblichen,	Joy to the Mortal One,
Den die verderblichen,	Whom the unmerited,
Schleichenden, erblichen	Clinging, inherited
Mängel umwanden.	Needs did imprison.

FAUST.

Welch tiefes Summen, welch ein heller Ton	What hollow humming, what a sharp, clear stroke,
Zieht mit Gewalt das Glas von meinem Munde ?	Drives from my lip the goblet's, at their meeting ?
Verkündiget ihr dumpfen Glock- en schon	Announce the booming bells al- ready woke
Des Osterfestes erste Feier- stunde ?	The first glad hour of Easter's festal greeting ?
Ihr Chöre, singt ihr schon den tröstlichen Gesang,	Ye choirs, have ye begun the sweet, consoling chant,
Der einst um Grabes Nacht von Engelslippen klang,	Which, through the night of Death, the angels minis- trant
Gewissheit einem neuen Bunde ?	Sang, God's new Covenant re- peating ?

CHORUS OF WOMEN.

Mit Spezereien	With spices and precious
Hatten wir ihn gepflegt,	Balm we arrayed him ;
Wir, seine Treuen,	Faithful and gracious,
Hatten ihn hingelegt ;	We tenderly laid him :
Tücher und Binden	Linen to bind him
Reinlich umwanden wir,	Cleanlily wound we :
Ach ! und wir finden	Ah ! when we would find him,
Christ nicht mehr hier.	Christ no more found we !

CHORUS OF ANGELS.

Christ ist erstanden !	Christ is ascended !
Selig der Liebende,	Bliss hath invested him,—
Der die betrübende,	Woes that molested him,
Heilsam und übende	Trials that tested him,
Prüfung bestanden.	Gloriously ended !

FAUST.

Was sucht ihr, mächtig und gelind,	Why, here in dust, entice me with your spell,
Ihr Himmelstöne, mich am Staube ?	Ye gentle, powerful sounds of Heaven ?
Klingt dort umher, wo weiche Menschen sind.	Peal rather there, where tender natures dwell.
Die Botschaft hör' ich wohl, allein mir fehlt der Glaube ;	Your messages I hear, but faith has not been given ;
Das Wunder ist des Glaubens liebstes Kind.	The dearest child of Faith is Miracle.
Zu jenen Sphären wag' ich nicht zu streben,	I venture not to soar to yonder regions,
Woher die holde Nachricht tönt ;	Whence the glad tidings hither float ;
Und doch, an diesen Klang von Jugend auf gewöhnt,	And yet, from childhood up familiar with the note,
Ruft er auch jetzt zurück mich in das Leben.	To Life it now renews the old allegiance.
Sonst stürzte sich der Himmels-liebe Kuss	Once Heavenly Love sent down a burning kiss
Auf mich herab in ernster Sabbathstille ;	Upon my brow, in Sabbath silence holy ;
Da klang so ahnungsvoll des Glockentones Fülle,	And, filled with mystic presage, chimed the church-bell slowly,
Und ein Gebet war brünstiger Genuss ;	And prayer dissolved me in a fervent bliss.
Ein unbegreiflich holdes Sehnen	A sweet, uncomprehended yearning
Trieb mich, durch Wald und Wiesen hinzugehen,	Drove forth my feet through woods and meadows free,
Und unter tausend heißen Thränen	And while a thousand tears were burning,
Fühlt' ich mir eine Welt entstehn.	I felt a world arise for me.
Diess Lied verkündete der Jugend muntre Spiele,	These chants, to youth and all its sports appealing,
Der Frühlingsfeier freies Glück ;	Proclaimed the Spring's rejoicing holiday ;

Erinnerung hält mich nun, mit kindlichem Gefühle,	And Memory holds me now, with childish feeling,
Vom letzten, ernsten Schritt zurück.	Back from the last, the solemn way.
O tönet fort, ihr süßen Himmels- lieder !	Sound on, ye hymns of Heaven, so sweet and mild !
Die Thräne quillt, die Erde hat mich wieder !	My tears gush forth : the Earth takes back her child !

CHORUS OF DISCIPLES.

Hat der Begrabene	Has He, victoriously,
Schon sich nach oben,	Burst from the vaulted
Lebend Erhabene,	Grave, and all-gloriously
Herrlich erhoben ;	Now sits exalted ?
Ist er in Werdelust	Is He, in glow of birth,
Schaffender Freude nah :	Rapture creative near ?
Ach ! an der Erde Brust,	Ah ! to the woe of earth
Sind wir zum Leide da.	Still are we native here.
Liess er die Seinen	We, his aspiring
Schmachtend uns hier zurück,	Followers, Him we miss ;
Ach, wir beweinen,	Weeping, desiring,
Meister, dein Glück !	Master, Thy bliss !

CHORUS OF ANGELS.

Christ ist erstanden	Christ is arisen,
Aus der Verwesung Schooss.	Out of Corruption's womb :
Reisset von Banden	Burst ye the prison,
Freudig euch los !	Break from your gloom !
Thätig ihn preisenden,	Praising and pleading him,
Liebe beweisenden,	Lovingly needing him,
Brüderlich speisenden,	Brotherly feeding him,
Predigend reisenden,	Preaching and speeding him,
Wonne verheissenden	Blessing, succeeding Him,
Euch ist der Meister nah,	Thus is the Master near,—
Euch ist er da !	Thus is He here !

The second scene is before the city gate, on the Easter holiday. Citizens, students, servant girls, beggars and soldiers make their appearance. Each one

speaks in his or her character, and the result is a motley, animated picture of life. Faust passes through the crowd, feeling his desire renewed to be simply a man among men. Accompanied by Wagner, he walks onward to the crest of a neighboring hill, where the sight of sunset calls forth a passage so grand and impassioned, that it is hard for me to resist the temptation of quoting it. But I dare not pause too often by the way.

As the dusk begins to gather, they notice a black dog, running around them in circles, gradually drawing nearer. Wagner thinks it is only a stray poodle who is hunting his master, but Faust imagines that a trail of fire follows the animal. He returns to his quarters, taking the dog with him. The Third and the Fourth scenes are in Faust's study. He begins to translate the first chapter of John, while the dog lies on a cushion behind the stove. But he growls and barks fearfully, at each repetition of the text. Faust suspects the presence of an evil spirit in the beast, and proceeds to exorcise it by the usual formula of magic. The spell at last is dissolved, and Mephistopheles steps forth, in the costume of a traveling scholar. In answer to Faust's questions, he declares himself to be

Part of that Power, not understood,
Which always wills the Bad, and always works the Good ;

and again, he says :

I am the Spirit that Denies !

explaining that his proper element is Evil, in all its forms. This is the part which he plays throughout the whole poem. He is not Satan, but an intellectual Devil who works by always presenting the opposite of Good. He argues rather than directly tempts, and assures his power over Faust by trains of reasoning which the latter cannot answer, because they are the echoes of his own doubts. Mephistopheles is one of the most remarkable creations in literature. His cunning, his subtlety, his scorching ridicule and savage cynicism form a compound which is only a little more than human, and is not completely infernal. He is the echo of all the reckless and defiant unbelief of the whole human race: in him are concentrated their rebellious impulses, their indulgence, their negation of Virtue, Love and Faith, and herein lies the secret of his power. To look upon him as a conventional devil would lead you to misunderstand him entirely. Like the very qualities of human nature which he represents, he "*always wills the Bad, and always works the Good,*"—that is, in spite of himself.

Mephistopheles lulls Faust into slumber by the song of his attendant spirits—a wild, almost unearthly chant which hints at the delight of the senses, without expressing any intelligible thought. He returns next day, and so plays upon Faust's impatient, despairing mood, that the latter curses everything in which he had formerly believed, and at last—satisfied that all

forms of happiness have become impossible to him—
exclaims:

Werd' ich beruhigt je mich auf ein Faulbett legen, So sei es gleich um mich gethan ! Kannst du mich schmeichelnd je belügen, Dass ich mir selbst gefallen mag,	When on an idler's bed I stretch myself in quiet, There let, at once, my record end ! Canst thou with lying flattery rule me, Until, self-pleased, myself I see,—
Kannst du mich mit Genuss be- trügen :	Canst thou with rich enjoyment fool me,
Das sei für mich der letzte Tag ! Die Wette biet' ich !	Let that day be the last for me ! The bet I offer.

MEPHISTOPHELES.

Top !

Done !

FAUST.

Und Schlag auf Schlag !	And heartily !
Werd' ich zum Augenblicke sa- gen :	When thus I hail the Moment flying :
Verweile doch ! du bist so schön !	"Ah, still delay—thou art so fair !"
Dann magst du mich in Fesseln schlagen,	Then bind me in thy bonds un- dying,
Dann will ich gern zu Grunde gehn !	My final ruin then declare !
Dann mag die Todtenglocke schallen,	Then let the death-bell chime the token,
Dann bist du deines Dienstes frei,	Then art thou from thy service free !
Die Uhr mag stehn, der Zeiger fallen,	The clock may stop, the hand be broken,
Es sei die Zeit für mich vorbei !	Then Time be finished unto me !

This is the compact : and I beg you to remember

the words which will give Mephistopheles power over Faust. He must experience a sense of happiness so pure and complete that he shall say to the passing moment: "Ah, still delay—thou art so fair!" Observe the nature of the problem: through perfect happiness he will lose his soul; yet how shall Mephistopheles evolve happiness from Evil? Either way there seems to be a paradox—a moral contradiction—and the solution of this riddle is the basis upon which both parts of the poem rests.

Faust exclaims, after the compact is made:

Stürzen wir uns in das Raus-	Plunge we in Time's tumultuous
chen der Zeit,	dance,
Ins Rollen der Begebenheit!	In the rush and roll of Circum-
	stance!
Da mag denn Schmerz und Ge-	Then may delight and distress,
nuss,	
Gelingen und Verdruss	And worry and success,
Mit einander wechseln, wie es	Alternately follow, as best they
kann;	can:
Nur rastlos bethätigt sich der	Restless activity proves the man!
Mann.	

While Faust retires to prepare for his new life in the world, a student calls. Mephistopheles puts on Faust's cap and mantle, passes himself off for the learned Professor, and takes the opportunity to give his views upon logic, law, theology and medicine. His remarks are so shrewd and his satire so keen that the student is profoundly impressed, and at the close of the interview (like many another student nowadays) requests an

autograph in his album. This scene is a masterpiece of irony.

Goethe called the scene in the witches' kitchen a piece of "dramatic nonsense." Faust, looking in the witches' mirror, perceives the form of Margaret, which at once takes possession of his fancy. The witch gives him a magic potion to drink, which repairs the waste of his body in studies, and restores his youthful vigor. Then follow those simple, exquisite scenes in which Margaret is the heroine. Faust first sees her returning from confession, when she repulses his proffered escort. By the aid of Mephistopheles and an old neighbor named Martha, he obtains an interview in the garden, and soon succeeds in inspiring a return of his love. Margaret's perfect innocence and her simple trust in him awaken his sense of remorse. The latent good in his nature drives him from her, lest he should become the instrument of her ruin; but Mephistopheles, by painting her loneliness and yearning for the absent lover, brings him back again. Then follows the celebrated scene, wherein Faust gives his confession of faith, in answer to Margaret's doubts, and from this point the tragic portion of the story begins. Margaret's prayer to the Virgin is the passionate appeal of a loving and suffering heart. If ever tears were expressed in words, it is in those marvellous stanzas. It is remarkable that, although Margaret is a simple, ignorant girl, accustomed to hard work and no sentiment—although she is vain, and im-

prudent, and yields to her fate from the first, without making the least resistance, no imaginary woman in all literature—not even Imogen, Cordelia or Ophelia—excites so tender a sympathy in the reader. The conception of her character is not only original but daring. She is, simply, a woman, as innocent in her ignorance as Eve in Eden. Sin, crime and madness visit her, but we feel that she is their helpless victim, and that the original purity of her nature can take no permanent stain.

The tragical events thicken. Margaret's mother never awakes from a sleeping potion, administered without evil intent: her brother, Valentin, attacks Faust in the street, and is slain by him. Faust and Mephistopheles fly from the city, and she is left alone. She goes to the Cathedral, to seek solace in the religious services, but the Evil Spirit pursues her there.

Then follows the Carnival of the Witches, among the Hartz Mountains, on the Walpurgis-Night, which is the First of May. With the opening lines we begin to breathe a supernatural, almost a diabolical atmosphere. All is weird, strange and ghostly. Will-o'-the-wisps dance along the path; a tempest rushes down the gorges, tearing up the trees by the roots; showers of sparks fly through the air, and the red moon hangs low on the borders of the sky. The witch scenes in Macbeth are ghastly enough, but they have not the lurid, unearthly atmosphere of the Walpurgis-Night.

As we move along with the fitful dance or stormy sweep of the rhythm, we feel a creeping of the nerves, as if in the presence of powers brought from another and darker world. Mephistopheles here again reveals his true character, but he cannot persuade Faust to take part in the revels. Faust's thoughts are with Margaret, and he sees her at last, as a phantom, wherein her fate is revealed to him. It is difficult for me to refrain from quoting portions of the Walpurgis-Night; but I am forced to do it.

The *Intermezzo* (or interlude), called "Oberon and Titania's Golden Wedding," which follows, has really nothing to do with "*Faust*." Goethe wrote it as a series of "*Xenien*," in another form, and sent it to Schiller for publication in "The Hours." Schiller, however, judged it best not to revive the excitement, which was beginning to subside, and returned it to Goethe, suggesting that he might use it in some other way: thus it came to be interpolated into "*Faust*." It is a collection of very short, sharp stanzas, which snap and sting like a whip-lash, describing Goethe's literary enemies under names which allow the real persons to be guessed.

Returning to the tragedy, we next encounter Faust in a state bordering upon madness. He has learned that Margaret is imprisoned and condemned to death for infanticide. His remorse and passion are so frantically expressed, that Mephistopheles, Devil as he is,

begins to be frightened. He consents to carry Faust to Margaret's dungeon, and give his assistance in carrying her off.

One more scene concludes the First Part—the interview between Margaret and Faust in the dungeon. It is heart-rending in its tragic power. Margaret, rendered insane by her misery—and we are given to understand that the crime for which she is condemned was insanelly committed—does not recognize her lover. She takes Faust to be the jailer, and pleads piteously for her life. At last she begins to remember, but dimly and incoherently : she takes no notice of Faust's agonizing efforts to persuade her to fly with him. I will quote the last half of the scene :

MARGARET.

Meine Mutter hab' ich umge- bracht,	My mother have I put to death ;
Mein Kind hab' ich ertränkt.	I've drowned the baby born to thee.
War es nicht dir und mir ge- schenkt ?	Was it not given to thee and me ?
Dir auch—Du bist's ! ich glaub' es kaum.	Thee, too !—'Tis thou ! It scarce- ly true doth seem—
Gieb deine Hand ! Es ist kein Traum !	Give me thy hand ! 'Tis not a dream !
Deine liebe Hand !—Ach, aber sie ist feucht !	Thy dear, dear hand !—But, ah, 'tis wet !
Wische sie ab ! Wie mich däucht,	Why, wipe it off ! Methinks that yet
Ist Blut dran.	There's blood thereon.
Ach Gott ! Was hast du gethan !	Ah, God ! what hast thou done ?
Stecke den Degen ein,	Nay, sheathe thy sword at last !
Ich bitte dich drum !	Do not affray me !

FAUST.

Lass das Vergangne vergangen sein !	O, let the past be past !
Du bringst mich um.	Thy words will slay me !

MARGARET.

Nein, du musst übrig bleiben !	No, no ! Thou must outlive us,
Ich will dir die Gräber be- schreiben,	Now I'll tell thee the graves to give us :
Für die musst du sorgen	Thou must begin to-morrow
Gleich morgen ;	The work of sorrow !
Der Mutter den besten Platz ge- ben,	The best place give to my mother,
Meinen Bruder sogleich darne- ben,	Then close at her side my brother,
Mich ein wenig bei Seit' !	And me a little away,
Nur nicht gar zu weit !	But not too very far, I pray !
Und das Kleine mir an die rechte Brust.	And here, on my right breast, my baby lay.
Niemand wird sonst bei mir liegen !	Nobody else will lie beside me !—
Mich an deine Seite zu schmie- gen,	Ah, within thine arms to hide me,
Das war ein süßes, ein holdes Glück !	That was a sweet and a gracious bliss.
Aber es will mir nicht mehr ge- lingen ;	But no more, no more can I at- tain it.
Mir ist's als müsst' ich mich zu dir zwingen,	I would force myself on thee and constrain it,
Als stiessest du mich von dir zu- rück ;	And it seems thou repellst my kiss :
Und doch bist du's und blickst so gut, so fromm.	And yet 'tis thou, so good, so kind to see !

FAUST.

Fühlst du, dass ich es bin, so komm' !	If thou feel'st it is I, then come with me !
---	---

MARGARET.

Dahinaus?

Out yonder?

FAUST.

Ins Freie.

To freedom.

MARGARET.

Ist das Grab drauss'?	Ist the grave is there,
Lauert der Tod, so komm'!	Death lying in wait, then come!
Von hier ins ewige Ruhebett'	From here to eternal rest:
Und weiter keinen Schritt;—	No further step—no, no!
Du gehst nun fort? O Heinrich,	Thou goest away! O Henry, if
könnt' ich mit!	I could go!

FAUST.

Du kannst! So wolle nur! Die	Thou canst! Just will it! Open
Thür steht offen.	stands the door.

MARGARET.

Ich darf nicht fort; für mich ist	I dare not go: there's no hope
nichts zu hoffen.	any more.
Was hilft es fliehn? Sie lauern	Why should I fly? They'll still
doch mir auf.	my steps waylay!
Es ist so elend, betteln zu	It is so wretched, forced to beg
müssen,	my living,
Und noch dazu mit bösem Ge-	And a bad conscience sharper
wissen!	misery giving!
Es ist so elend in der Fremde	It is so wretched, to be strange,
schweifen,	forsaken,
Und sie werden mich doch	And I'd still be followed and
ergreifen!	taken!

FAUST.

Ich bleibe bei dir.

I'll stay with thee.

MARGARET.

Geschwind! Geschwind!	Be quick! Be quick!
Rette dein armes Kind!	Save thy perishing child!

Fort ! Immer den Weg
 Am Bach hinauf,
 Über den Steg,
 In den Wald hinein
 Links, wo die Planke steht,

Im Teich.
 Fass' es nur gleich !
 Es will sich heben,
 Es zappelt noch !
 Rette ! Rette !

Away ! Follow the ridge
 Up by the brook,
 Over the bridge,
 Into the wood,
 To the left, where the plank is
 placed
 In the pool !
 Seize it in haste !
 'Tis trying to rise,
 'Tis struggling still !
 Save it ! Save it !

FAUST.

Besinne dich doch !
 Nur Einen Schritt, so bist du
 frei !

Recall thy wandering will !
 One step, and thou art free at
 last !

MARGARET.

Wären wir nur den Berg vorbei !
 Da sitzt meine Mutter auf einem
 Stein,
 Es fasst mich kalt beim Schopfe !
 Da sitzt meine Mutter auf einem
 Stein
 Und wackelt mit dem Kopfe ;
 Sie winkt nicht, sie nickt nicht,
 der Kopf ist ihr schwer ;
 Sie schlief so lange, sie wacht
 nicht mehr.
 Sie schlief, damit wir uns freu-
 ten.
 Es waren glückliche Zeiten !

If the mountain we had only
 passed !
 There sits my mother upon a
 stone,—
 I feel an icy shiver !
 There sits my mother upon a
 stone,
 And her head is wagging ever.
 She beckons, she nods not, her
 heavy head falls o'er ;
 She slept so long that she wakes
 no more.
 She slept, while we were caress-
 ing :
 Ah, those were the days of bless-
 ing !

FAUST.

Hilft hier kein Flehen, hilft kein
 Sagen ;
 So wag' ich's, dich hinweg zu
 tragen.

Here words and prayers are
 nothing worth ;
 I'll venture, then, to bear thee
 forth,

MARGARET.

Lass mich ! Nein, ich leide	No—let me go ! I'll suffer no
keine Gewalt !	force !
Fasse mich nicht so mörderisch	Grasp me not so murderously !
an !	
Sonst hab' ich dir ja Alles zu	I've done, else, all things for the
Lieb' gethan.	love of thee.

FAUST.

Der Tag graut ! Liebchen ! Lieb-	The day dawns : Dearest ! Dear-
chen !	est !

MARGARET.

Tag ! Ja, es wird Tag ! der letzte	Day ? Yes, the day comes,—the
Tag dringt herein !	last day breaks for me !
Mein Hochzeitstag sollt' es sein !	My wedding-day it was to be !
Sag' Niemand, dass du schon bei	Tell no one thou hast been with
Gretchen warst.	Margaret !
Weh meinem Kranze !	Woe for my garland ! The
	chances
Es ist eben geschehn !	Are over—'tis all in vain !
Wir werden uns wiedersehn ;	We shall meet once again,
Aber nicht beim Tanze.	But not at the dances !
Die Menge drängt sich, man hört	The crowd is thronging, no word
sie nicht.	is spoken :
Der Platz, die Gassen	The square below
Können sie nicht fassen.	And the streets overflow :
Die Glocke ruft, das Stäbchen	The death-bell tolls, the wand is
bricht.	broken.
Wie sie mich binden und packen !	I am seized, and bound, and de-
	livered—
Zum Blutstuhl bin ich schon	Shoved to the block—they give
entrückt.	the sign !
Schon zuckt nach jedem Nacken	Now over each neck has quiv-
	ered
Die Schärfe, die nach meinem	The blade that is quivering over
zückt.	mine.
Stumm liegt die Welt wie das	Dumb lies the world like the
Grab !	grave !

FAUST.

O wär' ich nie geboren !

O had I ne'er been born !

MEPHISTOPHELES (*appears outside*).

Auf ! oder ihr seid verloren.

Off ! or you're lost ere morn.

Unnützes Zagen ! Zaudern und
Plaudern !Useless talking, delaying and
praying !Meine Pferde schaudern,
Der Morgen dämmert auf.My horses are neighing :
The morning twilight is near.

MARGARET.

Was steigt aus dem Boden
herauf ?What rises up from the threshold
here ?

Der ! der ! Schick' ihn fort !

He ! he ! suffer him not !

Was will der an dem heiligen
Ort ?What does he want in this holy
spot ?

Er will mich !

He seeks me !

FAUST.

Du sollst leben !

Thou shalt live.

MARGARET.

Gericht Gottes ! Dir hab' ich
mich übergeben !Judgment of God ! myself to
thee I give.MEPHISTOPHELES (*to FAUST*).Komm ! Komm ! Ich lasse dich
mit ihr im Stich.Come ! or I'll leave her in the
lurch, and thee !

MARGARET.

Dein bin ich, Vater ! Rette
mich !

Thine am I, Father ! rescue me !

Ihr Engel, ihr heiligen Schaaren,

Ye angels, holy cohorts, guard
me,Lagert euch umher, mich zu be-
wahren !Camp around, and from evil
ward me !

Heinrich ! Mir graut's vor dir.

Henry ! I shudder to think of
thee.

MEPHISTOPHELES.

Sie ist gerichtet !

She is judged !

VOICE (*from above*).

Ist gerettet !

She is saved !

MEPHISTOPHELES (*to FAUST*).

Her zu mir !

Hither to me !

(*He disappears with FAUST.*)VOICE (*from within, dying away*).

Heinrich ! Heinrich !

Henry ! Henry !

This is all of "*Faust*" that is known to most readers. But you will notice that the evolution of the great plan is only commenced : the riddle has not even approached its explanation. Of all the usual experiences of men, Faust has only been drawn to love, but love so inter-fused with conscience and remorse, that the happy moment has not yet blessed him. The compact with Mephistopheles still holds : he has not won his wager, although we may guess that he thinks so.

After the compact was made, he says to Faust, "We will first see the little and then the great world." By the "little world," he means the individual experience of the emotions and passions of human nature ; and this is the reason why Faust was made young again by the magic draught in the witches' kitchen. By the "great world," he means the experience of a life mov-

ing on a broad field of activity, among men, and in stations where its influence will be felt by thousands, or millions, of the race. In this greater world, Mephistopheles has every opportunity to display his evil talent, and to annihilate the germs of good which baffle him in Faust's nature. The Second Part is therefore wholly different in its character. It is crowded with characters, and its events are displayed on a grand stage—so grand, indeed, that Goethe was forced to introduce the element of allegory, and make single persons typify whole classes of society. It requires a ripe and rather philosophical mind to appreciate this part properly, because Faust loses something of his strong human individuality by coming under the control of ideas instead of passions. He leaves behind him the experiences through which he touches the lives of all men, and rises to those wherein he touches only the lives of the men who think and aspire.

In the opening scene we find Faust sleeping, while Ariel, accompanied by Æolian harps, chants the progressive watches of the night, the restorative influences of Nature. This chant embodies an important feature of Goethe's creed, which he has expressed more fully in other works. He believed most devoutly in preserving moral and spiritual health. If there is a moral wound, it must be healed, leaving perhaps a scar behind it; but it must not be kept as an open sore. The chronic inflammation of remembrance and remorse must

be avoided. The true atonement for a wrong committed does not lie in nursing the pain it leaves, but in restoration to cheerfulness and courage and hope, for the sake of others.

Faust awakes to a scene of sunrise among the Alps, a piece of superb description. We learn that his nature is calmed and refreshed—that, forgetting his Past, he is ready to face Life again with fresh courage. In fact, he afterwards only once refers to anything in the First Part.

The next scene introduces us to the Court of the Emperor, who appears on his throne, surrounded by his ministers and lords. Mephistopheles has taken the place of Court Fool. The various ministers make reports, each more discouraging than the other. The treasury is empty; the realm is lawless and disorganized; the knights and burghers are at war, and the allies and tributary states are unfaithful. Money, however, is the great need, and Mephistopheles proposes to supply it by digging up all the treasure buried in the soil since the old Roman times. The proposition meets with favor, but the subject is postponed until after the Carnival, which is near at hand.

This Carnival is an allegorical masquerade, representing Society. The young of both sexes appear as flower-girls and gardeners. Intriguing mothers, with marriageable daughters; rude, offensive natures; social mountebanks, parasites, *roués*; the Graces, typifying

refinement ; the Fates ; the Furies, emblematic of slander and malice ; Victory, mounted on an elephant, which is guided by Prudence, while Fear and Hope walk on either side ; a chariot driven by a boy personifying Poetry, while Plutus sits within and Avarice hangs on behind—all these characters meet and mingle as they are found in the society of the world. The part of Plutus is taken by Faust, while Mephistopheles, true to his character of negation, wears the mask of Avarice. The Emperor himself appears as Pan, attended by Fauns, Satyrs, Nymphs and Gnomes. The form of the verse constantly varies in this scene ; it is full of the richest and rarest rhythmical effects.

In the next scene the Emperor finds the aspect of affairs completely changed. The treasury is filled, the troops are paid, commerce flourishes, and the whole realm is prosperous. He learns that during the confusion of the Carnival, he has been persuaded to sign a document, which was really a decree for the issuing of paper money, redeemable in gold—after the buried Roman treasures shall be discovered and dug up. Some of the features of this scene are taken from the Mississippi scheme of John Law. Goethe's first intention was to deal with politics instead of finance, and we must regret that he afterwards changed his plan. Mephistopheles presents Faust to the Emperor as the originator of the paper-money, and the latter appoints him, with the Chancellor, to direct the finances of the

realm. In this scheme, we see the effort of Mephistopheles to initiate Faust into public life as the surest means to corrupt him ; but we shall soon find that the evil nature has made a mistake.

The Emperor is so impressed by Faust's marvellous power that he desires a special exhibition of his art: he commands him to summon the shades of Paris and Helen to appear before his Court. You will remember that this was a part of the original Faust-legend, and was retained in some of the puppet plays. Faust calls Mephistopheles to his aid, but the latter hesitates to assist him. The task is difficult and dangerous: Faust must descend to the Mothers, holding in his hand a key which Mephistopheles gives him, and touch with it a tripod. The Mothers are vague existences, who dwell outside the bounds of Time and Space. The Court assembles, Faust rises with the tripod, Paris appears and then Helen. The members of the Court criticise their beauty in the true fashionable style, with impertinent praise or absurd censure. But we see that Faust is seized with a passionate adoration of the beauty of Helen, and we now begin to suspect that she is something more than a mere form. She represents, in fact, the abstract sense of Beauty, the informing spirit of all Art, the basis of the highest human culture. The honors heaped upon him by the Emperor, the hollow splendors of Court life, have only touched the surface of Faust's nature. This

vision of an Ideal of Beauty masters and draws him after it.

In the Second Act we are introduced to Faust's old chamber, and to his Famulus, Wagner, who has taken his place, and is trying, like the alchemists of the Middle Ages, to elaborate a human being, a Homunculus, by mixing together the chemical substances of which the body is composed. Mephistopheles, by a trick, makes the experiment successful, and the Homunculus guides him and Faust to the Pharsalian Fields, on the banks of the Peneios, in Thessaly. Here we have a classical, or Grecian Walpurgis-Night, in contrast to the Gothic one of the First Part. Faust has but one thought—to find Helen, while Mephistopheles wanders about among the forms of the earliest mythology, feeling rather uncomfortable, and a little uncertain what course to pursue.

The number of characters is very great. Griffins, Pygmies, Sphinxes, Syrens, Chiron the Centaur, Emmets, Dactyls, Lamiae, the Phorkyads, Thales, Anaxagoras, Nereus, Proteus, Nereids and Tritons, Telchines of Rhodes, and the sea-nymph Galatea, all take part in this wonderful moonlight spectacle. A great deal of the action has no connection with Faust. Thales and Anaxagoras are the representatives of the Neptunic and Plutonic theories in Geology, and Goethe, as a Neptunist, takes special pains to ridicule the opposite views. All this, however, must be set aside: then, by

carefully examining what is left, we find that it represents the gradual growth of the element of Beauty, in Art and Religion, from the first rude beginnings in Phoenicia and Egypt, until it culminates in the immortal symmetry of the Grecian mind. Since Goethe gives a moral, even a saving power to Beauty, his object is now not difficult to understand.

Faust, meanwhile, has gone to Hades, to implore Persephone to release Helen; but we are not informed how this is accomplished. As a specimen of the versification of the classical Walpurgis-Night, I will give the chorus of the Telchines of Rhodes :

Wir haben den Dreizack Nep-
tunen geschmiedet,
Womit er die regesten Wellen
begütet.
Entfaltet der Donnrer die
Wolken, die vollen,
Entgegnet Neptunus dem gräu-
lichen Rollen ;
Und wie auch von oben es zackig
erblitzt,
Wird Woge nach Woge von
unten gespritzt ;
Und was auch dazwischen in
Aengsten gerungen,
Wird, lange geschleudert, vom
Tiefsten verschlungen ;
Wesshalb er uns heute den Scep-
ter gereicht,—
Nun schweben wir festlich, be-
ruhigt und leicht.

We've forged for old Neptune
the trident that urges
To smoothness and peace the re-
fractory surges.
When Jove tears the clouds of
the tempest asunder,
'Tis Neptune encounters the roll
of the thunder :
The lightnings above may inces-
santly glow,
But wave upon wave dashes up
from below,
And all that, between them, the
terrors o'erpower,
Long tossed and tormented, the
Deep shall devour ;
And thence he has lent us his
sceptre to-day.—
Now float we contented, in festal
array.

The Third Act is generally called "The Helena."

The scene opens in Sparta, whither Helen has just returned from Troy, in advance of Menelaus. In this act Mephistopheles appears as Phorkyas, a hideous old woman. Helen being Primitive Beauty, he, of course, is obliged to become Primitive Ugliness. I must compress the incidents of the act into a very brief space. Helen, flying from the vengeance of Menelaus, finds herself suddenly in the court-yard of a Gothic castle, the lord of which is Faust. He makes her queen of his domain, their nuptials are celebrated, and they become the parents of a son, Euphorion. In all this there is a double allegory. Helen is not only the ideal of the Beautiful, which rescues Faust from the excesses of passion and worldly ambition, but she also stands for the classical element in Literature and Art. Faust is not only the type of man, working his way upward by the development of his finer faculties, but he also stands for the romantic element in Literature and Art. This secondary meaning is added to the primary idea upon which the whole work is based. Euphorion, therefore, is the union of the classic and romantic spirits in one person. He is a perfect embodiment of Goethe's own poetry; but as Byron's death, at the time when this act was written, powerfully affected Goethe, he determined to make Euphorion a distinct representative of Byron. The act closes with the death of Euphorion and the disappearance of Helen, whose garments, left behind her, turn into clouds and bear Faust away. As a specimen

of the noblest literary art, the "Helena" is matchless: the more it is read and studied, the more its wonderful beauty grows upon the reader. The first half of it is written in pure Greek metres, the latter half in short rhymed stanzas that sound like the clash of cymbals. I will only quote from it the Dirge sung by the Chorus, on the death of Euphron, because it is wholly descriptive of Byron:

Nicht allein!—wo du auch weilest,

Denn wir glauben dich zu kennen;

Ach! wenn du dem Tag enteilest,

Wird kein Herz von dir sich trennen.

Wüssten wir doch kaum zu klagen,

Neidend singen wir dein Loos:
Dir in klar und trüben Tagen

Lied und Muth war schön und gross.

Ach! zum Erdenglück geboren,

Hoher Ahnen, grosser Kraft,

Leider! früh dir selbst verloren,
Jugendblüthe weggerafft;

Scharfer Blick, die Welt zu schauen,

Mitsinn jedem Herzensdrang,
Liebesgluth der besten Frauen

Und ein eigenster Gesang.

Not alone! where'er thou bidest;

For we know thee what thou art.

Ah! if from the Day thou hidest,

Still to thee will cling each heart.

Scarce we venture to lament thee,

Singing, envious of thy fate;
For in storm and sun were lent thee

Song and courage, fair and great.

Ah! for earthly fortune fashioned,

Strength was thine, and proud descent;

Early erring, o'er-impassioned,
Youth, alas! from thee was rent.

For the world thine eye was rarest,

All the heart to thee was known;
Thine were loves of women fairest,

And a song thy very own.

Doch du ranntest unaufhaltsam	Yet thou rannest uncontrolledly
Frei ins willenlose Netz ;	In the net the fancies draw,
So entzweitest du gewaltsam	Thus thyself divorcing boldly
Dich mit Sitte, mit Gesetz ;	As from custom, so from law ;
Doch zuletzt das höchste Sinnen	Till the highest thought ex- pended
Gab dem reinen Muth Gewicht,	Set at last thy courage free :
Wolltest Herrliches gewinnen,	Thou wouldst win achievement splendid,
Aber es gelang dir nicht.	But it was not given to thee.
Wem gelingt es?—Trübe Frage,	Unto whom, then? Question dreary,
Der das Schicksal sich ver- mummt,	Destiny will never heed ;
Wenn am unglücklichsten Tage	When in evil days and weary,
Blutend alles Volk verstummt.	Silently the people bleed.
Doch erfrischt neue Lieder,	But new songs shall still elate them :
Steht nicht länger tief ge- beugt !	Bow no longer and deplore !
Denn der Boden zeugt sie wieder,	For the soil shall generate them,
Wie von je er sie gezeugt.	As it hath done heretofore.

The Fourth Act was written in Goethe's eighty-second year, and is the least important of all. Faust cannot live and find the satisfaction of his life in the service of the Beautiful, but its garments bear him above the stony ways of the Earth, and it is thenceforth his comfort and the consecration of his days. He now insists on a new field of activity: he means to compel Nature to the service of man. There is a part of the Emperor's realm which is uninhabitable, because at times inundated by the sea: this he will dike and drain, make fit

for population, and people with active colonists. Mephistopheles is bound to obey his commands, and the greater part of the act is taken up with the description of a battle which is won for the Emperor by his assistance. In return, Faust is presented with a title to the vast sea-swept marshes he desires to possess.

In the last act, the great work is accomplished. There is a fertile, populous province, intersected by navigable canals, in place of the sea. A harbor for commerce has been built, and near it, in the midst of gardens, stands the palace of Faust. Only two things remain to be done—to drain the last remnant of marsh, and to gain possession of a little cottage and chapel, near at hand, belonging to an old couple who refuse to sell or leave it. Faust has not yet found his perfectly happy moment, though he is now nearly one hundred years old. Mephistopheles, whom we may suppose to be very impatient by this time, endeavors to hasten matters by frightening the old couple to death and burning down the cottage and chapel. Faust curses the rash, inhuman deed, and Mephistopheles is once more baffled.

We now feel that the end approaches. The scene changes to midnight, before the palace of Faust. Four gray women enter: one is Want, another Guilt, the third Necessity and the fourth Care. The palace is barred against them—Want, Guilt and Necessity retire, but Care slips in through the key-hole. Faust defies her, but she breathes on his eyes, and he becomes blind.

But, in exchange for the external darkness, his spirit is filled with light: at last he sees clearly. He urges on the work with haste and energy: "one mind," he says, "suffices for a thousand hands." He gropes along, feeling his way out of the palace, and listens to the clattering of the spades, which, day and night, are employed in draining the last marsh. He feels that he has overcome the hostile forces of Nature, and created new homes for millions of the race. Filled with this grand consciousness, he exclaims:

Ja! diesem Sinne bin ich ganz
ergeben,

Das ist der Weisheit letzter
Schluss:

Nur der verdient sich Freiheit
wie das Leben,

Der täglich sie erobern muss.

Und so verbringt, umrungen von
Gefahr,

Hier Kindheit, Mann und Greis
sein tüchtig Jahr.

Solch' ein Gewimmel möcht' ich
sehn,

Auf freiem Grund mit freiem
Volke stehn.

Zum Augenblicke dürft' ich sa-
gen:

Verweile doch, du bist so schön!

Es kann die Spur von meinen
Erdetagen

Nicht in Aeonen untergehn.—

Yes! to this thought I hold
with firm persistence;

The last result of wisdom stamps
it true:

He only earns his freedom and
existence,

Who daily conquers them
anew.

Thus here, by dangers girt, shall
glide away

Of childhood, manhood, age,
the vigorous day:

And such a throng I fain would
see,—

Stand on free soil among a peo-
ple free!

Then dared I hail the Moment
fleeing:

"*Ah, still delay—thou art so
fair!*"

The traces cannot, of mine
earthly being,

In aeons perish,—they are
there!—

Im Vorgefühl von solchem ho-	In proud fore-feeling of such
hen Glück	lofty bliss,
Genieß' ich jetzt den höchsten	I now enjoy the highest Mo-
Augenblick	ment,—this !

He has said the words : the compact is at an end ; and he sinks to the ground, dead. Mephistopheles has won, to all appearance. Standing beside the body, he calls up the hosts of Hell to surround him and take joint possession of the soul. But while he addresses them in a strain of blasphemous exultation, a glory of light falls from above. The angels appear, scattering celestial roses, and chanting :

Rosen, ihr blendenden,	Roses, ye glowing ones,
Balsam versendenden !	Balsam-bestowing ones !
Flatternde, schwebende,	Fluttering, quivering,
Heimlich belebende,	Sweetness delivering,
Zweigleinbeflügelte,	Branching unblightedly,
Knospenentsiegelte,	Budding delightedly,
Eilet zu blühen !	Bloom and be seen !
Frühling entspriesse,	Springtime declare him,
Purpur und Grün !	In purple and green !
Tragt Paradiese	Paradise bear him,
Dem Ruhenden hin.	The Sleeper serene !

The Devils are driven back by this shower of roses, which burn them worse than the infernal pitch and sulphur : the angels seize and bear aloft the immortal part of Faust, and Mephistopheles is left to gnash his teeth in impotent rage. The last scene is laid in some region of Heaven. After chants of ecstatic adoration by the souls of saints, the angels who bear the spirit

of Faust sing—and I beg you to mark the words carefully :

Gerettet ist das edle Glied	The noble Spirit now is free,
Der Geisterwelt vom Bösen :	And saved from evil scheming :
Wer immer strebend sich be-	Whoe'er aspires unweariedly
müht,	
Den können wir erlösen ;	Is not beyond redeeming.
Und hat an ihm die Liebe gar	And if he feels the grace of Love
Von oben Theil genommen,	That from On High is given,
Begegnet ihm die selige Schaar	The Blessed Hosts, that wait
	above,
Mit herzlichem Willkommen.	Shall welcome him to Heaven !

These are the elements of Faust's salvation, and they at once recall to our mind the words of the Lord to Mephistopheles, in the Prologue in Heaven: "Thou shalt stand ashamed to see that a good man, through all the obscurity of his natural impulses, still in his heart has an instinct of the one true way."

After further chants by the angels, the *Mater Gloriosa*—the Virgin Mary, as the Protectress of Women—soars into space, and the soul of Margaret approaches. She is not yet allowed access to the highest heavenly regions, but the hour of her pardon and purification has come. I will quote from this point to the end :

(The MATER GLORIOSA soars into the space.)

CHORUS OF WOMEN PENITENTS.

Du schwebst zu Höhen	To heights thou'rt speeding
Der ewigen Reiche,	Of endless Eden :
Vernimm das Flehen,	Receive our pleading,
Du Ohnegleiche !	Transcendent Maiden,
Du Gnadenreiche !	With Mercy laden !

MAGNA PECCATRIX. (*St. Luke, vii. 36.*)

Bei der Liebe, die den Füßen	By the love before him kneel- ing,—
Deines gottverklärten Sohnes	Him, Thy Son, a godlike vi- sion ;
Thränen liess zum Balsam flies- sen,	By the tears like balsam steal- ing,
Trotz des Pharisäer-Holmes ;	Spite of Pharisees' derision ;
Beim Gefässe, das so reichlich	By the box, whose ointment precious
Tropfte Wohlgeruch hernieder ;	Shed its spice and odors cheery ;
Bei den Locken, die so weichlich	By the locks, whose softest meshes
Trockneten die heiligen Glie- der—	Dried the holy feet and weary !—

MULIER SAMARITANA. (*St. John, iv.*)

Bei dem Bronn, zu dem schon weiland	By that well, the ancient station
Abram liess die Heerde führen ;	Whither Abram's flocks were driven ;
Bei dem Eimer, der dem Heiland Kühl die Lippe durft' berüh- ren ;	By the jar, whose restoration To the Saviour's lips was given ;
Bei der reinen reichen Quelle, Die nun dorthier sich ergiesset,	By the fountain, pure and vernal, Thence its present bounty spending,—
Ueberflüssig, ewig helle, Rings durch alle Welten flies- set—	Overflowing, bright, eternal, Watering the worlds unend- ing !—

MARIA ÆGYPTIACA. (*Acta Sanctorum.*)

Bei dem hochgeweihten Orte,	By the place, where the Im- mortal
Wo den Herrn man niederliess ;	Body of the Lord hath lain ;
Bei dem Arm, der von der Pforte	By the arm, which, from the portal,
Warnend mich zurücke stiess ;	Warning, thrust me back again ;

Bei der vierzigjährigen Busse,	By the forty years' repentance
Der ich treu in Wüsten blieb ;	In the lonely desert-land ;
Bei dem seligen Scheidegrusse,	By the blissful farewell sentence
Den im Sand ich niederschrieb—	Which I wrote upon the sand !—

THE THREE.

Die du grossen Sünderinnen	Thou Thy presence not deniest
Deine Nähe nicht verweigerst	Unto sinful women ever,—
Und ein büssendes Gewinnen	Liftest them to win the highest
In die Ewigkeiten steigerst,	Gain of penitent endeavor,—
Gönn' auch dieser guten Seele,	So, from this good soul with-
	draw not—
Die sich einmal nur vergessen,	Who but once forgot transgress-
	ing,
Die nicht ahnte, dass sie fehle,	Who her loving error saw not—
Dein Verzeihen angemessen !	Pardon adequate, and blessing !

UNA PŒNITENTIUM

(formerly named Margaret, stealing closer).

Neige, neige,	Incline, O Maiden,
Du Ohnegleiche,	With Mercy laden,
Du Strahlenreiche,	In light unfading,
Dein Antlitz gnädig meinem	Thy gracious countenance upon
Glück !	my bliss !
Der früh Geliebte,	My loved, my lover,
Nicht mehr Getrübte,	His trials over
Er kommt zurück.	In yonder world, returns to me
	in this !

BLESSED BOYS

(approaching in hovering circles).

Er überwächst uns schon	With mighty limbs he towers
An mächtigen Gliedern,	Already above us ;
Wird treuer Pflege Lohn	He, for this love of ours,
Reichlich erwiedern.	Will richlier love us,
Wir wurden früh entfernt	Early were we removed,
Von Lebechören ;	Ere Life could reach us ;
Doch dieser hat gelernt,	Yet he hath learned and proved,
Er wird uns lehren.	And he will teach us.

THE PENITENT

(formerly named Margaret).

Vom edlen Geisterchor umgeben,	The spirit-choir around him seeing,
Wird sich der Neue kaum gewahr,	New to himself, he scarce divines
Er ahnet kaum das frische Leben,	His heritage of new-born Being,
So gleicht er schon der heiligen Schaar.	When like the Holy Host he shines.
Sieh, wie er jedem Erdenbände	Behold, how he each band hath cloven,
Der alten Hülle sich entrafft,	The earthly life had round him thrown,
Und aus aetherischem Gewande	And through his garb, of ether woven,
Hervortritt erste Jugendkraft !	The early force of youth is shown !
Vergönne mir, ihn zu belehren !	Vouchsafe to me that I instruct him !
Noch blendet ihn der neue Tag.	Still dazzles him the Day's new glare.

MATER GLORIOSA.

Komm ! hebe dich zu höhern Sphären !	Rise, thou, to higher spheres !
Wenn er dich ahnet, folgt er nach.	Conduct him, Who, feeling thee, shall follow there !

DOCTOR MARIANUS

(prostrate, adoring).

Blicket auf zum Retterblick,	Penitents, look up, elate,
Alle reuig Zarten,	Where she beams salvation ;
Euch zu seligem Geschick	Gratefully to blessed fate
Dankend umzuarten !	Grow, in re-creation !
Werde jeder bessre Sinn	Be our souls, as they have been,
Dir zum Dienst erbötig ;	Dedicate to Thee !
Jungfrau, Mutter, Königin,	Virgin Holy, Mother, Queen,
Göttin, bleibe gnädig !	Goddess, gracious be !

CHORUS MYSTICUS.

Alles Vergängliche
Ist nur ein Gleichniss ;
Das Unzulängliche,
Hier wird's Ereigniss ;
Das Unbeschreibliche,
Hier ist es gethan ;
Das Ewig-Weibliche
Zieht uns hinan.

All things transitory
But as symbols are sent :
Earth's insufficiency
Here grows to Event :
The Indescribable,
Here it is done :
The Woman-Soul leadeth us
Upward and on !

To those who intend reading the whole work for themselves, I would add a few words in conclusion. In the characters of Faust and Mephistopheles are represented the continual strife between Good and Evil in Man. The first lesson is that man becomes morbid and miserable in seclusion, even though he devotes himself to the acquisition of knowledge. He must also know the life of the body in the open air, and the society of his fellow-men. He must feel in himself the passions and the impulses of the race : in other words, he must first become a man among men. He must fight, through his life, with the powers of selfishness, doubt, denial of all good, truth and beauty. Then, the error and the wrong which he may have committed must not clog his future development. He must recover health from moral as from physical disease. The passion for the Beautiful must elevate and purify him, saving him from all the meanness and the littleness which we find in Society and in all forms of public life. The restless impulse, which drives him forward, will

save him—that is, lead him constantly from one sphere of being to another that is higher and clearer—in spite of error, in spite of temptation, in spite even of vice. Only in constant activity and struggle can he redeem himself—only in working for the benefit of his fellow-beings can he taste perfect happiness. This is the golden current of wisdom which flows through "*Faust*" from beginning to end.

XII.

RICHTER.

OF all the representative authors of the great literary era of Germany, he who was known as "Jean Paul" during his life, but is now recovering his family name of Richter, is the most difficult to describe, both in regard to his relative place and the peculiarities of his genius. In the lives and the works of the other authors we find a greater or less accordance with intellectual laws ; while he is phenomenal, almost to the point of being abnormal. They reflect the interests and the influences of their day, as in a clear mirror,—he as in one of those dark glass globes, which we sometimes see in gardens, distorting the reflected forms out of all their natural proportions. During his life, his circle of ardent admirers gave him the name of "*Der Einzige*"—the "only one," or "the unique,"—which may very well serve as a measure of his literary character, if not of his elevation. The first impression which a reader gets from his works is that he stands entirely alone, both with regard to other authors and to his own age ; but a longer and more careful study shows that his relations to both have only been distorted by the unusual qualities of his mind.

There are intellectual genealogies in literature. Most authors may be shown to be, not the imitators, but the spiritual descendants of others, inheriting more or less of their natures. In this sense, the blood of Cowper shows itself in Wordsworth, of Gibbon in Macaulay, of Keats in Tennyson, or of Chaucer, after five hundred years, in William Morris. Among Richter's predecessors, his nearest intellectual ancestor was Laurence Sterne, the author of "Tristram Shandy" and the "Sentimental Journey,"—works which made a much deeper impression upon the literature of Germany than upon that of England. Take the main characteristics of these works—their airy, capricious humor, their unexpected touches of pathos, and their brief but marvellous glimpses of human nature: add all the sentiment of the Storm and Stress period, with the passionate fury and frenzy taken out of it; add, also, a prodigious amount of desultory knowledge; place this compound in the most willful and whimsical of human brains, and you will have a vague outline of Richter. The mixture is so unusual and heterogeneous that its elements cannot be separated by an ordinary critical analysis. Even the German critics, who are so fond of dissecting an author's mind, and showing you every hidden muscle and nerve which directs its motions, have found Richter an uncomfortable subject. He is a lively corpse, and will not hold still under their scalpels.

I have endeavored to indicate to you the special fields

of action of the great authors of whom I have already spoken,—to show how some strong interest or aspiration of the race found its expression in each ; but Richter defies any such attempt to define his position. We can only collect all scattered interests, desires or sentiments which the others did not specially represent, and we shall be tolerably sure to find them somewhere in him.

In a single quality he is pre-eminent. Not one of his illustrious compeers approaches him as a humorist. Lessing possessed a keen and brilliant power of irony, but he is never purely humorous. Klopstock and Herder had no comprehension of humor, and Schiller but a very slight trace of it. Wieland shows most of the quality, and his "*Abderiten*" might almost be considered a humorous work, but it would be more correct to call it a lively and playful satire. Goethe's humor is always severe, and sometimes a little ponderous ; in his comedies there is generally an element of grotesqueness and purposed absurdity. But in Richter humor is an irrepressible native force, breaking out in the midst of his tenderest sentiment, darting helter-skelter over all his pages, sometimes threatening, sometimes striking sharp and hard, provoking at one moment and delighting at another.

Some modern English and American writers assert that a genius for humor does not belong to the German people, and that its highest forms are not manifested in

their literature. I entirely disagree with this view. There are traces of a very genuine humor in Luther: Fischart overflows with it, and in the last century Lichtenberg will compare with any wit of Queen Anne's time. Although Professor of Mathematics and the Natural Sciences at Göttingen, Lichtenberg achieved for himself a distinct place in literature. My attention was first called to his works, some years ago, by Fritz Reuter, the *Platt-deutsche* humorist of our day. I think even our extravagant American idea of humor will appreciate his remark that "a donkey is simply a horse translated into Dutch;" or the manner in which he describes one of his pompous and pretentious contemporaries, by saying: "He sits down between his two little dogs, and calls himself Daniel in the lions' den." In fact, when he says that "a man who has stolen a hundred thousand dollars ought to be able to live honestly," we think we hear an American speak. He alone would prove the genuineness of German humor, if it were necessary to be done.

Richter's life was passed within narrow limits, and exhibits neither picturesque situations nor startling dramatic changes; yet it is none the less a story of deep interest. His grandfather was a Franconian clergyman, of whom he says that "he was equally poor and pious;" his father was even poorer, but with no increase of piety to compensate for it; and in 1763, at the little village of Wunsiedel, in the Franconian mountains,

he himself was born to a long inheritance of privation. The first twelve years of his life were spent in a village called Joditz, near the town of Hof, in northern Bavaria. The beauty of the scenery, with its contrasts of dark fir-clad hills, sloping fields and bright green meadows, awoke in him that susceptibility to all the forms and the phases of Nature, which is one of the charms of his works. His playmates were the children of the peasants, and through them he learned the life of the common people. His father, with a beggarly salary as clergyman, had a large family of children, who were both healthy and hungry, and he was barely able to feed, clothe and instruct them. During the long winter evenings the family burned pine-splints instead of candles.

As a boy, Richter attended school in Hof and in a neighboring town to which his father was transferred. He was an insatiable reader, borrowing books wherever he could discover any. It made little difference what the contents were : so they were books, he was satisfied. He furnished himself with paper, pen and ink, copied everything which made an impression on him as he read, and finally stitched the sheets together to form a book. He continued this habit for many years, and the result was a manuscript library, stuffed with the plunder of thousands of volumes. Everything was there—theology and tin-ware, art and artichokes, science, cookery, ideas of heaven, making of horseshoes, æsthetics, edible mushrooms, mythology, millinery—in short, a

tolerably complete cyclopædia, lacking only the alphabetical arrangement. When he could find no printed volumes to borrow, he read these manuscript collections over again, and a good part of the knowledge contained in them stuck to his memory.

During his seventeenth year his father died, and the family would probably have starved, except for a little help given now and then by the mother's relatives. In 1781, being eighteen years old, Richter went to the University of Leipzig, hoping to live by teaching while he studied theology. But the uncouth country-boy found no pupils. How he managed to live there for two years none of his biographers fully explain: the only thing certain is that he was forced to abscond to escape imprisonment for debt. Those two years, however, decided his vocation for life: he gave up theology, consecrated himself to literature, and published the first part of a work entitled "*Die Grönländischen Prozesse*" (The Greenland Lawsuits). Richter himself says, forty years later, that it was written in his eighteenth year, after daily association with Pope, Swift, Young and Erasmus; but the reader who is familiar with those authors will look in vain for the least echo of their style and manner—from beginning to end Richter's own grotesque individuality is as clearly marked as in any one of his later works. The title was well calculated to excite curiosity; hence the greater exasperation of the reader, when, instead of some strange Arctic story

or fragment of forgotten history, he found merely six Essays—"On Authors," "On Theologians," "On the vulgar Pride of Ancestry," "On Women and Dandies," and "On the Prohibition of Books." If, nevertheless, he attempted to read one of these Essays, he was confused, at the outset, by a style which at that time must have suggested insanity. The minds of some authors are like a lamp which illuminates the subject, more or less brilliantly, from one side: others walk around the subject, and light it carefully on all sides; but here was one which seemed to touch off a collection of fire-works, fizzing, snapping and popping in all directions, in the midst of which a part of the subject sometimes gleamed in blue fire, then another part in red fire, and then again a dozen rockets rushed off into the sky, leaving the subject in complete darkness. It is very evident to me that in addition to Pope, Swift and Erasmus, Richter had been attending lectures on physiology. The book is crammed with illustrations of the most extraordinary kind, drawn from that science. Two sentences from the first essay will suffice to give you an idea of its general character. In speaking of the literary pretenders and imitators of the time, he says: "In the dialogue of tragedy, the slang of the rabble is now wedded to the tone of the ode; the jests of beer-bibbers and the songs of seraphs embrace upon the same tongue, as jugglers draw wine and water from the same barrel. The saliva of poetry

makes the halting tongue of passion limber, and the poetic quill vaccinates the dumb woe with rhetorical pustules."

Of course the success of such a work was simply impossible. The reader, who expected either clear wisdom or intelligible wit, found himself face to face with a man who seemed to be grinning through a horse-collar. But, under all the contortions of a manner which perplexed, amused and offended at the same time, there lurked the genius of the man. A few, a very few personal friends began to believe in him. It must be said, in illustration of his integrity of character, that he never afterwards made the slightest attempt to render his style more acceptable to the public. It had to be acquired, almost like a new language, before he became popular. We have a similar instance in English Literature. When Carlyle's "*Sartor Resartus*" first appeared, as a serial in *Frazer's Magazine*, the publisher would have discontinued it, in despair, but for the letters of earnest appreciation received from two men, one of whom was Ralph Waldo Emerson. This was in 1835; and in 1870 the same work, in a cheap popular edition, reached a sale of 40,000 copies.

When Richter left Leipzig, as an absconding debtor and an unsuccessful author, he seemed to have reached the lowest depth of misfortune, and there was apparently no way of rising out of it. In fact, he stuck there for years, living with his widowed mother in the town of

Hof, in a state bordering on starvation. He was already a man, in the maturity and consistency of his character. Even his personal appearance gave rise to the bitterest prejudice against him. He cut off the queue, which all men carried at the time, wore his brown locks loose, without powder, flung away the thick cravat, which then reached from the collar-bone to the ears, and walked the streets with bare throat,—often without a hat.

This revolt against what was then not only respectability, but decency, shut him out from occupation which he might otherwise have obtained. There is nothing which the world is so slow to forgive as an independence in regard to personal appearance and habits. The greatest living English poet once assured me that there is not courage enough in all London to make a visit in a felt hat. Richter was one of the purest of men, yet for this independence he was branded as immoral; one of the most religious of natures, he was called an atheist. A clergyman in Hof possessed a work which Richter was very anxious to read, but the clergyman angrily refused to lend it, unless Richter would first wear a cravat and powder his hair!

After three years of painful struggle, a university friend finally procured Richter a situation as private tutor in his father's family, and thus for three years longer the suffering man was at least fed and clothed. Then he established a school of his own in a little town near Hof, and labored as a gentle, if an unwilling,

pedagogue for four years. This brings us to the year 1794, the beginning of his literary success, the first hope of which led him to give up the school and return to his mother, whom he tenderly cherished until her death in 1797. He then left Hof forever, and went to Leipzig and Berlin.

This period of Richter's life embraces ten years of painful and discouraging struggles, and four years of partial success. A knowledge of it is of the greatest importance in estimating both his personal character and his intellectual development. The name of Hof suggests to me an illustration of the ignorance which a man may manifest, and yet be renowned as a scholar. Prosper Mérimée is considered the first German scholar of his time in France, yet he never took the trouble to inform himself that Hof is a Bavarian town. He supposes it to mean the Court of some reigning prince, and, in spite of the absurdity and the contradictions which ensue, he continually says of Richter, while he and his mother were starving together: "*Comme il était à la Cour!*"

Richter meant to continue his "Greenland Lawsuits," but no publisher would even look at them. He waited five years, and in 1788 published a work entitled "*Auswahl aus des Teufels Papieren*" (Selections from the Papers of the Devil), a collection of essays, full of keen and grotesque satire, but neither attractive nor very profitable reading. His long struggle with

poverty and with the narrow, unjust prejudices of the community in which he lived, gave a sharp and bitter tone to his mind which delayed his literary success, and thus repeated his misfortune in a new form. But a change was now near at hand, and, singularly enough, it came through a moral rather than an intellectual development. He was one day so assailed and ridiculed by some of his narrow-minded neighbors, that the strongest feeling of resentment was aroused. While he was trying to call up words severe enough to express it, his eye fell upon some boys who were playing near He saw suddenly, as in a vision, the troubles and the sorrows which would leave their marks on those bright, happy faces ; he felt the pangs which the most fortunate life cannot escape : all that men suffer crowded upon his mind, softened his heart, and he turned away in silence from his persecutors. The same day he wrote in his journal : "Henceforth I will assert my rights as firmly as ever, but always with gentleness."

His next work, finished in 1791, marks this new departure. It is called : "*Das Leben des vergnügten Schulmeisterleins Wuz*" (The Life of the Cheerful Little Schoolmaster Wuz). Here he forsakes the essay, and attempts what might be called a romance if it had either a plot or a consistent narrative. The characters, as in all his later works, are sometimes wonderfully minute and realistic studies from actual life, and sometimes merely mouth-pieces for the expression of the

author's own humor and fancy. Many of the scenes are evidently pictures of his own personal experience, very minutely sketched, but at the same time so delicately and sportively that they never weary the reader.

Richter felt that he had at last discovered the true field for his willful genius. His few friends gave him hearty encouragement, and it only remained to win back the public which he had repelled. His next work, "*Die unsichtbare Loge*" (The Invisible Lodge), was the turning-point in his fortunes. It was finished in the summer of 1792, and sent, with an anonymous letter, to an author named Moritz, in Berlin, begging him to read it and, if possible, to find a publisher for it. Moritz groaned when he saw the package, and left the letter unopened for several days. When he finally broke the seal and read the first sentences, he cried out: "This must be from Goethe!" He then began to read the manuscript aloud to some friends, and very soon exclaimed: "This is new and wonderful: this is more than Goethe!" To Richter he wrote: "Who are you? What are you? The man who has written these works is immortal!" A package of a hundred ducats accompanied the letter; and Richter, reeling and staggering like a drunken man, from a joy so intense as to be incredible, hastened home to pour them in a golden stream into the lap of his mother.

If the enthusiasm of Moritz did not communicate itself to a very large circle of readers, still an audience

was secured ; and Richter's next work: "*Hesperus oder fünfundvierzig Hundsposttage*" (Hesperus, or Forty-five Dog-Post Days), which appeared two years afterwards, brought him to the knowledge of all the authors and the critics of Germany. A place was made for him in literature, and a party was recruited for him out of the ranks of the reading public. Herder hailed him as a friend and an ally: the sentiment of the Storm and Stress period, so long deprived of the luxury of weeping, blessed him through the fresh tears which fell upon his pages ; and a short time sufficed to transform the ridiculous, despised, unpowdered, bare-throated schoolmaster of Hof into a sort of pastoral and idyllic demi-god, whom princesses sought as a guest.

Apart from the new and exceptional genius which he brought into literature, there were several reasons for Richter's sudden popularity. The increasing excellence of Goethe and Schiller, in form and proportion, was carrying them beyond the sympathies of that large class who demand feeling and warmth and a certain *abandon* in their favorite authors: the new romantic school, headed by Tieck and the Schlegels, was not yet sufficiently developed to supply the public need ; and jealousy of the Weimar circle, in other parts of Germany, operated to the advantage of any new author who promised to be a rival. Richter kept the place which he had made for himself. His later works all retain the character of his earlier ones. Except as they were en-

riched from his experience or his acquired knowledge, they show few traces of development. In this respect there could be no stronger contrast than he presents to Schiller. The only literary endeavor which we can trace in his works is that of exaggerating or multiplying the eccentricities of his style.

In 1796, Richter visited Jena and Weimar, and made the personal acquaintance of all the great authors. He first met Herder, walking in the park. Rushing up to him, he cried out: "Art thou *he*?" "I am," said Herder, "and thou art *he*!" Whereupon they fell into each other's arms. Richter was drawn into a circle which was very hostile to Goethe, and although the latter treated him with great kindness, he took no pains to secure Goethe's friendship. He seems also to have entirely misunderstood Schiller's nature: in fact, his head was a little turned by the praises showered upon him by persons more demonstrative than the two authors: he seems to have expected kisses, embraces and tears, at the first meeting, and calls Goethe frozen and Schiller stony, because they only shook hands and invited him to dinner. In his letters to Herder and Knebel, he expressed these crude impressions, and they were soon repeated in the gossip of Weimar. The result was Richter's complete estrangement from the two men who most might have helped him onward and upward, even as they helped each other. Their correspondence shows that they were both profoundly

interested in him, and inclined towards a friendly association.

After his mother's death, Richter lived a year in Leipzig, a second in Weimar, and then two years in Berlin, where, in 1801, he married Caroline Meyer, the daughter of a government official. He first selected Meiningen as a residence, but, in 1805, settled permanently in the town of Bayreuth, Franconia. Three years later, the Prince-Primate, Dalberg, the only ecclesiastical ruler whom Napoleon did not suppress in Germany, gave him a pension of one thousand florins (four hundred dollars) annually, which was continued to him, after the liberation of Germany, by the King of Bavaria. The remainder of his life was peaceful and uneventful. He fell into a regular habit of authorship, and not a single year passed without one or more new works from his pen. In order to avoid interruption, he hired a room in a little tavern on a hill, two or three miles from Bayreuth. Some years ago I visited the place, and found a garret chamber with one window, two chairs, some shelves, upon which Richter kept his manuscript cyclopædia, and a writing-desk, in the drawer of which lay an unpublished manuscript in his own handwriting, entitled: "Some Observations upon us Fools." Some old persons whom I met there described to me the author, as they had seen him walking out from the town every morning and back every evening, with bare throat, a bottle of wine in each side-

pocket, and a white poodle-dog at his heels. One man added: "I was at his funeral, and he was the most beautiful corpse I ever saw." He died at the close of the year 1825, not quite sixty-three years old.

The other works of Richter which are best known, are "*Titan*," which is generally considered his greatest; "*Blumen- Frucht- und Dornenstücke, oder Ehestand, Tod und Hochzeit des Armenadvokaten Siebenkäs*" (Flower, Fruit and Thorn Pieces, or Married Life, Death and Wedding of the Lawyer of the Poor, Siebenkäs); "*Das Kampanerthal*;" "*Flegeljahre*;" "*Levana oder Erziehungslehre*" (a Theory of Education); "*Dr. Katzenberger's Badereise*" (Journey to a Watering-Place), and "*Vorschule der Aesthetik*" (Introduction to Æsthetics). Except the last, all these works must be called romances, in the absence of any better term. He published also a number of smaller humorous essays, the most of which are now but little read, except by his special admirers. The complete edition of his works, published after his death, comprises sixty small volumes. It is very evident that it finally became something of a task to him to invent new eccentricities in his manner of treating a subject, and he sometimes carries the grotesque to the verge of idiocy. In "*Hesperus*" the chapters are called "Dog-Post Days," because a dog is supposed to bring them to the author, one by one, in a bottle fastened to his neck: in "*Titan*"

there are no chapters, but "*Jobelperioden*," subdivided into "*Zykel*;" in the "*Flegeljahre*" the chapters have the names of minerals—mica-slate, feldspar, hornblende—and in the "*Invisible Lodge*" they are called "*Sectors*." Moreover, there is no regular succession of these sectors, cycles or minerals: they are continually interrupted, and the progress of the story—what there is of it—is delayed by "extra sheets," "postscripts," "pastoral letters," "addenda," "intercalary days," "circulars," etc. In one of the works the story stops suddenly, and then appears a long letter to the publisher, stating that the writer is the author's sister, that her brother has been bitten by a dog, fears that he may have hydrophobia, and must suspend his labors! Many of the titles also have no relation whatever to the contents: he calls an essay of a somewhat critical and biographical nature, "*Observations made under the skull of a giantess*." In short, there are no bounds to the willful, whimsical pranks of his mind. The reader is led by glimpses of a delicate Ariel into swamps and briers, over stone heaps, and is sometimes left alone, in the middle of a labyrinth, to find the outlet as best he may. If he delights in quaint fancy, tender sentiment, pure human sympathy, exquisite pictures of nature, and a power of suggestiveness which keeps his own mind constantly at work, he will bear with the tricksome sprite and follow. But few persons, I suspect, could endure the caprice and the arrogance of Richter's style,

were it not for the strength and the sweetness of his moral nature.

His works are somewhat difficult to read, even to Germans, not so much from the obscurity of his thought as its utter want of form. He often tells you that he has a certain thing to say, and then makes the tour of the world before he says it. The reader finds himself in the condition of a patient waiting for the medicine which a friend has gone to buy, but who, on the way, drops in at the baker's, and the blacksmith's shop, hospital, picture-gallery, prison, hears a prayer in the church, takes a dancing-lesson, has his hair cut, and looks into twenty volumes at a second-hand book-stall. After all this, the friend brings the medicine, and he is so kind and sympathetic, he looks into your eyes with such love, his voice is so soothing, that your vexation dies instantly, and in ten minutes you let him go out again on another errand of the same kind.

To acquire a knowledge of Richter with the least difficulty, one should take one of his works along as a traveling-companion on a railway. He may then be read gradually, with many interruptions, with pauses to pursue a little way the fresh tracks of thought he is continually suggesting, and with glimpses of landscape which harmonize with his pages. We cannot feel much interest in his characters, for they are too shadowy, except when they are drawn from humble life and from actual persons. When Richter describes the narrow

circumstances of the poor, their customary joys and sorrows, their struggles or perplexities of heart or mind, he is wholly admirable; but when he rises to that class which possesses the ideally impressible element, he often makes us laugh now where his first readers were deeply moved. His lofty heroes and heroines weep whenever they see anything beautiful; they embrace and kiss whenever they agree in sentiment; the sight of a sunset from the top of a tower gives them thoughts of suicide, and they never look up to the stars without sighing to be disembodied spirits. They gush with an emotion which is never exhausted: they feed on hopes and longings, and are never happy except when they are inexpressibly sad. Yet, fools as they are, we cannot help loving them. If they could visit us, for only half an hour, on a moonlight night of summer, when the woodbines are in blossom, we should be delighted with their company; but Heaven forbid that they should come to us in the day-time, and especially in the market-place!

I speak of Richter's extravagant sentiment, not only because it is one of his prominent characteristics, but also because it immediately presents itself to those who open almost any one of his romances for the first time. "*Siebenkäs*" is the least objectionable in this respect. The characters of the poor, dreaming, unpractical poet of a lawyer and of his exasperatingly matter-of-fact wife, who, in the midst of his eloquent harangue on Eter-

nity, interrupts him by saying: . "Don't forget to leave off your left stocking to-morrow morning: there is a hole in it!"—are the author himself and his good old mother. Memory, in this work, acts as a good genius, constantly calling back his fancy from its wanderings; but in "*Titan*" and "*Hesperus*" there is no such restraint. The characters in these works float over the earth, and only now and then touch it with the tips of their toes. After waving their arms towards heaven, and gazing through tears on the Milky Way, for many pages, they sometimes come down a little, and we hope that they will soberly walk beside us for a few paces; but no! the contact of the stable reality sends them off with a *ricochet*, and the forms that seemed human become indistinct masses of electric light and angels' feathers in the distance. Contrasted with Goethe and Schiller, or indeed with any of his contemporaries, we at once perceive Richter's prominent fault: he has not the slightest sense of form in literature. That patient thought, by which a conception is slowly wrought into consistent and proportioned being, was utterly unknown to him. Instead of complete structures, where the idea sits enthroned like a god in his temple, he gives us piles of materials, fragments of columns and altars, stones carved with fair faces of women and cherubs, with grinning masks, or with wild tangles of arabesque designs. In fact, he strongly suggests the Gothic ornamentation of the Middle Ages, with its mixture of roses

and thistles, its leaves running into heads, its bodies tapering into quaint mathematical designs, and its singular blending of meaning and willful sport. We see the same tendency, to indulge in the purely fantastic, in Albert Dürer and other early German painters. It is an element compounded of genius, egotism, vanity and fancy; for the author insists on giving us the play and not the labor of his mind,—the detached suggestions and sketches, instead of the perfect picture. If this were Richter's only characteristic, he would be an exact embodiment of the undeveloped German mind. Intellect, in a crude, formless state of nature, is always willful and arrogant. Hence, the worship of form, as an ideal to be attained, purifies the author's conception from his merely personal whims and moods, and thrusts his egotism and vanity into the background, while forcing his fancy to serve as the law of beauty dictates. Richter might have learned something of this, to his endless advantage, had he allied himself with Goethe and Schiller, and borne with their honest criticism, instead of giving himself up wholly to the luxury of being praised, embraced and wept over. In their correspondence the two poets called him a *tragelaph*, or Indian antelope, but there was no offence in applying this term to the gambols of such a free and nimble intellect.

Richter's social success had also its share in misleading him. His independence and defiance of persecution, during these long years of bitter poverty, had

given him an air of pride and dignity; he had a strong and finely-formed body and a superb head, with a brow like Jupiter's, and the frank eyes and mouth of a boy; and thus, at the age of thirty-three, he burst upon the world, which first knew him nearly at the level of his highest performance. He was a welcome phenomenon at the courts of princes, *blasés* with all their ordinary associations. Here was a veritable child of nature, who yet observed the laws of society. The aristocratic circles were charmed by his originality, brilliancy and gentleness, while they dreaded to provoke his powers of humor and satire; so he was allowed to say things which startled the courtiers, he was petted and caressed, and at length innocently led to believe that the more freely he poured forth all the ingredients of his nature, without regard to their arrangement, the more he would gratify the world. His literary development therefore ceased, as I have already said. His pen became a permanent escape-pipe or drain for his mind, carrying off every thought as it welled up. Moreover, humor being the distinctive quality of his genius, he could scarcely have risen to a higher plane without losing something of it on the way. Humor is a quality which may be wisely governed, refined by study and exercise, but it rigidly holds the mind to its own special sphere of thought and invention. It may slyly peep into the cloisters of earnest thought, but it keeps far away from the altars of aspiration.

Richter is frequently called a poet in prose, but the title is hardly correct. I will admit that he possessed a thoroughly poetic appreciation of nature, and that a few of his scattered conceptions are adapted to poetic treatment, but I have rarely found an author with so little of the poetic faculty. His idea of prose, for the most part, seems to consist in tearing up sentences, and then putting the fragments together at random. Passages of great tenderness and eloquence are frequent, but they are seldom rhythmical. He sometimes refers to poets, but never quotes a line from them, except from the classic authors. A sweet pervading sentiment is often mistaken for poetry, but it is the difference between a ton of marble-dust and a statue.

I have indicated Richter's chief deficiencies, and I now turn to his equally evident merits. His humor can hardly be illustrated by detached passages from his works, because it is so evenly woven into their entire textures. It is full of grotesque surprises, always whimsical, often absurd, but it is never coarse or cruel. I have twice or thrice found men—not authors—who showed a very similar quality in conversation, where it is always delightful. In Richter's case, the irresistible tendency to use all the knowledge crammed into his written cyclopædia, is a hindrance to its lightest and freest exercise. One is sometimes reminded of a peasant-character, in a story by Auerbach, who always danced with three or four heavy iron wedges in his coat-

pockets, to keep the other dancers from crowding him. Often, however, his anatomical, chemical or theological figures of speech are as clear and keen as flashes of lightning. Then through the humor we see the features of some profound truth, and say to the author, "Be as grotesque as you please, so you give us more of this!"

A careful study of Richter reveals the element wherein he most reflects the feeling of his time, and which accounts for his great popularity. He represents the struggle between a real state of things, which was nearly intolerable to a large class of Germans, and the dream of something better, sweeter and more harmonious in their lives. The more they felt the one, the more intense became the other. Socially and politically the country was already disorganized, while the living aspirations of the people were forced to accommodate themselves to the old, dead forms. There was, and could be, no improvement until after a long season of bitter experience. Subjection to France, war, the mockery of the Holy Alliance, and revolution—fifty years of struggle—have brought about the transition; and we can now hardly realize to ourselves the misery of the previous situation. We find some expression of it in Schiller's poems, but it was embodied in Richter. He knew the life of the people as no other German author: its realities were so branded into his nature that the ideal life, of which he and his readers dreamed, could not escape from them.

There is thus in his works that continual and almost painful vibration between two extremes, which is an echo of the general restlessness. Gervinus says, in reference to this characteristic: "you cannot walk with the classic cothurnus on one foot, and the other foot bare, without limping." It is true that both extremes are generally represented in the same character; but in the "*Fliegeljahre*," they are divided; the hero Walt being the poetic and ideal, and his twin-brother Vult the practical nature. This is one of the least confusing of Richter's works, but it was never completed. He is skillful in presenting difficulties; but when it comes to a solution, he seems powerless. In "*Siebenküs*" also the two characters are divided, the wife, Lenette, being the practical side of life; and most readers will therefore find both these works more satisfactory than "*Hesperus*" or "*Titan*," which are more ambitious in design. In them the general plot is quite hidden by the aberrations of the characters, and it would be very difficult to describe that of either in an intelligible way. The "Invisible Lodge" is simpler, and an outline of it can be given in a few words. A boy is taken, in infancy, and placed in comfortable subterranean chambers, where the few persons who attend to his needs and educate him impress upon his mind that the dark, narrow world which he knows is the real world. They describe to him sunshine, trees, flowers and all the varied appearances of nature as belonging to heaven,—a heaven

to be won by obedience, virtue and faith. His subterranean life is meant to symbolize ours: his transfer to the surface of the earth that of our souls to a higher and brighter sphere of existence. But the symbolism is only material, not moral and spiritual: the boy exchanges lamp-light for sunlight, color, the sounds of breezes, birds and streams and the bliss of the free air. On the other hand, he rises from the innocence and ignorance of his subterranean life to become acquainted with violence, selfishness and crime. Richter saw his mistake, afterwards, and called the work "a born ruin."

As a specimen of his simpler descriptive style, I will quote a passage, translated by Carlyle, from his autobiography, in which he gives us a picture of his father's household:

"To represent the Jodiz life of our Hans Paul,—for by this name we shall for a time distinguish him, yet ever changing it with others,—our best course, I believe, will be to conduct him through a whole Idyl-year; dividing the normal year into four seasons, as so many quarterly Idyls; four Idyls exhaust his happiness.

"For the rest, let no one marvel at finding an Idyl-kingdom and pastoral-world in a little hamlet and parsonage. In the smallest bed you can raise a tulip-tree, which shall extend its flowery boughs over all the garden; and the life-breath of joy can be inhaled as well through a window as in the open wood and sky. Nay, is not Man's Spirit (with all its infinite celestial-spaces) walled-in within a six-feet Body, with integuments, and Malpighian mucuses and capillary tubes; and has only five strait world-windows, of Senses, to open for the boundless, round-eyed, round-sunned All;—and yet it discerns and reproduces an All!

"Scarcely do I know with which of the four quarterly Idyls to begin; for each is a little heavenly forecourt to the next: however,

the climax of joys, if we start with Winter and January, will perhaps be most apparent. In the cold, our Father had commonly, like an Alpine herdsman, come down from the upper altitude of his study ; and, to the joy of the children, was dwelling on the plain of the general family-room. In the morning, he sat by a window, committing his Sunday's sermon to memory ; and the three sons, Fritz (who I myself am), and Adam, and Gottlieb carried, by turns, the full coffee-cup to him, and still more gladly carried back the empty one, because the carrier was then entitled to pick the unmelted remains of the sugar-candy (taken against cough) from the bottom thereof. Out of doors, truly, the sky covered all things with silence ; the brook with ice, the village with snow : but in our rooms there was life ; under the stove a pigeon-establishment ; on the windows finch-cages ; on the floor, the invincible bull brach, our *Bonne*, the night-guardian of the court-yard ; and a poodle, and the pretty *Scharmantel* (Poll), a present from the Lady von Plotho ;—and close by, the kitchen, with two maids ; and farther off, against the other end of the house, our stable, with all sorts of bovine, swinish and feathered cattle, and their noises : the threshers with their flails, also at work within the court-yard, I might reckon as another item. In this way, with nothing but society on all hands, the whole male portion of the household easily spent their forenoon in tasks of memory, not far from the female portion, as busily employed in cooking.

“Holidays occur in every occupation ; thus I too had my airing holidays,—analogous to watering holidays,—so that I could travel out in the snow of the court-yard, and to the barn with its threshing. Nay, was there a delicate embassy to be transacted in the village,—for example, to the schoolmaster, to the tailor,—I was sure to be despatched thither in the middle of my lessons ; and thus I still got forth into the open air and the cold, and measured myself with the new snow. At noon, before our own dinner, we children might also, in the kitchen, have the hungry satisfaction to see the threshers fall-to and consume their victuals.

“The afternoon, again, was still more important, and richer in joys. Winter shortened and sweetened our lessons. In the long dusk, our Father walked to and fro ; and the children, according to ability, trotted under his night-gown, holding by his hands. At sound of the vesper-bell, we placed ourselves in a circle, and in concert devotionally chanted the hymn, *Die finstre Nacht bricht stark herein* (The gloomy night is gathering round). Only in villages, not in

towns, where probably there is more night than day labor, have the evening chimes a meaning and beauty, and are the swan-song of the day : the evening-bell is as it were the muffle of the over-loud heart, and, like a *rancee des vaches* of the plains, calls men from their running and toiling, into the land of silence and dreams. After a pleasant watching about the kitchen-door for the moonrise of candle-light, we saw our wide room at once illuminated and barricaded ; to wit, the window-shutters were closed and bolted ; and behind these window bastions and breastworks the child felt himself snugly nestled, and well secured against Knecht Ruprecht, who on the outside could not get in, but only in vain keep growling and humming."

Those passages in Richter's works which are considered purely sublime by his admirers,—wherein he is most earnest and profound—impress us like a mind wandering through Chaos, and only not bewildered because of intense faith in God and Man. Carlyle, in an article written soon after Richter's death, recognized his highest qualities in this eloquent passage: "His faculties are all of gigantic mould ; cumbrous, awkward in their movements ; large and splendid rather than harmonious or beautiful, yet joined in living union, and of force and compass altogether extraordinary. He has an intellect vehement, rugged, irresistible ; crushing in pieces the hardest problems, piercing into the most hidden combinations of things and grasping the most distant : an imagination vague, sombre, splendid or appalling,—brooding over the abysses of Being, wandering through Infinitude, and summoning before us, in its dim religious light, shapes of brilliancy, solemnity or terror ; a fancy of exuberance literally unexampled, for it pours forth its treasures with a lavishness which

knows no limits, hanging, like the sun, a jewel on every grass-blade, and sowing the Earth at large with orient pearl."

This is the testimony of an author who resembles Richter in the character of his humor and the arrogant individuality of his style. In regard to the latter, Carlyle quotes Lessing's phrase: "Every man has his own style, like his own nose," and adds: "True, there are noses of wonderful dimensions, but no nose can justly be amputated by the public." I think, however, that we have a right to object when the author insists on twisting and pinching his nose out of shape, or changing its natural hue into a shining redness, through the reckless intemperance of his fancy.

To illustrate Richter by quotations is like taking single trees out of a jungle where a thousand different kinds are matted together. There are remarkably few short passages which are complete when torn from the context. What he says of, or rather to, Music, has often been quoted—"Away! thou speakest of that which all my life I have passionately sought, which I never find, and never shall find!" Another fine expression is: "Unhappy is the man for whom his own mother has not made all other mothers venerable!" In matters of faith he was entirely independent, doubting or denying as his nature prompted; yet he says: "When in your last hour all faculty in the broken spirit shall fade

away and die into inanity—imagination, thought, effort, enjoyment—then at the last will the night-flower of Belief alone continue blooming, and refresh with its perfume in the closing darkness.” Here is a brief passage which embodies an important truth: “Truthfulness is not so much a branch as a blossom of moral, manly strength. The weak, whether they will or not, must lie. As respects children, for the first five years they utter neither truth nor falsehood—they only speak. Their talk is thinking aloud; and as one-half of their thought is often an affirmative, and the other half a negative, and, unlike us, they express both, they often seem to lie while they are only talking with themselves.”

I might multiply short quotations like these, but they would suggest a false rather than a true impression of the author. His glimpses of graver thought are generally coherent, because the exercise of his humor is suspended. It is also very difficult to reproduce the peculiar quality of his prose in a translation. Its singular, broken cadences, its promise of melodies which are always shattered by discords, require that the form should be almost as carefully retained as in translating poetry. The passages given by Carlyle are much the best translations, on account of the intellectual resemblances between him and Richter.

You will easily understand that a large class of readers are naturally repelled by Richter. In German criti-

cism you will find the most divergent estimates of his genius ; but no judgment of a purely literary character can be just. His deep and tender humanity must be recognized, as we recognize it in Burns and Hood. In literary art, he is only a disorganizing element, while his moral power and influence have been wholly pure and beneficent. Even his vanity never offends us, for it is as candid and transparent as that of Hans Christian Andersen. That so much strength and weakness, so much delicacy and coarseness, so much knowledge and ignorance, so much melting sentiment and grotesque humor, should not only be co-existent, but mixed through and through one another, in the same brain, makes him a permanent phenomenon. There is nothing like him in the literature of any country. If we call him great, we shall find a thousand reasons for taking back the epithet ; yet we cannot possibly press him back into any middle place. Nothing remains for us but to accept the term invented by his followers, and call him "*Der Einzige*"—"The Unique."

INDEX.

A.

Abraham à Santa Clara, 197.
Andræa, 160.

B.

Beowulf, 10.
Birken, Siegmund von, 192.
Biterolf, 56.
Brandt, Sebastian, 147.
Burkhardt von Hohenfels, 48, 52.

C.

Canitz, Baron, 197.
Chancellor, The, 49.
Charlemagne, 7, 8, 9, 15.
Codex Argenteus, The, 4.
Conrad, The Priest, 63, 64.
Conrad von Würzburg, 48, 49, 50.

D.

Dach, Simon, 185-188.
Diethmar von Aist, 30, 36.

E.

Egmont, 312, 313, 314, 315, 329, 330.
Eilhart von Oberg, 75.
Erek, 62, 68, 69-73, 92.

F.

Fabricius, Dr., 169.
Faust, 307, 334-335, 338-339, 341-342, 343, 362, 369, 386-387.

Faust, First Part, 315, 337-369, 371.
Faust, Second Part, 296, 324, 337, 339, 342, 343, 350, 370-386.
Faustus, The Legend of Dr., 339-341.
Fischart, 169, 171-174, 178, 180, 242, 391.
Flemming, Paul, 181-185.
Frauenlob, 48, 54, 55, 57, 143.
Friedrich von Hausen, 37.
Füterer, Ulric, 137.

G.

Gailer von Kaysersberg, 147.
Gellert, 198, 203, 231.
Gerhardt, Paul, 180.
Gleim, 203.
Goethe, 195, 202, 203, 214, 218, 230, 231, 232, 238, 242, 248, 249, 252, 253, 254, 255, 258, 259, 263, 264, 266, 268, 275, 276, 277, 281, 284-287, 289, 292, 294, 295, 299, 300, 302, 304-336, 390, 400, 401, 407, 408.
Götter Griechenlands, Die (The Gods of Greece), 281-284.
Götz von Berlichingen, 307, 308-309, 310, 329.
Gospel Harmony, The Old Saxon, 15.
Gottfried von Strasburg, 63, 68, 74, 75, 78, 82, 85, 86, 87, 97, 99.
Gottsched, 205, 215, 231, 235, 243, 244.
Gregorius vom Stein, 68, 73.
Grimmelhausen, 197.

Gryphius, Andreas, 185, 189-190,
191, 192, 197.
Gryphius, Christian, 192.
Gudrun, 62, 63, 130-134, 136.

H.

Hadlaub, Master Johannes, 48, 52.
Hagedorn, 198.
Haller, 198.
Hans Sachs, 145, 160-163.
Hartmann von Aue, 37, 63, 68, 74,
75, 78, 87, 92.
Heinrich, Der Arme, 68, 69, 73.
Heinrich von Meissen (see Frauenlob).
Heinrich von Morungen, 37.
Heinrich von Ofterdingen, 56, 57.
Heinrich von Veldeck, 37, 62, 64.
Heliand, Der, 15-20, 28.
Hellena, Die, 343, 375-378.
Herder, 203, 230, 249, 256-265,
276, 304, 305, 308, 315, 336, 390,
400, 401.
Hermann und Dorothea, 320-322,
330.
Hildebrandslied, Das, 10-15, 23,
28, 62, 107, 131.
Huchald, 22.
Hugo von Montfort, 137.
Hutten, Ulric von, 149, 159.
Hymns of the time of the Reformation, 159, 178.

I.

Iphigenie auf Tauris, 312, 313, 314,
315, 330.
Iwein, 62, 68, 74.

K.

Kaspar von der Roen, 11, 137.
Kepler, 171.
Klingsor, 56, 57.
Klopstock, 202, 203, 232, 234-245,
246, 248, 254, 256, 263, 264, 268,
275, 304, 305, 309, 315, 336, 390.
Kürenberger, The, 106.

L.

Lamprecht, The Priest, 64.
Laocoon, 207, 214-216, 228.
Leibnitz, 171.
Leich, A., 23.
Lessing, 171, 198, 202, 203, 204-
233, 234, 237, 242, 244, 245, 246,
248, 252, 254, 255, 260, 264, 272,
300, 304, 305, 309, 333, 336, 341,
390, 416.
Lichtenberg, 391.
Logau, Friedrich von, 171, 185,
193-196.
Lohenstein, 192, 197.
Lord's Prayer, The, in Gothic, 5.
Ludwigslied, The, 22-25.
Luther, 149-159, 165, 166, 168, 174,
175, 180, 196, 232, 391.

M.

Marner, The, 46-48, 52.
Meistergesang, Der, 143-146, 179.
Messias, Der (The Messiah), 234,
235, 236, 238-242, 243, 245.
Minnesingers, The, 31, 34, 36, 37,
45, 46, 48, 52, 56, 60, 64, 133.
Minstrels, The War of the (Der
Sängerkrieg), 55-57.
Murner, Thomas, 148.

N.

Nathan der Weise (Nathan the
Wise), 209, 217, 220-228.
Nibelungen, 113.
Nibelungenlied, The, 7, 26, 62, 63,
101-130, 131, 134, 136, 139.
Nibelungennoth, 113.
Nithart, 46.

O.

Oath of Charles the Bald, The, 9.
Oberon, 249-252, 253.
Olearius, 182, 197.
Opitz, Martin, 175-179, 181, 182,
183, 189, 190, 191, 197.
Oswald von Wolkenstein, 137.
Otfried, The Benedictine Monk,
20-22.

P.

Parzival, 62, 88-97, 98, 105.

R.

Reimar the Old, 37, 48.
 Reinmar von Zweter, 48, 52, 56, 57.
 Reynard the Fox, 26, 139, 140.
 Richter, Jean Paul, 171, 202, 203,
 230, 267, 388-418.

S.

Schiller, 183, 185, 202, 203, 230,
 243, 249, 253, 256, 264, 266-303,
 304, 305, 309, 311, 315, 316, 318,
 320, 322, 325, 326, 336, 342, 343,
 390, 400, 401, 407, 408, 411.
 Schoolmaster, The, of Esslingen,
 49.
 Silesian school, The first, 175, 181,
 185, 189, 190-191, 197.
 Silesian school, The second, 192,
 196, 197.
 Societies, Literary, of the 17th
 century, 175, 179, 181.
 Songs of the People, 164-165, 185,
 189.
 Spener, 180.
 Stabreim, 12.
 Sturm und Drang Periode, Die
 (The Storm and Stress Period),
 238, 252, 269, 284, 310, 400.

T.

Tannhäuser, 58-60.
 Tasso, 312, 313, 314, 315.
 Tauler, 147.
 Theuerdank, The, 138.

Titirel, 62, 97, 98-99.

Titirel, The, of Albrecht, 137.

Tristan, 62, 68, 75-86, 87, 88, 89,
 90, 92.

Trooper's Song of the 15th cen-
 tury, 141.

U.

Ulfilas, 4-6, 13, 28.

Ulric von Lichtenstein, 52-54.

Ulric von Winterstetten, 48, 50.

Undaunted, The, 49.

V.

Virtuous Scribe, The, 56.

W.

Wallenstein, 280, 286, 287, 290-
 292, 293, 296, 329.

Walter von der Vogelweide, 31,
 33, 37-46, 49, 52, 56, 85, 135, 138.

Weckrlin, 160.

Wernher, The monk, 48.

Werther, Die Leiden des jungen
 (The Sorrows of Werther), 310.

Wieland, 202, 203, 232, 245-256,
 259, 264, 276, 304, 305, 310, 315,
 336, 390.

Wilhelm Meister, 312, 316-318,
 324.

Wilhelm Tell, 295-298.

Willehalm, 97.

Wolfram von Eschenbach, 33, 56,
 57, 63, 68, 74, 75, 87-89, 93, 97,
 99, 100, 105, 136, 138, 174.

Z.

Zinkgref, 197.

UCSB LIBRARY

X-29854

University of California
SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY
405 Hilgard Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90024-1388
Return this material to the library
from which it was borrowed.

OCT 08 2007

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



A 001 032 991 0

Ur